EARLY WEST TIBETAN BUDDHIST MONUMENTS
ARCHITECTURE, ART, HISTORY AND TEXTS
Accepted by the Publication Committee of the Division of Humanities and the Social Sciences of the Austrian Academy of Sciences:
Michael Alram, Bert G. Fragner, Andre Gingrich, Hermann Hunger, Sigrid Jalkotzy-Deger, Renate Pillinger, Franz Rainer, Oliver Jens Schmitt, Danuta Shanzer, Peter Wiesinger, Waldemar Zacharasiewicz

Cover: Zhag cave, Tsamda County, Ngari Prefecture, Tibet Autonomous Region, China (Guge Tsering Gyalpo, 2009); Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs MS by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan (Guge Tsering Gyalpo, ca. 2015); Nyarma gtsug lag khang (Q. Devers, 2009); Tabo gtsug lag khang, apsara (C. Kalantari, 2009); stela inscription, lCog ro, Purang, Tibet Autonomous Region, China (P. Sutherland, 2010); Goddess Cundā, Prajñāpāramitā MS, Pooh, Himachal Pradesh, India (C. Kalantari, 2009); Nyarma gtsug lag khang, 3D visualisation (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012; stela, Kyuwang, Tsamda County, Ngari Prefecture, Tibet Autonomous Region, China (Guge Tsering Gyalpo, 2013)
Back cover: Khartse area, Tsamda County, Ngari Prefecture, Tibet Autonomous Region, China (Guge Tsering Gyalpo, 2010)

This publication was subject to international and anonymous peer review.

The paper used in this publication is DIN EN ISO 9706 certified and meets the requirements for permanent archiving of written cultural property.

Published with the support of the Austrian Science Fund (FWF): PUB 903-Z

Open access: Except where otherwise noted, this work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 Unported License.
To view a copy of this licence, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/

Some rights reserved.
ISBN 978-3-7001-8777-6
Copyright © Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna 2021

Graphic design: Eva Kössner
Printing and binding: Print Alliance, Bad Vöslau

https://epub.oeaw.ac.at/ 8777-6
https://verlag.oeaw.ac.at
Made in Europe
# Table of Contents

vii Preface

ix Spelling and Transliteration Systems

xi Introduction

1 ROBERTO VITALI
Territory and Trends in Land Control: The Byang thang “Heartland” and the mNga’ ris “Periphery”

25 CHRISTIAN JAHODA AND CHRISTIANE KALANTARI
Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: The Monumental Avalokiteśvara Stela in lCog ro, Purang

61 GU GE TSHE RING RGYAL PO
Brief Description of the Traditions Related to the “Translator’s mchod rten” in Kyu wang, Western Tibet (translated and annotated by Christian Jahoda)

73 CHRISTIAN JAHODA
Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Chapter on the History of mNga’ ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs: Notes on the Author and the Content

89 GU GE TSHE RING RGYAL PO
Relating the History of mNga’ ris as Set Down in Writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan ngyi zla’i phyreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text (with variant and corrected readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda)

121 TSERING DRONGSHAR AND CHRISTIAN JAHODA
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

171 CHRISTIAN JAHODA
Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s Report on Narma, 1917

201 QUENTIN DEVERS
An Archaeological Account of Nyarma and its Surroundings, Ladakh

225 HUBERT FEIGLSTORFER
The Architecture of the Buddhist Temple Complex of Nyarma

259 CHRISTIANE KALANTARI
Note on the Spatial Iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in Context

279 CHRISTIAN JAHODA
On the Foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh

301 CHRISTIANE KALANTARI
Hariti and Pāñcika at Tabo: On the Metamorphosis of the Protective Couple in Early West Tibetan Buddhist Temples

327 GU GE TSHE RING RGYAL PO
A Brief Analysis of the Reputed Passing Away of lha bla ma Ye shes ’od among the Gar log (translated and annotated by Christian Jahoda)

343 EVA ALLINGER AND CHRISTIAN LUCZANITS
A Vajradhātu maṇḍala in a Prajñāpāramitā Manuscript of Tabo Monastery

363 CHRISTIANE KALANTARI
Shaping Space, Constructing Identity: The Illuminated Yum chen mo Manuscript at Pooh, Kinnaur

407 GU GE TSHE RING RGYAL PO AND CHRISTIANE KALANTARI
Guge Kingdom-Period Murals in the Zhag Grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet

431 Index

441 List of Contributors
Most of the contributions collected in this volume were written during and as a result of the collaboration with Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po (1961–2015). This cooperation between him and Christian Jahoda began in 1999 during Tshe ring’s stay in Vienna and has been continued since 2008 as part of two FWF research projects led by Christian Jahoda—“Oral and Festival Traditions of Western Tibet: Processes of Cultural Memory and Renewal” (P20637-G15, 2008–2013) and “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, Conflict and Integration” (P21806-G19, 2009–2014)—and over the whole period of the cooperation under a research agreement between the Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences in Lhasa and the Austrian Academy of Sciences in Vienna.

As a result of the two research projects, especially through visits, joint stays and fieldwork in Tibet (since 2005), joint conference visits and workshops in Beijing, Vienna, Vancouver and Munich (between 2008 and 2015), archive studies in London (British Library, 2003) and Rome (Giuseppe Tucci Archive, 2008), and several of Tshe ring’s guest residences in Vienna (2008–2015), Christiane Kalantari, Hubert Feiglstorfer, Patrick Sutherland and Veronika Hein were also involved in this long-standing, fruitful scientific cooperation (in addition to the one with Guntram Hazod, which had already begun in the 1990s).

The highlights of this cooperation and the more than friendly relationship were probably the joint field research in Tibet in 2006–2007 and 2010, but this cooperation was abruptly ended by the premature death of Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po in June 2015 in Berlin, where he was a visiting professor at the Wissenschaftskolleg from 2014 to 2015 and formed a Tibet research group together with Guntram Hazod and Shen Weirong. As a result, the planned completion of some contributions and the work on the publication of this volume had to be interrupted for a long time.

During field research in Western Tibet between 2010 and 2014, Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po had come across new, highly interesting historical material (including texts, documents, paintings, sculptures etc.), on which this volume contains a contribution on a stela discovered by him in Kyuwan (Kyu wang), the birthplace of the great translator Rinchen Sangpo (Rin chen bzang po) (958–1055). For Tshe ring rgyal po it was above all a priority to make the works of Pandita Drakpa Gyaltse (Grags pa rgyal mtshan) on the early history of Western Tibet and his biography of the Royal Lama (lha bla ma) Yeshe Ö (Ye shes ‘od) available in good text editions as part of the planned volume. Tsering Drongshar has continued his textual criticism work on these issues and, together with Christian Jahoda, has gradually brought it to a close by comparing it with recent publications in Tibet.

Common to all sixteen contributions is the thematic focus on early West Tibetan Buddhist monuments. The volume contains studies of the history of Western Tibet, of Buddhist temples and monasteries, stelae and miniature paintings in religious Buddhist texts from the period between the late 9th century and the 12th century, as well as two editions of historiographical texts and a report from the early 20th century that relate to the history of this period.

The preceding article by Roberto Vitali contains a description of the historical development of Western Tibet in the period mentioned above. By including geographical, economic and other factors, this contribution provides a new perspective on the change in political power relations.

In addition, the historically significant stelae in Chokro (lCog ro),
Purang (by Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari) and in Kyuwang, Tsamda (by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po) are comprehensively documented in illustrations and discussed in their more immediate and broader art-history, historical and cultural contexts.

With the text editions of two works by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan, the chapter on the early history of Western Tibet in Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs ("Royal Genealogy of the Solar Lineage") with illustrations from the original manuscript (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po) and from lHa bla ma ye shes 'od kyi mam thar rgyas pa, the Extended Biography of the Royal Lama (lha bla ma) Yeshe Ö (Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda), both in Tibetan "headed" (dbu can) script, essential historical text sources are made readily accessible. An overview (Christian Jahoda) preceding these two editions introduces the author Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan (1415–1498) and the content of his work on early historical events. The latter includes, among other things, the information contained in it on Zhang zhung and the genealogy of the kings of Purang, the publication of which was an important concern of Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po’s research work.

The following contributions relate to Nyarma in Ladakh, the monastery complex there with the main temple and other buildings around it, but do so from different perspectives and disciplines, such as archaeology (Quentin Devers), architecture (Hubert Feiglstorfer), art history (Christiane Kalantari), historical social anthropology and by means of a historical report from 1917 by the scholar Joseph Tshe brtan Gergan (Christian Jahoda).

In contributions dealing with Tabo monastery and its founder Yeshe Ö, Christiane Kalantari studies newly discovered murals from the late 10th century; furthermore, Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po subjects the legend of the death of Yeshe Ö, which appears in historiographical Tibetan text sources from the 13th century onwards, to a historical-textual critical analysis. For the first time, Eva Allinger and Christian Luczanits present the results of research on miniature paintings in the oldest manuscripts preserved in Tabo.

Two final contributions make the complete book illumination of a Yum chen mo (Prajñāpāramitā) manuscript from Pooh, Kinnaur accessible, including a comprehensive analysis (Christiane Kalantari), and, based on a detailed documentation by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, provide a detailed study of the Zhag cave temple in the Be Valley north of Dungkar (Tsamda) (Gu ge The ring rgyal po and Christiane Kalantari).

Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

Vienna, June 2020
Spelling and Transliteration Systems

Usually on the first mention of Tibetan words and names in each article the spelling corresponding to the academic transliteration according to the Wylie system is given in brackets. Apart from this, names or words from Sanskrit are given in the academic transliteration throughout, as well as those from other languages. Those from Chinese are predominantly given in Pinyin. The only exception to this rule is the contribution by Roberto Vitali using the Wade-Giles romanisation for Chinese and for Tibetan exclusively academic transliteration according to the Wylie system.

All words in Tibetan are given in italics, with the exception of names. The following criteria have been used for the spelling of names: Tibetan names of historical or living persons are given in transliteration. In the case of Tibetan place names (whether original or Tibetanised), as far as these are mentioned in a historical context—e.g. in inscriptions—the Tibetan spellings as they occur there have been given in transliteration. In all other cases modern spellings, as they appear in recent publications, have been used or given additionally.

To indicate the genitive in Tibetan proper names and in order to avoid using the particle ‘of’, an apostrophe with the appropriate genitive ending has been attached, e.g. Ye shes ‘od’s. In contrast to Sanskrit terms, with Tibetan terms no plural formation with the addition of an ‘s’ has been used.
This volume brings together sixteen contributions dealing with historical monuments and materials relating to Western Tibet primarily between the late 9th and the 12th century. Depending on the authors' specialisation and expertise, they present and discuss the historical evidence from different perspectives and with different disciplinary backgrounds, such as archaeology, architecture, art history, history, and social anthropology. In one way or another, the thematic focus of all contributions in this volume is related to the establishment of monastic Buddhism in Western Tibet, in particular the foundation of Buddhist monasteries. Five papers deal specifically with the Buddhist site of Nyarma in Ladakh, two with Tabo Monastery in Spiti, both among the earliest foundations of monasteries in Western Tibet from 996. The sPyan ras gzigs / Avalokiteśvara stela in lCog ro, Purang, donated by a member of the Dro ('Bro) clan, and the stela in Kyu wang, Gu ge, ascribed to lo chen Rin chen bzang po, a member of the Hrukwer (Hrugs wer) clan, the topic of two separate papers, are public statements of Buddhism in 9th/10th-century Western Tibet, at a time when monastic Buddhism was supported by the state, the ruler and the royal lineage as well as allied aristocratic clans. The foundation of the West Tibetan kingdom and the genealogy of its royal lineage (Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs) by Gu ge Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan and the extended biography (rnam thar rgyas pa) of one its most prominent representatives, King Tridé Songtsktsen (Khri lde Srong gtsug btsan) aka Songé (Srong nge) aka lha bla ma Ye shes 'od by the same author, a 15th-century monk-scholar of the Ngor Sakya school, who descended from a Zhang zhung clan of Western Tibet, are the subject of three contributions which make these important textual sources available in annotated editions together with information on the author and content (Jahoda, pp. 73–87; Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, pp. 89–119; Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, pp. 121–169). In addition to a text-critical analysis of the legendary captivity and passing away of Ye shes 'od among the Gar log (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, pp. 327–342), the two final studies of an illustrated Yum chen mo / Prajñāpāramitā Manuscript in Pooh (Kalantari, pp. 363–405) and of the Zhag cave temple in Gu ge (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, pp. 407–430) analyse outstanding examples of the continuing tradition of patronage of Buddhist texts and monuments.

Despite the fact that each contribution stands for itself (reflecting the authors' freedom granted by the editors to select from their field of specific research topics and related materials according to their choice), the question of the overall scientific goals and knowledge interests of the volume may be asked.

All contributions share a strong basis in the study of monuments and materials that provide evidence for the analysis of specific architectural, art-historical, archaeological, historical, and social anthropological questions. Based on the premise that these monuments and materials are inseparable from the history to which they bear witness and from the setting in which they occur,1 they may be considered in toto as witnesses of “a particular civilization, a significant historical development or a historic event”.2 In the case

1 Adapting Article 7 of the Venice Charter (1964) of the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS): “A monument is inseparable from the history to which it bears witness and from the setting in which it occurs.” See https://www.icomos.org/charters/venice_e.pdf.

2 See Article 1: “The concept of a historic monument embraces not only the single architectural work but also the urban or rural setting in which is found the evidence of a particular civilization, a significant development or a historic
of 9th–12th-century Western Tibet, these monuments and materials constitute historical sources and witnesses to an extended concept of political cosmology, in particular of an all-embracing imagination of a Buddhist kingdom that was already present at the time of the foundation of the kingdom in 907.1 The most important government positions were awarded by the new ruler in accordance with the Buddhist concept of mandala, as described in Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, this volume, pp. 101–102), a clear indication that governance and administration of the kingdom were based on Buddhist criteria ab initio. The newly formed alliance by the royal lineage with local aristocratic clans, whose members are explicitly mentioned in the context of these appointments, provided for a strong foundation and balance of political power in the West Tibetan kingdom (in contrast to the conditions before the downfall of the Tibetan Empire).

After a phase of formation and consolidation, presumably to be explained in view of the socio-political, religious, economic, and linguistic conditions which had characterised the former kingdom of Zhang zhung, the envisioned all-encompassing Buddhist transformation of society began to be put into reality on a grand scale only in 986 with the issuing of a “great edict” (bka’ shog chen mo), in which the population was called upon to follow the Buddhist moṅḍala scale only in 986 with the issuing of a “great edict” (bka’ shog chen mo), in which the population was called upon to follow the Buddhist doctrine, with the publication of a “religious edict” (chos rtsigs (gtsigs)) in 988, which proclaimed a sort of religion-based constitution of the West Tibetan kingdom, and with the initiation of a wave of eight major foundations of Buddhist monasteries (together with other measures) by leading members of the royal West Tibetan lineage in 996.4

The totalling transcendentald Buddhist representation of the state within the totality of the cosmic order, with the btsan po as the paramount figure,5 which had developed in the Pugyel (sPu rgyal) dynasty in the period from 779 to 841, was transferred to Western Tibet “embodied” in the imperial persona of Kyidé Nyimagön (sKyid rabs bod mgo nag po'i srid, the lord of “the polity of black-headed Tibetans” (bod mgo nag po'i srid) (see Hill 2016). Similar phrases are still found from the late 10th century in early monastic Buddhist contexts in Western Tibet, such as in the Renovation Inscription at Tabo from ca. 1042, with the main difference that the earlier ruler, Srong nge / Ye shes 'od, is characterised in addition as belonging to a lineage of bodhisattvas (byang chub sens dpa'i gdung). Around a century later, in Yig rnying, bKra shis mgon, the middle son of sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon, was the first to be mentioned among the rulers of the Tibetan royal lineage as the one who belonged to a lineage of bodhisattvas and protected Buddhism like his paternal ancestors (yab mes chos skyong bai rgyal po byang chub sens dpa'i sprul pa'i gdung rgyud) (p. 34, lines 5–6). Later, in the 15th-century source Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs, the concept of the royal (now West) Tibetan lineage and its outstanding representatives is further elevated with reference to its claimed derivation from the Indic Solar lineage, including the family lineage of the historical Gautama Buddha (see Gu ge Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 276 / f.48b1–4).

The creation of a transcendentald holistic image of the West Tibetan kingdom according to Buddhist principles must be seen as a process that went back at least to the time of the Tibetan Empire, when under the ruler Trisong Detsen (Khri Srong lde btsan) (742–ca. 800) not only was the “religion of the Buddha” (sangs rgyas kyi chos) established as a state religion, culminating in 779 in the foundation of Tibet’s first Buddhist monastery in Samye (bSam yas) but also the concept of kingship and state government were adjusted accordingly, as he made all of his “vassals and councilors swearing never to persecute Buddhism, but to increasingly uphold and support it” (Dotson 2017: 4). Part of this development was the increasing inclusion of the Buddhist clergy in state affairs, which was visible, for example, in “the newly established ‘religious gathering’ [chos 'dun sa/ma], which was held in the presence of the emperor. (...) The situation culminated in the institution of the ‘monk minister’ [chos blon], who by the early...
ninth century practically headed the governmental power." (Hazod 2014: 12).

When skYid Ide Nyi ma mgon, a descendant of the Central Tibetan sPu rgyal lineage, was invited by local aristocratic clans to take over kingship in Western Tibet in a Tiger year (most probably 906), he took the place of a king from the royal dynasty referred to in Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs as gNya'/sNyga shur ruling over the kingdom of Zhang zhung (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, this volume, pp. 99–100; Jahoda, this volume, p. 78). According to this source, the role of five related Zhang zhung clans from Gu ge, who had formed a wedding alliance with the royal Zhang zhung lineage, was the decisive factor in this change of power relations. Gu ge Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtsshan, the author of this text, presents further valuable information on these clans, the royal gNya'/sNyga shur lineage and the downfall of the Zhang zhung kingdom, obviously thanks to his access to earlier, possibly contemporary sources in Western Tibet, although a certain Buddhist- and clan-related bias cannot be excluded in his retrospective account due to his affiliation to the Ngor Sakya school and descent from an aristocratic West Tibetan lineage.

The contribution by Roberto Vitali opening the volume (pp. 1–23) provides an outline of macro-historical developments in Western Tibet from the 7th to the 15th century which is based largely on texts from the Bon tradition, a genealogy of the IDong clan, and contemporary Tibetan texts from Dunhuang. His account of the Zhang zhung “civilisation” not only analyses the overall historical development but provides a fresh characterisation of the political system (“forms of insular government”), of religious traditions (Bon and “religious practice with hermit features”), of the social organisation (“a clan system from ancestral times”), and also of economic ways of life of the populations in the territories belonging to this kingdom. He notes in particular the essential transition from a predominantly nomadic way of life during the Zhang zhung kingdom towards a more sedentary life, which appeared at the time of the foundation of the West Tibetan kingdom together with a shift of the main human settlements to lower altitudes, together with an aggregation of different groups of people.

The further sequence of articles in this volume predominantly follows chronological criteria, in terms of the time horizon represented by and in the source materials. In the case of written sources which often cover a longer period of time and are not easy to evaluate in terms of the historicity and validity of their content, they can be dated according to internal evidence (author, date and place of origin, references to other sources, etc.). On the other hand, in the case of works of art, such as the sPyan ras gzigs / Avalokiteśvara stela in lCog ro, Purang (Jahoda and Kalantari, pp. 25–60), whose exact date of creation is difficult to establish, it can nevertheless be identified as the earliest evidence of Buddhism in Western Tibet on palaeographic and for art-historical reasons, dating from a Horse year in the 9th or early 10th century, most probably sometime between 826 and 910. It may thus represent either a late example of Buddhist patronage in Western Tibet from the time of the Tibetan Empire or the earliest, in fact until now the only material witness of Buddhist art in Western Tibet from the time before Ye shes ‘od.

Buddhist activities and even the foundation of temples are mentioned for skYid Ide Nyi ma mgon and his son bKra shis mgon, who is said to have built the temple of g.Yu sbra, most probably in the Khā tse/Khartsé (mKhā rtse) area of Gu ge, the home of lo chen Rin chen bzang po’s paternal ancestors. The Great Translator’s family, presumably the whole Hrugs wer clan (closely linked to the royal West Tibetan lineage from the foundation of the kingdom), seems to have been among those where Buddhism had found strong support. Rin chen bzang po’s first thirteen-year sojourn in Khaché (Kha che, Kashmir) and Gyagar (rGya gar, India), which lasted from 975–987, thus predating the official introduction of Buddhism as state religion, is a clear indication of this, and also of Rin chen bzang po’s key role in the subsequent dissemination of Buddhism, not only due to his functions as chief priest (dbu’i mchod gnas) and Tantric Teacher (rdo rje slob dpon, vaṇijācārya) and achievements as a translator of texts but also through his public activities, the participation in the foundation and inauguration of Buddhist monasteries in central sites in the kingdom. The stela ascribed to him at Kyu wang in Gu ge represents an exemplary case of a public Buddhist activity and memorial statement with a lasting presence by a member of an aristocratic clan in a smaller place and is thus, like the lCog ro stela, a witness to a tradition of Buddhist patronage independent of the royal lineage (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, pp. 61–71). This stela can be dated on art-historical grounds to the first decades of the 11th century. Local oral tradition connects it to an incident in the life of lo chen Rin chen bzang po that is also recorded in his biography, the passing away of this mother which happened presumably around 1014/15.7

7 This tentative date is based on a statement in his biography immediately following events dated to 996, where it is said that he extended the life of his mother for another eighteen years (Ku ge Kyi rang pa dPal ye shes Dzñā na śrī 1977: 89–90 / f.20a5–f.20b1). In a subsequent section it is reported that “after his mother had died he went to Kyu wang and practiced three times the sādhana of the dPal ngon srong sbyun bang / Sarvadurgatipariśodhana mandala” (de nas kyu wang du yum grongs nas byon te / dPal ngan song sbyang ba’i dkyil ’kor gyis zhal gsum phyi; ibid.: 95 / f. 23a2–3). A four-fold image of Kun rig rNam par snang mdzad / Sarvavid Vairocana, the deity taking a central position in this mandala (the text of which was also translated by Rin chen bzang po),
It is also an essential goal of the volume to make research materials on historical Western Tibet accessible in a better and more comprehensive form than has so far been available. This also concerns textual sources, such as two highly important historiographical texts by Gu ge Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan, which are published here in annotated editions and in the case of Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs for the first time with colour illustrations of the original manuscript in order to provide a sound basis for references and future translation and comparison with further sources that have come to light recently (see Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ’dus 2012, Martin 2019: 218, n. 90). In this volume, these works are analysed primarily in terms of the chronological information on foundations of monasteries and on the genealogy of the West Tibetan royal lineage.

With the exception of these two sources, in terms of methodology, the contributions on the stelae as well as those on Nyarma (including an archival report by Joseph Gergan), Tabo, the Yum chen mo / Prajñāpāramitā Manuscript at Pooh (sPu) and the cave temple at Zhag are in all cases based upon in-depth documentation and research by the authors in situ, which implies a strong contextual perspective. Wherever possible and applicable this comprises the analysis of inscriptions together with explicitly mentioned emic concepts.

The contributions on Nyarma, which deal with this important but hitherto little studied monastic site, mainly from the perspective of surface archaeology and architecture (Jahoda, pp. 171–199; Devers, pp. 201–224; Feiglstorfer, pp. 225–257), shed much new light on the variation of the built structures in terms of their function, construction and use, with a focus on their interconnections and the structural and constructive developments which took place over the course of time. Much attention is accorded to the dimension of space, both in terms of ritual use, for example in the case of circumambulation, and also in the spatial dimensions of the iconography, which is the core topic of an art-historical analysis of the Nyarma Main Temple (gtsug lag khang) (Kalantari, pp. 259–278). A fresh look on the foundation and founder of the earliest structure at Nyarma, which is based on a re-reading of relevant historical textual sources, is linked to the investigation of titles held by rulers and other members of the West Tibetan royal family and the elaboration of an overall coherent chronological framework of the rulers of the West Tibetan kingdom and their activities between 879 and 1042 (Jahoda, pp. 279–299) for which information is drawn mainly from Gu ge Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs and lHa bla ma ye shes ’od rnam thar rgyas pa, in addition also from Yig rnying found in Tholing in 2011.

Several studies in this volume, likewise based largely on newly documented materials, explore the development of specific iconographic themes, their diachronic variations and evolutionary histories through comparative art-historical studies. In a larger regional context, their aim is to reconstruct and make development processes visible that go beyond the level of case studies and are also relevant for other areas. Monuments such as the unique lCog ro stela provide crucial testimony to the spread of early Buddhist culture in Western Tibet by influential clans in the region. In addition, they are evidence of the existence of an artistic landscape that connected Western Tibet with areas in India (also via Central Tibet) and Central Asia. This trans-regional approach towards early West Tibetan art includes sites that have so far only been little studied despite being known for a long time. Many of these sites are still barely accessible and were previously almost unknown in the West, such as the Zhag cave temple and the Buddhist monuments at Khartse.

The art-historical investigations of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang and of paintings from the foundation phase of Tabo Monastery (Kalantari, pp. 301–325) discuss fresh evidence documented by the author which is proof of the great artistic and stylistic diversity during this period. The fact that monasteries were repositories of mobile cult objects, often of exquisite splendour, and vital artistic centres (commissioned and sponsored by the monasteries’ royal founders) where master artists invited from Buddhist centres outside Western Tibet, mainly Greater Kashmir, were active, is demonstrated by additional papers (Allinger and Luczanits, pp. 342–361; Kalantari, pp. 363–405). These two studies address iconographic issues as well as stylistic and chronological reassessments in the field of manuscript illumination in the temple collections of Tabo and Pooh (H.P) that cast a new light on the artistic landscape of Western Tibet. The investigations of the manuscripts’ iconography in relation to the medium of contemporary wall-painting illustrate how much these illuminated manuscripts are to be seen as part of a correlated aesthetic religious ensemble. Like the monuments and the other materials analysed in this volume, they reflect the Buddhist rulers’ and their aristocratic allies’ all-embracing vision of an elaborate political cosmology (consequently realised in various media), equal to “a totalizing transcendental representation” of a political system where “the transcendental social [defined as an ordered encompassing whole] and the religious are identical” (Bloch 2008: 2058).

VITALI, Roberto (1996) The Kingdoms of Gu.ge Pu.hrang: According to mNga'.ris rgyal.rabs by Gu.ge mkhan.chen Ngag.dbang grags.pa. Dharamsala, India: Tho ling gtsug lag khang lo gcig stong 'khor ba'i rjes dran mdzad sgo'i go sgrig tshogs chung. Yig mying [Old Manuscript], fragmentary manuscript in ‘headless’ (dbu med) Tibetan script, not dated (ca. 12th century), Tholing monastery, 50 pages (digital photography of original MS).
Roberto Vitali

Territory and Trends in Land Control:
The Byang thang “Heartland” and the mNga’ ris “Periphery”*

There could hardly be a better conveyed message about the hardship of life in Zhang zhung than the proverbial disparaging words about her new country, sent by Sad mar kar to her brother Srong btsan sgam po.¹ The

¹ Having been asked, owing to circumstances, to write a piece at the last moment—I express my gratitude to Christian Jahoda for inviting me to join—the theme I have chosen reflects the fact that several topics were already touched by the other contributors.

I thought it possible to jot down a short work on the macro-history of the lands composing mNga’ ris in view of the progress that the knowledge of the regions in the west has made steadily throughout the years. Needing a holistic underlying concept, I opted for the idea of territory. Land occupation marks the

Zhang zhung core area she talks about was, as is common domain, well inside the highlands of western Byang thang. Besides the capital of the kingdom at Khyung lung dngul mkhar,² the other major centre of Zhang

² In his outline of the masters of Bon po ‘Dul ba (Ti se’i dkar chag 1973: 574,1–578,5), dKar ru Bru chen bsTan ‘dzin rin chen associates these religious exponents with bya ru can rulers and the seats from where the latter exercised their functions. ‘Dul ba masters, bya ru can kings and their castles can be summarised as follows:

1. drang srong Khri lde ’od po from the land of sTag gzig was active during the rule of Zhang zhung srid pO rgyal po Khri ler la je gser gyi bya ru can who resided at Gar ldang g.Yu lo rdzong mkhar, i.e. rGyang grags, in front of Gangs ri chen po;
2. Khri lde ’od po’s disciple, drang srong sPung rgyung gyi rgyal po ‘od kyi bya ru can who resided at sTag chen mgam pa’i yongs rdzogs mkhar in the land of Pu mar hring;
3. Dang ba yid ring’s disciple, drang srong sPung rgyung gyi rgyal po ga’i bya ru can who resided at Dum pa tshal gser gyi mkhar of Zhang zhung TsI nai shod;
4. sPung rgyung gyi rgyal po sTag sna gzi bzhid rgyal po Khri ldem lcags kyi bya ru can who resided at sTag sna dBal gyi rdzong mkhar in the centre of the town sTag sna gling [note: known as Bon ri sTag sna rong] at the foot of sPos ri ngad Idan in the land of Zhang zhung TsI nai;
5. rDzu ’phrul ye shes’s disciple, drang srong Ye shes tshul khrims, was active during the rule of Sad hri gyer gyi rgyal po utpala ‘od kyi bya ru can who resided at Mu rdzong chen po khro chu’i mkhar in the land of Zhang zhung Kha yug;
6. Ye shes tshul khrims’s disciple, drang srong g.Yung drung tshul khrims,
zhung according to T’ang sources was north of Gangs Ti se at Ru thog, the ancient Suvarnabhūmi of the Indian tradition and Hsüang-tsang and its people the Suvarnagōtra, still within the immense Byang thang plateau.

was active during the rule of Slas kra Gu ge’i rgyal po rin chen’od kyi bya ru can who resided at DNgul mkhar dkar po khro chu’i rma’gs rdo can (“with foundation stones in molten metal”);

7. g.Yung drung tsulh khrims’ discipline, drang srong gTsug phud rgyal ba, was active during the rule of Mu mar thog rgyud rgyal po enda’od kyi bya ru can who resided at Zhang zhung Ru thog gNam rdzong mkhar;

8. gTsug phud rgyal ba’s disciple, drang srong Ye shes rgyal ba, was active during the rule of sTag sna rgyud rgyal po Khi drim Idcgs bya ru can [residing] at sTag sna dBar gyi rdzong mkhar in the centre of the town sTag gling at the foot of sPos ri ngad Idan in the land of Zhang zhung Ts na.

The way dKar rgyun ‘dzin rin chen introduces the masters in the transmission line of Bon po ‘Dul ba has it that eight generations of rulers would have been involved in the support of these practitioners. If read in chronological sequence, this would mean that the earliest was the bya rGyals rgyal rgyal mchog rgyal ba, he was located in the upper reaches of the Indus river, the area of Ru thog (see Beal 1981: 199). The antiquity of Ru thog is thus documented for the mid 7th century or environs but it seemingly goes back to a deeper past. This was the region, where deposits of a “superior sort of gold” are located.

Especially during the sPu rgyal Bod period, holding sway over Byang thang was the bone of contention between antagonist powers. Due to the location of both rTsang stod—its southeastern territory bordering on Ru lag—and the vast tract of land known as Byang gi Zhang zhung—east of the kingdom’s core area—their control affected the political status of the time. Indeed the takeover of Byang gi Zhang zhung, conquered by Khyung po Pung’s Pung sud zu tse on behalf of Srong btsan sgam po, created the conditions for

In terms of physical geography, Ru thog belongs to the “heartland” but was culturally part of the world of the Indian North-west. The endurance of the culturally developed but militarily weak Land of Gold is shown by the fact that it was still existing in the time of the famous Chinese pilgrims, visitors of India. The way dKar rgyun ‘dzin rin chen presents its political status. It may mean that it floated in a condition of semi-independence.

Ru thog came to be part of the Byang thang “heartland” politically at a later stage when Srong btsan sgam po took over Zhang zhung and brought it into sPu rgyal Bod dynasty’s fold, thus rescinding the traditional ties the area had with the cultures in its west. Finally, the Korean pilgrim Yue-ch’ao states that it was under the sPu rgyal Bod dynasty in the second quarter of the 8th century (Fuchs 1938: 443).

Cross evidence provided by The Inquiry of Vimalaprabhā, Hsüang-tsang and the Korean pilgrim Yue-ch’ao helps to get a fair image of Suvarnabhūmi’s population, the Suvarnagōtra (the “Race of Gold”).

The Inquiry of Vimalaprabhā (in Thomas 1935: 191–248) mentions close cultural and kinship ties between Khotan, the Gold Race Country and Baltistan. These ties suggest a common ethnic and cultural extraction of Indo-Iranic matrix. It cannot be ruled out that Zhang zhung and its rMu/dMu ancestral tribe (see any rMu mdzod edition) existed before the distinctive Tibetan race took shape, were the joining point of the nomadic way of life of Tibet’s northern belt with Indo-Iranic values coming from Khotan, other cases of Central Asia and North-west India. The rMu/dMu and the other rMi’u rgyal sgam were the ancestral tribes of proto Tibetans populating the northern belt of lands of the plateau—mingled to form the Tibetan race during a presumably protracted span of time.

4 I.e. 716, ii, is the text which mentions Khyung po Pung’s Pung sud zu tse’s takeover of Byang gi Zhang zhung that took place sometime after 638 (the execution of Myang Zhang snang) and before 644 (the conquest of Khyung lung). The text (i.e. 716, ii, 3–5; Tun hong nas thon par, 1992: 70–71) reads as follows: “To yo chas la i je bo Bor yon tse brags stee/ To yo chas la latsogs te Byang gi Zhang zhung thabs cad/ Khi rgyud rgyud gyi phyag tu phul te/ Zu tse slo ba nye o/ btsan po ii bloen po nang na/ Pung sud zu tse las slo ba (p. 71) nye ba sngan chad kyang ma byung ngog//”, “[Khyung po Pung’s Pung sud zu tse] destroyed Bor Yon tse, the lord of the To yo chas la. He offered the whole of Byang gi Zhang zhung, including the To yo chas la, to Khi Rgyud rgyud [sgam po]. Zu tse was loyal and in favour. Among the ministers of the btsan po, there was no one closer to him than Pung sgtan”.

Iho yo, so transcibed in the Gangs can rig mdzod edition of mkhas pa IDeu chos ’byung for an original To yo—the similarity between to and tha in any kind of Tibetan script is remarkable—it was one of the stong sde of g.Yas ru according to this source (ibid.: 258,11). IDeu Jo sras chos ’byung (110,20) writes it sTod yongs, while mkhas pa’i dga’ ston (187,17–19) does not mention it in its classification of the g.Yas ru stong sde-s. rGod Idem can gyi nmam thar (73,4 and 86,4) says that the area of Tho yor nag po should be traced to the north of ri bo bka’ bzag, itself due east of
sPu rgyal Bod to inflict a deadly blow to the throne of the Lig myi rhya dynasty.\(^5\)

Byang thang has been, since time immemorial, a most difficult territory for survival. Human habit in high altitude Zhang zhung implied a way of life and cultural expressions that influenced the spread of civilisation in earlier times and in the successive periods. ‘Brog pa existence and uncompromising living conditions occurred in a vastness marked by loneliness and empty spaces.

Yet, Zhang zhung was more than a Byang thang nation. Besides ‘brog pa customs, sedentary life was popular in the lower altitude areas of the Zhang zhung kingdom, where the local conditions made existence more viable.

Due to this reason, Zhang zhung stands out among the other kingdoms in the history of Central Asia. Most commonly, nomadic lands did not forge kingdoms. Zhang zhung was an ante litteram model of state in the history of High and Central Asia, a political entity which anticipated of many centuries the creation of nations where sedentary life and nomadism were present at the same time. It was long after Srong btsan sgam po’s destruction of Zhang zhung in 644–649 that a nomadic population, the Liao dynasty of the Khitan (947–1125) founded a kingdom which ruled over a mix of nomads and sedentary people (Drompp 1989: 146).

Zhang zhung, the “Heartland” and the “Periphery”

This leads me to examine where the old Zhang zhung civilisation developed before its destruction and where, therefore, Bon was spread anciently. To identify the lands that formed Zhang zhung according to the Bon po sources, I use a synopsis of Kyabs ston Rin chen ‘od zer’s 14th century sPyi spungs khro ‘grel.\(^6\) This text also helps to identify territories, part of the Byang thang “heartland” and outside it, that were Zhang zhung once.

This synopsis is found in sNga rabs Bod kyi byung ba brjod pa’i ‘bel gtam lung gi snying po (1997: 24,1–8) by slob dpon bSrlang ‘dzin ram dag (also see a compactment of the lands of Zhang zhung in dPal ldan tshul khrims’s bSrlang ‘byung skal bzang mgul rgyan (1988: 33,12–18).

sKyabs ston’s sPyi spungs khro ‘grel offers evidence conducive to a classification of the lands of Zhang zhung into six sectors:

- the eastern sector (Sum yul), an integral part of Zhang zhung according to the Bon po tradition. It was composed by Mar pa, sTag lo, Gi rib (not to be confused with the one in southern Byang thang), Khyang byid, Khyang po and ‘U sang;
- the western sector (from sBal ti/La dwags down to Khu nu), composed by (from north to south): sBal ti, rKang phran, La dwags, Zangs dkar, Gar zha, Nyung ti, sPil ti and Khu nu;
- the southern sector—the Himalayan range from Uttarkand to Mustang—which included (from west to east): Drug nyi, Nyi ti, Kyo nam, Sha khog, mGar yang, Tshang ro, Ti dkar, Sle mi, ‘Om blo, Dol po, Mustang, Se rib and Krug skies up to Mang yul;
- the central sector (Gu ge, Pu hran and Ru thog) plus the contiguous lands of Kha yug, Kha skyor and Kha rag;
- the south-western Byang thang sector, consisting (from west to east) of Ci sang, Ci na in Gro shod, Gi rib, and Tshog cu; and finally
- the central Byang thang sector inclusive of Ra sang, Nag tshang and Shang gyer.

This classification does not reflect the actual territorial composition of the Zhang zhung kingdom, for it is more extended than what history tells. I think, instead, that this is a synchronic reading of the diachronic history of Bon. It compacts the extension of Zhang zhung before its downfall with the subsequent migrations of people related to Bon from the west to the east, who went to occupy lands in Khams, and to the south of Byang thang. This is also proved by the use of place names from later periods.

Leaving aside the lands of the eastern division of Sum yul, Kyabs ston’s assessment of other sectors of Zhang zhung shows

\(^5\) Karmay (1977: 22) thinks it may have been written in 1391, while bSrlang rtsis bskal ldan dang ‘dren (47, see Kvaerne 1990: 159), dates it to a long time afterwards, for it holds that it was completed in 1509.
well enough that its lands comprised a number of lower altitude areas along the Himalayan range, situated around a core region well within the territorial expanse of the Tibetan plateau.

In view of this consideration, I think it is legitimate to distinguish the expanse of territories that composed Zhang zhung between a “heartland” and a “periphery”, in line with the classification found in Kyabs ston Rin chen ’od zer s’spyi spungs khrus ’grel.

These lands crown the great open area of Byang thang which functions as their landmark in that it connects them in a sort of regional and cultural unity. Hence, it seems that people were inclined to settle in higher altitude areas with harsher weather but also in valleys and areas where a different range of activities was possible. The cave colonies in territories, such as those of Gu ge and Glo bo, are signs of this pattern of human habitat (see below the section “Changes induced by the sPu rgyal Bod takeover”). These people’s lifestyle changed, favouring sedentary life side by side pastoralism rather than exclusive pastoralism, as in Byang thang.

The Mackinder Theory
In some cases, theories work for their simplicity, especially when they are so obvious that they are hardly deniable. The theory—not my own—I introduce here is simple in its generalisation. It goes back to quite a few decades ago and was conceived to assess inhabitation in Central Asia.

The concept of an Inner Asian “heartland” by Halford Mackinder in his 1904 article “The geographical pivot of history” considers territorial morphology, which is a constant rather than human presence, and concludes that people had been settling where geographical conditions were most favourable to their lifestyle. In his article Mackinder then launches himself in his own assessment of the Central Asian people’s territorial patterns of occupation and says that nomadism was the cultural “heartland” of Central Asia.

The T’ang emperor Wu-tsung was fully acquainted with the idea that geographic morphology, marked by the divide between pasture lands and cultivated fields, often was a political barrier to be recognised with. He said:

“How could we dare to disregard the natural boundaries established by Heaven and Earth?” (Drompp 1989: 141).

A natural boundary theory forged Chinese foreign policy, conceived along a dichotomy between the pastoralist and agricultural worlds that is one of the backbones of Tibetan culture.

Mackinder’s theory of Inner Asia and its nomadic core that bordered on the sedentary kingdoms, such as China, is a geo-historical vision which can be transferred to Byang thang—another heartland”—and the territories crowning it, some of them bordering on or being part of the Himalayan range. Hardly anywhere else in the lands of the Tibetans, the division between Byang thang and mNga’ ris exemplifies this basic concept of the local way of life. The ancient Zhang zhung civilisation also had major centres in areas, such as Gu ge, situated at a lower altitude and with warmer conditions that enabled the running of an economy not reserved to pastoralism.

Byang thang or, better, southern Byang thang—the sector closest to the areas I examine—played a crucial role as an economical and territorial reference, but people ended up running life in the lands enumerated by sKyabs ston, where the concentration of population, at least after the sPu rgyal Bod period, was higher owing to a warmer climate.

Nomadism was the “heartland” of Mackinder’s theory, a suggestive way of reading the history of Central Asia by means of one all-comprehensive concept. Nomadism was the “heartland” of Upper West Tibet, too, which is consequent to the wild nature of Byang thang. The pivotal role of Byang thang also found expression inasmuch as it favoured the centrifugal choice of various groups. They settled in the lands/valleys that crown the highlands and gave birth to the adjoining sedentary cultures.

Hence, I see Mackinder’s theory to be more suited to Byang thang and mNga’ ris than to Central Asia, for it more markedly concerns geography and consequent specific living conditions.

Changes Induced by the sPu rgyal Bod Takeover
The archaic occupation of the western side of the Tibetan plateau underwent a drastic reform under sPu rgyal Bod. There was a general desertion of Zhang zhung both in terms of people and civilisation, induced by the new rulers, who substituted the old model with a new governorship. With the change of the political system following

7 Mackinder stresses the point that the Inner Central Asian “heartland” has no physical outlet, i.e. rivers that cross it and leave its borders. Except the Ma pham gyu mtsho region and its four great rivers, which have their sources in the “heartland” but eventually cross into India, the core of Byang thang has no physical outlet, too.

8 mKhos pa’i dga’ ston (185,11–17): “On the basis of the earliest [law known as] Khri rtse ‘bum bzher, the snrid pa and khos ston pa (the “taking care of the secular affairs and the khos”) tasks were assigned by the king to the various ministers by means of their authority. The khas dpon of Bod was mGar sTong btsan yul bzung; the khas dpon of Zhang zhung was Khuyng po Bun zung (spelled so for sPung sad); the khas dpon of the Sum pa was Hor Bya zhu ring po (“wearing a long hat [with] bird [feathers]”); the khas dpon of horses was dBang btsan bzang dPal legs; the khas dpon of the mThong khyab was Cog ro sGyal mtsho gyang gong. They were those who were appointed. sKyi shod Sho ma ra [for Bod], Khuyng lung mGul mkhar (i.e. spelled the way in which it appears in Sad mar kar’s song) [for Zhang zhung], Nam ra Zha don (spelled so) Gram pa tshal
the annihilation of Zhang zhung by the Central Tibetans, the ground realities in Byang thang changed in the intervening period. The annihilation of the Zhang zhung kingdom—however thorough in its devastation it was—did not mean the desertification of the “heartland”.

sPu rgyal Bod substituted the culture it had destroyed with its system of governance that had applied to the regions on the plateau in the east of Byang thang. Ertwhile Zhang zhung did not become a sPu rgyal cradle but a strategic trampoline for the extension of the tha sras btsan po’s kingdom into Central Asia. The western front in their campaigns for the empire was open at the expense of the Western Turks, previous allies, and the Chinese.

After it was blown away, what remained of the Zhang zhung kingdom on the western side of the Byang thang steppes, where the kingdom had had its centre, were a clan system from ancestral time, doubtful forms of insular governorship, and religious practice with hermit features.

Hence, the perception that derives from Byang thang in the days just before the end of its autochthonous kingdom is of a land with inhospitable areas where the ancient Zhang zhung civilisation had developed in conditions widely unknown. Extreme hermit life continued to prosper subsequently, owing to religious masters of immaculate determination.

This is elucidated in a significant manner by the life example and personality of the Bon po master Gyer spungs sNang bzher lod po, who owes its celebrity to one text in particular, entitled Bon ma nub pai’i gtan tshigs, which deals with him. This work is found in the collection of texts that are the literary heritage of Zhang zhung snyan rgyud.

Gyer spungs negotiated an agreement with Khri srong lde btsan so that Bon, although defeated, was not destroyed by the sPu rgyal king. The account claims that, following the annihilation of the Zhang zhung kingdom, he threatened Khri srong lde btsan with personal dire consequences if the sPu rgyal king would not consent to the survival of Bon. For this reason, his behaviour is acknowledged by the Bon po literature as having been crucial for the preservation of its religious tradition.

My concern for Gyer spungs regards another phase in his life, one that predates his activity in protection of Bon. Gyer spungs sNang bzher lod po is less well known for the years he spent in seclusion in Byang thang to practise rdzogs chen Bon po style, the philosophical basis of Zhang zhung snyan rgyud. His activity is meaningful to assess the lifestyle of the Zhang zhung people of the post-monarchic period and their religious practice.

Soon before the Khri srong lde btsan accident, his teacher Tshe spungs Zla ba rgyal mtshan took Gyer spungs to the island of Da rog mtsho, the lake in the Byang thang area of Gu rib, northeast of Pu hrang, where they performed extreme penance. What followed is an extraordinary case of
spiritual abnegation and human resolve, typical of the meditative discipline of this tradition.\textsuperscript{11}

Da rog mtsho was familiar to the early Bon po masters, for areas of southern Byang thang in the Zhang zhung kingdom were both the scene of their predecessors’ activity since time immemorial and a major centre of secular rule. One only needs to think of the seats of the bya ru can rulers of Zhang zhung to notice the centrality of the land.\textsuperscript{12}

A sedentary way of life was already practised during proto-historical times, for the massive and numerous cave colonies in territories such as Gu ge and Glo bo seem to be signs of ancient occupation. A major point that needs to be ascertained through archaeological investigation concerns the phases of cave inhabitation. Should the cave colonies be associated with trogloditic existence? Or were they a habitat solution adopted in hermit communities to hold their practice in relative isolation during the historical period of Zhang zhung? A subsequent use was that some caves were occupied by religious practitioners when Buddhism became popular in mNga’ ris with bstsan pa phyi dar. They were sites for meditation but some were also transformed into veritable temples.

\textbf{From the “Heartland” to the “Periphery”: the Preliminaries to the Creation of mNga’ ris skor gsum}

Centuries later, after a long interregnum hardly covered by historical memory, one finds in the lands of Upper West Tibet a new politico-territorial reality. When mNga’ ris stod reappears in the records of Tibetan history, one is brought to acknowledge the presence of ethnic groups that were settled, as for their main seats in areas at the “periphery”, where a different socio-economic lifestyle was pursued, or else they had withdrawn, in some cases, from the empty spaces of the Byang thang solitude.

This eco-geopolitical reality was marked by a profound diversity. The central core, despite its isolation and hard living conditions, remained the Byang thang “heartland” where the Zhang zhung kingdom and its civilisation had disappeared under the blows of sBu rgyal Bod.

The main human settlements, organised in principalities across the centuries, established themselves at lower altitude areas. These settlements crowned the Byang thang “heartland” and connected it, owing to their location, with Mon yul and the provinces of India. This organisation, which still used the Byang thang “heartland” as the great basin from where important economic resources were drawn, created the conditions that linked altitude pastoralism, its way of life and products, with the world of the lowlands and its completely different living arrangements and commodities.

The inversion of trend consisted in the fact that the “periphery” came to exercise control over the “heartland”, the reverse of the power structure that existed during the Zhang zhung kingdom’s period.

It was not so much the diffusion of Tibetan Buddhism in the lower valleys at the “periphery” that led to switch focus towards them away from the highlands, after Bon in the Zhang zhung kingdom must have forgone the way of life through its practice in areas at an altitude.\textsuperscript{13} It was the transition towards a more sedentary life solution...
that brought people towards the valleys surrounding Byang thang.

The role that the adoption of Tibetan Buddhism exercised was to promote aggregation between different groups of people inhabiting lower altitude areas after political entities were formed locally. Besides bringing civilising elements to his kingdom, Ye shes 'od's promotion of Buddhism was a factor of unity. Buddhism preexisted his reign in Gu ge marginally and on a larger scale in La dwaq than elsewhere in his kingdom—unless the signs of pre-Nyi ma mgon Buddhism have mostly disappeared from the other areas of mNga' ris skor gsum—owing to the influence irradiated from the Indian northwest. IHa la ma's taking care of the education of groups of individuals from the regions of his kingdoms was in syntonity with the aspirations of the local intelligentsia. The case of young Rin chen bzang po is enlightening in this respect.

The transfer that marked the passage from a high-altitude kingdom to the various lower valleys of the “periphery” around the Byang thang “heartland” did not occur in synchronicity. The history of these lands records remarkable time fluctuations between one occupation and another. The ways and causes of these population reshiftlings that determined these events is dissimilar in most cases.

The birth/consolidation of sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon's mNga' ris skor gsum kingdom was achieved through clan alliance. This was the strategical basis of sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon's conquest of the lands in Upper West Tibet. His starting point was the ties he established with the 'Bro, a non-indigenous clan, who had gone to occupy Pu hrang by migrating into it, possibly during the sPu rgyal period.14

Another non-indigenous group of people settled in Upper West Tibet was the prominent Cog ro clan, one of the divisions of the lDong tribe from Mi nyag. They held a tract of land in Pu hrang that was eventually assigned to lo chung Legs pa'i shes rab, a Cog ro ba himself, by means of a bka' shog, the text of which is integrally (?) recorded in Rin chen bzang po'i rnam thar 'bring po.15 This authenticates the assertion in the Hermanns Manuscript—which I rather like to call lDong rus mdzod.16 A line says:

"The Bu rang (spelled so for Pu rang) rgyal po is one lDong" (lDong rus mdzod f.13a = Hermanns 1948: 197,32).

Lo chen Rin chen bzang po's mother was a Cog ro,17 which shows that his paternal clan, the Hugs wer of Zhang zhung pa origin did not refrain from intermarriage with people originally from outside mNga' ris stod, and it is probable that the intermarriage was not the first occasion of this occurrence. All this shows that the Cog ro had
to dispose of the bodies, as documented for sPu rgyal Bod. The people followed a heretical religion (which one?), I wonder whether the passage echoes the conditions of the teachings in Central Tibet and is derived from there, with the exception of Bon that is stereotypically associated with the west of the plateau.

14 The presence of the 'Bro clan in Pu hrang is documented on both the inscribed faces of the rdo rings bearing a relief of sPyan ras ggzis and standing in a field between Zhi sde in the east and Cog ro in the west (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Za ba tshe ring 1994: 4–20, text of the inscriptions ibid.: 4–6). Also see Vitali (1996: 168–169, n. 231).

The two epigraphs record the name of the 'Bro chieffain, Khri brtsan sgra mGon po rgyal, who was the sponsor of the rdo rings. This is a proof that the 'Bro were devotees of sPyan ras ggzis and therefore their profession of the Buddhist religion was a point that made them empathic towards sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon. The founder of the mNga' ris skor gsum kingdom descended from a line of rulers, i.e. gNam lde 'Od sرعun and dPal 'khor brtsan, who promoted Buddhism. Khri brtsan sgra mGon po rgyal also says in the inscription that he was a zhang, a sign that he belonged to the old sPu rgyal Bod order. This was one more point that made the 'Bro close to sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon.

The 'Bro chieffain of the inscription also associates himself to the name Seng ge, typical of his clan, also borne by Nyi ma mgon's 'Bro wife, Seng dkar ma. Her's is not a proper name but a title deriving from a symbol of rank peculiar to the 'Bro heroes (the seng ge dkar mo'i gong slag, i.e. 'the white lioness fur collar'), which some clan members wore as a sign of greatness (mkhas pa lDeu chos byung p. 265,17). The title was also used by the 'Bro of sTod.

15 The ordinance that allotted land to the Cog ro in Pu hrang smad reads in in Rin chen bzang po'i man thar 'bring po (106,5–107,2) as follows: "Due to his kindness in rendering service to him, by means of his body and speech, even at the risk of his life, [the land of] Cog re (sic for Cog ro) up to Ku shu in Go ge (sic for Gu ge) on the upper side; the three lower [areas off] the Ti ma la ("pass") including the river flowing from the snows and glacier (or the Kha dar river?) [the borders being marked by] Te thang in the east; the snow range in the south; sNga ma myong ("not being there before") in the west; and the river (gtang po) in the north, including the fertile (gtsang sic for bzang) fields, groves and pastures of the localities were granted by a sealed order (bka' rtags) of lHa bla ma me (sic for mes) dbon ("lHa bla ma and his successors") and the personal seal (phyag rtags) of the lo tsa ba, to lo chung (p. 107) Legs pa'i shes rab. No small or large community whatsoever can come to reclaim (bzhes thang) them. No petition can be filed (kha ma ri rgyab). [This] seal (rgyal) cannot be obliterated (tib spelled so for gtib, lit. "to cover, obscure")."

16 lDong rus mdzod (198,1–5): "The lDong has eighteen great clans (ru chen sic for ru): Cog ro, Cog khri and Kha rang, altogether three; sBas, sBa rje and dBu dkar, altogether three; mDa min, mDa tshal and mDa 'jon, altogether three; sNyam, sTag snyen and sTag bzang, altogether three; sNga ma, sNga ma one lDong", sic for lDong rus mdzod f.13a = Hermanns 1948: 197,32).

17 "The Bu rang (spelled so for Pu rang) rgyal po is one lDong" (lDong rus mdzod f.13a = Hermanns 1948: 197,32).

The manuscript's title page is lost and I prefer to call it lDong rus mdzod rather than the Hermanns Manuscript because the text mainly deals with the genealogies of this ancestral tribe. Hermanns had no part in writing it but only in finding the copy that is known to us. To give his name to this text was an exercise in eurocentric colonialism that was not uncommon in the time he lived. Rin chen bzang po'i rnam thar bdus pa (234,3): "The name of [Lo chen]'s father was ban chen po gZhon nu dbang phyug. His mother's name was Cog ro (i.e. Cog ro) Kun bzang shes rab bsan". One wonders whether Rin chen bzang po's father was a practising monk.
moved to the erstwhile Zhang zhung dominions, settled there and
intermingled with the local people.

While Pu hrang was occupied by people from outside, Gu ge,
at the time of Nyi ma mgon’s conquest, was still populated by
indigenous people—the Mang wer, Mol wer, sKyin wer, Hrugs wer
and Rum wer.18 The Khyung po, who antagonised Nyi ma mgon’s
takeover of their land, occupied ministerial roles in Zhang zhung in
great antiquity.19

Traces remain of the presence of Nyi ma mgon’s ‘Bro loyalists in
the handling of La dwags (see Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 119–
150 for the inscriptions inside A Ici ‘Du khang and gSum brtsegs,
collected and translated by P. Denwood), once the region was
subtracted from the hands of its Dardic rulers. It cannot be ruled out
that the ‘Bro participated in Nyi ma mgon’s takeover of both Gu ge
and La dwags.

The status of La dwags prior to Nyi ma mgon’s takeover is an
indication that, after the downfall of the sPu rgyal Bod empire, the
land has slipped away from the hands of the Zhang zhung pa and
ended up in the control of the Dard, people deployed along the
mountain ranges of the Indian Northwest.20

The ‘Gar, who are found in Ya rtse according to literary evidence,21

---

18 Nu mi’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs (429,4–6) defines them the Zhang zhung mched
Inga. They were the Mang wer Od tshang swa ged tsha (spelled so), the Mol
wer, the sKyin wer Srong kyed tsha, the Hrugs wer g.yung drung gZher stod ged
tsha and the Rum wer Sha zher rtse, altogether five.

19 The opening lines of P.T. 1287 (67,1–68,7) reads: “There is a rgyal bran
(spelled so) in each land. Minor castles are located in each of them. The main
[personalities] among those who rule the rgyal bran-s and those who serve as
blon po-s are as follows. [In] Zhang zhung, there were Dar pa’i rjo bo Lig sny a
shur, blon po Khyung po Ra sangs rje and sTong Lom ma tse, altogether two”.

20 Follows a record of rulers and ministers for each minor kingdom.

21 See A. Stein (reprint 1979) for the earliest reference to the Dārada in Kalhana’s
work that appears in the text during the reign of the Epithalite king Mihirakula
who ruled in Kashmir in the first half of the 6th century (ibid.: Taranga I, n. 289).
A. Stein (ibid.: Taranga I, n. 312 and nos. 312–316) says that lands included in the
Dardic confederation were Citral, the Yasin Basin, the valleys along the course of
the Indus such as Gilgit, Chilas, Bunju up to the Kisanganga valley to the north
of Kashmir, to which La dwags gsham should be added. The Dardic people—it
seems—held them loosely since the time of Herodotus.

22 Yar lung jo bo chos byung has two assessments of the Ya rtse ruling class.
One sees them as descendants of the ‘Gar clan (72,6–9), which refers to an early
time: “The royal line of Ya tse descends from the Bod kyi chos blon (sic: he was
a famous warrior), ‘Gar Srong btsan (sic for sTong btsan). It is believed that Se
ru dGe bai’ blo gros, who mastered the two sciences, after having investigated
the matter with gSer thog pa Rin do rje, put [this statement] into written form”.

The other one refers to the Ya rtse genealogy as a branch of the Pu hrang

The outline of the rulers in Ya rtse before Naga Ide, found in the Dullu
inscription, is marred by various lacunae (for its text see Tucci 1956: 46–49).

The may have been a splinter group additional to the four great divisions
of this clan, none of which is associated with Upper West Tibet, unless it should be
considered as a branch of their ‘phrul rgyud.22

Given the Khyung po’s major role in old Zhang zhung, it should
not be inconceivable that a local ‘Gar group, fellow members of the
Se Khyung dBar tribe, had come to settle in the lands where the sun
sets.

The ‘Gar of sTod must have come into contact with unspecified
local inhabitants, defined as sKal Mon. As to the Ya rtse dynasties (see
the Dullu inscription in Tucci 1956: 46–49), the royal line established
by Na ga Ide/Nagaraja, of possible Indo-Iranic origin, was followed
by a branch of the Pu hrang royalty. They ruled in alternance with
genealogical segments from Ya rtse.

Overall, history tells that, owing to compulsions that destabilised
their status, a scion of dPa’i ‘khor btsan left his seat in gTsang, most
likely rGyal rtse before the Shar kha pa established the town as their
capital,23 and migrated west, focusing on the “periphery” rather than the
“heartland” as his new territory.

The itinerary followed by Nyi ma mgon to move west from rTsang
highlights another peculiarity of Byang thang, which served as the
quintessential transfer route for the traffic between dBus gTsang
and mNga’ ri stod. Byang thang’s rather flat morphology made it
a preferred way of travelling rather than the Himalayan range or the
valleys that fell subsequently under Nepal, much more difficult to
negotiate. The ancient and principal route crossed southern Byang
thang from Gung thang to Pu hrang stod via Sa dga’, Glo bo, Pra dum,
Bar yang and the Mar yum la. Another route—a late transit—was to

---

last kings whose names are still readable in the part of concern are Mahipala,
succeeded by a ruler whose name is defaced but which ends in “di”, and by
Jakakhya (lines 14–27), who may have not belonged to the same dynasty. The
conquest of Naga Ide, the Nagaraja of the inscription, followed. For the list of
the fourteen Pala kings see Tucci (ibid.: 49–50).

22 Chos sdings pa’i nam thar (415,2–3): “There are four lineages in the ‘Gar
[clan]: the chos rgyud (the “lineage of religion”) of IHa rje dPal byams; the ‘phrul
rgyud (the “lineage of miracles”) of Sungs btsan yul bzungs (i.e. Srong btsan yul
bzung); the dpa’i rgyud (the “lineage of heroes”) of bTsan pa Dred po; and the
kal rgyud (sic for skal? the “lineage of fortune”) of Nye rang Pha mdzuq. They
are altogether four. The ‘phrul rgyud came to exist (byung) in dBus rTsang, [and]
Mon until Dol po. The dpa’i rgyud [came to exist] from rGya ‘Jang in Sa mda’ and
elsewhere (namms su). The kal rgyud came to exist from Brad ra Gling chen, Mny
nyag (spelled so for Mi nyag) stod smad, all of those. The chos rgyud originated
from Yangs pa can, [and] from Dol zor to Li yul, all of those”.

23 The Shar kha pa prince ‘Phags pa dPal built a fort at rGya grong/rGyal grong
and erected a building on rGyal rtse’s higher peak, where the late sPu rgyal
dynasty king dPal ‘khor btsan had a kingly palace. For this reason, he called it
rGyal mkar rtse (“the peak of the royal castle”) (see Rab btan kun bzang ‘phags
kyi nam thar 12,8–14).
the north of it, that connected gTsang via mTsho chen and farther north to dGe rgyas and dGe rtse. Less frequented but ancient was another route farther north, which crossed the area of the Nag tshang lakes from gNam mtsho all the way towards dGe rgyas and Ru thog.

sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon’s plan to move west and forge his kingdom had vague similarities with the policy adopted by the lha sras btsan po-s. The purpose of his journey was to gain control of territories that had belonged to the ancestors sitting on the sPu rgyal throne. However, there was no point to duplicate the ancient conquest of Zhang zhung achieved by Srong btsan sgam po. His plan to replicate the Central Tibetans’ control of several lands of the erstwhile Zhang zhung kingdom came to terms with the reality he found locally. For one, the ‘Bro loyalists were already in control of Pu hrang.

mNga’ ris skor gsum: Emphasis on the “Periphery”

Nyi ma mgon knew that there was no empire to forge and rule. His choice was not to reign over the lands on the upper side from a centre of power far away in its dBu gTsang, like the lha sras btsan po-s did. His choice was local but, in the beginning, he followed the old sPu rgyal Bod’s pattern to settle and rule from the locality chosen as the capital of old. That was Khyung lung, but then he was inspired by a change of perspective about the lands he was planning to control. It was no more the centrality of the “heartland”. It was the centrality of the “periphery”. His campaigns aimed at conquering the areas of the “periphery”, which he newly planned to make the core of his kingdom, using the support of lower altitude power structures, such as the ‘Bro in Pu hrang, to consolidate his presence and prepare his conquest of the skor gsum.

Unlike the lha sras btsan po-s, he aimed at taking Gu ge not to make it the centre of a distant governance anymore and La dwags not to make it a trampoline for conquests in Western Central Asia.

Despite his changes from the way sPu rgyal Bod had controlled the territories in the west, Nyi ma mgon somewhat retained tracts of the old lha sras btsan po’s policy. His sons, the sTod kyi mgon gsum—children of local mothers—brought the embryonic policy of their father to fruition. The criterion adopted was to divide the dominions among the aspirants to the throne. Splitting the unity of the kingdom was typical of a conspicuous number of states. It was meant to guarantee a succession without rivalries.

None of the sTod kyi mgon gsum accepted to rule from the capital of their father. They chose to elect their three capitals in lower altitude valleys of the “periphery”.

In order to assert their self standing, the sTod kyi mgon gsum did not choose to stay at a higher altitude castle but decided to transfer their seat to valleys of mNga’ ris stod at the “periphery” of the old Byang thang “heartland” to privilege another way of life that prospered locally. A combination of factors—the choice of the “periphery” and the need to have individual governance—resulted in the new status of the kingdom as three divisions.

The passage of mNga’ ris skor gsum into the hands of the sTod kyi mgon gsum marked the abandonment of the higher altitude land. This was where Nyi ma mgon had initially elected his residence to the north of mtsho Ma pham (Nyang ral chos ‘byung 457,20), and then had built sku mkhar Nyi bzung at Ti se after bringing the skor gsum under his sway (ibid.: 458,14).

Nyi ma mgon’s selection of his capital was a sign that his kingdom was planned to encompass a huge territorial expanse not too dissimilar from the lands of Zhang zhung in the west. Choosing the capital at Gangs Ti se stressed the territorial unity of the kingdom beyond the limits of its land components. But Nyi ma mgon’s campaigns are an indication that the ancient capital of Zhang zhung in the period of the bya ru can rulers was not going to be the permanent centre of his dominions.

Territorial lines of diffusion were at the basis of the moves towards the “periphery”. Besides the political reasons that induced Nyi ma mgon to take over the various areas of his kingdom by means of different tactics, they were dictated by the morphology of Upper

24 Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum gyi dkar chag (f.6b,4–5): “Hence, the king’s eldest son dPal lde Rig pa mgon, having been assigned the castle g.Yu gong sPe

25 Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum gyi dkar chag (f.6b,4–5): “Hence, the king’s eldest son dPal lde Rig pa mgon, having been assigned the castle g.Yu gong sPe

mo che, said: “I am not going to stay here. That cloud is moving towards Mar yul. That is where I will go”. He went to Mar yul! La thugs (spelled so). La thugs, Zangs dkar, Gar zha and ‘Brog Chu shod, the upper and lower lands, were given to him to rule”.

Ibid. (f.6b,6–7): “The youngest son bKra shis lde mgon, having been assigned g.Yu gong sPe mo che mkhar, said: “I will not stay here. That cloud is in Pu rang. That is where I will go”. Pu rang, Brad, Ya rtse, Glo bo, Dol po, ‘Brog Gro shod, rGya Nyi ma, Bar ka [which are the] byang skor, were given to this son to rule”.

Ibid. (f.6b,1–2): “The youngest son lDe gtsug mgon, having been assigned the castle g.Yu gong sPe mo che, said: “I will not stay here. That cloud is in Gug ge. That is where I will go”. mNga’ ris Gug ge, Pi ti Pi skyg, which constitute one khri skor; ‘Brog Mur la mtsho skyes, Phun rtse, g.Yu gong and gSer kha gSur ngur rin chen ‘byung gnas were given to him”.

The assignment of the lands to the sTod kyi mgon gsum varies according to the sources.

25 The foundation of sku mkhar Nyi bzung is commonly attributed to sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon but one voice out of the chorus is Padma ‘phrin las’s ‘Jam dbyangs rin cen (spelled so) rgyal rtags gnam thar (in bKa’ ma bla ma rgyud pa’i rnam thar p. 272,6), which says: “The middle of the sons born to rGod lde (ie Nyi ma mgon) conquered Ba’i po. He founded sku mkhar Nyi bzung in sPu rang”.

bKra shis mgon’s conquest of the Kathmandu valley is no less controversial. No cross referential evidence is found anywhere else that the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom controlled the Kathmandu valley even temporarily.
West Tibet. The three skor of mNga’ ris echo the configuration of the land admirably. They were divided on the basis of a geographical criterion. Gu ge Pu hrang formed the southern block, compact in morphology and having the Mountain and the Lakes as the “heartland”. The skor of La dwags composed by two parallel valleys separated by a mountain range stretched on the south-east north-west axis. The northern valley had its eastern limit in the region of Ru thog and Pang gong mtsho, its “heartland”. It extended to Drang rtse, Nub ra, Kha pa lu and Shi gar. The southern valley, too, had its eastern limit in the region of Ru thog and Pang gong mtsho. It comprised La dwags stod and gsham, Pu rig, all the way to sBal ti at the other extremity. The skor on the western side of the Himalayan range united Pi ti and Khu nu to Zangs dkar.

The tactical decision was to keep Zangs dkar separated from La dwags and Pi ti from Gu ge in order to obtain the third skor. This was the division superseded with the death of IDe gtsug mgon.26

The choice to settle in Pu hrang by the ‘Bro clan members may have been induced by its favourable climatic conditions that allowed them to embrace agriculture as in their ancestral land in rTsang and by the vicinity to the axis mundi. The choice of Gu ge as the centre of the other skor reflected a historical legacy from the days of the Zhang zhung kingdom. The choice of La dwags stod as the capital area of this skor rather than Ru thog “heartland” as in the days of the Zhang zhung kingdom was probably due to multiple reasons, besides moving to the “periphery”. It is likely that it was meant to keep the belligerent Dardic population under control and to bring the region under the bstan pa phyi dar stod lugs fold.

Nyi ma mgon’s takeover of the lands that eventually formed the skor assigned to IDe gtsug mgon, is not dealt with in the sources. His location was more peripheral to India, and Nyi ma mgon may have had to contend the regions composing it with Mon pa political realities. The reason for the absence of a historical record in the Tibetan literature is nowhere found. It is possible that Pi ti and Khu nu were somewhat attached to Gu ge and the conquest of the latter may have brought the consequence that these regions passed under Nyi ma mgon. The same case may be made for Zangs dkar, which may have followed the fate of La dwags. But, if this was the case, all these regions were dismembered from their previous political positions in order to form a big enough share of dominions to be ruled by one of the Tod kyi mgon gsum. Whereas the literature is clear enough in identifying in Tho ling the capital of the skor of Gu ge Pu hrang, and Shel/Nyar ma as the capital of the skor of La dwags, no trace is preserved concerning the capital of IDe gtsug mgon’s division.

Again, no clues are given on the relations between the three skor, only the state of the art of their secular and religious conditions in limited cases.

Meant to give a share of power to each of Nyi ma mgon’s sons, events led eventually to the opposite: their reunification under the skor of Gu ge Pu hrang.27 Most sources classify the territories originally allotted to IDe gtsug mgon’s skor as part of bKra shis mgon’s dominions, which indicates that they were incorporated into the division of Gu ge Pu hrang. Also, the royal line of Gu ge ended up ruling in La dwags (see above n. 28), which led to the actual control of the three skor under a single governance.

The inevitable reunion of the three skor brought as consequence the adoption of another system of rulership, characterised by the division of tasks and power among members of the same branch of the royal family, who engaged in handling different aspects of rulership side by side (on the code of laws promulgated by Ye shes ‘od see Vitali 1996: 209–231). Within the hierarchy at court, the division of power among members of the royal family, established by Ye shes ‘od, attributed to him a superior status over his kins.28

27 La dwags rgyal rabs (43,3–9) is vague in its treatment of the royal lineage stemming from bzsal gyi mgon, for it does not do more than giving names to its rulers which are titles and thus not useful for an identification. Other sources point towards the control of the region by the successive members of the Gu ge Pu hrang royal house until the Dardic resurgence under Utpala (see below n. 35). The activities of the Gu ge Pu hrang dynasty that associated them with rulership in La dwags can be summarised as follows:

• It was Ye shes ‘od who founded Nyar ma gtsug lag khang (Rin chen bzang po’i rnam thar ‘bring po 89,1–2), rather than any of the La dwags rulers mentioned in La dwags rgyal rabs.
• Nyar ma was made the centre of the mNga’ ris skor gsum dynasty in La dwags.
• IHa Id e built his sku mkhar and a temple at Shel (mNga’ ris rgyal rabs; Tibetan text in Vitali 1996: 61,13–14, translation ibid.: 115).
• IDe Id e founded dpJe thub (mNga’ ris rgyal rabs Tibetan text ibid.: 61,18–19, translation ibid.: 115).
• rTse Id e was the mNga’ ris skor gsum ruler who suppressed a Dardic attempt to severe links with the other skor-s of the kingdom (mNga’ ris rgyal rabs Tibetan text ibid.: 72,13–73,12, translation ibid.: 123–124).
• dBang Id e is mentioned in an A lci inscription as the king exercising control of La dwags with the support of ministers of the ‘Bro clan, the old-time loyalists of the mNga’ ris skor gsum royal house.
• Probably dBang Id e’s son bSod nams rtse, too, controlled La dwags.

28 That Ye shes ‘od stood supreme in the hierarchy of the royal family he himself had delegated to have a share of power transpires from mNga’ ris rgyal rabs, lHa bla ma Ye shes ‘od kyi mnam thar and Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs passim.

An aspect never clarified in the literary material on the mNga’ ris skor gsum dynasty is why none of the two sons of Ye shes ‘od, De ba ra dza and Naga

See Vitali (1996: 284–285, n. 432) for the reference to IDe gtsug mgon as gShegs lde, or the “dead king” in Zangs (dkar) bZang la’i rgyal brgyud kyi dka chags (Dargyay 1987: 23).

26
The sTed kyis mgon gsum’s move towards the “periphery” terminated the grand plan of their father, who did not aim at resuscitating the erstwhile Zhang zhung state, but at recreating the living conditions that he had left behind in dBus gTsang when he moved west to forge his kingdom.

Internal dissent among the three skor, which might have been a cause for the merging of the three divisions, is not mentioned in the historical documents until the coup that assassinated rTse lde and overthrew his legitimate succession (see below at the end of this section).

Whereas Zhang zhung was a case of coexistence of nomadic and sedentary customs, mNga’ ris skor gsum was a kingdom which focused on a sedentary economy and way of life. It is symptomatic that Gangs Ti se, the great core of Zhang zhung on the “heartland”, was not chosen as the supreme capital over the three regional ones of mNga’ ris skor gsum. Equally significant is that the mountain and the lakes on the higher altitude plateau hardly were the theatre of religious practice during bstan pa phyi dar stod lugs. This was not the case in the following periods, for, from rje btsun Mid la and Pa tshab lo tsa ba onwards, Ti se and the lakes regained centrality, but only in religious terms.30

A marked difference exists between the role of Buddhism in lha sras btsan po’s Tibet and the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom. Buddhism in sPu rgyal Bod was not a pacification factor that unified the various forces at play. On the contrary, it provoked bitter enmity and, at the end, the antagonism with the older order was a major reason for the implosion of the sPu rgyal Bod state.

Buddhism in mNga’ ris skor gsum was the factor that unified the people of the kingdom to the extent that no signs are preserved of internal dissent until, eventually, at court towards the end of the 11th century. But it is probable that in the eulogistic vision that is communicated in the literature such episodes have been omitted, except traces of religious discord (e.g. Bon and Sangs rgyas skar rgyal. On the latter see Rin chen bzang po’i rnam thar brin po 86,5–87,4).

Another factor of aggregation in the mNga’ ris skor gsum state was the protection of the kingdom from aggressive neighbours who professed an antagonist religion and had a deeply different culture.

However, ethnic lines were a factor of disgregation in the unity of mNga’ ris. The assimilation of the indigenous groups into Gu ge was less dramatic than in La dwags. This was due to a more focused presence of the sPu rgyal Bod administration during its existence than in La dwags. In the days of Nyi ma mgon, the La dwags Dard were less assimilated to the Tibetan culture than the Gu ge Zhang zhung pa.

The centralisation of power was not antagonised. No signs exist that the loss of the skor of lDe gtsug mgon and eventually the one of dPal gyi mgon were imputable to internal classes. The one case of infighting between Nyi ma mgon and a relative of his was the conflict with his brother Khri bKra shis brTsegs pa dpal.31 The reason for the emnity is nowhere given in the sources, but it probably was the definition of the frontiers between the two brothers’ possessions.

Another episode of fratricide warfare was the advance of an army sent by Kho re, Ye shes ‘od’s brother who succeeded him on the secular throne of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom, as far as Tshong ‘dus mgur mo.31 Given the old strife between Nyi ma mgon and bKra

30 See an assessment see, for instance, (ibid: 52,12–13) which says that rje btsun Mid la was accompanied on his journey to Ti se by Ras chung pa rDo rje grags pa (1084–1161). They met first in that year.

31 The battle field in the war between sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon and Khri bKra shis brTsegs pa dpal was the area of Nyang smad where Zhwa lu is also situated. This fact proves that the mNga’ ris skor gsum state, after accomplishing the conquest of his dominions, intruded deep in his brother’s territory. The outcome of the war is nowhere mentioned and, given the absence of a trace of annexation of gTsang into mNga’ ris skor gsum, it is probable that Nyi ma mgon’s troops did not accomplish a steady takeover. However, it is likely that the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom held a right of extracting tribute from areas of Central Tibet (see below n. 33).

Zhwa lu lo rgyus (18,11–14) reads: “Since this one (i.e. lCe sTag gi rgyal mtshan) fought like a tiger against the troops of the people from Gu ge and Cog la, who had attacked rgyal po bKra shis [brTsegs pa] dpal, the descendant of mnga’ bdag Ra [pa can], and painted a tiger on his horse flag, he became known as lCe sTag gi rgyal mtshan (the “one who bears the tiger banner”).

31 mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (Tibetan text in Vitali 1996: 61,1–2; translation ibid.: 114):
shis brTseg pa dpal that mobilised members of the IChoe clan in the region of Zhwa lu, it seems that there was a recrudescence in the fratricide animosity between the two royal houses in the sensitive area of Nyang smad.

The collection of gold from dBu gTsang dating to over a century after the conflict between Nyi ma mgon and bKa’ shis brTseg pa dpal may be a sign that the sTod mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom was having some rights over Central Tibet in the days of Byang chub ’od.\(^{32}\) It reads as a historical adaptation to the legend of Ye shes ’od’s captivity in the hands of the Gar log, a fact dismissed by the most reliable sources on the history of Upper West Tibet, but the intrinsic reliability of a tax collection remains intact. According to this account, several areas of Central Tibet were subject to pay taxes to mNga’ ris skor gsum.

Prosperity in the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom was put at the service of the master plan of its royal house which left a major mark on the history of Tibet. This was achieved by means of a combination of factors:

- suitable living conditions,
- trade,
- taxes on the products of both the higher and lower land that transited across the “periphery”,
- agriculture as the most suited economic resource given the morphology of the territories, and
- gold.

Like the end of the legitimate sPu rgyal dynasty, Central Asian empires and many states around the world and at all times, the great period of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom reached a terminal point owing to its implosion. The 1080s internecine struggle that resulted in the assassination of rTse lde and the coup to the mNga’ ris skor gsum throne marked its decadence. The situation of instability precipitated further after dBang lde, an illegitimate ruler who was a member of the royal family, sat on the throne. A vendetta eliminated the usurper and, in retaliation, further capital punishments were meted out to rTse lde’s loyalists. The feud sealed the fate of one of the most brilliant phases in the history of Tibet.\(^{31}\)

In the meantime, a minimum of thriving continued for a short while due to some contributions to religion by dBang lde’s son, bSod nams rtsi, but away from the centre of the kingdom. bsTan pa phyi dar stod lugs was over.

‘Brog pa Fluid Control: a Moderate Return of the “Heartland”

Following the reduction in importance of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom, the old stability of the region was weakened by the resurgence of assertive non-Tibetan tribal groups and by warfare. Ethnic ambitions went hand in hand with personal ambitions to rule and the wish to control trade and resources. A change in the political situation of mNga’ ris stod took place during the first half of the 12th century with the Dard Utpala from La dwags.\(^{34}\) Significantly, it did not occur in

\[^{31}\text{On this event and the subsequent developments see mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (Tibetan text in Vitali 1996: 74.9–75.11, translation ibid.: 125–126). For an assessment of the coup and the dynastic consequences that brought to the end of the golden period in mNga’ ris skor gsum see Vitali (ibid.: 335–345).}\]

\[^{32}\text{mkhas pa lDe’u chos’ byung has a controversial account concerning Byang chub ’od’s quest for gold in dBu gTsang, which I read as a collection of taxes in the precious metal (ibid.: 392.17–21): “When the men of dBu gTsang went upwards (to Central Tibet), there were no main and branch communities, districts, divisions or separate traditions. When btsad po lha bla ma (Byang chub ’od) came from sPu rangs to collect gold, the various taxation areas and districts were partitioned. ’Dre tsho (“the ’Dre division”) was established [with its centre at] Tag nag Bye tshang. Tshong tsho was established [with its centre at] Myang ro ‘Dre brdas. Lo tsho was established [with its centre at] rGyan gong Ri phug. rBa tsho was established [with its centre at] dBu rag. Rag tsho was created [with its centre at] dGe rgyal. The Klu mes [division] was established [with its centre at] Kho chu (Khwa chu?). The Sum pa [and] Klu mes [division] was established later [than the others]. Their division was known as “Bring”.}\]

\[^{34}\text{Departing from his power base of La dwags stod and gsham, Utpala embarked upon the conquest of a large number of regions in Upper West Tibet from sBal ti and Nyung ti (on the north south axis) and as far in the east as Pu hrang and Glo bo. La dwags rgyal rabs (33.10–19) reads: “His son [i.e. successor] was Iha chen Ut pa la. During his reign, this king gathered the troops of La}\]
the wake of a second Qarakhanid invasion after the first one that affected mNga’ ris skor gsum some one hundred years before, in 1037.\textsuperscript{35} The invasion by these Muslim people from Kashgar had devastating effects but did not alter the new reality of the regions in the west.

The subsequent split of Gu ge into lHo stod and Byang ngos, run by separate rulers, was another sign of protracted divisionism that resulted in a new strife at court, which, however, did not affect the smooth balance of things within the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom. It was characterised by peaceful coexistence like in the glorious days of mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom, during which the three divisions were under a single power. Gu ge lHo stod and Byang ngos had separate governance but no inimical relations. They amounted to rivalries between two queens who expected separate rule.\textsuperscript{36}

Besides the decline of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom following the coup d’etat at the court of Gu ge, the events in the “heartland” and the “periphery” that marked the period were:

\begin{itemize}
  \item a regained centrality of Byang thang, which took place in the southern stretches of the “heartland”, owing to
  \item the influx of the Men Zhang ‘bro g pa-s, who went to settle in the territories of Pra dum and Bar yang.
\end{itemize}

The relocation engendered a switch in the political balance. Preeminence was lost to mNga’ ris stod, for the Men Zhang brought the centre stage of the political scene to mNga’ ris bar.\textsuperscript{37} The spread of Men Zhang pa activity extended from Pra dum and Bar yang into the adjoining valleys at the “periphery”.\textsuperscript{38}

In the wake of a second Qarakhanid invasion after the first one that affected mNga’ ris skor gsum some one hundred years before, in 1037.\textsuperscript{35} The invasion by these Muslim people from Kashgar had devastating effects but did not alter the new reality of the regions in the west.

The subsequent split of Gu ge into lHo stod and Byang ngos, run by separate rulers, was another sign of protracted divisionism that resulted in a new strife at court, which, however, did not affect the smooth balance of things within the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom. It was characterised by peaceful coexistence like in the glorious days of mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom, during which the three divisions were under a single power. Gu ge lHo stod and Byang ngos had separate governance but no inimical relations. They amounted to rivalries between two queens who expected separate rule.\textsuperscript{36}

Besides the decline of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom following the coup d’etat at the court of Gu ge, the events in the “heartland” and the “periphery” that marked the period were:

\begin{itemize}
  \item a regained centrality of Byang thang, which took place in the southern stretches of the “heartland”, owing to
  \item the influx of the Men Zhang ‘bro g pa-s, who went to settle in the territories of Pra dum and Bar yang.
\end{itemize}

The relocation engendered a switch in the political balance. Preeminence was lost to mNga’ ris stod, for the Men Zhang brought the centre stage of the political scene to mNga’ ris bar.\textsuperscript{37} The spread of Men Zhang pa activity extended from Pra dum and Bar yang into the adjoining valleys at the “periphery”.\textsuperscript{38}

In the wake of a second Qarakhanid invasion after the first one that affected mNga’ ris skor gsum some one hundred years before, in 1037.\textsuperscript{35} The invasion by these Muslim people from Kashgar had devastating effects but did not alter the new reality of the regions in the west.

The subsequent split of Gu ge into lHo stod and Byang ngos, run by separate rulers, was another sign of protracted divisionism that resulted in a new strife at court, which, however, did not affect the smooth balance of things within the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom. It was characterised by peaceful coexistence like in the glorious days of mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom, during which the three divisions were under a single power. Gu ge lHo stod and Byang ngos had separate governance but no inimical relations. They amounted to rivalries between two queens who expected separate rule.\textsuperscript{36}
Nomadic life style gave the Men Zhang conditions of mobility absent in the agricultural world of the mNga' ris “periphery” and enabled them to roam and occupy lands within their reach. The location of their settlements in southern Byang thang gave them the chance to spread into the “peripheral” valleys. In different stages during the 12th century, they went to occupy the territorial arc at the “periphery”, composed by Glo bo, where they played a prominent role, and Dol po (mNga’ ris bar). Splinters of the clan were located farther west towards Sê mi (Chos legs kyi rnam thar f.30a.5–f.30b.1). They also settled in areas of Mang yul Gung thang (mNga’ ris smad),39 thus recreating on a small scale the 'brog pa-s/agriculturists blend of the erstwhile Zhang zhung kingdom. The other major event of the period was:

- an influx from Byang thang into mNga’ ris bar, but with a different transfer pattern and a circumscribed destination in the mNga’ ris bar “periphery”.

The Ya ngal family moved from gTsang stod into Glo bo perhaps slightly before the Men Zhang’s migration and concentrated first on Mustang (early 12th century) and then contiguous Dol po (13th century);40

One more historical phenomenon during the period should not be neglected:

- a renewed occupation phase of holy sites in the wider expanse of the mNga’ ris region was engendered from the late 12th century by bKa’ brgyud hermits.

Long after Gyer spungs Nang bzher lod po’s penance, the bKa’ brgyud pa school undertook the diffusion of hermit practice in the footsteps of rje btsun Mid la.

Although the pattern of territorial diffusion adopted by the bKa’ brgyud pa somewhat echoed the ways that transpire from Bon po sources about the hermits of ancient Zhang zhung, their frequentation of secluded retreats occurred in a different manner. The bKa’ brgyud ri pa-s went for the hardship of solitary practice during the better seasons of the year. Owing to the harshness of weather, many of them spent winters in the more bearable conditions of the lower altitude valleys.

During these interludes, they did not disdain from ingratiating the local potentates. Hence, in addition to religious practice, the bKa’ brgyud pa in mNga’ ris established influential diplomatic ties with the local headmen but did not attempt to exercise a direct control over the lands in the “heartland” and the “periphery”. However, new significant political ties introduced a novel state of affairs in the wider region (see the next section).

Religious Influence Superseded: The Foreign Hegemony in mNga’ ris

- ‘Bri gung’s secularism

Support to the school, negotiated by the ‘Bri gung pa in a meeting with Jing gir rgyal po’s Mongols, sealed their territorial control over mNga’ ris stod.41 The event was a turning point in Tibetan history, inasmuch as, from then on and throughout the centuries, religious schools surged to play a direct role over secular affairs. The political patronage ensuing from this agreement introduced a new secularism in the highlands, which, in the long run, enforced religious schools to a position of authority that impinged on the management of political matters at large.

The ‘Bri gung pa’s covenant with the Mongols was established a few decades before the Hor princes—one of them—accorded their famous “protection” to noble families of Tibet and the religious schools, supported by these aristocrats, to which they belonged.42

39 The association of the Men Zhang with Gung thang led them to become one of the four principal communities (mi sde sgo bzhis) of the area, which formed the ethnic and territorial basis of mNga’ ris smad. The mi sde sgo bzhis (Chos legs kyi rnam thar f.9a2–f.9a3) were Gungthang, Nub ri, Mang yul sKyi drong and the Men Zhang rGya tshang pa, the root communities of the brgya tsho bku gsum (Gung thang gdung rabs 99,15–17). The territory of the mi sde sgo bzhis was also known as I Ho Nub Gung gsum (Chos legs kyi rnam thar f.9a3), composed by Mang yul (I Ho), Nub ris and the ‘brog po lands in Byang (Nub) and Gung thang (Gung).

40 See Ya ngal gdung rabs (f.34a3–f.34b1 and f.35a1–2). The Ya ngal clan’s propagation of Bon had religious repercussions, for it brought a reinvigorated practice of Bon according to a reformed Zhang zhung snyan rgyud discipline. The tradition passed from keeping its older hermit features to novel monastic connotations in lower Glo bo, and in Dol po subsequently.

The foundation of bSam gling by Yang ston rGyal mtshan rin chen marked the Ya ngal clan’s religious takeover of Dol po in the name of Zhang zhung snyan rgyud (Zhang zhung snyan rgyud bla ma’i rnam thar 91,4–93,3).

41 On ‘Bri gung gling pa’s mission to the border of the “ocean of sand” (the Tarim Basin) in order to meet Jing gir’s Mongols who had just taken over South Turkestan see ‘Bri gung gling Shes rab ’byung gnas kyi rnam thar (23,3–24,2) and Vitali (1996: 414–416 and n. 687). Shes rab ‘byung gnas was the earliest Tibetan recorded in the sources to have come into contact with the sTod Hor. His meeting with them led to the earliest case of Mongol patronage of a Tibetan temple, Kha char lha khang, originally founded in the year of the monkey 996 by Khor re and I Ha ldé with different degrees of personal involvement.

Benefitting of the support of the sTod Hor, the ‘Bri gung pa exercised authority over secular matters, too, for more than half a century (ca. 1219 to 1290) until the catastrophe of the sack of ‘Bri gung in the latter year.

42 With Mo ’gor rgyal po’s 1250 reform, each one of the Tibetan aristocratic families traditionally controlling areas and estates in Central Tibet were forced to pay tribute to one or another Mongol prince in exchange for protection and favours, including that of living life at court, a burden and a privilege at the
Hor pa patronage described in the sources as a Bodhisatvic preoccupation was, rather, a form of control over the most influential people of Tibet. The Mongol headmen availed themselves of the Tibetan aristocrats’ appanages, mainly in terms of tribute coming from their estates, in exchange of empowerment in favour of the noble families.

In the time of their meeting with Jing gir rgyal po’s representatives and during the successive quarters of the 13th century until around 1280, the ‘Bri gung pa were especially strong in Pu hrang.43 Their presence for hermit purposes in the area of the great Mountain and the Lakes (Pu hrang stod),44 and at the local court (Pu hrang smad), where they were active, favoured a transfer of land control beyond the limits of the region. The salient historical event marking the same time. It was protection at a price, the reward for paying heavy taxes to the Mongol princes being the recognition of these aristocratic families’ authority over the lands from which this taxation came.

Sa pan’s famous letter to the Tibetan chieftains contains a number of caveats, recommendations and orders of a secular nature and no religious advice (see A myes zhabs, Sa skya pandi ‘i rnam thar: 135,11–140,7). The way it is formulated indeed gives the impression that he is writing from a Mongol perspective so much so that one wonders whether it was actually drafted by him or whether he was passing on the orders and recommendations of his overlords.

In the letter Sa pan urges Tibetans to pay taxes to the Mongols. This is a direct sign that, rather than protection to the main families of the Snowland, it was a matter of Mongol exploitation of their subjects, but the association with a Mongol prince was at the same time a guarantee of control over their estates.

43 The support that the ‘Bri gung pa received from the local potentates (those of Gu ge, Pu hrang and Ya rtse) had already steered them to a position of great standing in the region during the years 1191–1219 that fell before the covenant with Jing gir’s Mongols.

The establishment of the ‘Bri gung ri po-s at Ti se on stable bases from 1191 onwards that reached an institutional peak with the appointment of a rdor ‘dzin in 1215 allowed the ‘Bri gung pa to go a step forward. It set the preconditional requirement that powerful interlocutors who had prominently come on the forefront of those Asian lands, of which Upper West Tibet was part. ‘Bri gung gling pa’s 1219 expedition would have not been possible without the decades of ties that his school had been able to establish with Gu ge, Pu hrang and Ya rtse.

44 The ‘Bri gung grub thob chen po Seng ge ye shes meditated for three years at Ti se Shel’ dra and met rGod tshang pa at that time. Seng ge ye shes was given bcu gsum gtan gling and Pu hrang rGrod khung by the Pu hrang kings sTag tsha and A tig. Afterwards, he dwelled for three years at lCags ye Ye shes rdzong (‘Bri gung Ti se lo rgyus: f.20b5–f.21a1). He then went to Dol po and founded Shes dgon pa, well known to western visitors.

‘Bri gung gling pa, despite the claims in his biography that he was an ardent meditator, went beyond strict spiritual concerns emphasised in his biography. He was the ambassador of ‘Bri gung, the man with the task of strengthening the existing links with local powers and creating new ones, and also easing the relations Ghu ya sgang pa, the rdor ‘dzin head of the school’s ri po-s, entertained locally.

Seng ge ye shes had a hermit disposition, although he did not disdain to care for the secular side, too. He was an dBus pa, but was bound to remain in sTod, if not definitively, at least semi-]permanently.

escalation of the ‘Bri gung pa’s political influence was that sTag tsha Khris bar’s son, dNgos grub mgon, became the ruler of La dwags after he had held the same position in Pu hrang during the years of his father’s rule.45 They all were ‘Bri gung pa loyalists.

- The key dominions of the Yuan/Sa skya alliance in the “heartland” and the “periphery”

The axis of power was switched from the rest of mNga’ ris to mNga’ ris smad soon before the Sa skya pa’s deadly blow inflicted upon the ‘Bri gung pa with the 1290 gling log. The ‘Bri gung pa and their Phag mo gru pa allies lost mNga’ ris stod. It was taken over by the Sa skya pa by treachery,46 and authority over the mNga’ ris “periphery” at large was entrusted to their feudatories, among them the Gung thang Khab pa.

The Yuan/Sa skya pa dominance of Tibet brought about a new state of political affairs in the valleys of the mNga’ ris “periphery”. This was a single dominance of a vast tract of the valleys opening towards the Himalayan range. The locations of the glang gi las thabs bcu gsum, established during the late 13th century by the Gung thang Khab pa are indicative of the politically sensitive areas where the Yuan/Sa skya authority felt it necessary to exercise strict control. The Gung thang ruler, ‘Bum lde mgon, built these forts or took hold of them,47 collectively known under that name, after formal delegation

43 mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (Tibetan text in Vitali 1996: 69,13–18 and 70,12, translation ibid: 121 and 122) provides evidence that sTag tsha left the throne to his elder son dNgos grub mgon in the years between 1208 and 1215. The latter had already been coopted to the throne by 1208, for gNyos lHa nang po’i rnam thar (94,18–95,4) has a reference to more than one Pu hrang ra dzin in that year. dNgos grub mgon left the Pu hrang throne to his younger brother rNam lde mgon (aka A tig or A tig sman) at an unspecified time between 1208 and 1215, for ‘Bri gung Ti se lo rgyus holds that rNam lde mgon was the Pu hrang, jo bo in the latter year.

Lo dwags rgyal rabs (44,8–13) says that a king of Mar yul who patronized the ‘Bri gung pa in the same period was dNgos grub.

44 ‘Bri gung Ti se lo rgyus (l.27b6–l.28a2) also mentions dNgos grub mgon as the king of Mar yul. The text adds that he supported the ‘Bri gung ri po-s at Ti se in wood pig 1215 together with the Pu hrang jo bo-s, sTag tsha Khris bar and gNam lde mgon. Hence, by 1215 dNgos grub mgon’s enthronement on the La dwags throne had already taken place.

45 Sometime after 1276 the governor of mNga’ ris stod (namely the gnam sa dpa’i shi) was assinated by order of ‘gro mgon ‘Phags pa in order to transfer the control of Upper West Tibet from the ‘Bri gung pa/Phag mo gru pa alliance to the Sa skya pa (Si tu bka’ chems in Rlangs Po ti bse ru 114,1–8).

46 Records of the foundation of most castles included in the glang gi las thabs bcu gsum are not available, so that this state of the matters does not allow to ascertain whether they were built during the reign of ‘Bum lde mgon. At least one of them dates back to centuries before, which shows that ‘Bum lde mgon’s was a takeover of preexisting structures and probably an edification phase, too. Kho char dkar chag (f.5b = p. 41,1–2) reads: “Hence, the king (i.e.
by his cousin ‘gro mgon ‘Phags pa over the territories where they stood. Of the glang gi las thabs bcu gsum (Gung thang gdung rabs 108,8–109,1), ten were in mNga’ ris. This is indicative of the construction date of Kha char.

Kho re), having followed the advice previously [given to him by his bla ma], built the upper and lower castle at dKar dung along with the gtsug lag khang known as gSer mkhar”. These events took place in the year of the monkey 996, the known gtsug lag khang the upper and lower castle at dKar dung along with the construction of mNga’ ris stod. The event gave way to ‘Bum lde mgon’s control of the region from the fort dKar dum (Si tu bka’ chems in Rlangs Po ti bse ru 113,11–114,8).

The creation of the glang gi las thabs bcu gsum needs a closer scrutiny. Thirteen were the lands in which ‘Bum lde mgon established his control by an equal number of forts, but Gung thang gdung rabs adds another land and another fort at Chu dbar, the great bKa’ brgyud hermitage of Mid la ras pa’s fame, north of the present-day Nepal border.

The process that led to the constitution of the glang gi las thabs bcu gsum was completed in a span of more than ten years from 1267 to ca. 1280. Some Men Zhang groups were coopted into Gung thang’s brgya mtsho bcu gsum which date to 1267–1268 (Gung thang gdung rabs 99,15–100,1).

The concept behind the definition glang gi las thabs bcu gsum needs a careful examination. Thirteen were the lands in which ‘Bum lde mgon established his control by an equal number of forts, but Gung thang gdung rabs adds another land and another fort at Chu dbar, the great bKa’ brgyud hermitage of Mid la ras pa’s fame, north of the present-day Nepal border.

The construction of a fort in Dol po may have been induced by the strategical reason to keep control over the ya rtse inimical neighbour but also by the fact that, owing to its harsh terrain, it would have made a Gung thang pa prompt intervention difficult in case of military necessity.
mNga’ris bar’s Surge to Predominance

Economic control out of Byang thang and into the valleys around it, which favoured exchanges of goods with the lower lands in the south, was a main cause for discord between principalities occupying valleys at the “periphery”. Profit from commerce and the charge of tolls on transiting merchandise triggered these disputes for the control over trade routes to Mon yul and the Indian provinces.

Tibet’s relations between the Byang thang “heartland” and the valleys of mNga’ris “periphery” was a reverse case from Inner Central Asia. In the latter region, nomads resorted, more commonly than not, to looting and extortions of sedentary populations. In Tibet, the Byang thang pa hardly had recourse to similar acts, with the exception of the internecine warfare between the Men Zhang kins from southern Byang thang and Mustang, a status of belligerence induced by the Glo pa turned sedentary rather than the nomads.51

In line with what has been said above, fratricide warfare between the nomads of southern Byang thang and Glo bo, who were close kins, was not so much for the control of the steppe land but of the commercial tracks. The route in Mustang gave the easiest access to trade from the north with the lowlands in the south. The Mustang dynasty went all out to eliminate its ‘brog pa’ kins from southern Byang thang and other relatives settled within the boundaries of the area they inhabited, to arrogate to themselves unconditional control of the resources of Byang thang and the trade towards India.

Hardly any principalities settled in the mNga’ris “periphery” attempted to control areas of Byang thang, being more content to make war to other principalities, and not so much to administer the nomadic products but their trade.52

Contrary to the historical trends of the Inner Asia nomads, internal antagonism, a feature typical of the nomadic world and less common to sedentary cultures, was a strategy pursued by the ‘brog pa’-s who had turned sedentary. Rarely it affected groups of the Men Zhang and the gTso tsho ba, but factionalism was not all the time absent in the relations between these two groups of nomads that led to search for alliances with members of their respective antagonist camps.53

Cohesion became improbable when the Glo pa, after the adoption of a more sedentary way of life, showed an assertiveness comparable to the fierce nomads of Inner Central Asia.54 Their militaristic inclination brought them to a collision route against their Men Zhang and gTso tsho ba relatives, hardly keen to be submitted by anyone.

51 The campaigns waged against groups of their nomads’ kins by the kings of Mustang who succeeded one another on its throne and led the kingdom to unsurpassed splendour (A ma dpal, A mgon bzang po and bKra shis mgon) are listed here in chronological order:
- takeover of the control of the passes leading to India from Dol po, Gu ge and Pu hrang (before 1427);
- takeover of communities of southern Byang thang away from Mar yul (1435);
- takeover of areas in Se ri and unspecified localities in Dol po (?);
- defeat of the ‘Phred mkhar ba (1437);
- eviction of an army of the Byang pa from Wa (1437);
- relocation of the skye skya sngan pa to Glo smad along the frontier with the lowlands (1437);
- destruction of the last vestiges of the Glo bo Zhang pa sNa tshags pa (1441);
- defeated of the Hor, called by the Glo pa against the gTso tsho ba (1444);
- betrayal and assassination of the gTso tsho ba chieftain (1445).

52 In the trade between the Byang thang “heartland” and the lowlands giving way to the Gangetic plain, the biggest revenues were from the taxes levied on salt along the route from Mustang to Mu khum (rDzong and Mukhtinath) (Chos legs kyi mam thar f.13b5–14a,5). Trade on the route that passed from Dol po to rDzong dkar (Jomsom) gave lower revenues. To this income one should add the earnings gained by those controlling trade in the opposite direction. They amounted to bartering salt for rice and various grains sold by them in the highlands for a profit. Hence, among all lands inhabited by the Men Zhang clans, control of Mustang, the easiest land to cross, was most valued.

53 The striking instance of internal antagonism among the southern Byang thang nomads was the 1375 revolt of the gTso tsho ba against the Men Zhang after the latter’s coup that led them to usurp the throne of Gung thang temporarily.

Due to the enfeeblement of their Sa skya pa overlords after ta’i si tu Byang byub rgyal mtshan’s takeover of Sa skya and the downfall of the Yuan dynasty, the Gung thang Khab pa were unable to avoid the coup and were saved by the intervention of the gTso tsho ba. The coup turned out to be the occasion for a fight for predominance among the clans of southern Byang thang.

The gTso tsho ba saw in their Men Zhang sNa tshags pa kins’ placing the infant bSod nams lde on the Gung thang throne the ultimate act of illegality, which caused their rebellion against them (Chos legs kyi mam thar f.13b5—14a,5). The gTso tsho ba defeated the Men Zhang, and the Sa skya pa heir apparent to the Gung thang throne was reinstated. The Men Zhang, despite the defeat, continued to exercise a prominent role in mNga’ris bar and mNga’ris smad.

The opportunity that motivated the Men Zhang to go for the coup and take the Gung thang throne was that a princess of the Men Zhang sNa tshags pa married the Gung thang king Phun tshogs lde (r. from 1365). In 1370, she bore the Men Zhang child, bSod nams lde. He was second in line of succession to the throne and could bypass his elder step-brother mChog grub lde, son of the senior queen and Sa skya pa heir apparent. In 1371 a revolt ensued, Phun tshogs lde was assassinated and the throne was usurped, after which the Men Zhang ruled Gung thang for five years (Gung thang gdung rabs 117,18—118,1).

54 Warfare between Glo bo and other lands of the mNga’ris “periphery”:
- takeover of the control of the passes leading to India from Dol po, Gu ge and Pu hrang;
- dispossessing of territories from the control of Gu ge;
- A mgon bzang po’s troops blocked in their advance to Sle mi due to Pu hrang’s protection extended to some gTso tsho ba fleeing;
- the passage of Pu hrang again under the jurisdiction of Mustang (temporary);
- Glo bo defeated by Gung thang;
- Pu hrang invaded and annexed by Glo bo.
Aware of the mobility of ‘brog pa’ reactions, the Glo pa realised that one way to grant stability to their kingdom was to suppress their Men Zhang and gTsos tsho kins, which they achieved with ruthless cruelty.\(^55\)

The ‘brog pa’-s, given their less regimented social life and kinship structure were less respectful of the established power and readier to topple the headmen in charge. This was understood by Glo bo’s royal family, which accomplished to eliminate every possible competition by their kins, mindful of the coup staged by the Men Zhang to the Gung thang throne around the last quarter of the 14th century (see above n. 54).

Glo pa antagonism towards its rivals was brought to a wider stage. Mustang fought against principalities outside the mNga’ ris region. They engaged opponents from Mon pa lands in the south and other rivals from farther away, such as La stod IHo and Byang.\(^56\)

\(^55\) The confrontation between Glo bo and groups of ‘brog pa’-s of southern Byang thang escalated to one of its last bloody act in 1445. Playing the card of treason, Mustang betrayed the gTsos tsho ba, killing and torturing their chieftains on a single circumstance. Chos legs kyi rnam thar (f.27a–f.28a3): “On that occasion, Gung thang was unable to use its strength, so it was decided to opt for a peaceful settlement. The troops of Glo bo withdrew. When (f.27b) people of the gTsos tsho ba settlements intruded into Gro shod during early summer, drung chen A mgon and his brother thought: ‘earlier the Khab pa and the gTsos tsho ba, the chiefs and their servants, created much trouble together. If we do not negotiate with them, no one can tell what will happen in the future’. They decided to negotiate with the gTsos tsho ba. They told the gTsos tsho ba: ‘There are many reasons why we and [you] gTsos tsho ba must hold talks. Come with [your] headmen [to discuss them],’ and accordingly [gTsos tsho] Rig ‘dzin ‘bum led [the delegation of] about ten headmen together with their assistants and went to Glo bo. At that time drung chen A mgon remained behind because he went to see the dmag dpun (i.e. A mo gha). (His) tsha bo (A mgon’s maternal nephew), who was not far [from the gathering place], went down [to the meeting]. He said: ‘Is Byi wa mkhar’s rotten smell still around’? Realising that nothing good would ensue, [Rig ‘dzin ‘bum] became like a frog in a pot. No way-out was left. Then, not many days after, many butchers were each given a task. Rig ‘dzin ‘bum and his brother; Ar dpun, a chief from my own (i.e Chos legs’i) household; one called dpun rGyal; five notables; and Rig ‘dzin ‘bum’s minister (f.28a) dge bsnyen dpal zis (spelled so) were murdered. Moreover, the eyes of five or six chieftains were taken out. Concomitantly, the Glo [pa] troops killed a younger brother of Rig ‘dzin ‘bum, who came to rescue them from outside [the meeting]. The eyes of a phu bo (“elder brother”, i.e. a cousin of Chos legs) from my phyi tshang (lit. “external nest”, i.e. “the maternal line of the family”) and two or three other people were taken out. They took away all these men’s horses that were there. The various communities, the gNyers pa tsho lnga and each of the most valiant chiefs of Glo bo shared nyang meat”.

\(^56\) Warfare between Glo bo and lands beyond mNga’ ris:
- inroad into the Kathmandu valley;
- military success at gNyans nam;
- defeat of La stod IHo troops;
- campaign against unspecified localities in Mon yul and Ko phang;
- warfare against unidentified Mon pa;
- strife between Mustang and the people called gTsang Nyang rdzong pa;

As for mNga’ ris, Glo bo’s militaristic dominance brought the kingdom to clash in the valleys at the “periphery” both in the east and the west.\(^57\) In the east, the long-term conditions of belligerence against Gung thang did not modify the political equilibrium between the two power houses of the period. In the west, on the contrary, Glo pa campaigns managed to severe the old ties that linked Pu hrang to Gu ge.\(^58\) The consequence was that Pu hrang was ever since in the religious sphere of the Ngor pa school,\(^59\) which had its basis in

\(^57\) Signs of confrontation between the various principalities during the 15th century were the non-infrequent marriage alliances, a testimony of tense relations that were counteracted, in most cases with little success, with giving out their princesses to the rivals. Especially the repercussions of matrimonial alliances in mNga’ ris during the period of Glo bo’s maximum splendour were not always of mutual benefit. Regional powers fought despite being related by marriage. That of A mgon bzang po is a case in point. Close to the age at which the lha sras btsan po-s used to wed, A mgon bzang po was given the sister of Phun thogs Ile, the king of Gu ge, as consort (Blo bo rgyal rabs mu thi’i phreng mdzes 15,9). Matrimonial bonds between the royal families of inimical Gu ge and Glo bo were renewed when a princess from the former kingdom married the Glo bo king A seng rDo rje brtan pa in the third quarter of the 15th century (rgod thang ras pa sNa tshogs rang grol, gTsang snyon gyi rnam thar 153,6). These ties did not prevent the countries to keep entertaining a mutual antagonistic policy.

If a comparison is made with the past, no trace of land appannage to the queens appears in the documents describing these diplomatic activities, unlike the custom of allotting lands to these ladies that existed in the time of sPu rgyal Bod (see above n. 2).

\(^58\) In order to obtain fundamental advancements to the fortunes of Glo bo, A ma dpal went on a collision route with Gu ge and was able to break the century old ties that linked the latter land to Pu hrang. Ngod chen gyi rnam thar (537,3) is apologetical in celebrating A ma dpal’s lucrative trade with the neighbouring countries by means of setting up barter marts in Dol po, Gu ge and Pu hrang. But the biography omits that he made these achievements with ruthless persecution of anyone trying to obstacle his plans.

Blo bo rgyal rabs mu thi’i phreng mdzes (13,1–2) is crucial in its assertions that A ma dpal wiped out all possible opposition, for he carried out purges in Gu ge, Pu hrang and Mar yul.

\(^59\) Breaking his stay in Mustang, Ngod chen Kun dga’ bzang po (1382–1456) paid a visit to Pu hrang in late 1436 and the beginning of the following year (Vitali 1996: 391 and n. 631). Here he gave extensive teachings to the local bla ma-s and people, and made offerings at the ancient temple of Kho char.

Since then, Kho char, which had entered Sa skya’s orbit during the Sa skya pa period when it was under the rule of the Pu hrang jo bo bSod nam lde—a disciple of Bu ston Rin chen grub (1290–1346) and Dol po pa Shes rab rgyal mtshan (1392–1361)—was tended by the Mustang royalty.

Glo bo mkhan chen gyi rang rnam and Sangs rgyas phun thogs’s Ngod chen gyi rnam thar concur in saying that, following Ngod chen’s activity in Pu hrang and the support extended to him by the local dignitaries and the king of Gu ge, the Ngor school became prominent in Pu hrang. It would seem then that Pu hrang was not under Glo bo at the time.

Glo bo’s ineritate hostility towards Gu ge Pu hrang went through frequent
An Advance into the Valleys of mNga’ ris from the Outside World

A reversal of tendency slipped, slowly but inescapably, into the mNga’ ris “periphery”. Down the centuries from after bstan pa phyi dar onwards, mNga’ ris from sKyid grong to La dwags and sBal ti witnessed, in different periods, a territorial contraction owing to the advance of the cultures popular in the lands to the south and west, their trade partners. The people of these countries, who practised different religions, saw in the lands of mNga’ ris the extreme limit where they could spread. It was, therefore, both a religious and ethnic advance, a cultural enrichment that, on the other hand, created difficulties to the fragile equilibrium of the mNga’ ris world. The exception to this state of affairs was Ya rtse, an enclave with the distinctive mark that the Tibetan world and its practice of Buddhism coexisted for centuries with the Hinduism of the high Himalayan valleys, but, in the long run, the latter took the upper hand.

In the days of Glo bo’s predominance, La dwags and neighbouring territories were becoming a new mNga’ ris “periphery”. Islam had focused attention on the Himalayan valleys to the east of Kashmir. La dwags and contiguous lands were witnessing a Muslim influx. Little they could do against ravaging Muslim campaigns—mainly by rulers and adventurers from the Northwest but also from beyond—with the purpose of looting. Although sometimes these armies were stationed locally for a while, some of them did not aim at perpetual land control, so that they did not leave long lasting marks on the local way of life, but others entailed drastic political change.61 Sufi mystics and Muslim converts from neighbouring regions came to travel in the Himalayan valleys of the western mNga’ ris “periphery”. The purpose of these endeavours could have not been more different from plunder. The mystics came to preach Islam.62

Sent by their teacher, Tsong kha pa’s disciples returned to their native lands with the important task of spreading the new and vibrant tenets of his doctrine. In line with the capillary policy established by him on the plateau almost ubiquitously, his disciples travelled back to the valleys of the mNga’ ris “periphery”, from where they had gone to Central Tibet for studies.

The presence of those pioneers attracted consent inasmuch as the local potentates in Gu ge, Zangs dkar and La dwags accorded their favours to Tsong kha pa’s disciples. The dignitaries of these lands were keen to welcome back their children who brought to their lands the most advanced doctrine of those days. The acceptance of Tsong kha pa’s creed had a secular side, for it kept the advance of Sufism at bay, restricted, as it was, to fringe areas. The capillary diffusion of the dGe lugs pa teachings in valleys of the mNga’ ris “periphery” provided the embryonic potential for the school to walk the extra step and become, in the long run, the dominant secular power on the plateau. The mNga’ ris “periphery” was one early laboratory for the promotion of the political and religious system that became the dGa’ ldan pho brang theocracy centuries thereafter.

61 La dwags rgyal rabs (in Francke 1992 [1926]: 37,3–7 and 37,12–14) includes Bha ra and Bha gan among the kings ruling in La dwags.
62 The history of the advance of Sufism into the valleys of the Western Himalaya is shrouded in a veil of obscurity. Historical records hardly mention the names of the masters involved in this activity of proselytism and the dates of these events (see Rovillé 1990: 117–119; Sheikh 2010: 81–84; and Zain-ul-Aabedin 2009: 7–14). It seems that these teachings, coming from Kashmir, initially found fertile ground in the more outlying territories of the Himalaya and to La dwags. A first phase of historically documented diffusion concerned sBal ti and possibly Pu rig, and the Sufi teachers who spearheaded it seem to have been Sayyid ’Ali Hamadani and his disciples (ibid.: 9). Princes from Su ru mkhar rtse, who had migrated to Kashmir and converted to Islam, are said to have built Kha che Masjid in Mul be (ibid.: 4).

As for La dwags, the predominant view among scholars is that the earliest masters, who would have reached it roughly at the same time as the diffusion in sBal ti and Pu rig, were the disciples of Sayyid ’Ali Hamadani (d. 1382). Presumably later in the 15th century, another wave of Sufi masters reached sBal ti (and perhaps Pu rig). They were disciples of Sayyid Muhammad Nirsbaksh, who had adopted the precepts of Sayyid ’Ali Hamadani. Indeed, the La dwags Muslims see in his tradition—that of the Nirsbakshi—the most important one in the region. This activity generated a religious fervour: Islam became an accepted religion in the region of the Indus River, with centres in La dwags and the areas to its north-west.
A Last Word
The very nature of the Byang thang “heartland” had centrifugal features that favoured a cultural expansion towards the mNga’ ris “periphery”. It was the geographic, cultural and geopolitical conditions of the “heartland” that led to the decentralisation of its core and permitted the occupation of the valleys at a lower altitude. The regions of the mNga’ ris “periphery” prospered to the extent that the economic, political and religious balance was shifted from the higher to the lower lands. By taking centre stage, the valleys at the “periphery” ended up bearing conflicting relations for supremacy.

The centrifugal conditions that led people—either temporarily and on a small scale (e.g. the bKa’ brgyud hermits) or in a definitive manner and with the migration of entire ethnic groups (e.g. the Ya ngal clan)—were, in any event, significant enough to create ripples in the history of the “heartland” and the “periphery”. The existential nuances between a “heartland” and a “periphery” were so intertwined that they never cracked the intrinsic unity of the two worlds.

This is also proved by the morphological tracts in areas of the West Tibetan world. Although civilisation developed in the ravines of the land,63 Gu ge is a peculiar valley of the “periphery” which is also a “heartland”. The table lands, at the flanks of which the Gu ge ravines took shape in formations that an imaginary geological architect invented in the most visionary way, are the continuation of the Byang thang highlands. The ‘brog-s of Gu ge are located on these table lands and no human settlement or temple has been established there. These territorial conditions favoured a combination of ‘brog pa and zhing pa lives altogether. Gu ge in its peculiar manner is the essence of the lands of the plateau in the west.

From the viewpoint of trends in land control, the territory of mNga’ ris experienced only a single unitary phase in the course of the centuries after the collapse of sPu rgyal Bod until the advent of dGa’ ldan pho brang. It is common place both with Tibetan historians of old and Tibetologists to see sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon’s mNga’ ris skor gsum as a regional kingdom inasmuch as it did not control the entire Tibetan territory. In a simile referring to bstan pa phyi dar, the kingdoms of mNga’ ris skor gsum and Tsong kha are described, respectively, as the “hat” and the “boots” of the plateau (mKhas pa’i dga’ ston 433,11–14). dBus gTsang in the middle was loose with a number of principalities owing to the fact that Khri srong lde btsan did not tighten his belt properly. This prompted Guru Rin po che to come out with that prophecy on the future status of Tibet (mDo smadchos’byung 27,23–27), a beautiful way to represent the political conditions of Tibet in the late 10th or 11th century, which, nonetheless, does not take into account the actual weight of the mNga’ ris skor gsum state.

sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon’s was a kingdom that included in its dominions a huge territorial mass to the point that it could hardly be defined as regional. The extension of Zhang zhung did not surpass the one of mNga’ ris skor gsum by much. The Bon po literature includes Sum pa Glang gi gyim shod (i.e. western Khams) in Zhang zhung, but one should investigate whether this land attracted Bon and its clans during or after its downfall of the kingdom and whether they established a dominion locally.

mNga’ ris skor gsum extended from Bru sha and the other territories on the western side of the Himalayan range up to mNga’ ris bar (Glo bo and Nyi shang included) and controlled Gung thang (mNga’ ris smad) for an unsprcified amount of time (bsTan ’dzin ras pa’i nam thar f.2b2-3). Its cultural world extended to dBus—and lHa sa in particular—all the way to Khams and to gTsang as far as the border of Nyang stod with the lowlands of India, where bstan pa phyi dar stod lugs had its strongholds.

The end of the mNga’ ris skor gsum apogee engendered territorial regionalism. Since the death of rTse lde and across the centuries, Gu ge and Pu hrang kept having different dynastic lines with very limited exceptions, but close ties. Gu ge itself became divided and the other regions of erstwhile mNga’ ris skor gsum had separate rulership. Not even the Yuan/Sa skya pa supremacy brought back unity inasmuch as Sa skya assigned to different feudatories the control of separate lands of mNga’ ris and seemingly kept direct control in one case. Glo bo’s assertive military policy led the kingdom to be a primus inter pares but not to have steady control of lands that surpassed regional divisions. The rule of the priest-king chain of rebirths—dGa’ ldan pho brang—achieved to restore an overall unity in mNga’ ris under its authority that was exercised from far away and with a centralised vision.

Bibliography
Blo bo rgyal rabs mu thi lti ’phreng mdzes bzhugs so. Computer copy in fifty-one pages.
Bon ma nub pa’i gtan tshigs, in History and Doctrine of Bonpo Nispanna Yoga, Lokesh Chandra ed., Sata Pitaka Series n. 73, New Delhi 1968.

---

63 The ravines of Gu ge, where the Zhang zhung pa and then the mNga’ ris stod people have been responsible for one of the greatest civilisations in Tibetan history, are associated with a myth that found some credit in colonial India. The legend says that the geological sediments hide and preserve in the ravines of Gu ge relics going by the name ‘brug rus or “bones of the dragons” (Strachey 2007 [1853]: 48). Could these be underground vestiges of ancient Zhang zhung?

‘Bri gung Ti se lo rgyus. dkOn mchog bstan ‘dzin chos kyi blo gros ‘phrin las (34th ‘Bri gung gdan rabs), Gangs ri chen po Ti se dang mtshe chen mo Ma dros pa bcas kyi sgron byung gi lo rgyus mdo bsdu su brjod pa’i rab byed shel dkar me long zhes bya ba bzhuugs so, xylolograph.

Chos legs kyi rnam thar. dBang phyug dpal ldan, dPal ldan bla ma dam pa Chos legs mtshan can gyi rnam thar yon tan ‘brug sgra zhes bya ba bzhuugs so, written in 1520 and completed by Chos dbang rgyal mtshan in 1524, xylolograph.


Deb ther sngon po. ‘Gos lo tsa ba gZhon nu dpal, Deb ther sngon po, Si khron m i riigs dp e skrun khang, Chengdu 1984.


lDong rus mdzod. In: Hermanns, Matthias. 1948. Überlieferungen der lDong rus mdzod lDe’u Jo sras chos ‘byung Chos ‘byung chen mo bstan pa’i legs kyi rnam thar bzhugs so, dbu med manuscipt in 41 folios.

lHo rong chos ‘byung. rJa’ tshag Tshe dbang rgyal, Dam pa’i chos kyi byung ba’i legs bshad lHo rong chos ‘byung ngam rJa’ tshag chos ‘byung zhes rtsam pa’i yul ming du chags pa’i ngo mtsbar zhing dkon pa’i dpe khyad par can bzhus so, Gangs can rig mdzod 26, Bod ljongs Bod yig dpe mnyig dpe skrun khang, IHa sa 1995.


Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum gyi dkar chag. Wa gindra karma, Jo bo rin po che dngul sku mched gsum rten deng brten par bcas pa’i dkar chag rab da’i glu dbyangs zhes bya ba gzhugs so, Tho lngtsug lag khang lo gcig stong ‘khor ba’i rjes dran mdzad sgo’i go sgrig tshogs chung Publishers, Dharamsala 1996.

mKhas pa’i dga’ ston. dPa’ bo gTsug lag phreng ba, Dam pa chos kyi ‘khor lo bsgyur ba rnam sres sbyung ba gsal bar byed pa mKhas pa’i dga’ ston, rDo rje rgyal po ed., Mi rigs dpe skrun khang, Beijing 1986.

mKhas pa’i lDe’u chos ‘byung. mKhas pa’i lDe’u, rGya Bod kyi chos ‘byung rgyas pa, Chap spel Tshe brtan phun tshogs ed., Gangs chen rig mdzod 3, Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, IHa sa 1987.

Kho char dkar chag. Ngag dbang bsod nams rgyal mtsbar, lHa rbar bcas ba’i mchod sdo’ng Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum sngon byung gi gtam rabs brjod pa rin chen baidurya sngon po’i pi wam bzhes bya ba bzhuugs so, Bod ljongs mNga’i ris rig gzhung gcis skyong khang, rDa ram sa la 1988.


sNga rabs Bod kyi byung ba brjod pa’i ’bel gtam lung gi snying po = bsTan ’dzin nam dag, sNga rabs Bod kyi byung ba brjod pa’i ’bel gtam lung gi snying po, A Study of the Early History of Tibet according to the Bon po Tradition, reprint dpal ’byor skrun khang, New Delhi 1997.


Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs. Gu ge Grags pa rgyal mtshan, Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes zhe bya ba bzhus lag so, dbu med manuscript in 137 folios.

gNyos IHa nang pa’i rmam thar. Dzya na badzra, Skra’i nyag ma’i chu’i thigs pa gcig blangs pa lta’i bu rmam par thar pa rin po che’i phreng pa yon tan gsal ba’i me lang sa lam dpungs pa zhes bya ba bzhus so, written at Nyang stod ’Brung gi ri khrod Bla dmig dgon pa, manuscript.

Padma bka’ thang. gTer chen O rgyan gling pa, Padma bka’ thang, Si khron mi riggs dpe skrun khang, Chengdu 1987.


bsTan rtsis in Si tu bka’ chems in Rlangs Po ti bse ru, Rlangs kyi Po ti bse ru rgyas pa, Chab spel Tshe brtan phun tshogs ed., Gangs can rig mdzod 1, Bod ljongs Bod yig dpe mying dpe skrun khang, IHa sa 1986.

bsTan ’dzin ral pa’i rmam thar. rNal ’byor gi dbang phyug rje 3tsun bsTan ’dzin ral pa’i rmam thar mdzad pa nyung ngu gcig, xylograph. Rlangs Po ti bse ru rgyas pa, Chab spel Tshe brtan phun tshogs ed., Gangs can rig mdzod 1, Bod ljongs Bod yig dpe mying dpe skrun khang, IHa sa 1986.


Secondary Sources


Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: 
The Monumental Avalokiteśvara Stela in lCog ro, 
Purang*

In January 2007, together with the late Tsering Gyalpo (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po) from the Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences in Lhasa, the authors of this essay were able to carry out several weeks of field research in Western Tibet.¹ In the context of this field research, which included all seven main administrative districts or circles (rdzong)² of the government district or prefecture of Western Tibet (mNga' ris sa khul) of the Tibet Autonomous Region (TAR, China), it was possible to carry out intensive exploration at several key sites and, depending

* Thanks for various helpful suggestions, commentaries and discussions in drawing up earlier versions of this article are due to Eva Allinger, Brandon Dotson, Jorinde Ebert, Guntram Hazod, Oscar Nalesini, Rudl Jahoda, Horst Lasic and Christian Luczanits. The authors will always be indebted to the late Guge Tsering Gyalpo for cooperation at various stages of research.

The research for this article and field work in 2010 was conducted within the framework of two research projects funded by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF): “Oral and Festival Traditions of Western Tibet: Processes of Cultural Memory and Renewal” (P20637-G15) and “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, Conflict and Integration” (P21806-G19). These projects were carried out under the direction of Christian Jahoda at the Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna.

¹ This field work was carried out on the basis of a research agreement between the Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences (TASS) in Lhasa and the Austrian Academy of Sciences (AAS) in Vienna. The participants were the late Prof. Tsering Gyalpo, Director of the Institute for Religious Studies, TASS, Christian Jahoda, at that time collaborator on the OeNB Project 10944 “Political Space, Socio-Economic Organisation and Religious Geography in Western Tibet” (director: Prof. Ernst Steinkellner), AAS, and Christiane Papa-Kalantari. The funding of part of the travel costs for the field work by Christian Jahoda and the cooperation partner Tsering Gyalpo was assumed by the FWF research focus S87 “Cultural History of the Western Himalaya”, University of Vienna.

² Purang (sPu rang, also sPu hrengs, etc.), Gar (sGar), Tsamda (rTsa mda’), Ruthog (Ru thog), Gergye (dGe rgyas), Gertse (sGer rtse), Tshochen (mTsho chen).

on time and circumstances, more or less comprehensive audiovisual and occasionally also photographic documentation on selected research themes. Alongside Tsamda, Purang was one of the main areas of the joint field research in the course of which a stone stela in lCog ro (also Cog ro) village with a relief of a standing Avalokiteśvara and an inscription was examined.

In February 2010, in the course of another field trip to Purang,³ additional documentation of the stela and its inscriptions was carried out. Based on recent (re-)discoveries of comparative stelae in other areas of historical Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum) and historical texts, new findings from relevant ongoing research (also in Central Tibet, Nepal and Ladakh) as well as additional photographic documentation (not available previously, partly also from archives), this contribution discusses the monumental Avalokiteśvara (sPyan ras gzigs) stela in lCog ro, Purang, in a considerably wider, trans-regional context. At the same time, it draws on the results of additional research in Khorchag (’Khor chags) (see Tsering Gyalpo, Jahoda, Kalantari and Sutherland 2012 [2015]) and thereby also enables a stronger comparative perspective than was possible before.⁴

Historical Setting
The extensive historical Buddhist culture of Western Tibet (mNga’

³ Again this field work was carried out on the basis of a research agreement between the Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences in Lhasa and the Austrian Academy of Sciences in Vienna. Besides Tsering Gyalpo (TASS), the participants were Hubert Feiglstorfer, Veronika Hein, Christian Jahoda, Christiane Kalantari and Patrick Sutherland.

⁴ See Jahoda and Papa-Kalantari 2009; Papa-Kalantari and Jahoda 2010.
Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

This culture is inseparable from the West Tibetan kingdom and its regional sub- and successor kingdoms of Guge (Gu ge), Purang and Ladakh (La dwags) founded by a descendant of the Central Tibetan dynasty around 911 (see Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 292; see also Vitali 2003: 54–55 who—based on different sources—suggested 912 as terminus post quem for the establishment of the mNga’ ris skor gsum kingdom).

The members of the royal line and the noble families associated with it who established themselves in this region (or had previously already lived there) were responsible for founding a large number of monasteries and temples in the time from the late 10th century onward. The outstanding founders and promoters of this Buddhist culture were the ruler Srong nge (in full: Khri lde Srong gtsug btsan) and later Royal Lama (lha bla ma) Ye shes ’od (947–1019; 1024 according to Vitali 2003: 55, 61) and the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po (958–1055) (see, for example, Vitali 2003: 55–56, 61, 64 and Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 280–287).

There are reports of a few foundations of Buddhist monuments predating the major foundation phase starting in 996. One of the

---

1. Front (east) view of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, lCog ro village, Purang District, Tibet Autonomous Region, PR China (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2004).
2. South view of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela with inscription lines 1–7 on upper part (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2004).
3. North view of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela with inscription lines 1–12 on upper part (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2004).

---

5 Not only were major scientific publications (such as Tucci 1936; Tucci 1949) responsible for this but also above all the travel reports and popular science books (such as Tucci and Gherisi 1934; Tucci 1937; Tucci 1973), which contain many otherwise rare observations and much information, and are therefore still extremely valuable for current research. See Nalesini 2008 for an overview on Tucci’s expeditions between 1926 and 1954.

Since the 1990s, a new wave of cultural-studies researches in West Tibet have been carried out in various fields, although predominantly on the archaeology, general history, the history of art, cultural and religious history, Tibetan philology and social anthropology. See for example Levine 1992; Levine 1994; Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994; Luzzanits 1996; Pritzker 1996; Vitali 1996; Huo Wei and Li Yongxian 2001; Vitali 2002; Heller 2004; Tshe ring rgyal po 2005; Tshe ring rgyal po 2006; Huo Wei 2007; Orofino 2007; Heller 2010; Tsering Gyalo, Jahoda, Kalantari and Sutherland 2012 [2015]; Tropper 2016; Tshe ring rgyal po 2011 and 2014; Tropper 2018 and 2019.
earliest sources which contains evidence for this is Sonam Tsemo’s Chos la ’jug pa’i sgo from 1167. According to Petech, the translation of a relevant section, which describes an event that took place in a place along the upper course of the Sutlej river in 992 CE, reads thus:

“All the yab-mched [that is, members of the royal dynasty] of the Upper and Lower Areas met at sPeg-mkhar of the Cog-la region, and on this occasion a great oration [mol ba chen po]6 was delivered [...] The hermitage of Pa[...]-sgam in the Rum region was renovated.” (Petech 1997: 233).

The holding of royal dynastic meetings on the occasion of important temple foundations even before 996 (that is, before the time of the foundation of the three main temples of Guge, Purang and Maryul (Mar yul, a region along the Indus river in Upper Ladakh) in Tholing, Khorchag and Nyarma) is also mentioned in the Ha bla ma Ye shes ’od kyi nam thar rgyas pa (Extended Biography of the Royal Monk Ye shes ’od) written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan at Tholing in 1480.9 According to this text, such a meeting was held for example in 987 in Purang where, in an authoritative speech or declaration Khri lde Strong gtsug btsan decided that a temple (gtsug lag khang) was to be built in the castle of mkhar Itag at skya ru for the protection of the kingdom.10

**Location**

Just a few kilometres south of the town of Purang,11 the present administrative centre of the district bearing the same name, on a raised position on the right bank of the rMa bya or Peacock river (known as Karnali in Nepal) is the municipality of Zhi sde (Zhi sde shang), which is named after the village of Zhi sde (Zhi sde grong tsha). Approximately half way between the town of Purang and the village of Zhi sde is a small farming settlement called ICog/Cog ro. This name recalls the Cog ro noble family, who according to the Nyang ral chos byung were closely allied with skiyid lde Nyi ma mgon, the founder of the West Tibetan kingdom in the second decade of the 10th century (see also Vitali 1996: 171–172). At the centre of the settlement there is a former Buddhist temple, which has long been used as a warehouse, whose floor plan makes the claimed legendary foundation by the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po seem not unlikely.

The actual aim of the visit to this settlement was to document and reinvestigate a stone stela from an earlier period with a relief portrayal of a standing Avalokiteśvara on one side and a two-part religiously motivated historic inscription12 on two other sides, which had previously, in September 2004, been photographed by Tsering Gyalpo under different circumstances—when it was still

---

6 Although Petech (1997: 233) preferred to translate the Tibetan phrase mol ba chen po as “great oration”, he also held “a great discussion” as a possible translation. Roberto Vitali, who quoted this passage in his *The Kingdoms of Gu.ge Pu.hrang*, translated mol ba chen po as “great discussion” and also as “consultation” (Vitali 1996: 250, n. 361, and 251).

7 “chu pho ‘brug gi lo la cog la yul sPeg mkhar du sTod sMad kyi yab mched gdan ’dzom pai’ dus su mol ba chen po m2zad/ Rum yul Pa sgam gyi dben sa gisar du btsugs pa’i dus su brtis na/ lo 3125” (cf. ST, f.316a-b; SP, f. 297b).

8 The most common Tibetan spellings for these places are mTho lding, Tho gling and Tho ling, ‘Khor chags, Kho char, Kha char and Khwa char as well as Myar ma, Nya mar and Nyer ma.

9 See Gu ge pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011 for a facsimile edition of the original dbu med text, Do rga dbang drag rdo rje 2013 for an annotated edition of the text in dbu can script and Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text,” this volume, pp. 121–169, for an improved dbu can edition, in particular with regard to the spelling of a large number of contracted ligatures and of otherwise shortened forms (including numbers).

10 Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text,” this volume, p. 132. See also Gu ge pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 290 (f. 9b).

11 This town also appears on maps as Burang (Chin. Pǔlán). It is partly identical with the pre-modern skiyid thang or skiyid rang.

12 As far as is known, the first (English) translation of the inscription and dating of the stela was undertaken by Vitali (1996: 168–169, n. 231). See also Denwood 2007: 51.
Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

standing in the open air (see Figs. 1–3). The following descriptions, historical comparative analyses and attached illustrations of this stela, which has so far not been publicised in the appropriate form, serve to open it up and make it known for further art-history and philological investigations. Above and beyond this, the study is an attempt to incorporate the stela in the context of the cultural and art history of the sPu rgyal dynasty as well as the early phase of the “later dissemination of Buddhism” (bstan pa phyi dar) in the West Tibetan kingdom. Based on the observations made by Giuseppe Tucci in Zhi sde in 1935, on the oral accounts recorded in lCog ro by Tsering Gyalpo until 2006 and on the statements of the inhabitants of the settlement interviewed on site in 2007, additional social and cultural-anthropology perspectives on this stela are opened up, which are supplemented by observations on the present-day and historic function of similar as well as simpler prehistoric stelae in the immediate and wider vicinity of Western Tibet.

Documentation and Description

The viewing and documentation of the stela, as well as a following interview with villagers on the subject, took place on 16 January 2007 and for reasons of time and because of the priority of other projects had to be carried out in only a few hours.

The stela is in a one-room shrine-like building on the northern edge of the settlement of lCog ro and seems to have been installed there sometime between October 2004 and June 2005.13 The building is on the western side of the street and is surrounded by fields behind it. On the eastern side, in front of the building, are

13 This gap results from the photographic documentation by Tsering Gyalpo in the course of a visit in September 2004 (when the stela was still standing in open air, obviously already in front of the building—which seems to have been built in 2002 according to local informants), and another one in June 2005 when he revisited the site. At that time the stela had already been placed inside the building.
some more crudely made stelae (Fig. 4), which according to the villagers were previously situated elsewhere (see below).

The base of the stela is let into a stepped cement pedestal, which on the front or eastern side allows a view of the base, which was probably previously partly underground, which makes it possible to recognise a wreath of lotus leaves. Together with the 18-cm-high lotus base, on the front the stela is 185 cm high with an average width of ca. 51 cm in the lower part and 49 cm in the upper part. The sides are each ca. 18 cm wide (Fig. 5).14

As before, i.e. before the erection of the building, the stela is set up with the front, distinguished by the relief image of Avalokiteśvara, facing east (Figs. 6 and 7).15 On the two narrow sides, facing south and north, there are two Tibetan inscriptions in dbu can writing, which both start at about the shoulder height of Avalokiteśvara, approximately 130 cm from the upper step of the concrete base (see Figs. 8 and 9). Both inscriptions use the whole available width of the sides, up to the edge. The 19-line inscription on the southern side, which starts by giving the year and the month of the request for the erection of the stela, can be taken as the beginning of the text. That on the north side, with 24 lines, testifies to the execution of the task through reference to the confession made in the presence of Avalokiteśvara and through the dedication. While the whole surface of the two sides with inscriptions is smoothened, the reverse side facing west is only crudely hewn (see Fig. 10).

14 The width of the sides thereby corresponds to the stela in Pooh in Upper Kinnaur, whose measurements were likewise given as 18 cm by Thakur (1994: 369). On this stela, see below.

15 The uppermost part of the stela seems to have been lost through erosion. This is evident owing to the missing part on the upper curve of the oval nimbus.
The nature of the surface of the stela\textsuperscript{16} displays certain differences on the four sides. Particularly noticeable on the front are the butter offerings attached in many places or the stains that have clearly been caused by them, which cause the stone to appear somewhat darker and the relief to stand out somewhat more in these places. Similarly noticeable are places with red pigment, which are to be found on the right hand and right upper arm of Avalokiteśvara, in the area of the upper part of the hip clothes and from there to the right edge. On the northern side the whole lower half is marked by this red pigment. The lower part of the inscription (about eight lines), which is free from the pigment—apart from a few places in the last two lines where it somewhat covers the inscription—is particularly easily readable as a result of the contrast. On the south side, the red layer of pigment is noticeable in the whole area of the inscription, but apart from the first seven lines seems to be less intense or faded. On the back only some parts in the area of the upper ca. 20 cm of the stela are covered in red pigment, while the colour of the remaining surface largely reflects the natural character of the stone. The red pigment on its surface may point towards cultic use at some time. It is not possible to tell when this pigment was applied, whether it was possibly immediately following the completion of the stone or at a later time, perhaps even recently.\textsuperscript{17} In this case too, knowledge of the pigment and its chemical-physical characteristics would be very useful for further conclusions. As it is known that until around 15 years ago the stela stood in the open on the road between ICog ro and Zhi sde (see Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 4 and 5–6 for illustrations),\textsuperscript{18} and it must therefore be assumed that it was exposed to strong sunlight on the east and southern sides, this may possibly explain why the colour of the paint is for the most part less intense on these two sides in comparison to the northern side.

Art-History Findings

On the front of the regularly worked, cubic block of stone of the ICog ro stela there is a chiselled figurative portrayal (Fig. 5). The characteristic style provides evidence of a complex and cosmopolitan artistic layering: the figural typology reveals Central Tibetan stylistic features while Chinese-Central Asian material culture and symbols of authority and prestige are reflected in details of the costume and in the overall-layout. The form, function and meaning of this image in a West Tibetan religious-artistic context will be dealt with in greater detail in the following, which goes beyond the common scholarly consensus of “foreign influences.”\textsuperscript{19} It features a richly bejeweled bodhisattva, in the appearance of a young man, wearing a loincloth or dhoti. Iconographic characteristics are the right arm, which is lowered in the gesture of granting a wish (varadāmudrā) and the lotus (padma), which is held in the left hand and grows upwards over the left shoulder.\textsuperscript{20} Alongside these features the figure is above all identifiable by a motif on the crown, which highly probably represents a Buddha Amitābha figure. These features identify the figure as the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara (Spyan ras gzigs dbang phyug), the bodhisattva of compassion, the supreme saviour of all suffering beings and the spiritual son of Amitābha (Figs. 6, 7 and 11). A nimbus containing a circle of flames frames the face, and an ūrṇā graces his forehead between the eyebrows. The bodhisattva’s sumptuous princely sambhogakāya jewellery indicates supramundane splendour.\textsuperscript{21} It is complemented by the full, ankle-length loincloth, which is arranged in schematic rounded folds and accentuated by its volume. It is decorated with curves that recall

\begin{itemize}
  \item From a geological point of view this stela seems to involve an iron-rich limestone or a calcarius, yellow-brown oxidising sandstone with rounded fracture textures (as can be seen on the back of the stela), at least as far as a provisional assessment on the basis of the photographic documentation permits. Without knowledge of the geology of the immediate and wider vicinity, a conclusion on the origin of the stone is not possible (Dr Rudi Jahoda, personal communication, August 2008).
  \item The colouring of inscriptions seems to have been a widespread feature of Tibetan inscriptions on stone and rocks dating from the 7\textsuperscript{th}-9\textsuperscript{th} centuries. See Dieter Schuh (2013: 144–145) who also refers to a Tibetan inscription at Skardu in Baltistan which states that the believers are summoned to restore the colour from time to time.
  \item This publication was not known to the authors at the time of the field research in 2007. It was only discovered and consulted during the course of the literature researches for this article. The same is true for another publication that appeared in China, which contains a rubbing of the inscriptions and a free illustration of the front of the stela (without the lotus base) with a not very accurate tint, both however without detailed commentary (Zheng 2000: 173–174). Only since the completion of the manuscript did it become known that Prof. Wang Yao had given the Avalokiteśvara stela as the subject of his lecture for the 10th Seminar of the International Association of Tibetan Studies (IATS) in Oxford in 2003 (see Wang Yao 2003). It has not been possible to discover whether this lecture has since been published in written form.
  \item Based on the documentation and analyses of Vitali (1990), Luczanski (2004) and Heller (1997, 2006), this article attempts for the first time to assemble the various trends and regional types of this style and in particular to define the stylistic connections between the examples from Western Tibet.
  \item Here the stalk does not grow out of the ground, as is classically the case, but ends at the level of the navel.
  \item A large diamond-shaped attachment in the form of leafy tendrils adorns the upper arm ring, while the bejewelled hip ornament decorates the abdomen section and holds the loincloth (dhoti). A ribbon or decorative band that hangs from the hip decoration in the middle of the body and reaches down over the knee may represent a chain with hanging flower-shaped decorations or a belt that holds the dhoti in place. The shoulders are each covered by a straight line of beads, which are perhaps to be understood as falling strands of hair.
\end{itemize}
schematically arranged folds. The double curves at regular intervals, however, reflect decorative styles on textiles, consisting of detailed patterns arranged in rows above one another as are frequently seen in Indian and Nepalese printed textiles and the ornamental traditions in the region. The artist is here probably translating an Indian dhotī of fine cotton with a typical detailed pattern, which is usually shown wrapped around the body and clinging to the legs, into a Tibetan idiom distinguished by heavy, loose clothes of wool or silk brocade, which lends volume and plasticity to the figure.

**The Cult of Avalokiteśvara in the Early History of Buddhist Tibet**

The cult of Avalokiteśvara—and with it the ideal of sacrifice and redemption for other sentient beings and the salvation of the world—spread across the whole of India in the late Mahāyāna period (from the 6th century onward). In the Vajrayāna the bodhisattva assumes various many-headed and many-armed shapes.22 Among its many manifestations in Tibet the deity appears as the attendant figure to a central Buddha, as for example in the sanctum of the main temple (gtseg lag khang) at Tabo dating from the end of the 10th century (in the latter case with one head and two arms; see Luczanits 2004: fig. 21). In the later Alchi gSum brtsegs (ca. 1200), it assumes a prominent four-armed manifestation as part of a central group of cultic figures consisting of colossal clay sculptures of the Bodhisattvas Avalokiteśvara, Mañjuśrī and Maitreya (ibid.: 209).23

In the ca. 12th century Zhag cave, Avalokiteśvara is depicted in the entrance corridor in a six-armed form identifying it as Sugatisandarśana Lokeśvara. He is flanked by two standing local males and a kneeling figure, which are most likely the donors—wearing the typical attire of the West Tibetan aristocratic elite—portrayed as pious devotees. The kneeling donor appears to be being blessed by Avalokiteśvara. This iconographic type is also found at Dungkar (Dung dkar), where Avalokiteśvara is venerated as the sovereign of a mandala (cf. Tsering Gyalpo and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, Figs. 18–19, pp. 415–416).24

[22] The divinity is frequently worshipped in this form in Kashmir and also at a stela in Kashmir. See Linrothe 1999: fig. 8, 8a.

[23] On the cult of Avalokiteśvara see also de Mallmann 1948.

[24] At Khochag a monumental Mañjuśrī in silver—commissioned by the royal family for the foundation of a temple around 1000—was complemented in the 13th century with statues of Avalokiteśvara and Maitreya, forming the famous “Three Jowo Silver Brothers” (Jo bo ngul sku mchod gsum). The triad became an important focus of cult throughout Tibet and many copies were made to emulate its sacred presence (Tsering Gyalpo, Jahoda, Kalantari and Sutherland 2012 [2015]: 17–18, 24, passim).

On the basis of texts such as Chos rgyal srong btsan sgam po’i mani bka’ ‘bum and other sources, the introduction of the Avalokiteśvara cult in Tibet was connected by later Tibetan historians with King Songtsen Gampo (Srong btsan sgam po), who is seen as an emanation of this bodhisattva.25

[25] See Kapstein 1992. Even if there was cause for critical analyses and doubts, as Kapstein mentions (ibid.: 84), as early as the lDan/lHan kar ma catalogue (compiled in the year 812, with supplements up to the end of the ruling period of King Ral pa can; see Herrmann-Pfandt 2008: xviii–xxii) there are Tibetan translations of texts that were of fundamental importance for the cult of Avalokiteśvara (see also Lalou 1953). In addition, on the basis of his recent...
Ian Alsop (1998) described the royal introduction and transmission to Nepal and Tibet of holy images of Avalokiteśvara—regarded as tutelary deity of the first historical king of Tibet. A famous specific image of ‘Phags pa Lokeśvara (Ārya/Noble Avalokiteśvara), which served as a prototype for various replicas, assumes a special position in the mythic installation of the sacred image. As Alsop described, one image was brought to Kathmandu under difficult circumstances during the reign of Narendra Deva (641–680) with the help of the king’s spiritual advisor. Narendra Deva was contemporary with Songtsen Gampo (see Vitali 1990: 71–72; Dotson 2009: 82) and, according to the transmission, he was the inaugurator of the cult and the yearly festivals of Avalokiteśvara which still exist in Nepal (Vergati 1995: 206). He is still regarded as protector of kingship and of the prosperity of the country up to the present day. This pattern of royal transmission may have been adopted in Tibet as a means of legitimation. The rGyal rabs gsal ba’i me long [Clear Mirror of the Royal Genealogies] describes a group of four sacred images; one was miraculously brought (from Nepal) during the time of Songtsen Gampo to Tibet; in a Tibetan version of the story the place where it was found and installed lies on the border between India and Nepal and can be perhaps identified as Khorchag (Alsop 1998: 89), situated in close geographic proximity to Lcog ro.

An important Buddhist icon in the Potala, known as Ārya-Lokeśvara, appears to be linked to this legendary transmission; the latter image displaying strong Newari features is presumably patterned after the famous ca. 7th century prototype (Alsop 1998: fig. 15). The statue featured as a model for various replicas in Tibet: one is from Mustang, which is kept in the royal chapel in the palace of the rulers of Lo at Tsarang, south of Mönthang (sMon thang) (Lo Bue 2010: fig. 1.2.); another is kept at Nako, Kinnaur (Alsop 1998: fig. 19).

Further studies will be necessary to determine the chronological sequence and forms of veneration of Avalokiteśvara in India and Central Asia, particularly to the extent that this has a bearing on its introduction into Tibet.26

Stone Stelae and Reliefs in Stone in Early Tibetan Art
The bodhisattva of the Lcog ro stela is depicted standing in an upright pose (samāpada) on a lotus pedestal. The figure fills almost researches of the Tibetan texts found in Dunhuang, which mainly date from the 10th century, van Schaik points out that sufficient evidence can be found for the presence and growing popularity of Avalokiteśvara as early as this time and the view that there is no evidence of an Avalokiteśvara cult in Tibet before the 11th century needs to be revised in the light of these findings (van Schaik 2006: 66).

26 On the symbolic and increasingly political importance of the Avalokiteśvara cult in Tibet in the post-dynastic period see also Sørensen 2007.
the whole oblong frontal panel of the block and is worked in shallow relief, gaining somewhat in volume against the slightly recessed background. It is carved into the surface of the stone in simple outlines with light modelling along the contours. The rendering of the powerful physique, with its stiffness, broad shoulders, splayed feet and large hands, pays scant regard to natural proportions: the head seems too big for the upper body, while the relatively short legs are covered by an ankle-length loincloth or dhōti. The individual parts of the body flow into one another, displaying virtually no articulation. The almond-shaped eyes and the wings of the nose are carved in harsh, straight furrows into the schematic, shovel-shaped face. A heavy crown rising from a band of pearls rests on a circlet of curls. The bangle on the upper arm is decorated with a large lozenge-shaped upper element in the form of foliate tendrils, while the jewel-studded ornament on the hips decorates the belly and covers the knob of the band which holds the loincloth in place. From the centre of the ornament on the hips the two ends of the band ending in a decorative manner in a floral element fall to below the knee. The prominence of the large decorative elements in the crown, on the upper arms, hips and legs, which are worked in detail with a relative degree of plasticity gives additional emphasis to the overall planar and ornamental impression made by the composition. The loose dhōti deviates from the Indian treatment of garment and appears like legs of baggy trousers contrasting to renderings of the dhōti on Kashmir-derived artworks in early Buddhist temples of the region from the beginning of the 11th century onwards, such as in the main temple (gtsug lag khang) of Tabo (Fig. 12).

In addition the characteristic features displayed by the lCog ro stela contrast distinctively with stelae (some with Tibetan inscriptions) in the Kashmir style, such as those preserved at Dras (Kargil District, Jammu and Kashmir, India).27 It concerns free-standing cult figures whose original place of erection and function can no longer be definitively clarified. Whereas the Kashmir style reflected in these figures is distinguished by the naturalistic plasticity and the interest in movement—to be seen for example in the triple curved posture of the body (trībhanga)—by means of which the figure is emancipated from its ground, the figure of the stela in lCog ro remains static and wholly subordinate to the cubic form of the block of stone. There the figure takes up most of the expanse of stone. Its stasis and strict hieratic frontality imbue the figure of the bodhisattva with monumentality, emphasising its dignity and extra-temporal presence, while the extended outsized hand symbolises the way the bodhisattva turns to the world of sentient beings to help them attain enlightenment. In contrast to the autonomous cultic image, here it is the monumental character which predominates, appearing as religious and political communication and medium conveying a self-portrayal of the elite. In Tibet, stone appears to be the medium par excellence for this function. The unity of image and religio-political text, both using almost the whole width of the block, further underlines the strategy to project sovereignty in a Buddhist-ordered realm. The stela combines a cult image for devotion with a Tibetan medium for a political-religious monument designed to establish a social landscape.

Stone was also an important material for cult images inside of temples at the time of the early Buddhist period in Central Tibet. Some of them reflect the influence of this medium transferred with artists from Nepal and India.28 Examples of stone images from the 8th century can be found in Khra ’brug, which were, according to sources, manufactured by Newar artists (cf. Sørensen and Hazod 2005: figs. 43 and 44).29 In contrast, in early West Tibetan temples cult images made of stone are not commonly found. It can be concluded from early Buddhist temples in Himachal Pradesh predating the early West Tibetan temples that wooden statues must have been frequent as main cult statues. Some examples of such wooden images can be found at Pooh and at Charang (see Luczanitis 2004: figs. 64–65).

However, from the 11th century onwards clay became the medium par excellence both in Central Tibet (Yemar [g.Ye dmar], Drathang [Gra/Grwa thang], Shalu [Zha lu]) and Western Tibet, although different techniques of manufacture and mountings on the walls were applied in each of these regions.30

27 See Luczanitis (2005: 67), who points to the tendency to early dating (7th–10th century) of a group of rock reliefs in Mulbek, Dras and Changspa. He is one of the few authors to have previously concerned himself with the historical classification of early rock reliefs and stelae in West Tibet and the comparison with paintings in the region.

28 In particular Pāla or Newar artists achieved great sophistication in the treatment of fine surfaces of stones (e.g. schist, sandstone) almost recalling metal.

29 According to the transmission eight bodhisattva images are from Khotan (Sørensen and Hazod 2005: 17). The direction of the temple’s main entrance towards Kathmandu further emphasises the orientation towards Nepal at that time. Concerning the reconstruction of the artistic context historical links with Nepal are particularly relevant. Activities of Newar artists in Tibet are frequently mentioned in sources. At Khra ’brug, Tibet’s first temple, fragments of stone statues from the 8th century originally featuring a Buddha pentad with Vairocana in the centre survived which are reported to have been manufactured by Nepalese craftsmen. The stylistic characteristics of the lCog ro stela, with early Tibetan features appearing ultimately to be of Nepalese origin, perhaps also reflect the situation of the sanctity of the famous image of Phags pa Lokeśvara miraculously found during the time of Songtsen Gampo and installed in Tibet as a tutelary deity, as described by Alsop (1998).

30 The tradition of clay sculptures must have been strong in India at that time—although little remained—as can be concluded from the Indianising Tibetan
Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

The typology of the stone stela is in marked contrast to stone, wood and clay cult images for devotion in temples, which co-existed up to the 11th century, the chosen material and the block-like shape of this form of image appear particularly associated with state, status and authority; it was connoted with political treaties and manifests from the earliest periods of the Yarlung (Yar lung) Empire. In this context the importance of stone effigies of animals guarding the entrance of Yarlung dynasty tombs in the Yarlung valley also needs to be mentioned.

The statement contained in the inscription of the lCog ro stela and the visual “text” are subordinated to the block of stone, whose enduring quality and severe geometric form can also be seen as symbolising the everlasting duration of power. The stela thereby forms a unique “web of meaning” of image, text and ritual praxis.

In terms of style and function, a related stela of a very vernacular type has been preserved on the eastern edge of Purang (Fig. 13). However, little can be said about its stylistic characteristics on account of its weathered state. A crown sits on the heavy, round head of the figure, the left hand is held against the breast and the right hand presumably hangs down, in a similar manner to that of the lCog ro image. Thus it might also represent a bodhisattva. The legs, like the thin arms, are depicted in a shortened and disproportionate fashion.

Another example of this type of stela with a historical inscription has been preserved at Pooh in Upper Kinnaur (Fig. 14–15; for images at the rear wall of cave temples at Dunhuang. This spatial arrangement of images cannot be found in early Buddhist temples in Western Tibet.

The typology of the stone stela is different from devotional images in stone with carvings, typically featuring images of Avalokiteśvara, of different qualities and periods, often donated and positioned along pilgrimage paths to monasteries (cf. Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 201–224, and Feiglstorfer, “The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, this volume, pp. 225–257).

The size of a famous stone lion of a Yarlung dynasty tomb (7th–8th century) is approximately 150 cm (Hazod 2015: fig. 6, p. 591).

In this respect there is a distant connection with the famous stone statues of Turkic dignitaries with inscriptions found in Mongolia and southern Siberia (see Öhrig 1988).

It is conceivable that the working of the ca. 170-cm-high stone block started with the portrayal of the large head and upper body, filling the whole width of the stela, but the proportions of the pre-prepared image bearer did not permit a complete figure. It is also conceivable that the portrait was already damaged in its production and was never in cultic use, unlike the lCog ro stela, which is still worshipped today. It is rather unlikely that the lower part weathered and was subsequently completed.

Upper Kinnaur (Khu nu) is a Tibetan-speaking area of Himachal Pradesh, India, today on the border of the Tibet Autonomous Region (TAR, China), which
Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: The Monumental Avalokiteśvara Stela in lCog ro, Purang

The stela displays simplified representations of a bodhisattva figure in shallow relief on one side and on the other a stūpa, the style of which contrasts with the monumentality of the cultic figure in lCog ro. Tsering Gyalpo ("Brief description of the traditions related to the 'translator's mchod rten' existent in Kyu wang, Western Tibet", this volume, Figs. 8–13, pp. 64–66) documented and examined an important but as yet little studied monument in stone without inscriptions at Kyuwang (Kyu wang) in the Tsamda District of Western Tibet. It features an image and a stūpa above on each side of the block recalling the four-faced image of Vairocana at Tabo. In stylistic terms the image appears to reflect the art of Kashmir.

A group of dynastic-period cultic images with inscriptions carved onto rocks in Eastern Tibet displays typological similarities to the Purang stelae. The defining feature here is the close relationship between image and historical statement, as documented by an example in lDan ma brag (Chab mdo Prefecture) with an image of Vairocana. According to its dedicatory inscription, the rock relief was commissioned in 816—according to another interpretation in 804—ahead of the treaty concluded between China and Tibet in 821/22 (see Heller 1997: 86, 89; Heller 2006: 82, fig. 5).

In stylistic terms the schematic figurative style of the lCog ro stela would seem at first glance to have a closer affinity to the medium of rock carvings rather than sculpture. There is a distant connection with the reliefs of the Five Buddhas carved on a rock face at Shey in Ladakh (Snellgrove and Skorupski 1977: fig. 5) and in Satpara (near Skardu, Baltistan; see Denwood 2007: fig. 6). In terms of their frontality and the graphic qualities displayed in the rendering of the body, these reliefs, dated by Denwood to between the 8th and 10th century (ibid.: 50–51), can be compared with the stela but also exhibit certain elements of the aesthetics and formal idiom of the Ladakh-Baltistan region deriving from the rich Buddhist tradition of northern Pakistan and Kashmir. These reliefs are shallower and limited to graphic outlines of the figures, however they appear to be

---

Historically belonged to the area of power and influence of the West Tibetan kingdom. According to some Tibetan sources (e.g. Rin chen bzang po rnam thar 'bring po, see Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 95, 108), Pooh (sPu) belonged to the Rong chung area on the upper course of the Sutlej, which today is largely within the TAR.

36 According to Vitali this stela is to be seen as a royal foundation that took place only after the lifetime of Ye shes 'od. The Dragon year (brug gi lo) described in the inscription may in his judgement relate to one or other year marked by this animal sign between 1028 and 1102 (Vitali 1996: 207–208, n. 301). Petech in contrast considers Devarāja, one of the sons of Ye shes ‘od, as the probable author and is of the view that the Dragon year may correspond to 1024 (Petech 1997: 235).

37 Some authors, however, date this inscription to 804 (see Dotson 2006: 115–116). On the basis of the inscription and the local tradition, these reliefs are associated with the Tang princess Wencheng Gongzhu, one of the two wives of Srong btsan sgam po. Heller (1997: 100) showed the characteristic signs in the iconography of Vairocana in the Tibetan dynastic period. Yet another different interpretation was published recently by Yoshiro Imaeda according to whom "the year in the first sentence of the inscription does not refer to the year in which the prayers and images were made or to the year in which the inscription was written." (Imaeda 2012: 115–116). In his view, "[i]t is not impossible that the lDan ma brag inscription (II) was erected to commemorate the nomination of Bran ka Yon tan to the High Council of Religion and State Affairs [dated by Imaeda to 804] [...]. The rock images must have been carved in order to commemorate this nomination" (ibid.: 117–118), which as may be concluded from Imaeda's discussion should have taken place in one of the years after 804.
more precisely worked in contrast to the unsmoothed surface of the lCog ro stela, and they express the language of aesthetics and form in the Ladakh-Baltistan region. Despite the planar rendering, the fluid and deeply chiselled outlines create a certain idea of plasticity and rather naturalistic vividness of the figure which is not intended at lCog ro, where the emphasis is on volume, stasis and symmetry.

Artistic Context

Of greatest interest for the stylistic classification of the lCog ro stela in the last-mentioned sense—taking into consideration the different genres—is a well-known group of early, narrow painted silk banners with Tibetan inscriptions, discovered in Cave 17 at Dunhuang (Gansu Province)—the prominent oasis centre and Buddhist pilgrimage place on a crossroads of two major trade routes within the Silk Road network—which have been dated to the 9th century (Whitfield and Farrer 1990: 62; cf. also Kossak and Singer 1998: 4), the period of the Tibetan occupation of Dunhuang (ca. 787–846) and the resulting cultural and political contacts. The images on the cloth banners are probably modeled on Indian and Nepalese prototypes, wearing Indian dhoti and Indian jewellery. (Owing to their mobility, however, they may originally have come from other regions, possibly from Khotan, which the different type of binding of the silk would suggest; ibid.: 62.) These banners are among the earliest artworks executed in an independent, presumably Tibetan, style (Fig. 16) for which the disputed term “Himalayan style” has been coined by Nicolas-Vandier (1974: xviii). This style differs in important aspects such as the rendering of the body and dress from the local Tang-inspired Chinese-Central Asian style of the famous (non-Tibetan) Dunhuang banners (see Whitfield and Farrer 1990: 60–63). This artistic pluralism is exemplary for Buddhist oasis centres along the Silk Road network, which had their own unique combination of languages and artistic influences brought from afar and developed locally. That these works do in fact represent a Tibetan idiom can be assumed with reasonable certainty by comparing them not only with sculptures in Central Tibet but also with dateable examples of paintings in Western Tibet. As will be shown, a group of early Buddhist paintings at Tabo shows important affinities, in particular images of the royal elite and lay adherents and related material culture designed to project authority and status.

Characteristic features that distinguish the Tibetan banners from the Chinese-Central Asian banners in Dunhuang are the frontality and planar quality of the figures and the light modelling along the contours, features which are reminiscent of the lCog ro stela, although the latter has a simpler overall appearance; however, this may be due to the decorative details dominating the painting. Of course, the material of stone naturally leads to a different visual appearance, which is often simpler or even archaic. Then again, depictions of baldachins or honorific covers of precious fabrics on the Tibetan banners attest to Chinese-Central-Asian notions of sacred space and are a frequent element in the throne depictions from Dunhuang. A significant commonality is that both image and text on the reverse use almost the entire width of the elongated format.

The fluid transitions between the parts of the body, the large, powerful hands of the deities and specific naturalistic elements on the Tibetan banners, such as the small discs at the centre of the lotus base, which represent the alveoli with seeds in the rootstock and rhizome, as well as the delight in subtle details of costume and decoration, are also associated with the lCog ro stela and display certain parallels with a stylistic trend from Eastern India through the filter of Nepal (cf. Heller 1998: 95; fig. 78) and Central Tibet. Other features that can be compared with the lCog ro stela are the shovel-shaped face, the large, broad crown with foliate points and the large jewels on it.

However, the characteristic voluminous dhoti of the lCog ro Avalokitesvara contrasts with the short, tight-fitting Indian loincloths displaying small-scale patterns worn by the Tibetan Dunhuang bodhisattvas. It reminds one of heavy silk fabrics and might be a reminiscence of Chinese-Central-Asian costumes, which display a predilection for complex decorated luxury fabrics with heavy folds that conceal the shape of the body. The latter are also to be seen in early Central Tibetan sculptures in the temple at Ke ru (Keru, “Kwachu”) (Figs. 17–19) in the ‘On region of central Tibet (sNe gdong District, IHo kha Prefecture), which was originally founded during the phase of the Yarlung dynasty. As suggested by Vitali, the

---

36 The silk banners form a group of ten objects, of which seven are in the National Museum in New Delhi and three in the British Museum in London. The banners may have been produced by Tibetan artists or for Tibetan commissioners during this period.


39 Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari
(heavily reworked) clay bodhisattva figures in this temple, which probably date from the 9th-century phase of decoration, can also be assigned to an early Tibetan style.44 Again, it is the planar, static figurative style with fluid transitions in the modelling, the heavy heads decorated with large, generously proportioned crowns, and the sharp, graphically emphasised facial features with the small mouth and high eyebrows forming sharp ridges that are strongly reminiscent of the lCog ro stela. I suggest denominating this artistic idiom as the “Tibetan dynastic style”.

Certain elements of this early Tibetan or dynastic style can also be recognised in later phases of Central Tibetan painting, especially as regards the frontality, stiffness and the straight legs, as they appear in a thangka depicting the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī, presently in the Yarlung Museum, Tsethang. The image probably also originated in Keru and has been dated to the 11th century (Lee-Kalisch 2006: ill. on p. 244). Here the Tibetan type is combined with elements of Indian art, its probable models being Pāla-era manuscripts, which were introduced into Tibet at that time and were copied there (ibid.: 246).45

In general, it can be said of the style of the stela that the Indianised Tibetan features correspond to a type in the language of style modes that are characteristic of early Central Tibetan art, which draws from

---

44 See Vitali 1990: 20–21, pls. 5–10. The author came to the conclusion that this second phase of decoration in the temple was associated with ‘Bro Khri gsum rje and dated to the years after 822 (ibid.: 19–22).

45 Comparable with the stela are the straight legs and plump feet, while the delicate hands and the ball-shaped crown differentiate the two works. In all, the stela is closer to the Dunhuang examples.
Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

38

a complex layering of sources of Indianised, Newar-Tibetan and Central Asian inspiration. Many aspects of the Dunhuang banners and the Keru images are thus relevant for reconstructing the context of the stela. One important level of commonalities concerns form and function, material culture and elite self-fashioning, which will be discussed in the following.

From Dunhuang to Tabo: Material Culture and Courtly Prestige in Early Buddhist Temples

An important point of reference for stylistic characteristics and the embedding of the Purang stela in the history of the regional Western Tibetan stylistic developments is provided by the early paintings in the old entrance hall (sgo khang) of the main temple (gtsug lag khang) at Tabo. Among these, it is in particular the static female figures flanking the image of the tutelary deity and the assembly scenes with the depiction of the temple’s founder, Ye shes ’od, in the old entrance hall (sgo khang) (Fig. 20) that can tentatively be assigned to this group. These early images in Tabo represent a specifically local Western Tibetan style at the end of the 10th century. It is applied to represent a non-Indian (and non-Kashmiri) Tibetan environment and is characterised by symbols of representation replete with elements of Central Tibetan and Central Asian luxury art.

Contrasting with it is religious imagery, for example, the early sculptures in the sanctum of the main temple of the same phase (see Luczanits 2004: figs. 19-28 for illustrations).

Characteristic are tube-shaped legs, cylindrical bodies, almost no modelling, smooth and even treatment of the body, half-closed eyes, and a marked interest in decorative elements and jewellery. Luczanits has recently convincingly defined this as the “earliest stage of Western Tibetan, Kashmir-inspired style”. This style was abandoned in favour of a more-sculptural figurative type during the 11th century, perhaps in direct interactions with royal workshops from Kashmir proper.

As mentioned above, early Tibetan art, or the “Tibetan dynastic style”, is characterised by a palimpsestic adaption. It is a result of interactions not only between Tibet and India and Nepal but also between Tibet and the many regional centres in Central Asia, such as Kashgar (Beckwith 1987: 30), Khotan, Kucha and Khocho, which Tibetan troops controlled sporadically from the 7th to the 9th centuries. Each oasis had its own unique combination of religions, languages, artistic influences brought from afar and developed locally. Dunhuang in particular had a vital strategic and logistical

46 For further illustrations see the same author’s “Indian and Tibetan Art” website: http://www.univie.ac.at/itba/pages/sites.html (last accessed Dec. 24, 2008). A related sculptural style in Ropa in upper Kinnaur, to which Luczanits has already referred (see Luczanits 2004: 59, figs 53-57), should also be mentioned.

47 Certain constructive parallels with the Central Tibetan Keru images with regard to the wooden constructions as holders of the sculptures and the conscious “involvement” of these frameworks as part of the overall furnishing of the two temples should be mentioned.

48 In the catalogue The Silk Road and the Diamond Path (1982: 118) Klimburg-Salter still compares the cella figures in Tabo with the Dunhuang banners, while the historical significance and artistic context of the figures are no longer discussed by her in later work (1997: 48). There the figures receive the not further elaborated comment: “The cella sculptures are problematic.” (Luczanits 1997: 200; Luczanits 2004: 36-41) deals in detail with the earlier sculptures in Tabo. In contrast to older dating proposals, owing to iconographic and stylistic criteria as well as construction-history analyses of the site where they are erected, the author places the figures in the earliest phase of the art of the kingdom of Purang Guge, at the end of the 10th century, and notes the technological complexity of the sculptures as well as the numerous Central Asian references.

49 Tibetan domination of the Tarim states and neighboring regions had begun in the 7th century. “The Tibetans had now conquered a fairly large expanse of territory in eastern Central Asia. The region straddled the main East-West transcontinental trade routes, and was then a dynamic, integral part of the highly civilized Buddhist heartland of Eurasia” (ibid.: 37). In 787, Tibet captured Dunhuang (ibid.: 152).

Khocho fell to the Tibetans in 791, and in this period Tibetans took Khotan. “Bro Khri guz ram Sags, having invaded the Western Regions, subdued Khotan and levied taxes” (ibid.: 155). Thus began the long period of Tibetan rule over Khotan, the neighbouring regions of the southern route through eastern Central Asia.
importance for trade, on a crossroads of two major trade routes within the Silk Road network. Dunhuang was not simply a recipient of trade, however, but had a very active export market, too, and was a producer of many varieties of silk.

The Tibetan Buddhist elite in Central Tibet continued and developed these specific transregional markers of their taste for a status and court society and its treasures within a broader geographic horizon. Precious textiles such as silks play a prominent role among these markers. The value of silk gave it particular appeal as a political and religious symbol, it was widely accepted as a currency, and it served as a medium for artistic exchange.

This political aspect of material culture is in particular expressed in the images of bodhisattvas and lay adherents depicted in the sumptuous robes of Central Asian rulers and of the Tibetan elite including the turbans and diadems of the Tibetan kings, in the 11th-century Central Tibetan temples of Drathang and Yemar. Most impressive are the monumental cult images which were once housed in the temple of Yemar (destroyed in the 1950s). They were attired with precious robes tailored from silk brocades, and the artists who created them were perhaps drawing on models from silk-producing centres in Central Asia (cf. Govinda 1979: 44ff. for historic photographs). Characteristic are the static, somewhat compressed bodies, large heads and loose robes decorated with roundels known from precious silk brocades. The complex fabrics of the aristocratic elite’s clothing were widespread in the oasis towns along the Silk Road. A unique ensemble of valuable Central Asian silks of Tibetan provenance consisting of a jacket and trousers should be mentioned here (Watt and Wardwell 1997: 37; cat. no. 5). The set of Sogdian and Tang-period silks presumably comes from Tibet or was manufactured in Tibetan controlled areas in the 8th century and may thereby also have been the property of Tibetan kings. The extensive importation of valuable silks into Tibet is also documented in the inscription on the Zhol rdo ring in Lhasa (this stela is dated by Richardson [1985: 2] to the year 764 or slightly later). This mentions the annual duty or tribute payment of 50,000 bales of silk (dpya dar yug ina khr) from the Chinese rulers of this period (ibid.: 12–13).

The cult images of Drathang and Yemar are of strong Pāla-artistic flavour, resulting perhaps from the importation of Indian artists—purposefully engaged in the 11th century, inter alia of Atiśa. In

Illustrations of the paintings and sculptures have been published among others in Vitali (1990, chapter 2; Drathang: pls. 29ff., Yemar: pls. 18ff.). For a discussion of the political connotations of the famous pictures of gatherings with portrayals of the Buddha Vairocana at the centre in Gra/Grwa thang, see Heller 2002: 37–70.
contrast, details of cloths and ornament are reminiscent of images of elite culture in Central Asia, in particular Dunhuang during the Tibetan period. Of course precious textiles which were traded to Tibet are good candidates for such a transfer of codes associated with authority and courtly splendour. This conscious pluralism of style is best studied on the basis of the well-preserved Buddha gatherings in Drathang (Figs. 21–22). They consciously drew from codes of court society in Central Asia during the Tibetan period in order to project status and royalty in Central Tibet in the most effective way. One has also to mention the aspect of political theology in the sense of Tibetan kings as an emanation of the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara. In looking at the lC’og ro stela, one is reminded of the Indianising Central Tibetan mode of the bodhisattva portrayal.

Founders and their artists who created the cult images at Yemar and the Buddha gatherings at Drathang and Shalu developed a complex layering of Indianising figural types and Chinese Central Asian elite culture. The Shalu bodhisattvas (Figs. 23–24) (ca. mid-11th century) are represented in a Pāla idiom with corresponding clothing and jewellery. Comparable stylistic features can be seen in an early thangka featuring Buddha Amitāyus in the MET (New York, cf. Figs. 25–26; cf. Kossak 1998: cat. no. 1, p. 51); this is clearly created on Pāla models, as can be concluded by comparison with dated sculptures from Eastern India. This mode is different from the historic minor characters/lay adherents and donors with Tibetan clothing shown at Shalu and the upper section of the MET thangka (Fig. 26).51 These mirror how society’s elites dressed and were engaged in courtly receptions and outdoor pastimes such as hunting. The portrayals of the founders in the niches of the Shalu Gonkhang (mgon khang) represent one of these different types. They represent a local Tibetan mode with a concept of figures that is less abstracted and idealised, and presumably with contemporary attributes.

These examples are exemplary of the exchange and the mutual influence of Central Asian, Pāla, Newari and Tibetan art, which led to the development of wholly unique, unmistakeable art forms and to regional Western and Central Tibetan styles. In particular, depictions of valuable fabrics played an important role as identity-forming features in early Tibetan art.52

51 In gathering and Buddha-preaching portrayals in Drathang the bodhisattvas display a Pāla-style type of face combined with Tibetan forms of clothing. In addition, smaller accompanying figures are also portrayed that are reproduced in a Sinicising style with Tang-period jewellery and costumes. This reflects a cosmopolitan situation during the period of the “second dissemination of Buddhism” inherited from the imperial period. In this period diverse traditions co-existed in Central Tibet (U [ dbus ] and Tsang [ g tsang ]) integrating artistic trends from the Pāla dynasty of India and Nepalese art as well as models from the major Buddhist centres of Khotan and Dunhuang.

52 Textiles in paintings are signs of status, identity and individuality, and often lend the figures portrait-like features, even if the type of figure frequently follows stereotypical models. Accordingly, the precise—and very probably naturalistic—reproduction of textiles was often given great attention. Moreover, textile motifs and throne portrayals are fascinating evidence of the passing on of the courtly Tibetan luxury culture in the “ruling sphere” of the Buddha as the sovereign of the spiritual sphere as well as of the political intentions of the founders who are associated with these temples and their furnishings.
Characteristic elements of material culture in the earliest paintings in the entrance hall (sgo khang) at Tabo that point to Tibetan courtly culture in Central Asia are sumptuous robes with overlong sleeves of the ruling elites decorated with patterns which allude to sumptuous luxury textiles and the throne scenes of the royal founder Ye shes 'od, surrounded by baldachins decorated with scattered flowers (Fig. 20) (see Papa-Kalantari 2007a: 201; 2007b: 162ff.). These appear to be inspired by luxury textiles associated with royal workshops of oasis centres along the Silk Road in Central Asia.

Comparable sartorial conventions can be seen in assemblies or social gatherings of donors (including social interactions like drinking of wine) depicted on a ca. 11th century Pāla-style thangka in the MET (Figs. 25–26).

In particular large lotus rosettes constitute popular decorative elements in the Tang-era cave temples at Dunhuang which mimic sumptuous textiles, both on the ceiling and as painted honorific covers. They also adorn a number of baldachins on the Tibetan banners from Dunhuang mentioned above. The baldachins and costumes in the entrance hall at Tabo presumably mimic Central Asian luxury textiles, conforming to the tradition of the courtly tastes of the aristocratic elite during the time of the Tibetan Empire. Such luxury textiles created in courtly workshops in Chinese Central Asia painted in a Western Tibetan temple reflect the desire of the rulers to project authority and court society and its treasures in the most effective way.

In view of the illustration of textiles in Tabo, which exceed the throne portrayals in the frescos there and define the ruler’s space, it should be mentioned that tents made of valuable material—in
their function as mobile residences and thus an ephemeral room of high prestige—possibly played an important role as insignia of the Tibetan kings since the earliest times, as can be presumed from the burial objects in the Yarlung graves. Precious cloths representing codes of court society and Tibetan rulers were then also used to define Buddhist sacred space as can be seen in images of local protectors at Tabo as well as ceilings mimicking precious textiles. Accordingly, the tutelary deity is shown in a sacred space defined by a textile.

Similar aesthetic preferences and a refined culture of luxury cloths, as in the early paintings of Tabo, are also reflected somewhat later in the ornamental culture of the wall and ceiling paintings of the early temples of Shalu (Central Tibet, ca. 1045). The Yum Chenmo temple (Yum chen mo lha khang) at Shalu displays textile décor of large complex rosettes with naturalistic birds and playing children between pomegranates, which represent popular decorative elements on the silk damasks of the late Tang, the Liao and the Northern Song dynasties (10th–12th century; Figs. 24, 27–29; see also Watt and Wardwell 1997: 45, cat. no. 9, and 49, cat. no. 11). In the refined ceiling ornaments in the Yum chen mo temple affinities can be found with the depictions seen on the murals at Drathang (Figs. 21–22), which also feature single leaves in various contrasting colours and fanciful blooms combining different types of flowers and fruits.

The intention behind this complex layering is not a simple question of “artistic influence”, but they have political aims, namely a conscious elite self-fashioning of ruling houses who deemed themselves heirs to a past grandeur in Central Asia and sought to connect with the Tibetan Empire in Central Asia. A comparable phenomenon has been recently discussed by Flood (2017), who demonstrated that from the beginning of the 12th century Buddhist elite culture in Ladakh adopted symbols of status and power of local rulers on the borders of the Muslim world—the heirs of the sophisticated artistic traditions and innovations in Iran and beyond.

On this see Papa-Kalantari 2007a: 190; 2008: 235. Interesting in relation to this is also a monumental luxury silk fabric with large medallions and lion decoration on a red background in the Abegg Foundation, which has a Tibetan inscription and possibly is to be seen as a burial object that should be classified in the imperial context. For illustrations and a description see Otavsky 1998: figs. 5 and 6; further, see Heller 1998: 95–118 for a detailed analysis of the inscription and the art- and cultural-history context.

Foliage and lotus flowers are not canonical lotus blossoms with pointed lotus petals, but they show small, round petals in fan-like arrangements like bunches of flowers.
Dating

The meagre number of surviving sculptures from the time of the Tibetan kings (7th–9th century) and the early phase of the “later diffusion of Buddhism” in the kingdom of Purang-Guge (10th/11th century) means that a definite temporal attribution of the lCog ro stela based exclusively on stylistic analysis remains insecure. Nonetheless, the sum of the stylistic, epigraphic and historical evidence does permit a tentative assignment of the stela to a phase of the early Tibetan style, in sculpture and in painting in Central Asia and Central Tibet in the 9th century. Within this development the stela is most closely related in style to the Central Asian examples from Dunhuang and Keru, and thus a tentative dating to the end of the 9th or beginning of the 10th century can be proposed.

Historical evidence for political and thus also artistic relations between regions of Central Asia and Western Tibet can be associated with the donor of the stela named in its inscription, a member of the prestigious ‘Bro clan. This clan was present at Dunhuang, and also makes an appearance in Keru, and thus a tentative dating to the end of the 9th or beginning of the 10th century can be proposed.

It can be said that, as a whole, the stelae at Purang are simpler in style and more archaic in appearance than the early Tabo images (end of 10th century), and are thus of an earlier date than Tabo.57 However, both reflect a local variant in a common, independent tradition of the early Indianising Tibetan style in Central Tibet, drawing on sources of Tibetan art which flourished in Central Asia. Although created in different regions, in previous research it was subsumed under the general term “Himalayan Style”. The stela can rather be defined as a local current of a strong Central Tibetan, Pāla-inspired style which I denote “Tibetan dynastic style” due its complex layering and elements of luxury art designed to project power and prestige within a greater geographic horizon. Certain elements of this stylistic trend flourished in different regions and with local characteristics but they developed relatively independently.

Conclusion

A discussion of the early Tibetan style that goes beyond mere enumeration of influences from neighbouring cultures such as India, China or Nepal is still in its infancy. There are individual studies of a number of early temples and monasteries in the Western Himalayas, but the reconstruction of the historical development of a characteristic Tibetan art and research into the mutual stylistic relations of these artefacts in the Western Himalayas prior to the 13th century have not advanced very far as yet.58

The results of the present study allow us to establish a bridge between the stylistic development of early Buddhist art during the time of the Yarlung dynasty in Central Tibet and the oldest Buddhist foundations in Western Tibet, such as Tabo in the 10th century. The lCog ro stela represents an important missing link in this reconstruction. A constant feature is the desire to project court societies as wealthy and pious Buddhist donors. The models of these strategies in early Tibetan art were court societies in Central Asia and their treasures. Tibetan artists drawing on this language of elite culture effectively developed codes of their taste and grandeur within a broader geographic horizon. Not only luxury art and prestigious textiles and robes play an important role but so do the representations of social interactions, such as assemblies of monks depicted in elaborate settings and holding offerings, as depicted in an early Central Tibet thangka (Fig. 26). The latter are also central features to project authority in Islamicate-inspired donor assemblies at Alchi representing members of the ‘Bro clan (Kalantari, forthcoming).

The present analysis aims to embed the stela in terms of its art and history in a distinctive early Tibetan style in the Western Himalayas, but it also offers the opportunity to pay due tribute to the originality of this type. For it is the unique characteristics engendered in this dialogue between various cultures that endows the objects belonging to this style of early Tibetan art with their originality. In this style, it is evident that Indian and Central Asian models were consciously adapted and transformed to form a new and quite distinctive tradition.

56 Owing to the existence of a stylistically unique portrayal of a Vaiśravana in Nako in the western Himalayas, representing a “foreign” type in the region, which might have been spread through banners from Dunhuang, the author suggests a transfer of styles over long distances along the pilgrim and trade routes (Papa-Kalantari 2010: 102).

57 As there are no other known examples of this type from this period of sculptural form, the stela gives a certain idea of what the clay sculptures of Tabo and Ropa may have looked like in their original condition.

58 The definition of styles from the perspective of Tibetan literature and the comparison of preserved works with descriptions in these historical treatises remains in its early stages however.
This research reveals that the characteristics of early Tibetan art are not the product of an immature or even primitive style but the result of deliberate stylistic choice and are thus the defining features of an art form of extraordinary longevity and diffusion in Tibet. The task of future research will be to elucidate the development of regional variants and their relationship to one another.

The early phase of this type occurs at Dunhuang, Khotan, Central Tibet and in Western Tibet as early as the 9th century at the time of the Tibetan Empire, and continued to exist, with various different regional characteristics, until at least the end of the 10th/11th century. Whereas North-West Indian and Kashmiri stylistic elements became dominant in the royal Buddhist centres of Western Tibet at the end of the 10th century, in Central Tibet in contrast, with the active engagement of Indian artists, a unique amalgam of Tibetan and Pala-style models emerged during the 11th century.

In the Western Himalayas, this early Tibetan style was superseded in the 11th century by a courtly artistic idiom—created in direct interactions with royal workshops in Kashmir—that suited new religious requirements and the need for an outward display by the religious and political elite and found expression in the more sumptuous decoration of the temple and monastery complexes endowed by this elite, for which huge resources, probably from gold deposits must have been made available. Luxury art as a marker of the elite’s taste and status was then also inspired by the court culture of Kashmir and—from the 12th century—by small Iranising kingdoms on the border of the Islamic realm.

---

**Text Edition of the Inscription**

**Editorial Marks**
- @ yig mgo
- i gi gu log
- M rjes su nga ro
- O combination of subscripted 'a chung and superscripted na ro
- _ uncertain reading
= illegible letter or illegible ligature at the start of a letter
[=] damaged area where there was possibly a letter or ligature
· tsheg
[.] damaged area where there was possibly a tsheg
/ shad
: nyis tsheg
\(\times_\times\) subscripted letter presumably to save space

---

59 The presumably most important sources for the furnishing of the religious buildings seem to have been the rich gold deposits. Further it is known that under Ye shes ‘od the socio-economic organisation in the whole domain was subject to a thoroughgoing transformation and a permanent system of the funding of the monasteries was established (see Jahoda 2015: 53–54, 148–151).

60 Precious silks with large rosettes and other Iranicize motifs, in particular with pearl borders (transmitted by the Sogdians), were introduced to many oasis states, among them Khotan, which also found their way into the Buddhist art of Khotan (Watt and Wardwell 1997: 24), and also inspired textile representations on Kashmir bronzes.
**South Side**

1. \(\text{@}/ : / \text{rta} . \text{'i} . \text{lo} . \text{'i} //\)
2. \(\text{ston} . \text{zla} . \text{ra} . \text{ba} . \text{'i} . \text{ngo}\)
3. \(\text{la} // \text{seng} . \text{ge} . \text{zhang}\)
4. \(\text{chen} . \text{po}[\] \text{bro} . \text{khri[} \text{brtsan}\)

---

64 Iwao et al. (2009: 48) and Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang 'dus (2011: 210) locate the inscriptions on the west and east face of the stela. As has been verified by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po as well as the authors on the spot, also based on information provided by local villagers, the stela used to be set up in the past (as now) with the image of Avalokiteśvara facing east while the inscriptions were on the south and north sides.

65 See also the website https://www.univie.ac.at/Tibetan-inscriptions/ for excellent digital close-ups of the inscription (stills based on a video recording) taken by Kurt Tropper in 2010.

66 Iwao et al. (2009: 49) read a double shad after chen po for which there is no evidence (and no space).

67 Here, as on the other side of the stela, are exactly the same two syllables, i.e. in each case the root letter (ming gzhi) is poorly legible, or it seems that the inscription has been damaged just at this point. Iwao et al. (2009: 49) read [---], that is, unknown number of illegible letters. In my view, based on inspection in situ and photographic documentation (under differing light conditions) ra tags and na ro in the case of 'bro and ra tags and gi gu in the case of khri are clearly readable. My 2007 photograph of these lines (inv. No. CJ2007_03860031) also allows a considerably good reading of the root letter ba in 'bro.

---

5. \(\text{sgra} // \text{mgon} . \text{po} . \text{rgyal}\)
6. \(\text{gy-is} // \text{mtha}^{66} . \text{yas} . \text{pa}\)
7. \(\text{'i} . \text{sems} . \text{can} . \text{thaMs}_{\text{a}}\)
8. \(\text{chad} . \text{dang} // \text{thun} . \text{mong}\)
9. \(\text{du} . \text{bsngos} . \text{te} / /\)
10. \(\text{'phags} . \text{pa} // \text{spyan}\)
11. \(\text{ras} . \text{gz-igs} / /\)
12. \(\text{dbang} . \text{phyug} . \text{gi} / \text{sku}\)
13. \(\text{gzsugs} / / \text{rdo} .\)
14. \(\text{'bur} . \text{du} . \text{bgyis}\)
15. \(\text{nas} / / \text{bzhengs}\)

---

68 Iwao et al. (2009: 49) read a double shad after chen po for which there is no evidence. The text of the inscription rendered in Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang 'dus (2011: 211), which simply seems to reproduce the version published by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994: 4–6), has mtha (without ’a chung).
Iwao et al. (2009: 49) read pho for which there is no evidence.

Iwao et al. (2009: 49) read dga’ although the superscripted vowel sign is clearly visible.

Iwao et al. (2009: 49) transliterate this as bsng'o (which is problematic for the reasons given above) while I think that bsngO should be read here, which should be interpreted as an abbreviated form of bsng'o /b/. 
North Side (see Figs. 39–46)

1  @/ : / na . mo . 'phags

2  pa . spyan . ras . gz-ig

3  dbang . phyug . g-i . spyan .

4  sngar // sdig . pa . thaMs .

5  chad . n-i . 'chags²² . so /³³

6  bsod²⁴ . nams . thaMs

7  chad . ky-i . rjes . su . yi . rang

8  ngo // nyon . mongs pa da ng /³⁵

7² Iwao et al. (2009: 48) read 'tshogs, which cannot be totally excluded as a possible reading.

7³ Iwao et al. (2009: 48) have a double shad, for which there is no evidence based on our documentation.

7⁴ Based on the 2007 in situ inspection and photography by both authors, msod (as read by Iwao et al. 2009: 48) can be excluded (the prefix is clearly ba and not mo).

7⁵ In this line, economic use of space must certainly have been the reason why after mongs and pa there is no tsheg and why nga was subscripted to da at the end of the line.

9  shes . bya . 'i . sgrib . pa .

10  rnam . gnyis . ni . byang . /³⁶

11  bsod . nams . dang /

7⁶ Iwao et al. (2009: 48) have a double shad, for which there is no evidence based on our documentation.
42. Inscription, north face of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, overview lower part: lines 10–24 (P. Sutherland, 2010).

43. Inscription, north face of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, lines 9–12 (P. Sutherland, 2010).

44. Inscription, north face of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, lines 13–16 (P. Sutherland, 2010).

45. Inscription, north face of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, lines 17–20 (P. Sutherland, 2010).

46. Inscription, north face of sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) stela, lines 21–24 (P. Sutherland, 2010).

12 / ye . shes gy-i . tshogs
13 chen . po . mam . gny-is
14 n-i // yongs . su
15 rdzogs . nas //
16 bdag . zhang . =i
17 =i . brtsan . sgra . mgon .
18 po . rgyal . dang / / mtha,
19 yas . pa . =i . sems
20 can . thams . chad //
21 dus . gcig , du // bla ,
22 na. myed. pa. 'i. sangs.
23 rgyas. su. grub. par27.
24 gyur. c-iq / /28

**Translation**

In the first half of the first autumn month in the Year of the Horse, ‘Bro Khri brtsan sgra mGon po rgyal, seng ge (lion)29 and great zhang,30 dedicating equally among all the numberless sentient beings [the merit therefrom accruing], requested that a relief made of stone with an image of Ārya-Avalokiteśvara (‘Phags pa sPyan ras gzigs dbang phyug) be set up.31 This root of virtuousness shall be dedicated to the benefit of all sentient beings without exception!

Namo! In the presence of Ārya-Avalokiteśvara (‘Phags pa sPyan ras gzigs dbang phyug) I confess to all [my] misdeeds. There is a joy over and above all merit. As far as the obstacle of the afflictions (nyon mongs pa’i sgrīb pa, Skt. klesāvarana) and the obstacle of the knowable [shes bya’i sgrīb pa, Skt. jñeyāvarana], these two things, are concerned, they will be brought to perfect completion, and then I, zhang ‘Bro Khri brtsan sgra mGon po rgyal, and all the numberless sentient beings shall one day attain unsurpassable Buddhahood!32

**Historical Classification**

The question of how this stela should be classified historically cannot be easily answered on the available evidence and can turn out differently depending on different disciplinary and methodological perspectives, which results in differing implications for more far-reaching questions. As mentioned above, from an art-historical perspective through various references to the art of Central Asia (in particular of Dunhuang) and Central Tibet, this stela can on the one hand be placed in a broader, supraregional comparative context. On the other hand, it can be located in a regional stylistic development history and chronology of early West Tibetan art. One of the main questions of historical classification naturally concerns the dating of the stela, which from an art-historical perspective should be dated to the 9th century or beginning of the 10th century. A dating of the stela using scientific methods, for example by an analysis of the pigment on the surface, is preconditional on further researches (and permission). Provisionally, therefore, in addition to the art-historical findings there remains the palaeographic and content evidence provided by the inscriptions.

27 Also the reading bar seems possible.
28 In the version of the inscription published in Tibetan dbu can script by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring in September 1993 (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 4–6; reproduced in this way by Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ‘dus 2011: 211–213), apart from some insignificant differences in the case of individual tsheg, which are perhaps based on an earlier better legibility, there are some mistakes, which presumably are due to a lack of care on the part of the editing of the publisher and which have here been corrected. Thus for example on the south side in line six the clearly visible subscripted ’a chung at mtha’ is missing, or a particularly noticeable subscripted ’a chung at the end of line 19. Likewise on the north side of the stela a clearly legible shad at the end of line eight and at the start of line 12 as well as a double shad at the end of line 15 are missing. Neither does the poor and actually uncertain legibility of ‘Bro Khri both on the south and the north sides show in their reproduction. The fact that the existing poor legibility in 2007 existed previously is testified to by the illustration in Zheng (2000: 172), which took place relatively near to the time of the documentation by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring in September 1993 (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 4). In some cases, Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring were conversely able to read some “simple” tsheg and a double tsheg (between the double shad which separates the syllables sngor and sdi in line four of the inscription on the north side), which in 2007 were neither recognisable on site nor from the photos. In other cases, tsheg are visible at least from photos, even if uncertainly.

The text of the inscription was reproduced by Roberto Vitali (1996: 168) in a simplified, transliterated form, i.e. without consideration of its ancient palaeographic features. His basis for this seems exclusively to have been the text published in Tibetan script by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring. (In the photos of the two inscriptions accompanying their article the Tibetan text is illegible.)

29 According to Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994: 17) the term seng ge (lion) is a great honorary title. This title should presumably even be regarded as being specifically related to the ‘Bro clan (see below).

30 Describing someone as zhang chen po means that this is a great or significant person among the zhang po (literally the maternal uncle or the [classificatory] mother’s brother, actually related to the ruler on the mother’s side or from the clan of the [classificatory] mother’s brother, who in the time of the monarchy exercised functions as a minister or another high-ranking official). In the imperial period there were four such clans (‘Bro, mChims, Tshes pong, sNa nam), from which queens and the mothers of the btsan po came and which to this extent appeared as “bride-givers” to the btsan po line and were thus among the most powerful and politically influential (see for example Dotson 2004; Hazod 2006).

31 The expression gsal pa in line 16 also seems to permit an interpretation in the sense of gsal mchod, so that the request by ‘Bro Khri brtsan sgra mGon po rgyal for the erection of the stela can also be seen as being connected with a sacrificial ritual in which the divinity (yul lha, gzhi bdag) who lives in and rules the area is asked for permission or the blessing for the erection.

32 For a somewhat differing English translation see Vitali 1996: 168.
Palaeographic Evidence

The detailed comparative investigations of the script and textual features of the inscription carried out by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994), where they differentiate in their analysis into the field of calligraphy (yig gzugs), the mastery of writing (’bri rtsol) and the style of the content (brjod bya), led them to the conclusion that it was created during the time of the imperial kings (btsan po). The comparative basis of their investigation were the historically most important written records from the time of the monarchy, as they are to be found above all on the rdo ring, on bells and in the texts found in Dunhuang. The two authors devoted great attention above all to the palaeographic features and, on the basis of eight palaeographic or orthographic features that were characteristic of these written records, arrived at the conclusion that clear parallels with the inscription on the Avalokiteśvara stela in ICog ro can be noted. They further state that in view of the calligraphy the inscription on the stone stela from Western Tibet corresponds with that of the stone stela from the royal period, in contrast to which the corresponding features during the “later dissemination of Buddhism (in Tibet)” (bstan pa phyi dar), i.e. from ca. the fourth quarter of the 10th century, differ greatly.

A comparison of the Avalokiteśvara stela inscription with the calligraphic features of the inscriptions on old stelae of the royal period and on rocks shows the greatest similarities with the bSam yas and in particular with the mTshur phu stone stelae (ibid). In a further parallel they see between the ICog ro and mTshur phu stone stelae—the fact that each were commissioned by an individual minister for personal ends—they consider it conceivable that both were erected at about the same time. According to this, it would have been at the end of the 8th century or beginning of the 9th century, most possibly during the time of btsan po RaI pa can/Khri gTsug lde btsan (ibid.: 16) (815–841, data according to Dotson 2006: 416). Based on different indices, namely of the content—title and clan of the person who commissioned it named in the inscription (see below)—however, they also consider that they could have been created during or after the time of btsan po Khri Srong lde btsan, and also during the time of Khri Srong btsan (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 17–18).

Text-Content Evidence

Regardless of the assessment based on art-historical or palaeographic comparisons, the best way of establishing a time window for the creation of the stela would be through the identification of the person who commissioned it and in connection with the Horse year (rta’i la) mentioned at the beginning of the inscription on the south side of the stela. However, the identity of the commissioner is not known from any of the currently available historical sources.

Because of this fact, the particular Horse year unfortunately cannot be ascribed to a particular historical period. What is important, however, is that the name of the commissioner, it appears, is given in full in the inscription and includes all usual parts of the name. This fact can be utilised to draw further conclusions.

During the period of the Tibetan Empire (7th–9th century), references to people, above all those of a high social rank, were composed of the following elements, which were combined and also abbreviated: rus (clan), mying (person name or individual membership of a particular clan or family, as rus is usually translated, which

---

83 This includes among other things the way in which the yig mgo is written, the use of nyis tsheg, the use of gi gu log, the use of ya btags with mi, mig, ming, me, med, etc., the use of da drag after na, ra and la and the use of la chung in the genitive, which is separated from the previous syllable by a special tsheg (shrang bsad) (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 7–9).

84 Differing dates are to be found in the contemporary Tibetan sources for the start of the bstan pa phyi dar. For Western Tibet (sTod mNga’ ris) based on the data in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs Vitali assumes it started in 986 (Vitali 1996: 186).

85 See also the meticulous paleographic study of Tibetan inscriptions and texts dating from 7th–9th centuries by Dieter Schuh (2013), which is based on a wide range of samples (including the ICog ro inscription).
name), thabs, also gral thabs (title, rank), and mkhan (a kind of nickname). In addition, the membership of an ethnic group or of an administrative unit (such as stong sde) might also appear (see Richardson 1967; Uray 1978; Uray and Uebach 1994). With regard to the person who commissioned the stela, this means that his clan can be identified as the ‘Bro and he is to be seen as a member of this famous family in Tibetan history, despite the uncertain though also probable reading of the root letter in both places. His individual name can be considered to be mGon po rgyal, his nickname or the name by which he was known (see Richardson 1967: 11–12) seems to have been Khri brtsan sgra. Neither are in Richardson’s published (although also incomplete) name list of functionaries during the period of the Tibetan Empire. In the case of the title, there is a noticeable difference between the inscriptions on the southern and northern sides: on the north side it is shortened to zhang, probably because of the 1-form of the statement wishing to avoid self-importance, while on the south side marking the beginning of the text, in which the commissioner is as-it-were officially introduced, he appears preceded by the honorary title seng ge and the addition of zhang of chen po in double extended form.

Vitali takes the honorary title seng ge as the basis for a discussion of the relationship between this part of the name and the ‘Bro clan, and determines it as a specifically inherited rank or mark of prestige of particular members or sub-units of this clan, which was also used by the ‘Bro clan members in sTod, i.e. in Western Tibet. As examples he gives Seng dkar ma, the wife of Srong nge (the later Royal Lama [lha bla ma] Ye shes ‘od), the translator ‘Bro Seng dkar Śākya ‘od and a ‘Bro Seng dkar sTod pa bla ma Ye shes who was active in Central Tibet (dBus) in the 11th century (Vitali 1996: 169).

The suggestion, as in Vitali’s account, that there is a quasi internal connection (based on direct clan relationship) between the honorary title seng ge in the case of the inscription on the Avalokiteśvara stela, between an honorary title seng ge dkar mo i gong slag (or perhaps a mark of rank called seng ge dkar mo gong glag, see Dotson 2006: 118) linked to an 8th-century ‘Bro functionary, and a ‘Bro Seng dkar clan name first provable only in the 11th century and for this only through two examples, seems not entirely certain in view of these isolated indicators and needs to be supported by further evidence. In addition, the concept of sub-clans or sub-groups of clans seems to be contradictory, if one assumes an obvious territorially widely dispersed unit in the case of the Seng dkar “group” while comparably in the case of the Zangs kha sub-clan of the iCog ro clan the former

In this form the name is first documented for later periods and thus seems unusual in this historical context. The name part mGon po is a form that as far as is known first spread in the 11th century and precisely in connection with the Avalokiteśvara cult (Guntram Hazod, personal communication, August 2008). Nevertheless, it is perhaps worth noting that in the early 10th century mgon (po) first occurs as a defining component in the name of the founder of the West Tibetan kingdom, skyI lde Nyi ma mgon, and his three sons, dPal gyi mgon, bKra shis mgon and lDe gtsug mgon, together also described as sTod kyi mgon gsum.

90 In this way the name is first documented for later periods and thus seems unusual in this historical context. The name part mGon po is a form that as far as is known first spread in the 11th century and precisely in connection with the Avalokiteśvara cult (Guntram Hazod, personal communication, August 2008). Nevertheless, it is perhaps worth noting that in the early 10th century mgon (po) first occurs as a defining component in the name of the founder of the West Tibetan kingdom, skyI lde Nyi ma mgon, and his three sons, dPal gyi mgon, bKra shis mgon and lDe gtsug mgon, together also described as sTod kyi mgon gsum.

91 According to Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994: 17) the expression zhang chen po, zhang bIOn che BO or zhang chen po only emerged in the period of Khri Srong lde btsan. To this extent, in their opinion the person named in the inscription on the Avalokiteśvara stela could perhaps have been a great minister active during or after the ruling period of Khri Srong lde btsan. In the inscription of lDan ma brag (804/816) a ‘blon chen zhang ‘bro phri [khi] gzU dam (ram shags) is mentioned (see Heller 2003: 396). The information rendered by Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ‘dus (2011: 213) follows their view and adds on the presence of the ‘Bro clan in Upper mNga’ris that this great ‘Bro lineage (rUs rgyud) appears to have settled there after a military campaign waged by the Great Minister (bIon che) ‘Bro chung bzang ‘or mang against Khotan (Li yul) via the lDe sde administrative district in Upper Zhang zhung during the reign of Khri lde gTsug lIbsan/Mes ’ag tshoms (704–755). He speculates that eventually famous ministers appeared from this ‘Bro lineage (iBud).

Above and beyond this, looking through the above-mentioned reference works and text editions available online produced the result that zhang chen po occurs a total of four times in a two-part document (Pelliot tibétain 16, IOL Tib J 751) and indeed each time in the same way: bIon chen po zhang khri (khr-i)

_**sum rje dang! zhang chen po lha bzang**_ (28b4, 37a4–37b1, 41b1, 41b3; see Old Tibetan Documents Online). This document contains a collection of prayers that relate to the erection of a temple called gTsigs kyi gTsug lag khang in De ga gyu ts(h)al (following the treaty agreed between China and Tibet in 821/22). Recently this temple was identified by Kapstein as cave 25 of the Yulin grottoes in Anxi (these grottoes are ca. 120 km east of Dunhuang) (Kapstein 2004). According to Uebach, the zhang chen po lHa bzang mentioned, also given as chen po zhang lHa bzang (26b2, 27a1), is identical with the lHa bzang klu dpal known from other sources (Uebach 1991: 501), who is mentioned by Vitali as the brother of ‘Bro Khri sum rje (see Vitali 1996: 203–204, 207). In each case, the activities of the blon chen po zhang khri (khr-i) sum rje and zhang chen po lHa bzang recorded in the document (27a1), who are also named in it as the great founders (yon dbag chen po) who had this temple erected (probably in 823), are to be dated to the period of the rule of lIbsan po Khri gTsug lIbsan, better known as Khri Rai pa can, specifically in the 820s (Kapstein 2004: 100–101).

92 “Seng.dkar.ma is not a proper name but a title deriving from a symbol of rank particular to the ‘Bro-s (the seng.ge dkar.ma mo gong.slAg, i.e. “the white lioness fur collar”), which some members of the clan wore as a sign of their greatness. The title was also used by the ‘Bro-s of sTod. The clan affiliation of Ye.shes.’od’s wife is doubly significant because, on the one hand, it confirms the close associations of the ‘Bro-s with the mNga’ris skor.gsum royal family in no lesser way than that of the great Ye.shes.’od, and, on the other, it is the earliest instance around bStan.pa phyi.dar documenting the presence of the Seng dkar group among the ‘Bro-s of sTod.” (Vitali 1996: T78).

93 Even if the name Seng dkar ma might actually be based on a clan name Seng dkar, this should not automatically be read as equivalent to a clan ‘Bro Seng dkar.
is regarded as a close territorial unit. Apart from this, the question arises of how such sub-clans were described in Tibetan. The fact that there was a historical process of differentiation of clans during the period of the great Tibetan kingdom and also in later periods of West Tibetan history is indisputable. Thus for example for Spiti, according to a written source, of the more than 36 named clans (rus) there are five—Khyung mgo pa, Khyung ras pa, Khyung dkar pa, Khyung dar nag pa, Khyung jo ras pa (quoted after Yo seb dge rghan 1976: 325.12–13)—that in Vitali’s view can be regarded as sub-clans or sub-divisions of a higher Khyung clan, but which actually formed five independent clans and were counted as such. The term (b)rgyud pa on the other hand is to be seen as a subcategory of rus or rigs rus, which describes the patrilinear local lineages or members of them deriving from a common ancestor (a rus/rigs rus/pha rus).

The origin and spread of the 'Bro clan has been repeatedly discussed in numerous older and more recent works. Usually this has happened as part of the analysis of particular political, military or religious activities and functions of members of this clan in the period of the greater Tibetan Empire in areas of Central Tibet and Central Asia (e.g. in the region around Dunhuang) (see i.a. Tucci 1950; Demiéville 1952; Vitali 1990, 1996). There is later evidence of Central Asia (e.g. in the region around Dunhuang) (see i.a. Tucci 1950; Demiéville 1952; Vitali 1990, 1996). There is later evidence of the religious activities of members of this clan in Ladakh too (e.g. the foundation of the monastery of Alchi in the 12th century). An inscription in Alchi records members of the ‘Bro clan, starting with a ‘Bro sTag bzang, who came from Guge Purang (see Denwood 1980: 148; Vitali 1996: 201–202, n. 290). However, according to Vitali there were no indications of a continuous connection between the Buddhist activities of the ‘Bro clan in sTod (Purang) and that in Ladakh.

According to recent research, the regional origin of the ‘Bro clan should be seen as being in sTod or sTod khul, i.e. in an area in Western Tibet. This was also the area where they achieved their status (ga gnas) (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 17). Dotson comes to a similar conclusion on the basis of a re-analysis of the details in the post-dynastic historical textual sources (such as rgya bod kyi chos byung rgyas pa of mkhas pa Iide’u). Thus, according to Vitali, their origin is to be seen as linked to Upper gTsang (gTsang stod) or Gug cog, one of the core regions of Western Tibet, where the presence of members of the ‘Bro clan is verifiable. They also maintained this geographical link after the collapse of the kingdom (Dotson 2012: 180f.).

Vitali sees the erection of the Avalokitesvāra stela in ICog ro in connection with or as a consequence of a conquest of Purang by ‘Bro soldiers, which took place under RaI pa can (Vitali 1996: 198–199, n. 298) or under a Buddhist conversion carried out there under zhang skyid sum rje—who according to Vitali was probably one of the ‘Bro clan ministers (ibid.: 167, n. 229)—and which was instigated by bande Chos kyi blo gros not later than 836. In addition, in the time of RaI pa can—whose mother (‘Bro bza’) Khri mo legs was a member of the ‘Bro clan, which is why she not only nominally but in the actual sense had a zhang connection with the ruler—the ‘Bro were the only clan in sTod who could boast this title (ibid.: 166–167, 169).

During the time of RaI pa can the ‘Bro clan provided high-ranking functionaries at the rank of minister (zhang blon). The ‘Bro also exercised this function as ministers under ‘Od srung and under his son dPal ’khor btsan. A minister by the name of ’Bro gTsug sgra IHa sdong is mentioned under the latter. To this extent, the connection between the Central Tibetan royal line and the ‘Bro clan, as it existed in the time of RaI pa can, appears to have continued into the time of ‘Od srung and beyond. Thus the grandson (tsba bo) of ‘Od srung, skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon, the founder of the West Tibetan kingdom according to the La dWags rgyal rabs and other chronicles, was married to a woman from the ‘Bro clan (‘Bro bza’ Khor skyong).
As Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring also state in summary, with regard to the Avalokiteśvara stela in lCog ro this means that very little can be said with real certainty either about the time of the erection of the stone stela or about its creator, even if the paleo- and orthographic features of the inscriptions provide a certain historical attribution and the art-historical findings together with the other clues mentioned all in all make it possible to assume the 9th century as the most probable dating for its creation, most likely around Fire Horse year 826 or Earth Horse year 838 (as suspected by Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ‘dus 2011: 210) or in one of the following Horse years (perhaps even as late as the early 10th century).

Whether this stela falls within the starting phase of the West Tibetan kingdom and thereby is perhaps the only remaining example of the patronage of Buddhist art in Western Tibet from the time before Ye shes ‘od, or whether it represents, as it were, a bridge between the old Tibetan Empire and the Central Tibetan royal line on the one hand and the West Tibetan kingdom on the other, or belongs in the final phase of the old monarchy (and thereby is so far only the only relic testifying to the presence of Buddhism in this period in Western Tibet), will thus have to remain open and should not only provide a stronger impetus for further clarification of the historical attribution.

See Kurt Tropper’s note on the dating of the wall inscriptions in the great circumambulatory corridor (skor lam chen mo) of the Zha lu monastery: “at present the dating of Tibetan documents solely on the basis of their palaeography and orthography cannot be considered to be more than a rough approximation.” (Tropper 2007: 942).

However, it seems to be clear that it falls within the period of the “Early Spread of the Buddhist Teaching (in Tibet)” (bstan pa snga dar), which according to Vitali was officially proclaimed as the state religion, among others also in Zhung zhung, with the dissemination of a copy of the edict of bSam yas by Khri Srong lde btsan (Vitali 1996: 165, n. 222). From the sources, it is difficult to judge whether and to what extent this edict was carried out in Zhung zhung, which can at least partly be identified with areas of Western Tibet, and whether the influence of the Early Spread of the Buddhist Teaching actually also reached Western Tibet. One indicator that Western Tibetan in the late 8th century may have been a site of Buddhist activities and a meeting place for teaching and translating activities and an attraction point for Buddhist pilgrims is reports about the Indian monk-scholar Buddhaghuya (Sangs rgyas gsiang ba in Tibetan sources), who is supposed to have stayed in the Kailas area in the second half of the 8th century (see Dargyay 2003: 366f.; Cutler 1996: 55f.). Further indications lie in the fact that bKra shis mgon, the father of Ye shes ‘od, is mentioned in the mNga’ rits rgyal rabs (Vitali 1996: 515–6) as the founder of a Maitreya statue and of wall paintings in the gYi thub chos temple that was supposed to have been on the bank of the rMa bya river in Purang (see ibid.: 164–165). Actually, someone other than bKra shis mgon could be seen as the subject of this passage, in which he is not explicitly named, e.g. skyid lde Nyi ma mgon (Luciano Petech, personal communication, December 1996).

Tshe ring chos rgyal po. “Relating the History of mNga’ rits as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshar’s Nyi ma’ rits kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text”, this volume, pp. 102–103.

Nevertheless, it seems to be clear that it falls within the period of the “Early Spread of the Buddhist Teaching (in Tibet)” (bstan pa snga dar), which according to Vitali was officially proclaimed as the state religion, among others also in Zhung zhung, with the dissemination of a copy of the edict of bSam yas by Khri Srong lde btsan (Vitali 1996: 165, n. 222). From the sources, it is difficult to judge whether and to what extent this edict was carried out in Zhung zhung, which can at least partly be identified with areas of Western Tibet, and whether the influence of the Early Spread of the Buddhist Teaching actually also reached Western Tibet. One indicator that Western Tibetan in the late 8th century may have been a site of Buddhist activities and a meeting place for teaching and translating activities and an attraction point for Buddhist pilgrims is reports about the Indian monk-scholar Buddhaghuya (Sangs rgyas gsiang ba in Tibetan sources), who is supposed to have stayed in the Kailas area in the second half of the 8th century (see Dargyay 2003: 366f.; Cutler 1996: 55f.). Further indications lie in the fact that bKra shis mgon, the father of Ye shes ‘od, is mentioned in the mNga’ rits rgyal rabs (Vitali 1996: 515–6) as the founder of a Maitreya statue and of wall paintings in the gYi thub chos temple that was supposed to have been on the bank of the rMa bya river in Purang (see ibid.: 164–165). Actually, someone other than bKra shis mgon could be seen as the subject of this passage, in which he is not explicitly named, e.g. skyid lde Nyi ma mgon (Luciano Petech, personal communication, December 1996).

Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: The Monumental Avalokiteśvara Stela in lCog ro, Purang

**Oral Tradition**

There are also some details on the question of the origin (and thereby implicitly the creation) of the Avalokiteśvara stela in the local oral tradition in Purang, which might be relevant to further research and should therefore not be ignored. Apart from this, the local population express concepts and perspectives which contribute to their understanding of the function this stela has had for them in recent times and has today. When the two Tibetan scholars Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring arrived in sPu hreng (Purang) on 10 September 1993, according to their report, in answer to the question about old remains (gna’ shul) local administration officials mentioned a famous stela (in the area) with a so-called self-created sPa nyi zla’i phreng mdzes, which was in the Purang District on a bend in the road between the villages (grong tsho) of (l)Cog ro and Zhi sde south of the rMa bya gtsang po (Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring 1994: 4).

Further information in this relation has been collected by the late Gu ge Tshe ring chos rgyal po. According to this, there was a small administrative unit in Zhi sde called lCog ro, which was supposed to have been the residence area of a minister (blon po) of skyid lde Nyi ma mgon called lCog ro Legs sgra b'IHa legs. After he had arrived there and had brought this area under his control, the teaching of the Buddha spread widely there. It was known that members of the old Central Tibetan royal (btsan po) line exercised their rule from this area from then onwards. It is said of the stela (rdo ring) with the Phags pa sPa nyi zla’i phreng mdzes, that it was brought from Central Tibet (dBus gTsang) by the lCog ro clan. According to the older generation of the local population, the image of Phags pa sPa nyi zla’i phreng mdzes was invited to dKar dungs (in the upper rMa bya gtsang po valley) from dBus gTsang. It is also said that owing to a badly made oral delivery of the invitation it remained in lCog ro. It is also said that the stela forms the border between Zhi sde100 and Khri sde (Tshe ring chos rgyal po 2006: 142).

In the course of the documentation of the stela in 2007, there

100 The moving of a rdo ring is discussed by Hazod in the case of the famous Zhoi rdo ring in Lhasa (Sørensen and Hazod 2007: 602f.).

101 In the 13th century Zhi sde was a Tshal pa territory (Sørensen and Hazod 2007: 140).

102 The function of the rdo ring as boundary stones (sa brtags rdo ring) to mark political or territorial borders is also mentioned by Bellezza (2008: 71).
were discussions with individual village people in LCog ro. There are currently 43 houses or families in the village, one of them also called Cog ro (Cog ro mi tshang). The local territorial deity of the village (yul lha) (also exerting a protective function) is gNyan chen thang lha (also known as one of Tibet’s oldest and most famous mountain deities). According to the village people, the original orientation of the rdo ring (with the Avalokiteśvara relief) pointed eastwards. The name of the place where the rdo ring stands is “Martolo”.

During the New Year festival—here called the btsun mo’i lo gsar, “New Year Festival of the Queen”, and celebrated on the tenth and eleventh days of the eleventh month—butter is offered. During the festival, as part of which there is a ceremonial procession around the whole village, there is also a joint procession around the rdo ring.

Function

These details show that the Avalokiteśvara stela has a special significance for the population of the village and that it has a living cultic function. The erection of its own building for the stela as well as the moving of three other rdo rings can be regarded as a sign of official estimation of this stela as a monument of historic importance. This goes together with the fact that the stela, which has been documented on the eastern border of the town of Purang (Fig. 13) and since the Cultural Revolution was used as a bridge over a stream, with the smooth back facing upwards, has been moved and re-erected not far from its earlier location (which was below an old settlement of cave houses).

Based on the compilation of information on Tibetan rdo rings by Alexander Macdonald (2003), the observations in Western Tibet by Giuseppe Tucci in 1935 (i.a. in Zhi sde) (Tucci 1937) and the monumental compendium by John Bellezza (Bellezza 2008: 69–148), it can be deduced that there is a partial connection between the rdo ring and other similar monuments in the region.

From the 7th century the sGro (= ‘Bro) clan is also recorded in neighbouring Phan yul (ibid.: 195), where gNyan chen thang lha was widely worshipped as the supreme lha. According to Hazod, these kinds of divinity were often taken along on migrations, divisions or refoundations. This may be seen as an indication that the area around LCog ro in Purang was an imperial or even older territory of the ‘Bro clan, which at a later period was controlled by the Cog ro clan (Guntram Hazod, personal communication, August 2008). As Samten Karmay has shown, the cult of local and mountain gods has played a major role for the social structuring of local communities and clans (e.g. as ancestor mountains) in Tibet since the early 7th century, but also in the legitimation of large political confederations (also precisely in the case of gNyan chen thang lha or Thang lha ya bzhur) (Karmay 1996: 60f.).

The discovery or rediscovery of this stela possibly not so long ago (although at least before September 1993)—the article by Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994), which was not known at the time of the interview, does not mention such a discovery however—seems quite plausible in the light of the (re-)discovery of a further stela (see Fig. 13).
It was in the power centre of a region (at this time most probably ruled by members of the 'bro clan'). The latter can also be assumed because it was erected on the orders of a noble who was allied with the ruling royal family, as the research into the title in connection with the clan membership of the commissioning person shows without doubt.

Bibliography


BLO BZANG NYI MA. 2011. ‘Bro tshang gi lo rgyus dang de las ’phras pa’i ’bro bza’ khris ma lod kyi skor rags tsam dpyad pa. lHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.


105 See also Aldenderfer 2003, 2007.

106 “Attirano la mia attenzione certe pietre piantate per terra, dinanzi alle quali la gente si genuflette e mormora preghiere: sopravvivenze di culti megalitici, of a somewhat crude construction and which according to the details in the archive was taken by Tucci’s companion Eugenio Ghersi in Zhi sde mkhar.

107 As the kings and ministers in general acted as leaders in the centre of regions, according to Tshe ring chos rgyal and Zla ba tshe ring (1994: 17) most stelae of the royal period were in the centre of these territories, which does not mean, however, that stelae etc. were not also erected in other regions and border areas (for example, such as with India). This aspect of centrality was, for example, present symbolically in multiple forms in the case of the erection of the rdo ring at the old royal graves in 'Phyong rgyas (i.a. as axis mundi, on the basis of the dedication ceremony as a magical, power-giving centre), as was analysed by Tucci (1950: 32f.). Above and beyond this, the rdo ring in ‘Phyong rgyas also marked a territory, that of the dead, that was strictly demarcated from that of the living (Guntram Hazod, personal communication, August 2008).

108 Not least also if it is assumed that the erection of the stela also simultaneously served as a territorial marker that defined the area around its location as land belonging to the ‘Bro clan.

109 Ring (i.a. also known as mon rdo) from archaic or prehistoric periods and those examples from historic periods, which are not infrequently decorated with inscriptions or reliefs, at least in the recent past in the cultic behaviour of the local population. This includes offerings (such as butter) and reciting prayers (Macdonald 2003: 91–92). To him this seems to correspond to the overlapping of older concepts by a Buddhistically marked mythological perspective, as Tucci was able to record in the case of three rdo ring in Zhi sde.


DO RGYA DBANG DRAK RDO RJE. 2013. lHa bla ma ye shes ’od kyi rnam thar rgyas pa bzugs so. Gu ge paṇṭita [sic!] Grags pa rgyal mtshan gyis mdzad. lHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, 1–130.


——. 2001. sPa rgyal bod kyi rdo brkos yi ge phyogs bsgrigs kyi ma yig dag bsher dang de’i tshig ’grel dwangs sang gangs chu. IHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.

——. 2010. Tibetan Inscriptions in the Western Himalaya; https://www.univie.ac.at/Tibetan-inscriptions/ (last accessed April 18, 2019).
——. 2006. mNga’ ris chos byung gongs ljangs mdzes rgyan. Lhasa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.
Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari

TSHE RING RGYAL PO. 2011. mNga’ ris rtsa mda’ rdzong khongs wa chen phug pa’i ldebs ris sgyu rtsa’l / 阿里札達額欽石密壁画藝術 / Mural Paintings in Wa-chen Cave in Western Tibet. Iha sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang. ——. 2014. mNga’ ris sa khul rtsa mda’ rdzong na mchis pa’i gu ge rgyal rabs skabs bzhiangs pa’i Iha khang gi mtshan byang skor la rags tsam brjod pa. In: Tropper, Kurt (ed.) Epigraphic Evidence in the Pre-modern Buddhist World. Wien: Arbeitskreis für tibetische und buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 193–216.


Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po

Brief Description of the Traditions Related to the “Translator’s mchod rten” in Kyu wang, Western Tibet

Translated and Annotated by Christian Jahoda*

The [stela with the] mchod rten of the Translator (lo tsā ba) [Rin chen bzang po, 958–1055] is located at 31° 43’ N and 78° 52’ E [at Kyu wang] (Fig. 3), viz. approximately to the east of a rectangular stela with the mchod rten of the Translator (lo tsā ba) (Fig. 3).

* The translation of this study is based on the unpublished article by the author entitled Kyu wang na mchis pa’i lo tsā ba’i mchod rten dang ‘brel yod srol rgyun skor la rags bsam brjod pa. Field work in the Rong chung area of Western Tibet was carried out by the author in May–June 2013. It was financed by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF) within the framework of the research project P21806-G19 “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, Conflict and Integration” directed by Christian Jahoda at the Institute for Social Anthropology (ISA), Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna. [Editors’ note.]

1 Kyu wang Rad nis (located in the Rong chung area of Western Tibet) is mentioned in the middle-length biography of the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po as the place where he was born. As it was then, today Kyu wang belongs to Rad nis village (situated on the left bank of the Glang chen kha ‘bab/Sutlej river). Kyu wang is located ca. 6 km to the south of Rad nis, not very far from the Indian border. In administrative terms Rad nis is part of rTs a mda’ District or Circle (rdzong) and belongs to the municipality (shang) of gTs g.yag (cf. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2006: 293 and 299, n. 1).

The worldly and supramundane circumstances of Rin chen bzang po’s birth are given in some detail in various extant versions of the middle-length biography of this religious figure. Not only the day but also the exact location—an oblong field at Kyu wang (kyu wang gi zhing nar mo zhig)—are given there: “de yang spyi mes g.yu sgra stong bshan [sic!] gyis mchod pa’i yul skyu wang rad nis zhes bya ba ru […] de yang rtsi’i lo dbyar zla tha chung gi tshes bcsu la bpa dbang/ yum skyu wang gyi zhing nar mo gcig tu yur ma mzaad cing yod pa la/ yum cung cig sku kham bzhag pa snyam pa cig byung nas/ zhing gnya’ rub yon nas/ dngos su yum gsungs pa la/ g.yas pa la ma bya cig babs/ g.yon pa la khu dbyug cig babs/ spyi rtsug tu ne tso gcig babs so/” (Rin chen bzang po rnam thor 1, f. 6a3–f. 8b3).

Compared to the text in this unpublished manuscript (which was sent to Giuseppe Tucci from Pooh in 1932) other versions show some interesting spelling variants, notably also in the case of place names: “gsum pa ’khrung (gsum pa/ ’khrungs) yul ni/ spyi me (mes) g.yu sgra stong btsan gyi mchod pa’i yul kyung rad ni zhes bya ba ru (bar) […] rta lo dbyar zla tha chung gi tshes (tshes) bcsu la yum kyung gi zhing nar mo cig (zhig) tu yur ma mzaad cing yod pa la/ yum cung zad sku kham bsng pa zhi byung na/ g.yon pa la khu byug cig babs/ spyi rtsug tu ne tso gcig babs so/” (Rin chen bzang po rnam thor 2: 58.3–61.4; variant readings are based on the text in Rin chen bzang po rnam 1. Kyu wang, Rong chung area, view towards south-east/Glang chen kha ‘bab (Sutlej) river valley (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
There is about 200 metres between this [stela] (Figs. 4 and 5) and a square stone slab with the footprint of the mother of the Translator (Figs. 6 and 7) in the rectangular field. It [the stela] is 3,839 metres above sea level.

Two of the three stelae (rdo ring) there do not have any inscriptions and because one, which has engravings of a figural representation (sku bris) and of a mchod rten on each of the four sides, is a particular stela it is referred to by the villagers as the “Translator’s (lo tsā ba’i) mchod rten” (Figs. 8–11). This stela with the stone carving is 0.96 metres high and 0.20 metres wide. On the south, the mchod rten with the figural representation is 0.80 metres high and 0.15 metres wide. On the west, the mchod rten with the figural representation is 0.75 metres high and 0.15 metres wide. On the north, the mchod rten with the figural representation is 0.80 metres high and 0.15 metres wide. On the east, the mchod rten with the figural representation is 0.75 metres high and 0.20 metres wide. In addition to the image with a five-partite crown (rig lnga’i prog zhu) (Fig. 13), there is a mchod rten with an umbrella consisting of thirteen rims, a vase and a lion throne (seng khri). On top of the vase on the eastern face, there is even a hole for a forefinger to pass through (Fig. 12).

On top of a maṇi wall (man thang) to the east of the three stelae—the stela with engraved mchod rten and figural representations and the two without inscriptions—are a lot of maṇe (maṇi) stone engravings that have been offered. Each year around the time before sowing the field, the household (mi tshang) with the family name (rus ming) sNub begins a propitiation ritual at the site of the three stelae.

This field, which is referred to as rectangular (zhing gru bzhi nar mo), is also known as the “long auspicious field” (zhing bkra shis ring mo) (personal communication Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, July 13, 2013). [Editor’s note/CJ.]

The mother of the Great Translator (lo chen) was from a big household (mi tshang chen po) known as the Rad ni[n]s mKhar ba [“fort household of Rad nis”] as whose maidservant (g.yog mo) she was responsible for irrigating the field. [This information clearly represents an account from a retrospective view that is based on the current household and family. It is not clear how this statement can be brought into agreement with the information contained in the middle-length biography of Rin chen bzang po, that his mother was a woman from the (noble) Cog ro clan or family. Editor’s note/CJ.]

According to information based on satellite images, the distance between the two spots is perhaps around four to five hundred metres. [Editor’s note/CJ.]

Due to lack of information, in this case it cannot be determined whether rus denotes a wider social concept, such as implied by dGe rgan’s description of rigs rus, that is, groups which trace their descent patrilineally from a common ancestor, reflecting conditions at the beginning of the 20th century (see dGe rgan 1976: 324–325). According to him, rigs rus pa (members of this type of kinship group) were called pha spun by the people in Ladakh, rus pa by people in Rong and sTod, and pha spad or pha rus by the population in Spiti. Cf. also Jahoda 2017. [Editor’s note/CJ.]

2. Kyu wang settlement and field area, view from north-west (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

3. Radni (Rad nis), Kyuwang (Kyu wang) and Tiyak (gTi g.yag), Upper Sutlej (Glang chen kha ‘bab) valley/ Rong chung area, Tsamda (rTsa mda’) District, Tibet Autonomous Region, China (G. Hazod, 2019).
stelae known as the "Translator's (lo tsà ba'i) mchod rten" by offering bread and various other offerings. One day later all the fathers among the inhabitants of this village circumambulate the three stelae three times on horseback after which a circumambulation of the auspicious meditation cave of the translator at the bottom of a rocky mountain to the west is made (Fig. 14). Subsequently, after a goat kid (ra rtsid bu) has been killed on top of a square stone slab near the three stelae its intestines and all other internal organs are burned and then, still smouldering, cast away and a red offering (dmar mchod) is performed. Then, after the consumption of beer and singing of songs, dancing and other festive activities, the sowing of the field can start.

The rectangular field extends to the west of the three stelae or the "Translator's mchod rten". Slightly above this there is a pond where in summertime many swans and ruddy geese take up residence. In wintertime when the water is frozen everything turns white. Even higher up from the rectangular field there is a spring which is said

---

6 When about one year old the [goat] kid (rtsid bu) is referred to as goat (ra).
7 That is, an offering of the blood of a slaughtered animal. Offerings of this kind were also performed in former times and partially up to the present in certain villages in Upper Kinnaur and Spiti valley. In Poh, a village ca. 10 km to the west of Tabo, goats and sheep were still being killed for this purpose some decades ago. In his youth (in the late 1960s) the present lo chen Rin chen bzang po sprul sku himself saw the blood of the slaughtered animals on the rwa co in Kyibar and Hikim in upper Spiti valley (personal communication, New Delhi, February 27, 2000) (cf. Jahoda 2006: 35f.). [Editor’s note/CI]
In autumn, at about the time of the harvest, thirteen horsemen from the village come to the site of the “Translator’s mchod rten” and have to perform a red offering (dmar mchod) for the territorial deity. In local oral tradition it is said that the Great Translator (Rin chen bzang po) brought seven blue water snakes from India, one of which was set free at his birthplace at the rectangular field (at Kyu wang), as a result of which abundant water sprang from this place.

8. Stela, “Translator’s (lo tsa ba’) mchod rten”, view facing south (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

The figures are engraved in a graphic, planar and rather schematic manner into the block. The figural types stand in the refined and lasting tradition of early Kashmir-style sculptures of Western Tibet. The style appears to be related to early monuments of the Western Himalayan region; examples are the sculptures in the Assembly Hall (du khang) of Tabo (Spiti valley), attributed to the renovation of the temple in the mid of the 11th century. The artifacts represent a style which is strongly related to that of Kashmir, and they were most probably created together with the artists brought by the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po. Characteristics include the broad shoulders, v-shaped muscular upper body, large crown and earrings, and long curled hair. [Editor’s note/CK.]

Fig. 9. Stela, “Translator’s (lo tsa ba’) mchod rten”, view facing south (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

Unfortunately the gestures (mudrā) are hardly readable but the images may represent a unified program comparable to the monumental fourfold-image of rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana) at Tabo crowned by images of small stūpas. Stūpas at the top of a nimbus are often found in haloes of sculptures associated with the West Tibetan kingdom. The four images recall as well miniature stūpas from Swat (8th–9th century) featuring the four Tathāgatas which face the respective directions of space (cf. Luczanits 2009: Cat. no. 291, p. 366). [Editor’s note/CK.]

In local oral tradition it is said that the Great Translator (Rin chen bzang po) brought seven blue water snakes from India, one of which was set free at his birthplace at the rectangular field (at Kyu wang), as a result of which abundant water sprang from this place.

9. a phyi is the usual spelling in dictionaries (see, for example, Goldstein 2001: 1188). The spelling i phyi and in particular i phi follows the pronunciation in Central Tibetan and Western Tibetan dialects respectively. The pronunciation in the surrounding areas is jī (Tabo, Spiti: “old woman, grandmother”), jībi (Ru thog, sGar thog, sPu rang: “old woman (h)” (see Bielmeier et al. 2008: 963–964). [Editor’s note/CJ.]

10. As for this i phi Chu dbang ma, in fact i phyi Chu khang ma (“Water Governing One”). In the morning a ritual barley flour offering (yul lha) I phyi [i phyi, a phyi, grandmother] Chu dbang ma (“Water Governing One”).
Brief Description of the Traditions Related to the “Translator’s mchod rten” in Kyu wang, Western Tibet

(brang gyas) is prepared and then offered. After this when the horses have been saddled and the men dressed up [the place of] I phi Chu dbang ma’s residence] is circumambulated [on horseback]. Then, along with its circumambulation, offerings are made in the rectangular field. After arriving at the east of the “Translator’s mchod rten”, they circumambulate a big juniper tree there. Then three horse races are held on the convenient surface of a plain to the west of the

lands to the south (mon). [See Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2006: 298 for further information on I phi Chu dbang ma. Editor’s note/CJ.]

Then they return and [the place of] I phi chu dbang ma’s residence] is circumambulated again. A drummer11 then brings a goat and performs a circumambulation of the “Translator’s mchod rten” in a rectangular field. The oblong upright block of stone is narrower on the top and recalls the shape of other stelae in historical Western Tibet, such as the ones at ICog ro in Purang and Pooh in Upper Kinnaur. It features on each side a sitting bodhisattva and a stūpa above. The high stūpas are of different types and topped by sun and moon. Visibility on all four sides, together with the narrowing in the uppermost part of the block—which recalls the finial of a stūpa—appear to indicate that the monument is rather conceived as a sculpture designed to be rituallly used by circumambulation. [Editor’s note/CK.]

11 The function of drummer (rnga brdungs mkhan) is passed on within the drummer’s family, with its residence at g’i g.yag, patrilineally from father to son (pha tsha bu rgyud). [Persons with this function seem to belong in Rad nis—as also, for example, in Spiti—to families where this function is hereditary. It is not clear whether at Rad nis these families constituted an endogamous community and represented a socially subordinate group as was (and to a large extent still is) the case in Spiti. Editor’s note/CJ.]
“by leading it around clockwise (g.yas skor). After finishing the circumambulation, the goat is killed there on top of a square bolder with a smooth surface. The goat meat is apportioned based on the mu of the field and the internal organs are roasted underneath a square stone on a piece of uncultivated land.

Later, with the liberal consumption of beer and the performance of dances a festive celebration takes place and (people) enjoy the pleasures of life. On the next day the field is harvested [by sickle]. On the first day [of the harvest] due to the fact that the drummer harvests [with a sickle] according to his wish and desire whatever of the fields of the village occurs best (to him) and is allowed to take (this) away, there is a very large income for him.

After arrival in Rad nis village (Fig. 16) seven or eight villagers in
Brief Description of the Traditions Related to the “Translator’s mchod rten” in Kyu wang, Western Tibet

14. Meditation cave (sgrub phug) of lo chen Rin chen bzang po at the bottom of a rocky mountain above Kyu wang (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
15. Place where the great translator’s snake was released (lo tsā ba’i chu sbrul gldā sdo) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
16. Rad nis village and monastery (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

... turn give the drummer seventeen bunches of bundles of wheat piled up in the fields after harvest (gro lcog). In addition around noon on the 29th day of the first month of the Tibetan calendar an extensive ritual of chanting the (om) ma ni (pad me húm) mantra is performed (for him).

On the auspicious 30th new-moon day of the Tibetan month (gnam gang), at the beginning the first sample of offering beer (chang phud) is offered to the monastery. At this time the women wear be rag (["Mongolian-type"] hats, robes of golden and white brocade and black yak-skin boots. In this way invocations and offerings to the local gods (lha gsol) are made in a proper way. Furthermore the men from the mKhar ba ("fort household") family of Rad nis wear brocade clothes with a particular design (ri mo).

At that time a majestic mountain-shaped gtor ma, which is also called a mountain (ri bo), is made and the Rad nis Pag si family performs an offering rite for the territorial deity (yul lha) mes ("ancestor") rDo rje legs pa and for this there is a ceremonial arrow with different-coloured ribbons (mtshon ched kyi mda’ dar) tied to it. At the time when mes rDo rje legs pa enters a trance medium the drummer is absolutely needed and after the descent of the god is finished lots of offerings of butter, tea, meat and salt must be given to the drummer.

Since the drummer is a good blacksmith (lcags bzo) he makes things required for the peasants’ field work, [such as] hoes (stog rtse)
[tog rtse],20 ploughshares (thong gshol), sickles (zo rwa [zor ba]),21 axes (sta gri), hooked knives (ku ram),22 ladies (thum bu),23 and so on. Because the household in which the blacksmith function was passed on at Rad nis has no [other] work, it is said that there is no other way but to immediately accept any request from the peasants and it is never allowed to say there is no time etc. Even though he [the blacksmith] manufactures whatever has to be made, the peasants are as well obliged to give sumptuous parties (for him) and to host (him) so that there is absolutely no way for him to perform his work carelessly. At the time when Rad nis village “feeds” (gso) [that is, performs an offering ritual to] the water snake [mentioned above], or carelessly. At the time when Rad nis village “feeds” (gso) (him) so that there is absolutely no way for him to perform his work carelessly. At the time when Rad nis village “feeds” (gso) [that is, performs an offering ritual to] the water snake [mentioned above], or if there is a sick person in Rad nis village or whatever else happens in this way, the habitual practice was to kill a black goat and to perform a red offering (dmar mchod). Later, after the territorial deity (yul lha) was bound to the teachings of the Translator, on the 26th (nyi shu [rta] drug) [day] of each month bread known as ru bri24 was offered [to her]. Due to the fact that this was [more] suitable [with respect to the teachings], the tradition of performing a red offering (dmar mchod) was terminated. Then, after performing a burnt offering (bsur btang), this bread is distributed to everyone and eaten. The donor (sbying bdag) is the Rad nis mKhar ba (“fort household”) family. At this time, [they] go to the place of residence of the territorial deity (yul lha) Do rje legs pa and drink beer and perform dances. After bringing the remaining beer into Rad nis monastery [they] happily celebrate. During the same time the drummer goes everywhere to the households to ask for beer and thereby receives a lot of beer, meat and so on. In the evening of this [day] all the young men and women from each household of Rad nis village sing and dance the whole night and fully enjoy life.

Bibliography

20 Based on the linguistic data compiled by Bielmeier et al. the tool referred to by this name seems to be a hoe. This agrees in particular with the use of the word in the local dialect at Tabo (Western Innovative Tibetan: pronunciation töktse; cf. Bielmeier et al. 2008: 339, where the spelling is rendered as tog tse or tog rtse). See also Jahoda 2015: fig. 36, p. 315, for an illustration of a s/tog rtse from Tabo. [Editor’s note/CJ.]
21 zor ba seems to be the most common spelling (cf. also Bielmeier et al. 2008: 775). [Editor’s note/CJ.]
22 A ku ram is a hooked knife (gi gugs) especially for heavy cutting.
23 A thum bu is Western Tibetan (stod mnga’ ris) dialect (yul skad) meaning skyog (skyogs, ladle).
24 There is no information as to the kind of bread this is. [Editor’s note/CJ.]
**Appendix: Places Associated with the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po by Local Oral Tradition (Figs. 17–24)**

The following places are named as such in a final paragraph of Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po’s text and in the named folders into which his photographic documentation was divided by him. [Editors’ note.]

17. The place of residence of Lord (jo bo) rDo rje chen mo who was invited by the Translator (lo tsā ba) [Rin chen bzang po] is located beneath a red hill, not far from the rectangular field at Kyu wang. The place where Lord (jo bo) rDo rje chen mo is worshipped between Rad nis and Kyu wang on a footpath along a narrow ledge on the side of a precipice where many quartz stones are heaped up (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

18. Place where the Translator’s horse was tied to a juniper tree (lo tsa ba’i rta ’dogs sa shugs pa) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
19. The Translator’s gtor ma plate and round gtor ma offering (lo tsa ba'i gtor gzhong dang 'brang rgyas) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

20. The Translator’s solitary stone (lo tsa ba'i chigs rdo) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

21. Reverence to the Translator (lo tsa ba'i dbu rjes) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
22. The Translator’s throne (lo tsā ba’i bzhugs khrí) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

23. The Translator’s cooking pot or eating bowl (lo tsā ba’i zhal lu’am zhal mchod) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).

24. The Translator’s saddle (lo tsā ba’i rta sga) (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2013).
Christian Jahoda

Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Chapter on the History of mNga’ ris in *Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs*: Notes on the Author and the Content*

Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ris in his *Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes* is an important source on the early history of Western Tibet that has come to light in recent years. This text was published as a facsimile edition in 2011 by dPal brtsegs bod yig dpe mying zhib ’jug khang in volume 36 (Chi) of the series *Bod kyi lo rgyus rnam thar phyogs bsgrigs* (see Gu ge Paṇ chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011). This manuscript was originally written in *dbu med* script and is not easily readable, which is also due to the frequent use of contracted words (*skung yig*), abbreviations (*bsdus yig*) and old (partly also “unorthodox”) spellings.

The account given in the following section presents some biographical data on the author Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan and mainly gives information contained in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po’s contribution “Relating the History of mNga’ ris as Written in Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s *Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text*” (this volume, pp. 89ff.).

The ensuing sections are dedicated to paraphrasing the content of the text and providing further information in footnotes in order to highlight and discuss new information on various matters that are essential for research from the perspective of a historical social anthropology of Western Tibet.

**The Author**

Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan dpal bzang po was born in the Female Wood Sheep year 1415 during the seventh sixty-year cycle of the Tibetan calendar in the area of sGyu (rGyu ’gul) which belonged to the territory of the Dharma King (*chos rgyal*) of mDa’ ba in Gu ge lHo stod of mNga’ ris. His family line was sKyi nor, from among the five Zhang zhung rus and [his] paternal ancestors were even venerated as being related to the Sun lineage (*nyi ma’i [..] gdung rgyud*). His father’s name was Rig ’dzin rdo rje and his mother’s was sKyid pa. Being eminently intelligent from a very young age, with the greatest diligence and without any difficulty he became engrossed in reading

---

* The research for this article was conducted within the framework of two research projects funded by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF): “Oral and Festival Traditions of Western Tibet: Processes of Cultural Memory and Renewal” (P20637-G15) and “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, Conflict and Integration” (P21806-G19). These projects were carried out under the direction of Christian Jahoda at the Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna.

The author wants to thank Lobsang Yongdan, Zurich, and Dan Martin, Jerusalem, for offering advice on selected sections of the Tibetan text as well as Horst Lasic for comments on the possible Sanskrit titles of Tibetan texts mentioned in *Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes*. For the most part, this seems to be based on Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s biography *rNam thar dgos ’dod byung bo* by Jam dbyangs Nam mkha’ brtan pa (‘Jam dbyangs Nam mkha’ brtan pa 2013; see also Heimbel 2014: 64–71).

2 In his *lHa bla ma ye shes ’od kyi rnam thar rgyas pa* (*Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od*), the title preceding his name is *gnas lnga rig pa*i pandi to (see Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 355/ [4] 41a; see also Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Panḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 168), that is, a scholar with mastership in the five branches of Buddhist learning.

3 On these Zhang zhung rus, see below the section *Paraphrase Section I: On Zhang zhung. Rus* (literally “bone”) which is often translated and explained as “clan” should be understood in this context as descent group based on patrilineal descent. The name of his family lineage (gdung) which is given as sKyin nor, is phonetically very close to sKyin wer, one of the five Zhang zhung rus. Both names are very close phonetically to Kinnaur, the name of the wider area along the upper Sutlej valley.

---
and writing. By the time he was a little older, even though he caught a severe illness, after having received spiritual instruction from the eminent master Chos dpal ‘dzin on the Lord of Life (Tshe bdag) and Hayagrīva (rTa mgrin) and having performed the respective meditation he was healed of this illness. He then received numerous religious empowerments (dbang khrid), oral religious teachings (man ngag), and reading transmissions (lung) of the Dwags po bKa’ bryud pa (school), and from his father concealed treasures and pronouncements (gter bka’) by Guru Rinpoche [Padmasambhava], and many teachings (chos) of his paternal ancestors.

At the age of eleven, even though it was forbidden to ask his father and mother to leave for a religious life he went to Chos rje Nam mkha’ rgyal mtshan. He was ordained amid eleven monks, Drung pa Nam mkha’ rtse mo and others. At that time he received many teachings (chos) from Drung pa Nam mkha’ rtse mo and sprul sku Nam mkha’ rgyal mtshan, [such as] on ‘Dul ba od ldan,’ mDo’dzang blun. 5 Klu sgrub’s (Nāgārjuna’s) mDo kun las btus pa, 6 and on the seven lineages of Guhyasamāja Akṣobhya, 7 etc. He studied and stayed as an attendant until he reached the age of twenty-one.

At the age of twenty-one, when the king of Gu ge sent Drung pa Nam mkha’ rtse mo to invite Chos rje rDo rje ‘chang Kun dga’ bzang po (Ngor chen Kun dga’ bzang po) to reside in Glo bo he came along as an attendant of this master (rje; that is, Drung pa Nam mkha’ rtse mo). In Glo bo he [Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan] met with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po. From Ngor chen rDo rje ‘chang he received instructions from a follower of the Sa skya pa school with Chos rje Kun dga’ bzang po.

In the field of epistemology (tshad ma), he wrote on the property of the subject. He also wrote on Sanskrit and produced a written work related to the four classes of Tantra, of greatest benefit for the many series of (re-)births, and it is also said that he authored a work primarily focused on poetry.

In the Earth Horse year 1498 in the eighth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar he was absorbed into the ultimate sphere of an enlightened mind. At that time he had arrived at the age of eighty-three. 9

Nyí ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: Notes on the Content of the Chapter on the History of mNga’ ris

The full text of Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s work Nyí ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes consists of 137 folios. The part dealing with the history of mNga’ ris which is of concern here is contained in the final folios. These may be divided into six sections according to their content. The following overview is based on the divisions made by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po in his edition (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyí ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text”, this volume, pp. 90ff.) and shows the respective headings used by him in parentheses.

**Contents**

Section I (428/f.124b6–432/f.126b6): On Zhang zhung (Zhang zhung gi skor)

Section II (426/f.123b6–428/f.124b6; 432/f.126b6–438/f.129b7): On the Rule of sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon in mNga’ ris (sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon mNga’ ris rgyal po byed pa’i skor)

Section III (440/f.130b1–444f.132b1): On the Three sTod kyi mgon (sTod kyi mgon gsun gyi skor)

Section IV (444/f.132b2–447/f.134a7): On the Ruler lHa lde (mnga’ bdag lHa lde’i skor)


Section VI (451/f.136a2–454/f.138a5): On the Ruler ‘Od lde’s son bTsan srong and His Lineage (mnga’ bdag ‘Od lde’i sras bTsan srong dang de’i rgyud pa’i skor)

---

4 A work on the Vinaya (see also Martin 2001: 103).

5 *mDo’dzang blun zhes bya bo’i mdo* (Tibetan translation of *Damamūkasūtra*, Sūtrasamuccaya, Compendium of Scriptures).

6 Skt. Sūtrasamuccaya, Compendium of Scriptures.

7 gSangs ’dus mi bskyod pa rgyud pa bdun.

8 Brag dkar monastery was established by Ngor chen Kun dga’ bzang po either during his first sojourn in Glo bo (1427–28) or during the second one (1436–1437) (see Heimbel 2017: 284–299).

9 van der Kuijp (2013: 325) gives his dates as 1415–1486.


Paraphrase Section I: On Zhang zhung
At first\(^{10}\) the countries of Upper and Lower Zhang zhung\(^{11}\) were held by those known as “rtse”.\(^{12}\) Among these was one called sNy a sh ur Mu pu ring nge ged, of great intelligence and bravery, who, as he became a famous person, was designated lord by agreement of all subjects of these countries.\(^{13}\) Then, after eleven generations, one known as sNy a sh ur La khwa ged rtse appeared endowed with great strength. His daughter married the great king of the country of dBus, Srong btsan sgam po. Then, six generations later, the king of sNy a sh ur is said to have been Li byin mu pad khya, an incarnation (sprul sku) of g Shen rabs mi bong (sic)\(^{14}\) and a king who attained mastery over Bon, letters and figuring (yig rt s i s) as well as divination (mo). At that time through accomplished masters adhering to Bon\(^{15}\) oral and written traditions of Bon became more and more popular in Zhang zhung.

Simultaneously [with Li byin mu pad khya, the king of sNy a sh ur, and the popularisation of Bon], descending from a lineage (rigs) at the time of king Ru pi ni, the “Five Zhang zhung Siblings” (Zhang zhung mched lnga)—that is to say, Mang wer Od tshad swa ged tshe, Mol wer, skY in wer sDo ng gyed tsha, Hru gs wer sPrud gsh er сто ged tsha and R um wer Sha zher rtse—emerged in Gu ge from India.\(^{16}\) As for their gods (lha), the most powerful ones among these 360 g ye god\(^{17}\) were: the god (lha) bDud rje btsan po ho of the Mang wer ba, the god (lha) Ro l b t san stag ral gtsug—altogether eight siblings (spun brgyad)—of the Mol wer ba, the god (lha) Srid pa yongs kyi ma mo tu sa med\(^{18}\) of the skY in wer ba, the god (lha) sGyugs khyung sheng rtse of the Hrugs wer ba, the god (lha) Srin po gnam ro po of the Rum rtse wer ba. Moreover, there were the three places (yu l)\(^{19}\) of the Mang wer ba: Phyi wang, rMe los sgyung and Sad mkhar. The skY in wer ba held Srib s kyi lha rtse, the Hrugs wer ba sKhar bdDu lang khyung rtse, and the Rum (rtse wer) ba sKhar sLe la khyung.\(^{20}\)

---

\(^{10}\) Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan does not give any specific chronologic indication regarding the origin of Zhang zhung but just starts with “at the beginning” (dang po), that is, at an unspecified point in time. Nevertheless, he makes use of a kind of relative chronology by relating the names of kings to genealogical information and in two cases to historic personages, Srong btsan sgam po and g Shen rabs mi bo.

\(^{11}\) In topographic or geographic terms Zhang zhung is mentioned as consisting of an upper and lower country (yu l stod smad). However, the whole of Zhang zhung is reported to have been ruled by one dynasty, referred to throughout the text as sNy a sh ur (also the spellings gNy a’ sh ur and sNy a sh ur occur). The rulers were titled “rtse”. Their appointment and legitimisation as lords (Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan uses the word jo bo) seems to have been based on outstanding personal qualities and achievements (great intelligence, bravery and fame) and took place by way of a general assignment that sheds some light on the political system and the prevailing notion of rulership.

\(^{12}\) In Tibetan, this word means the point, top, peak, summit, etc. It is not clear if Grags pa rgyal mtshan intends to use the word with its meaning in Tibetan or renders a homophonous word belonging to a different language in a way readable and understandable to Tibetans. In Dan Martin’s Zhang zhung Dictionary, the word rtse is listed belonging to the Zhang zhung language, meaning powerful among other things (see Martin 2010: 183).

\(^{13}\) sNy a sh ur is mentioned also as part of the names of other Zhang zhung rulers in Dunhuang documents and in Bon po sources (see Namgyal Nyima Dagkar 2002: 429f.).

\(^{14}\) The person obviously referred to is sTon pa gShen rab or gShen rab Myi bo, commonly known as the founder of the Bon religion (see Blezer 2008 and Bellezza 2010 for works on the historicity of this figure).

\(^{15}\) The Bon religion or belief system is first mentioned in relation to a king who was recognised as an incarnation of g Shen rabs mi bo, the semi-historic founder of the Bon religion. The popularisation of Bon religion is specifically seen as a phenomenon of this (later) period in Zhang zhung history. Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s account makes it possible to understand the sNy a sh ur dynasty of the Zhang zhung kingdom at least at this time as a kind of sacred kingship and one that was based on concepts of the Bon religion. Some parallels with Buddhist notions of kingship are recognisable in this account.

\(^{16}\) The expression mched lnga can mean five siblings (brothers and sisters) but also five sisters or five brothers. In my view the latter presumably applies, as in the following passages only men are mentioned as leading figures of these groups and there is no indication of any female leader. I therefore understand Mang wer, Mol wer, skY in wer, Rum wer and Hrugs wer as designations of forefathers (perhaps mythical) from whom these groups descended or claimed descent. The designation as Zhang zhung mched lnga does not necessarily indicate that their origins lay in Zhang zhung but that they constituted five population groups related by descent who occupied certain places in Gu ge and played a certain role in Zhang zhung.

\(^{17}\) The meaning of the second part of these names and their classificatory value is far from clear. The repeated ge tsh e / ged tsha / gyed tsha may be identical with ge tsa which is listed in Martin (2010: 60) as a Zhang zhung word (synonymous with the Tibetan bDud b t san) meaning “a group of gods or demons”.

\(^{18}\) It is clear from Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s text that g ye g o d, a word of seemingly non-Tibetan origin, corresponds to the Tibetan word lha, commonly translated as god or deity. Due to the phonetic consonance and agreement in the number of the gods, some form of historical linguistic relationship can be assumed to exist between g ye g o d, most probably a word of the Zhang zhung language, and ge khod, perhaps a Tibetan loan word from the language of Zhang zhung. This is supported by Kvaerne (1996: 40), according to whom—based on studies by Tucci (1949 ii: 724, 1970: 240) and Hoffmann (1950: 166, 269)—the “word g ekho (ge khod) designates a class of ancient Tibetan gods. The etymology of the word is entirely obscure, but it may be taken to be a loan from the language of Zhangzhung. The g ekho are said to number 360 and to reside on Mount Tise ( Ti se, i.e. Mount Kailash), the sacred mountain of Zhangzhung.”

\(^{19}\) This seems to be a female deity and perhaps identical with Mu la tsa med, explained as a goddess of Zhang zhung (Martin 2010: 169). Tsa med is listed as the Zhang zhung language word for woman, which corresponds to the Tibetan bu med (see ibid.: 176; Haar 1968: 38; Kvaerne 1996: 14; 81).

\(^{20}\) One can perhaps conceive of these places (yu l) in this context as smaller territories in the sense of residence areas.

\(^{21}\) Some of the population groups who are named in this text as Mang wer ba, skY in wer ba, Hrugs wer ba, Rum (rtse wer) ba and Mol wer ba are known from historical texts and inscriptions where these group affiliations precede their personal names.
At Tabo monastery one of the monks depicted in the sgo khang of the gtsug lag khang is identified as rHugs 'er dge dngos sbis gnas. As the name suggests, this monk appears in the mid-length biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po. Over twenty inscriptional occurrences of rHugs wer and one of Mang wer were documented by Chinese archaeologists in the 1990s in a mchod rten from the 11th-century at Tholing (see Heller 2010).

Also one Mo lo dge dngos Shes rabs snying po is named for example in a caption at Tabo (Luczanits 1999: 107). Mol lo (obviously corresponding to Mol wer) occurs in Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs f. 125b4 (in the form of skung yig) (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu'i cod pa” in the volume, p. 92). In addition, monks from the Mang wer ba are also named in captions: for example, Mang wer dge dngos Sod rams rin sas and Mang 'er dge dngos Rin cen bsrtson grus (Luczanits 1999: 108).

Also the Rum (rtse wer) ba occur: Rum dge dngos Drang ba Shes rabs shab. Luczanits notes on this name that “beside the surname Rum, denoting a clan or locality, in the captions in Tabo […] there also exists a region of Rum (rum yul), which is located somewhere west of Tholing (cf. Petech 1997: 233, n.21 and Vrba 1996: 307). Logically Rum alone would be a place within this region, but here it might also denote the region the person stems from. Evidently the Rum people were the most prominent donor group for the renovation. According to THOMAS (1951: 149-50, M.I.xxviii,002) Rum denotes a clan name.” (Luczanits 1999: 108). In the case of nun's names who are identified in inscriptions at Tabo, a za (ząr, woman) is added to indicate their gender: for example, Rum za or Rhung za.

To conclude: of the five above-mentioned population groups four occur in historical inscriptions at Tabo and Tholing. Only the skyin wer ba do not occur. However, there are a number of additional names of groups that are mentioned in inscriptions at Tabo and also in colophons of manuscripts other than those listed as constituting the Zhang zhung mched lnga. For example, sNyel 'or / sNyal 'or / sNyel wer / sNyals wer who appear quite often in the early part of one of the Zhang zhung groups becomes manifest.

The appearance of some of these gods as groups of siblings (brothers, sisters, etc.) is a wide-spread phenomenon which seems to be a particularly strong characteristic of deities in areas of Kinnaur until the present, also in the Tibetan-speaking areas of Upper Kinnaur (Khu nu).

Later the five rUS,21 united by friendly ties and under a unified rule, nominated in turn one, who acted as great minister and governed during four generations of gNyas' shur kings. The deeds of the five acting in this way were: Mang wer Khams gsum bshe bstan 'das, who, after subduing the king of Gru sha Thang la nag po in an act of bravery, marked the border of Byang lam sky'a'o (the “White Northern Path”); through skilful military strategies Mol lo22 Kluthon rje dpal sdang defeated gNyas’ khris’ mgon, the king of sPu’rangs, and held Shas Seng ge dkar mo as prisoner. After seizing Grang la ti tsa, the castle (mKhar) of Nyi ti, Kyin wer rDo rje zher rgyal po overthrew king So na ra dz’i. Drawing on skill and writings, Hrugs wer gTsug sgra ghzer la ghng

The places named as (main) residential areas of these five population groups seem to indicate that they were located not far from the upper Sutlej valley. The places of the Mang wer ba may be identified with present-day Phyi dbang and nearby places. Srib ky i lha rtse, the place of the skyin wer ba, may refer to an area in the vicinity of Nako and Shakhkar in Upper Kinnaur. The Hrugs wer ba’s places can be assumed to be mKhar rtse and other places in or adjacent to the mKhar rtse valley, and the Rum (rte wer) ba’s place may be identified with Rum yul and the area around sPeg mkhar. Looking at the map this defines a quite coherent territory within the larger realm of Gu ge. A characteristic element of these places seem to have been fortifications (mKhar).

There is no indication of anything Buddhist in the religious life of the population groups of the Mang wer ba, skyin wer ba, Mol wer ba, Hrugs wer ba and Rum (rte wer) ba. As stated above Bon is mentioned as having made an appearance in Zhang zhung at some point in time but it is not stated that any of the five groups adhered to this. What we can conclude, however, based on the inscriptive evidence from Tabo and Tholing is that from the late 10th century the residential areas of these groups were the places for the propagation of Buddhism by the royal lineage. The examples from Tabo and Tholing show that this happened with strong participation from the Hrugs wer ba, the Rum (rte wer) ba, the Mol wer ba and the Mang wer ba. Taking the skyin wer ba as another name of the skyin wer ba or in some way related to the above-mentioned groups, a major turn in the religious affiliation of these population groups becomes manifest.

The first significant indication of a royal dynastic activity within the area of one of the Zhang zhung mched lnga seems to have been an assembly by members of the royal lineages which took place in 992 at sPeg mkhar, a place on the upper course of the Glang chen kha’ bals/Sutlej river. On this occasion again a great oration (mol ba chen po) was delivered and the hermitage of Pa sgam in the Rum region was renovated (see Petech 1997: 233). This also shows that by this time the relationship between the royal lineage and these populations groups must have been firmly established and that royal patronage of Buddhist temples in these clan territories began to play an important role.

21 It is necessary to stress that Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s usage of rUs must certainly have been in agreement with the contemporary (late-15th-century) concept of this word. Thus, we can assume that it relates to patrilineal descent groups, which traced their descent from a common ancestor. In addition, subsets of these groups known as pha spun or pha spad (which also include affinal relatives who give up their affiliation to their father’s guardian deity but retain their father’s bone) were linked by common residence, a common ancestral deity (pha lha) and joint cult of the dead (see dGe rgyan 1976: 324–325; Jahoda 2017).

22 In a later passage, the spelling Mo lo is used.
destroyed the Zhang zhung priest by an evil spell of the Black Cow (ba nag po), after which the priest paid respect to the bla ma, so that the tongue of the Western Red Bull (nub glang dmar po) was cut out.23 When Rum wer A rgyal gsum bzher ceased trusting Glangs g.Yu rge ‘bar ma, the daughter of the ancestral king of nNyā shur, the established relationship with the five rus was lost. Then the five daughters of sTong lHu bzher were accepted in marriage by the five rus; they had five sons and five daughters. lHu bzher became old and after leaving his last words to the five daughters and five sons-in-law he passed away. After this, they were called the “five rus and the maternal uncle sTong, six altogether” (rus inga zh邦 po stong dang drug).

At that time, the kings of nNyā shur, the three brothers Li bin khya, Ngad bzangs khya and dPal ‘khor dmar khya, in a deviation from reality, annually sacrificed one person of the Khyung po family. When the discussions between the ministers Gu gu Khyung, Khyung dpung ring mo, Khyung dpung Tang su ze, and dGe shing Tang mi ring mo failed, the blame was ascribed to the five Zhang zhung rus. As for the five nephews and brothers of the Great Superior One (bla chen po) sTong, they were loyal and rendered useful service to the Lord. This being the case, Mang wer Khams gsum tshan dhas captured the White Vulture (Thang dkar rgod po) of the skies in a trap; Kyin wer sDo rje sher overcame the White Lioness of the Snows (Gangs kyi seng ge dkar mo) with an iron chain; Hrugs wer gTsug bzher captured the Children of the Gods (‘Dod kams kyi Iha phrug); Mo lo Klub thog bzher tamed the Tiger of the Forest (nags kyi stag); the king of Rum, gSum bzher, put sunlight (nyi zer) into an amulet box (go’u) with a magic lasso.24 Due to this, his (sTong lHu bzher’s) fame (dbu rmog, literally ‘helmet’) was higher than the mountains and his political authority (chab srid)25 grew enormously, so that there was no other greater king than ours, with tigers as watchdogs, peacocks as poultry and a wild ass (rkyang) as a horse.

*Paraphrase Section II: On the Rule of skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon in mNga’ ris*

skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon was born in a Pig year.26 At the age of twenty-eight, in the year of the Tiger,27 he went to mNga’ ris stod. Bringing all the territories belonging to Western Tibet under his control in a Sheep year,28 after seizing the castle of Nyi zung he ruled the kingdom. He passed away at the age of fifty-nine in a Bird year.29 Furthermore skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon’s father dPal ’khor btsan gave him the Medicine Buddha as meditative practice support (thugs dam)30 and he (skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon) made offerings and prayers in this regard. Since he was very impatient to root out the revolt in Tibet31 and as in mNga’ ris the teachings of the Buddha shone like the sun, dependent on their flourishing and blessed by the Buddha and Bodhisattvas he went to stod mNga’ ris stong dang drug. Moreover, the Mighty Sage and his children dwelt on the Fragrant Mountain; Kinnaras and Nāga King Ma gros (commonly Ma dros) (Anapatantha) and other were satisfied, because of the dharma, flocks of eagles soared in the air and lived in the land of snows on top of Ti se, the king of the Himalayas. As has been taught in the teaching of the Songs rngyas bdun pa (stûtra),32 the Victorious One is here all over the land of the stod country and the spreading of the teaching is to come about due to the blessings. Here in ’Dzam bu gling33 there is no higher ground. To spread and make the teaching of the Buddha flourish, it is in particular the sacred place where the blessed Great Elder (gnos brtan chen po)34 Yan lag ‘byung35 surrounded by his retinue of 1,500 arhats (dgra bcom pa) resides. Next to Ti se, the great king of the Himalayas, four great rivers gently flow in the four directions, and as for Ma pang g.yu mtsho,36 very famous throughout India and Tibet, if one washes oneself with its water and leaves a tooth, nail, hair, etc. this purifies one’s negative actions. Because of the period of spreading the teaching of the Sage of the Śakyas to the vast area of stod mNga’ ris and due to the power of all sentient beings, skyid IDe Nyi ma mgon gradually turned his horse riding upward.

---

23 The meaning of these characterisations is unclear.
24 The meaning of these characterisations is unclear.
25 These two, dbu rmog and chab srid, are described as being key qualities of the Tibetan emperors (btsan po). See Ramble 2006: 129; Dotson 2011: 85.
26 A possible Pig year (that also fits with the chronological data of his son bKra shis mgon (born ca. early second quarter of the 10th century) and his grandson Srong nge/Neshe Ō (947–1024 according to Vitali 2003: 55, 61; 947–1019 based on Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes bd by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 149) may be 879. On this and further dates mentioned in the text, see also Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakhi”, this volume, pp. 291f.
27 The Tiger year in which he left for mNga’ ris stod could have been 906, when he was twenty-eight years old.
28 The Sheep year could have been 911.
29 The Bird year may refer to 937.
30 That is, yi dam, personal tutelary deity.
31 Indicating perhaps why he left for mNga’ ris before the revolt (kheng log) in Tibet had come to an end in 911(?).
32 Sanskrit (Ārya-) Saptabuddhaka (mahāyānasūtra).
33 Sanskrit Jambudvīpa, the Continent of the Rose-Apple Tree which is inhabited by human beings according to Buddhist cosmology (see Gethin 2004: 184).
34 Sanskrit mahāsthavira.
35 Sanskrit Angaja, one of the Sixteen Arhats.
36 Also: Ma pham g.yu mtsho (Lake Manasarovar).
In the middle autumn of the Tiger year the five stong grandsons (tsha spun)\(^{37}\) and minister Khyung sent Khyung po Khri ihen skyu se and dGe shing A ring mo to invite dPal lhA btsan po Khri bKra shis skyiId lde Nyi ma mgon, then residing at sku mkhar lhA rtse Brag mkhar, with a petition from Khyung spung sTang ring mo of sTod urging him to come to mNga’ ris. This made a strong impression on the emperor, and after having reflected on it, he and Cang Legs skyes, the son of the Great Minister (blon po chen po) Cang A po, Phyag tshang ba ‘Bro kham bu, gZims mal ba So pa lu and others, planned to go to sTod mNga’ ris. Up there, the holy Buddhist dharma (lha chos) was not prospering while Bon was widespread.

For this reason, due to the possibility of malicious gods and demons and malevolent spirits of the Bon practitioners (bon po), two Great Monks (ban dhe) with excellent qualifications—the Great Monk (ban dhe) Dha gu na pra bha of the Cog ro ‘Bring ‘tshams family, in addition one with wisdom and power, being capable of binding into servitude gods and demons of the phenomenal world, the Great Monk (ban dhe) rGyal ba Shes rab of the ‘Chims family—were given official orders to come with him. The two monks said that the order of the king was heavier than a mountain, so tears could not dislodge it. However, if tears were able to change it when the whole dominion, power, and people were established, except for his dominion, the fields, castles, fortresses, etc. which were located in between the farming and the nomadic areas, should be given back to the people.

At the age of twenty-eight, in the year of the Tiger, the Lord himself, Cang Legs skyes, the son of the Great Minister Cang A pho, Phyag tshang ba ‘Bro kham bu, dGe bzher bKra shis btsan, Cog gru lhag leb, gZims mal ba Chos kyi lha, Ma zhang ban dhe, these two Great Monks (ban dhe), and the Great Minister Pa tshab, the Great Minister Rin chen sTod and the Great Minister’s two sons Zhang rGyal ba Yon tan and mDogs g. ‘Yung ba Zhang Me chen po, gZims mal ba So pa lu and others left the g.Yo rung (g.Yung drung) palace at lhA rtse. The lord and subjects, altogether fifty people, took the northern route (byang lam). Fifty-one horsemen came from Zhang zhung to welcome them. They arrived at the Srid pa Fortress of Ra la, together with soldiers from the ten-thousand district (khri sde) of Zhang zhung, with full accoutrements. All the soldiers from the ten-thousand district (khri sde) of ‘Khru’gs\(^{38}\) revolted. The king of sNyA shur having covered himself in armour (go bgo) arranged the cushions by rank in the shade and as he disguised himself as a single man of iron, a copper needle was poked into the top of his head, killing him. dPung Ngad mar Bya stag and La ling returned out of fear and took control of the castle of rTsa rang.\(^{40}\) sDad bZang khyA controlled the land of A ru.\(^{41}\) Gu gu Khyung took over Wem mo, the lower part (smad) of Purang.

At that time, the kingdom (rgyal srid) was offered to skyiId lde Nyi ma mgon. The five stong tsha brothers\(^{42}\) were also asked for five different services: as for the Mang wer ba, the posture will be broad and noble, like a majestic banner swinging in the wind; as for the Mo lo ba the speech will be powerful, like a rock rolling down from a steep mountain; as for the Kyin wer ba, the posture will be broad, dignified and firm, like three straps bound tightly, opened and flung to the sky (gnan); as for the Rum wer ba, they will be as solid as a needle sticking in a ball of yarn; as for the Hrugs wer ba, they will be as honest and innocent like a strong waterfall.

Many people came from Mar yul and other principalities, paid reverence and bowed down. After that, a great appointment was made: according to the Six Gods of the Desire Realm (’dod khams),\(^{43}\) the eight small gods of the Intermediate Sphere (bar snang), and the Four Wrathful Guardians of the Gate (sgo bsgrungs kyi khro bo gzhis). Jo sras Nyang tsa Li ba as Guardian of the East, Lhe phyug gi jo sras Cog ro md’a’ pa as Guardian of the South, the black Tshong sa la ba le sa as Guardian of the West, the black sTar pa as Guardian of the North. First of all, the five stong grandsons (tsha spun) and the son of lHu gsum zher were appointed according to the Six Gods of the Desire Realm (’dod khams) and given one by one decrees with a stamp along with distinct emblems of rank. dGe shin pa of Khyung lung. Cog ro of sGe thang, Krung shin pa of Dun mkhar, Seng dkar of Bag wang, sNyA shur of Thang. lhA ‘bron of iHag bag. Tog sgyun of Sang nang, and Khyung po of Tang, these eight, were appointed as the Eight Gods of the Intermediate Sphere (bar snang). The three Families of Faith were

---

\(^{37}\) Based on the earlier narrative it seems to be more probable to assume that these relatives are the second generation following stong, therefore grandsons (and not cousins).

\(^{38}\) The Rabbit year may have been 907 which followed the year of the Tiger (906).

\(^{39}\) Perhaps identical with Tsaparang(?)

\(^{40}\) Not yet identified.

\(^{41}\) Not yet identified.

\(^{42}\) In terms of generation grandsons of stong tsha.

\(^{43}\) The following is rendered in poetic language.

\(^{44}\) Sanskrit kāmadhātu.
Be gar ba, sGyung du la pa and Dang stod pa from Dun mkhar. Cang legs skyes, the master and the servants, altogether seven, none other than these were appointed to [serve at] the palace.

At that time, Dha gu na pra bha wa performed the ritual rNam joms chi bu and a longevity empowerment ritual known as Yang dag me gcig thod gcig.45 So skyid lde Nyi ma mgon's life was prolonged by thirteen years and it was also prophesied that he would generally live to the age of fifty-nine. In the year of the Dragon, on the fifteenth day of the autumn month, after having been invited by dGe bzher bkra shis btsan to sPu hrangs, skyid lde Nyi ma mgon was given by him to skyid lde Nyi ma mgon53 in marriage. They then had three sons called the Three Lords of sTod or Upper/Western Tibet (stod kyi mgon gsum).54 The elder son was dPal gyi mgon, the second (middle) son was bKra shis mgon and the youngest lDe gtsug mgon. The father divided the land into three parts.55 The elder brother dPal gyi mgon received the Mar yul56 valley plain, with the subjects having black hats, and the territories of Bod log rtsu up to La dags (La dwags),57 high-lying pasture lands, the Ru shod lKags chu valley, Chud shod, a Crescent Moon Turquoise earring (gyul snyan gyu zla tshes), the White Turquoise (earing), the Red Turquoise (earing), extremely powerful58 body armour, a helmet of radiant brilliant light (od dkar gsal ba), a sharp sword,59 a grand horse entrance and so on; countless treasures were given to him.

The youngest, lDe gtsug mgon, received the territory up to the Ke ko river, subordinates60 upto sPen rtse gong, the agricultural areas (yul) of Gar zhwa,61 Zang mkhar (Zangs dkar), all kinds of caste subjects (’bangs dol mangs), an idem thongs62 turquoise earring, a suit of armour

Tibet and built two kingdoms. One is in the upper part of mNga’ ris (accordingly called mNga’ ris stod), the other one is the lower part of mNga’ ris (mNga’ ris smad). Since then Western Tibet has been called mNga’ ris or territory in the sense that it is the last territory of the Tibetan empire which continued to exist in Western Tibet while the whole territory in central Tibet was lost.” (GTG 2014: n. 2).

54 “The Three Lords of Upper mNga’ ris/mNga’ ris stod) is related to the three kingdoms of sTod (Upper/Western Tibet) or mNga’ ris skor gsum—La dwags, sPu rang and Zangs dkar. In the history of mNga’ ris, dependent on the historical period, the territory of mNga’ ris skor gsum relates to different meanings. For example, in particular after the 17th century, when dGa’ ldan pho brang documents mention mNga’ ris skor gsum this relates to Ru thog, Gu ge and sPu rang because since these times the mNga’ ris skor gsum territory is much smaller than that from the 10th to the 17th century.” (GTG 2014: n. 3).

55 “This is the starting point of the system of enfeoffment in the history of mNga’ ris (which did not exist before).” (GTG 2014: n. 4). A more literal translation would be: “the father gave each one a territory (or territories) [of his own]” (CJ).

56 “According to ‘Chi med gter [dGe rgan 1976], Mar yul being located in a lower area got the name because of the earth is red. It is also a general word for La dwags.” (GTG 2014: n. 5). (On Mar yul, see also Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang,” Ladakh, this volume, p. 290.)

57 “In the language of Western Tibet, this is pronounced La rag, never La dwags [Ladakh].” (GTG 2014: n. 6).

58 Literally, “highly majestic or magnificent.”

59 Tentative meaning: a sword as sharp as a cutting in a twinkle a leaf (phyag sphan ’dab chod).

60 Or subjects (mnga’ zhabs).

61 “In mNga’ ris, Gar zhwa used to be referred to as Gar zhwa phyug po, meaning ‘rich people of Gar zhwa’, because they took best quality cloth, hats and rice. Gar zhwa businessmen always used to ride on horses or mules and they dressed very well, looking much more elegant than other businessmen coming from the Indian side.” (GTG 2014: n. 7).

62 Meaning unclear.
that elucidates darkness, a glistening round helmet, a horse as fast as the radiant light of a flying bird, a knife shaped like a wild yak’s horn, high-lying pasture lands, valley plains with abundant grassland and other great features, as well as plentiful military camp grounds.

Later when conflict broke out between the elder and the youngest, the middle-born son bkra shis mgon arranged an agreement, consisting of a reciprocal exchange of territories. The elder son was given Gar zhwa and Zangs skar (dkar), the youngest was given Mar yul. Later, after dpal gyi mgon had passed away the royal tomb was haunted.

The middle-born bkra shis mgon, like the middle finger of the hand, was born standing high in the centre, coiling to the right like a white conch-shell. The extent of this knowledge was ever increasing and he was already born as a great one. The wisdom of his mind was far higher than that of all the other kings and ministers, and being of manlike demeanour, straightforwardness, nobility, benevolence and magnanimity, his whole territory flourished. Being dedicated to the triple jewel (dkon mchog (gsum)) and faithful to the Buddhist teaching and in keeping with the heritage of the great ancestors, he built the temple of g.Yu sbra.65 In the centre, an image the size of an eight-year-old Lord Maitreya (nte buzum byam pa) filled with medicinal herbs was made. In each of the different parts of the temple murals of many Buddha images were painted and many ritual objects were founded. As for the territories, he received in the east those up to the g.Yas ru river, in the west those up to the Ke ke river, the agricultural areas (yul) of Gu ge and sPu hreng with the Nyi bzungs palace,66 the pasture lands in the vicinity of the three lakes, Gya and Nyi ma,67 Bar ka68

63 Not yet identified.
64 “Sku mKhars Nyi zungs is a very famous castle which was located in the present-day Rin gong municipality (Tibetan shang, from Chinese xiang), dKar dung village, on top of the Elephant Hill (gang chen rt-bo). There used to be three lines of strong fence, the outer fence encompassing all four directions had four sturdy doors which looked very majestic. Except for the door on the east, the other three doors were always closed. Only when the king or a very important minister went out was the western door opened. In the southern part of the hill the gigantic ruins of ca. one hundred family houses and chapels.” (GTG 2014: n. 8).
65 “Gya nyi ma was a very important place during the Zhang zhung kingdom period. There used to be a gigantic castle called gya nyi ma mkhars gog, located in the southern part of Khyung lung dngul mkhars. Ruins of the castle are still there, on the top of a hill, with a huge boundary wall, allowing to assume that it was a ruler’s castle. From east to west the measurements are 370 m, from north to south 35 m. Since the end of 17th century, one of the biggest markets in Western Tibet, gya nyi ma tshong rwa, was held here on the flatlands on the lower western side of the castle. It was visited by some thousand businessmen from eastern and central Tibet, as well as from India and Nepal. Surrounded by a massive swampland, in summer hundreds of cranes and yellow ducks roost here.” (GTG 2014: n. 9).
66 “Bar ka is a huge grassland located between Mount Kailas and Lake Manasarovar. The gZhungs pa people live to the south of Kailas. They are and Bong langs, up to sBruil nag thur la gyrug pa in Rong bud, the area surrounded by slate mountains, a chid/ching chen69 turquoise earring and a chid/ching chung69 turquoise earring, a knife shaped like a wild yak’s long horn, a suit of armour as tight and resplendent as an insect, an outstanding white helmet, a kind of swift horse,69 and many other things, so that he acted endowed with a very powerful dominion.

The middle-born bkra shis mgon had two sons from his marriage with Queen Zangs kha ma—the elder son ‘Khor re and the younger son Srong nge.70 The elder ‘Khor re ruled over Pu hreng,71 the younger Srong nge ruled over Gu ge. The elder, the great ruler (mnga’ bdag chen po) Kho re (‘Khor re) completed all his father’s remaining construction work at the tgsug lag khang of g.Yu sbra and established in g.Yu sbra the great chos ‘khor72 of Tsha tsha sgang and the tgsug lag khang and chos ‘khor of Khri lde.73 In support indigenous nomads (‘brog pa) and famous for their folk music and dancing which belongs to the Gro shod traditions.” (GTG 2014: n. 10).

67 Meaning unclear.
68 Meaning unclear.
69 “phibs byeg to thsal rings (exact meaning unclear).
70 “There are many different historical records regarding the two sons of bkra shis mgon, ‘Khor re and Srong nge and the question of who is the elder and who is the younger one. Some sources hold ‘Khor re as the elder one, others Srong nge. In particular chronicles published after the 14th century by authors from Central Tibet, many different kinds of data were used. In contrast to this, authors and scholars who are natives of mNga’ ris share the view that ‘Khor re is the elder brother and Srong nge the younger. On account of the fact that they had the opportunity to use the oldest historical sources from the archives of the king’s family or sources kept in Tho ling monastery such as the Zla ba’i rigs kyi rgyal ras, and others for their chronicles, such as the mNga’ ri rgyal ras, lhA bla ma ye shes ‘od (kyi) nam thar (rgyas pa), Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal ras, Tshang dbang yid ‘phrog, etc., in this regard the views of authors like Ngaq dbang grags pa, Grags pa rgyal mtshan, dpal byor bzang po and so on need not be disputed any more.” (GTG 2014: n. 11).
71 “There are many different spellings of this name, for example, sPu hrang, sPu hrangs, sPu hrang, sPu rangs, sPu rang, sPu hreng and so on. The earliest chronicle, Zla ba’i rigs kyi rgyal ras and De’u jo sras chos ‘byung, writes sPu hangs. From the 11th to the 17th century, the chronicles write sPu rang or sPu rangs. After the 17th century all government documents write sPu hreng. Based on the late 17th-century account by dGa’ ldan tsho dbang to sde srid Sang rgyas rgya mtsho where he said that, the fighting in sPu rang was quite easy like using a sharp knife to cut a piece of hair, since that time all dGa’ ldan pho brang documents only used to write sPu hreng.” (GTG 2014: n. 12).
72 The designation as chos ‘khor was used for monasteries where the teachings of the Buddha were spread which included the translation of the words and related commentaries in newly erected temples which were decorated with up-to-date religious cycles (chos skor).
73 “Khri lde, in the present a village with two thousand inhabitants, is located to the south of the rMa bya gtsang po [Peacock River, known as Karnāli in Nepal], three km from the main city of sPu rang district, one kilometre from sTag la mKhars castle.” (GTG 2014: n. 13).
of the butter lamps and offerings at all these temples and for all the livelihood of all monks, he established their funding from the taxes of agricultural households, in the form of gold, horses and other livestock in an inconceivably generous way surpassing all description. After ‘Khor re had annexed areas across the borders of rTsang (gTsang) and Rong he established the market of ‘Gur mo’4 in Tsang (gTsang) and proclaimed a comprehensive text of laws and in each country the outer limits and internal divisions (khor [dang] ru chung) were established here.

The elder ‘Khor re had three sons: IHa lde bKra shis btsan, Prince (Itha sras) Dharma (Dharma) Slas, Prince (Itha sras) U da ra’ dza’ (Udaraja). With the elder bKra shis btsan having a singular faith in the triple jewel (dkon mchog [gsun]) and affection for the subjects under his power, the dominion of Pu hrangs Gu ge entrusted to him by his father, outside and inside, and also the borders in the east never being withdrawn, the whole kingdom was appropriately taken care of. The middle-born Dharma IHas became a monk while still an infant. U da ra’ dza’ (Udaraja) passed away at the age of fourteen.

Section IV: On the Ruler (mnga’ bdag) IHa lde

IHa lde bKra shis btsan, the one with a gloomy face never showing a smile, built a temple in Khwa char in rGya ma(r). In the course of laying the foundation (for this) at the foot of a mountain in sFod, hearing the sound of a bell (ghande)53 not far from where the Jo bo resided, he built the gtsug lag khang there and gave it the name Rin chen rtsegs pa dpal gtsug lag khang. At the centre, a throne which had been built for a silver image, fell down and split into three parts. When he saw this a smile appeared on the face of lHa lde. Thereafter on the left and right where it had split, workmanship and casting were renewed and turned out to be excellent. Since it was cast by a metalworker from Kha che (Kashmir) at Me tog zdzings,76 its commentary, the Zla zer written by Kha che zla [ba mngon] dga’, and others were translated, the Treatise on Norms (Lugs kyi bstan bcos)80 made by Khyab ’jug sbas pa (Visnugupta), the

77 “At this period the two statues to the left and right of ’Jam dpal dbyangs were made of bronze but in the 13th century, during the time of King bSod nams Iide, they were changed to pure silver statues. Since then the three statues have been referred to as “three silver brother statues” (dngul sku mched gsun).” (GTG 2014: n. 15).
78 Read: ne’u (instead of snal).
79 “This work was written by the great Indian master dPa’ bo [Ācārya Śūra, that is Vāgbhaṭa] and translated into Tibetan by the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po. Altogether it consists of eight parts: sPyi’i nad kyi yan lag (Branch for General Diseases), Byis po’i nad kyi yan lag (Branch for Children’s Diseases), Mo nad kyi yan lag (Branch for Female Diseases), gDon yi yan lag (Branch for Evil Disease), mThosn gyi yan lag (Branch for Weapon Injury), Dug gyi yan lag (Branch for Poisoning), rGyas pa gso ba’i yan lag (Branch for Keeping Fit), Ro ts’i nad gso bar bya ba’i yan lag (Branch for Arteries).” (GTG 2014: n. 16).
80 Sanskrit Nitisāstra.
Five (Kinds of) Mandalas (dKyil 'khor lnga pa), the Great Treatise on General Horse Diagnosis made by Drang Srong Sha li ho bras and the Treatise on Medicinal Treatment of Horses composed by his son Legs stobs, the Great Horse Diagnosis composed by Gyal sras Seng ge byin, all these early translations (by the Great Translator Rin chen bzung po) were supremely accomplished and highly detailed.

The Abhiniksramanāśūtra (mNygon par 'byung pa'i mdo), the Noble Deeds of Kunāla (Ku na la'i brtogs brjod), the Superior Verses in Praise of Buddha Śākyamuni (Khyad par phags bstod), the Varnārhatvamastotra (Sngags pa'i bstod pa), the Buddhābhiṣekanāśūtra (Sangs rgyas dbang bskur ba'i bstod pa), the Desanastavavrtti (bShags pa'i bstod 'gre) by Sangs rgyas zhi ba, the Prajñāpāramitāśāntārā (Shes rab kyi phyin pa'i don bsdus pa) by Jo bo rje (Atiśa), the Commentary on the Navaśloka (Tshigs sub cad pa dgu pa'i 'grel) by Kumārakāśyapa ('Od bsungs gzhon nu), the Yan tan bcu brjod pa'i gtam and the Śīlaparikathā (Sangs rgyas dbang bskur ba'i bstod pa) by the Commentary on the Navaśloka (Tshigs sub cad pa dgu pa'i 'grel) by Kumārakāśyapa ('Od bsungs gzhon nu), the Yan tan bcu brjod pa'i gtam and the Śīlaparikathā (Tshul khrims kyi gtam) by Vasubandhu (dByig gnyen), the Supathadesanāparikathā (Legs pa'i lam bstan pa'i gtam) by (Ārya-)Śūra (['Phags pa) dPa' bo), the fundamental conditions for the translation of these and many other teachings of the Buddha and many other treatises were granted [by lHa lde]. He also invited many Indian and Tibetan Buddhist masters (mKhas grub) and donated (the funding) for a big religious council in Kho char ('Khor chags)[25] and received abundant respect. At this time, seeing many monks together with the manifestation of great faith and respect, he was delighted and for the third time a smile appeared (on his face). The teachings of the Buddha flourished greatly. Again as troops from sTod Hor and other border areas gathered, he went to the north as the main leader of a big army and he passed away at Lag myug tsha myug[26] in the north.

Paraphrase Section V: On the Ruler (mnga' bdag) Khri bKra shis ‘Od lde btsan

The first-born ‘Khor re had three sons: the eldest was lHa lde bKra shis btsan to whom three sons were also born; the eldest was the ruler (mnga' bdag) ‘Od lde. He was born in a Sheep year, physically strong, powerful, and brave. From a young age he was very proud and delighted to do battle and fight. At the age of fifteen, in a Bird year, he waged war on Hu pu. Again, when he was twenty-six, in a Bird year, he waged war on ‘U then and brought it under his control. In the same year, the Gar log[89] and many other invading armies came. After skillfully defeating a multitude of enemies and expelling them, he obtained realisation of dGra lha. Again he went to ‘U then and initiated a great meeting among the lay communities. That same year, he laid out the foundation of a gtsug lag khang at Nyar ma, from the second year, he was able “to sit on it”, so he established a community of monks (dge `don gyi sde, Sankrit sangha) and a school for religious instruction (chos grwa). In the third year, in a Mouse year, he went to Mar yul and built the temple of dPe dug (dPe thub),[92] founded a monastic community. He provided a great number of holy objects (Iha rten) and offering items (mchod rgyan) and many agricultural estates, fields, households and so on for the livelihood of monks. Pandita Punyāsīri was invited and sūtras, the Buddha’s words and their commentaries, were translated. He himself received the teachings of the Vajrayāna (Sngags kyi chos) did some spiritual practice and made material offerings. In particular, his practice was directed towards the Medicine Buddha (Sangs rgyas sman bla) and he prayed to him. Finally, he made war in the country of the Gar log for a second time and he was taken prisoner there.

The younger brothers Byang chub ‘od and Zhi ba ‘od, trying to pay ransom—it was said with gold equal to the weight of his body—resided there until the gold was gathered. At that time as their mother made offerings and prayers to the Medicine Buddha, in the son’s dream eight monks appeared in the east, released his iron chains and departed. After freeing himself from the iron chain

---

81 Sanskrit *Kunālavadāna.
82 Sanskrit Viśeśavā.
83 Nine Stanzas on Prajñāpāramitā.
84 A text with this title does not seem to be contained in relevant catalogues (see, for example, U 1934). Or should we read Yan tan bdun yongs su brjod pa'i gtam (Skt. Saptagunaparivaranakatha) or Yan tan bdun bstan pa'i gtam (Saptagunaparivaranakatha)? These texts are only known in Tibetan translations (personal communication by Horst Lasic, January 2020).
85 “This place name is written with different spellings, such as Kho char, Khwa char, Kho char and ‘Khor ‘chags. The earliest one is found in IDeu Jo sras chos ‘byung. After the 16th century the works by the Sa skya masters use the spelling ‘Khor chags.” (GTG 2014: n. 17).
86 As yet unidentified place.
87 On this and further dates of his activities see Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 293–296.
88 Region along the Sutlej valley in present-day Kinnaur.
89 Khotan.
90 “Gar log is the name of a kingdom in the far west of mNga’ ris during the 10th century. In Chinese it is called Ga luo lu. It had a strong military, was often involved in warfare and invaded neighbouring countries.” (GTG 2014: n. 18). For further references, see also Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 295–296.
91 Deity of war, one of the five kings (sku’ i rgyal po).
92 Present-day Spituk monastery in Ladakh.
he escaped with two subordinates. Owing to former karma he was poisoned by iron and passed away just before arriving in Gu ge. At that time, the younger brother Byang chub ‘od looked for gold in order to ransom his elder brother and went to Na kra gser kha in Central Tibet (dBus) and to lJangs yan and brought back a great deal of gold. As he was making a circuit back up, going to Gung thang and to see the Jo bo in sKyid grong of Mang yul, he heard there that his elder brother ‘Od lde had passed away. After bestowing the gold on Nag tsho lo tsa ba and rGya brTson seng, they were sent with this to invite Jo bo rje.

The ruler (mnga’ bdag) Khri bKra shis ‘Od lde btsan had three sons. So Ion tsha bTsan srong, Cho chen tsha rTse lde, IDong rtsa khri srong, also known by the name Grags mtshan lde.

Paraphrase Section VI: On the Ruler (mnga’ bdag) ‘Od lde’s Son bTsan srong and His Lineage

The eldest (son) bTsan srong ruled over Pu hrangs; the Great Superior One (bla chen po) rTse lde ruled over Gu ge. The son of bTsan srong

93 Not yet identified.
94 “Right now Gung thang belongs to the sKyid grong District (rdzong) in the western part of gZhis ka rtsé. In the 10th century the brother of sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon, Khri bKra shis brtsegs pa dpal, established the famous Gung thang kingdom. Its capital was located in rDzong kha.” (GTG 2014: n. 20).
95 “Here Jo bo refers to the sKyid grong Jo bo which is called ‘Phags pa wa ti bzung po, one of the four ‘Phags pa images in Tibet. During the 7th century these were made from one block of sandalwood (a highly treasured wood from southern Nepal), cutting it into four pieces and making four ‘Phags pa images of the merciful Buddha. One is referred to as wa ti (Wati), the other three are (known as) dBu khang [Bhukham], ‘Ja ma li (Jamali), and Lo ke shar [Lokeśvara].” (GTG 2014: n. 19). See also Erhard 2004 and Declere 2006.
96 “Nag tsho lo tsa ba (1011–1064) was born in Mang yul. In 1037 he was sent by Byang chub ‘od to invite Atiśa to Guge. In 1042 he came along with Atiśa to Mang rang. At the age of fifty-four he passed away in mNga’ rīs.” (GTG 2014: n. 21). (The sources for these dates are not given. See Vetturini 2007: 84–85 for a brief account on Nag tsho and rGya lo tsa ba brTsun ‘grus seng ge. [Editor’s note/CJ;])
97 “rGya brTson ‘grus seng ge (d. 1040) was born in sPu rang. In 1031, he went to India to invite Atiśa to mNga’ rīs.” (GTG 2014: n. 22). (No sources for this date are given. In particular also the source relating to the year 1031 when he is said to have gone to India to invite Atiśa to come to mNga’ rīs is missing. [Editor’s note/CJ;])
98 “These three brothers represent a turning point in the history of mNga’ rīs. From this time on the sPu rang kingdom was divided into three kingdoms. The one called Gu ge was held by rTse lde, sPu rang was inherited by bTsan srong, the third one, Ya rtsé, was conquered by Grags btsan.” (GTG 2014: n. 23).
99 “rTse lde was the greatest king in the history of Gu ge. When he came to Gu ge he stayed in the royal castle (Jo bdag po’i mkhar gog) and acted like the king. During his rule the whole Gu ge territory was unified. The influence of his power extended to the kingdom of Gung thang and even to central Tibet. Many Tibetan chronicals therefore call him the king of Tibet (bod gyi rgyal po). For was Khri btsan; his son was dBang phyug; his son was (dwe sras?) Grags btsan lde; his son was Khri bKra shis bTsan stobs lde; his son was sTag tsha Khri ‘bar btsan; his son was the ruler (mnga’ bdag) Khri btsan dPal lde; he built a temple in Ya rtsé and founded four monastic communities (dbu sde). His son bTsan phyug lde built the temple of Shang za. He made many offerings to Zher chos ‘byung and renovated another temple. His son was bTsan stobs lde. He built the Rin chen brtsegs pa dpal temple with three wooden stories at Khwa char (’Khoro chags) and established eight monks (mchod gnas). His son was bTsan stobs lde. His son was Khri ‘bar btsan. He built the Kun spyod chen mo [temple?] at Kha char (’Khoro chags) and wrote miscellaneous sūtras in pure gold. This one, when Chos rje ‘Bri khung ’Jig rten mgon po [1143–1217] had appeared in the world of humans, met Chos rje Rin chen dpal101 after his arrival at Nam mkhar and as he held faith so strong he was sure he (Chos rje ‘Bri khung ’Jig rten mgon po) was indeed a Buddha. When his son Khri bKra shis dNgos grub mgon was appointed to [the throne of] mNga’ rīs, his father Khri ‘bar btsan acted as “Great Superior One” (bla chen po). When sTag tsha was in this function he was called “Great Superior One” (bla chen po) sTag tsha. He was reputed to be an incarnation of Byang chub dems dpa’ Zla ba rgyal mtshan. Many powerful realized yogis and masters, most of the time five-hundred, at other times few, around three-hundred, stayed at Kailas and the holy lakes, altogether three. The supplies for their livelihood were ceaselessly donated.

Those of the followers of the Secret Mantra (gSang sngags), expert in all the old and new schools of the Secret Mantra, in particular those being very severe and effective, bound into service gods and spirits, performed the highest practices at Ti se and rGod lung, etc. At ‘Bri khung thel (thil) monastery donations in great extent were perfectly practiced. His son gNam mgon lde, like his father of great conduct and wisdom, while residing in mKhar gong, engaged in spiritual practice, was graced with a vision of Dzam bha la upon which at one example the lHo rong chos ‘byung said: ‘If you want to find the greatest king in Tibet you should go to king rTse lde; if you want to render homage to a great master then you should go to Mi la ras pa. The king was like the sun and the master like the moon (rNy 2la idra bo). This means they were the most important people all over Tibet and that king rTse lde was an extraordinary Tibetan king.” (GTG 2014: n. 24). See Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh” (this volume) for a discussion of the title “Great Superior One”.
101 bTsan phyug.
102 Another name of ‘Bri khung ’Jig rten mgon po, the founder of the ‘Bri gung bk’a byrgyud pa school.
103 Also known as Byang sms la bsa rgyal mtshan (active in the first half of the 12th century), Sanskrit Candrabhāja.

83
time many Mongolian traders appeared. They entrusted him with a great amount of non-marketable riches, and stated “if we do not return after three years you are allowed to take (all of this) away” and went back (to their country). As they did not arrive after three years, the loads from Kashmir were inspected, upon which incalculable material things of greatest wealth emerged, in particular silver coins (tang ka) on all of which was inscribed dzam dzam. Owing to this he thought that they had been given the magical power by Dzam bha la. In order to take full advantage of this wealth, to the right and left of the silver image erected by the ancestor lHa [Ide], he built massive cast silver (images) of Avalokiteśvara (sPyan ras gzigs) and Vajrapāni (Phyag na rdo rje) equal to the one in the middle. He produced miscellaneous sūtras written in gold and also extended, mid-length and abbreviated Prajñāpāramitāsūtras. The entire bKa’ ‘gyur was written in pure silver. One hundred Buddhist scriptures written in gold and silver, one hundred plates, scoops, etc. of silver, one hundred pearls and one hundred rosaries were offered. With the expenditure of twenty-four thousand gold and silver, one hundred pearls and one hundred Buddhist scriptures written in gold and silver, one hundred plates, scoops, etc. of silver, one hundred pearls and one hundred rosaries were offered. With the expenditure of twenty-four sraṅg he established the chos ‘khor of rGod khung. He instituted permanent religious memorial services for his father. The elder brother dNgos grub mgon had the son sTobs rgyal lde. This one brought areas in the east under his control as far as Gye god khru la bya ba and in the west as far as gSer ‘dud shing. He also established the supplies for the livelihood of many great masters of meditation at Ti se. His son was Khri bKra shis rGyal ba lde, his son was Khri bKra shis rTogs lde btsan. This one brought Byang la phub under his power. He built the bKra shis rTseg pa temple at Khwa char (’Khor chags). His son was lHa btsan rDo rje seng ge. His son was Khri bKra shis bSod nams lde. This son ruled over the whole kingdom of Pu hrangs and conquered Mon ko phral drug (the six divisions of the Mon ko country?). He renovated many temples at Khwa char and so on. At the age of thirteen he assumed the power of the king of Ya rtse. In Central Tibet (dBus) he put the golden roof on the lHa rje rin po che temple, he also instituted golden offering bowls. At Sa skya he offered a golden roof for the lHa kang chen mo and much gold for large copper water containers. For the big assembly hall he established a golden roof with golden ornaments. For the lHag chen (temple?) at ‘Bri khung thel he donated a golden roof. He also put a golden roof on the Tshal Gung thang temple. To all these monasteries he made offerings and a huge amount of donations. In the later part of his life he made extensive offerings of gold, silver, pearls, corals and so on to many dge bshes of dBus and gTsang, such as Bu (ston Rin chen grub), Dol (po pa Shes rab rgyal mtshan) and Sher ()? and others and because of the great merit resulting from this he made a bKa’ ‘gyur and treatises (bstan bcos) written in pure gold. A whole grove (…) is of great service for the Buddhist teachings. His sons dPal mgon Ide and Kirti mal; the latter’s son was Manydzu shri (Mañjuśrī). Kirti, made Mal ya tse […]. This son offered a holy thang ka to Bodhgayā (rDo rje gdan) and repaired it. Many panditas were invited, many Buddhist teachings were made and services accomplished. All this is (related) to the lineage of Pu hrangs.

Closing Words

In his chapter on the history of mNgag’s ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes, Pandita Grags pa rgyal

102 According to van der Kuyp (2013: 330) perhaps another Shes rab rgyal mtshan active in Tshal Gung thang at this time.
103 Sanskrit śāstra, that is, works contained in the canon attributed to various Indian masters.
104 As for manydzu shri (Mañjuśrī), his name also appears in an inscription in the assembly hall of the lHa kang chen mo (Great Temple) at ‘Khor chags; see Tropper 2012: 67 (GTG 2014: n. 28). [See also Tropper 2019 for an edition of this inscription.]
105 “rDo rje tsho gre ‘chang refers to the most important teacher of Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan, Ngog chen Kun dga’ bzas po (1382–1456), the founder of the Ngog school tradition, one of the three main schools of the Sa skya pa order. In 1429 he built Ngog chos sde [Ngog E wam chos Idan] monastery.” (GTG 2014: n. 29).
106 “Grags pa rgyal mtshan (1415–1498) was born in rGyur ‘gyul (N30.09, E80.03, altitude above sea-level: 4,135 m) which is located in mDa’ ba County. One can still find ruins of magnificent castles, stūpas, temples, maṇḍala halls, etc. there. It is 70 km from there to mTho ling, to Mang nang it is 40 km.” (GTG 2014: n. 30).
107 Obviously, this note refers to the minor additions in small script which appear on a number of folios. Whether this note was written by an (unnamed) scribe or the author himself is unclear.
mtshan sketches in some detail the history of Zhang zhung prior to the arrival of the dynasty of the emperors (btsan po) of Tibet in the upper western side of Tibet and in a meticulous way the order how skyid lde Nyi ma mgon came to Western Tibet (sTod) and became established as king (rgyal po) of mNga’ ris (literally, “the subject territories”). Clear accounts are given about the “Three Protectors of Upper/Western Tibet” (sTod kyi mgon gsum), how their respective subject territories came into being and were then ruled by them; how division of the precious property of the paternal ancestors between each of them happened; likewise of the ruler ‘Khor re and his son the ruler lHa lde btsan, and his son, the ruler ‘Od lde btsan, and the royal lineage of Pu rangs until the 15th century.

Now I conclude that, exactly in this way, as everything written in various chronicles on the early history of mNga’ ris is very scarce, what is written in this book is of great value for research on the history of mNga’ ris. Therefore, in the future this book will make it possible to make additions to many lacunae in the vague history of mNga’ ris. At the same time it is an indispensable key that opens a large door of the storeroom of the history of mNga’ ris.

Bibliography
BELLEZZA, John. 2010. gShen-rab Myi-bo: His life and times according to Tibet’s earliest literary sources. In: Revue d’Etudes Tibétaines, 19, 31–118.


DO GRYA DBANG DRAG RDO RJE. 2013. lHa bla ma ye shes ’od gar log tu ’das min skor la rags tsam dpyad pa. In: Gu ge ‘tshe ring rgyal po’i ched rtsom phyogs bsgrigs. Beijing: Krung go’i bod rig pa dpe skrun khang, 1–73.

DO RGYA DRAG RDO RJE. 2014. The Lineage of sPu-rang Kingdom. Unpublished manuscript.


GU GE TSE RING RGYAL PO. 2005b. lHa bla ma ye shes ’od gar log tu ’das min skor la rags tsam dpyad pa. In: Gu ge ‘tshe ring rgyal po’i ched rtsom phyogs bsgrigs. Beijing: Krung go’i bod rig pa dpe skrun khang, 130–143.


Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Chapter on the History of mNga’ ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs: Notes on the Author and the Content


1. Genealogy of the kings of Purang (based upon a sketch by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2014: 15–16; for an earlier version see also Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005a: 70).

Genealogy according to the inscription in the entrance area of the lHa khang chen mo at 'Khor chags (Kurt Tropper 2019: 87–91):

4. 'Od lde
5. bTsan srong
6. Khri [Song (lde) grags] btsan lde; mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: Khri bTsan lde (Vitali 1996: 68, 121)
7. bTsan phyug lde
8. Grags btsan lde (uncertain reading); mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: Grags btsan lde (Vitali 1996: 69, 121)
9. inscription damaged; mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: Khri bKra shis bTsan stobs lde (Vitali 1996: 69, 121)
10. Khri ‘bar btsan
11. dNgos grub mgon
12. rGyal stobs lde
13. rGyal ba lde; mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: Khri bKra shis rgyal lde (Vitali 1996: 70, 122)
14. Khri bKra shis sTobs btsan lde; mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: Khri bKra shis sTobs lding btsan (Vitali 1996: 70, 122)
15. lHa btsun rDo rje seng ge (elder brothers Ar lde and Chos [btsan] lde)
16. Khri bKra shis bSod nams lde
17. dPal mgon lde
18. Manydzu shri (Mañjuśrī) Kirti
19. rGod mal (died in his youth)
Relating the History of mNga’ ris as Set Down in Writing in Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod paṇ nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

With Variant and Corrected Readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda

Finally, after a complete photographic documentation of the whole text had emerged among the corpus of files related to the late Tshe ring rgyal po’s work within the research project directed by Christian Jahoda it was decided to add the photographs as colour illustrations to the edition for the benefit of the readers. Due to the higher resolution, the general readability of the printed colour photographs is much better than the earlier black and white facsimile. Also the information provided by the use of red colour for the names of rulers is a feature which is not visible in the 2011 facsimile edition.

Furthermore, as the work on the edition based on the 2011 dPal brtsegs edition had shown that the order of the pages near the end of the text did not make sense, the photographs made it possible to restore the correct sequence. In addition, it turned out that a full page was entirely missing in the dPal brtsegs 2011 facsimile edition and also in Nyima B 2014.

The present Tibetan text edition is thus based on the black and white facsimile of the original manuscript published by dPal brtsegs bod yig dpe mying zhib ’jug khang in 2011 as well as on the photographs of the original folios. Accordingly, reference is made to the page numbers of the dPal brtsegs publication and to the folio numbers of the original manuscript as evident on the photographs prepared by then and the text published in lHa sa convinced the editors that it would be beneficial to keep to the publication plan, now by including additional references to the lHa sa version (henceforth referred as Nyima B 2014).
1. Folio 124b.

Section VII (on Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan) and Conclusion are additions by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po.

Editorial Note

Variant readings are given in brackets immediately after the respective word(s). Round brackets also serve to indicate the suggested correct spelling or grammatical form. The full (usual) spelling of contracted ligatures and of otherwise shortened forms (including numbers) is given between brackets [. Editorial information, such as references to page/folio numbers of the facsimile publication as well as corrected typing errors appear in square brackets.

1 Nyima B 2014: 141 has mu su. Nota bene: In Nyima B 2014 only a relatively small number of different readings are indicated as such. In addition, the readings of the original text have in many instances been corrected without indication! It is therefore often unclear whether a different reading of the original text is suggested or whether this has been tacitly corrected.

2 Read blo dang dpa’ rtsal che / / (without shad and a space after dang).

3 Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po (dbu can version of Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs dated 2014: henceforth referred to as Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po) and Nyima B 2014: 141 read khwa geng.
The reading *sad* is equally possible as *po* and *sa* show hardly any difference. We are following Dan Martin’s suggestion (personal communication, Feb. 2020) to read *sad*, this being Zhang zhung (ZZ) language for Tibetan lha (god). Similarly, *khya* represents ZZ rkyo, meaning king.

4 The reading *sad* is equally possible as *po* and *sa* show hardly any difference. We are following Dan Martin’s suggestion (personal communication, Feb. 2020) to read *sad*, this being Zhang zhung (ZZ) language for Tibetan lha (god). Similarly, *khya* represents ZZ rkyo, meaning king.

5 End of line 2: *bon* is written without tsheg (perhaps in order to achieve a flush-looking margin). From here only those instances with a missing tsheg are mentioned in a footnote when this is not at the end of a line.

6 In the manuscript *gi* is inserted in a slightly smaller size above *gzhung*. Its place between *gzhung* and *bshad* is also indicated by three dots.

7 In the manuscript *mnyam par* is followed by space as usual after *shad.*

8 *Nyima B* 2014: has (only) *ste.*

9 *Nyima B* 2014: 141 has *sprung.*
[430/f. 125b, ll. 1–7:]

ཝེར་བས་མཁར།   གུ་ལང་ཁྱུང་ར

21 Nyima B 2014: 141 has (only) de man chos.
22 The spelling sNyā shur appears in the Old Tibetan Annals. See Dotson 2009: 89, n. 156 who remarks “As the epithet, and perhaps clan name of the royal lineage, it appears that Snya-shur is to Zhang-zhung as Spu-rgyal is to Tibet. It is found in such royal names and titles as Lig Snya-shur and Snya-shur Lag-myig.”
23 In the manuscript bar la is followed by space as usual after shad.
24 Nyima B 2014: 141 has thag.
25 Nyima B 2014: 142 has mo po (?!).
26 Nyima B 2014: 142 has gnya’ kʰi’i.

27 Nyima B 2014: 142 has hor.
28 Nyima B 2014: 142 has (only) sngags.
29 Nyima B 2014: 142 has (only) bskur.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan's Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal skye dgu'i cod pan nyi zla'i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

[431/f. 126a, ll. 1–7:]

[30]སེམས་ལ་བཞག་ནས། མེས་རྙ་(སྙ་)ཤུར་31 རྒྱལ་པོའི་བུ་མོ་གླངས་གཡུ་རྐོང་འབར་མ་ལ་སྣ་མ་བསད་(བསད་)པས། རུས་ལྔའི་ཚོགས་ཤུགས་ཤོ་བ་ཡིན། དེ་ནས་སྐོང་ལྷུ་བཞེར་གི་ནུ་མོ་(33)ལྔ་ཡང་། རུས་ལྔས་བངས་ནས། བུ་ལྔ་བུ་མོ་ལྔ་བྱུང་། ལྷུ་བཞེར་(བསད་)པས། བུ་མོ་ལྔ། དམག་པ་(མག་)ལྔ་དང་ཕུད་(34)བཅུ་ལ་ཁྲི་ཆེམས་སུ་བོ་ནས་(བོ་)། འདས་སོ། །དེ་མན་ཆད་རུས་ལྔ་ཞང་པོ་སེ་ང་དང་དྲུག་ཟེར། དེའི་ཚེ(བསད་)རྙ་(སྙ་)ཤུར་35 དྲམ་པ། དཔུང་དམར་ཁྱ་དང་སྤུན་ཐུགས་འཁྲུལ། ཁྱུང་པོའི་མི་རེ་ལེ་རེ་ལ་ལྷ་གསལ་བ་ལ་(བསད་)ནས་མཆོད་དད། །


30 = shes rab bam blo gros.
31 Nyima B 2014: 142 has rka shugs (?!).
32 Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po: tshigs.
33 Nyima B 2014: 142 has bu mo (which is at least equally possible and has the same meaning).
34 In the manuscript pho mo is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between dang and bcu is also indicated by three dots.
35 Nyima B 2014: 142 has khyung lung thang.
5. Folio 126b. [432/f. 126b, l. 1–6:]
6. Folio 123b, l. 6.

Nyima B 2014: 142 has stod.

As often in this text at the end of the line no tshogs seems to have been written. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po: rgu (with tshogs).

Nyima B 2014: 143 reads rgod pa and corrects this to rgod po (which is written without any doubt in the original manuscript).

Nyima B 2014: 143 has snyi.

Nyima B 2014: 143 has rma.

Nyima B 2014: 143 has bya.

Nyima B 2014: 143 has (only) rdzangs.

This page has only six lines. Before line 6 a space corresponding approximately to the height of one line is blank, obviously intentionally in order to indicate a break in the historical narrative marked by the breakdown of (imperial) Tibet on the one hand and on the other the continuation of the royal line by skyid lde Nyi ma mgon in Western Tibet.

Nyima B 2014: 140 reads kyi and corrects this to skyid (which is written without any doubt in the original manuscript).
[427/f. 124a, ll. 1–7] བརྒྱ་ཉེར་བཞི།
ཕག་ལ བྨོས་འཁྲུངས་ར་བརྒྱད་སྐག་ལྐོ་མངའ་རིས་སྐོད་དུ་ཕེབས།   སྐོད་ཁམས་ཀུན་ལ་དབང་མཛད་ལུག་གི་ལྐོ།   །ཉི་ཟུང་སྐུ་མཁར་བཟུང་ནས་རྒྱལ་སིད་བསདས་བསྐངས།   ང་དགུ་བྱའི་46ལྐོ་ལ་དགུང་དུ་གཤེགས།   དེ་ཡང་སོད་ལེ་ཉི་མ་མགན་ནི།   ཡབ་དཔལ་འཁྲོར་བཙན་གིས།   སངས་རྒྱས་སྨན་གི་བཏུགས་དམ་དུ་གནང་བ།   དེ་ལ་མཆོད་པ་དང་གསལ་བ་བཏབ་པས།   བྲོད་ཁྱེང་(ཁེང་ལྐོག་)ག་པའི་བབལ་མ་ཟུག་ཅིང་།   མངའ་རིས་སུ་ཕེབས་པ་ཡིན་ཏེ།   དེ་ཡང་།   ཐུབ་དབང་སྦེ་བཅས་སྐོས་ངད་ལན་ལ་འཁོད།   །མི་འམ་ཅི་དང་མ་གྲོས་ཀླུ་རྒྱལ་སྐོག་གས།   །ཆོས་ཅིས་ཚིམ་མཛད་གསེར་འདབ་བྱ་རྒྱལ་གི།   །ཁྱུ་བཅས་མཁའ་ལ་ལིང་ཞིང་ཁ་བའི་ལྐོངས།   །གངས་རིའི་རྒྱལ་པོ་ཏི་སེའི་རེ་ལ་བཞུགས།   །སངས་རྒྱས་བདུན་པ་ཞེས་བྱའི་ཆོས་གསུངས་ནས།

46 Nyima B 2014: 140 has bya yi.
47 Nyima B 2014: 140 has mi'am.
8. Folio 124b, ll. 1–6.  [428/f. 124b, ll. 1–6:]
9. Folio 126b, ll. 6–7.  [432/f. 126b, l. 6–7:]

Nyima B 2014: 143 has (only) du rdzangs.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text


[433/f. 127a, ll. 1-7:] བརྒྱ་ཉེར་བདུན།

༄༅།   །བཏང་ཏེ

[Nyima B 2014: 143 has (only) ste.] 49 [Nyima B 2014: 143 has om [regular letter ma].]

[Nyima B 2014: 143 has rgyal kha sam.]

50 In the manuscript nyid is followed by space as usual after shad.

51 Also the reading bsdzangs seems possible. Nyima B 2014: 144 has brdzangs.

52 The spelling dang (which is unmistakably clear) instead of dar is presumably a scribal error. Nyima B 2014: 144 has dar.

53 Nyima B 2014: 143 has spre’u.

54 Nyima B 2014: 143 has sgnyil ma.

55 Nyima B 2014: 143 has phyir.

11. Folio 127b. [434/f. 127b, ll. 1–7:]

ལྷིན་བདུག་པ་ཅན་དང་། བྲོན་པ་དེ་གས་པ་ཅན་རྣམས་ཕྲ་བྱད་སིད་པས། དབུས་གཙང་གི་ཡུལ་ཕྲག་དག་གི་ཐུགས་གཏད་ཐུབ་པའི་བན་དུ་བཀའ་ལུང་སྩལ་པས། བན་དེ་གཉིས་པ་ན་རེ། རེའི་བཀའ་ལུང་ནི་རི་བས། འབངས་ཅག་གིས་མཆི་ངོ་ཐག་མི་ཐག་གལ་ཏེ་མཆི་སིད་ན། རེས་བསད་དེ་ས། ་མངའ་རིས་ཡ་གིར། ཆབ་སིད་དང་། མངའ་རིས་བརྙེས་པ་ན། འབངས་ཅག་ལ་མངའ་རིས་ཀི་ཕུད། ཡུལ་འབྲོག་གི་ས་འཚམས (མཚམས) ཞིང་། མཁར། སྐོང་(རྐོང་)ལ་སོགས་པ་གནང་པོས་གཞི་སེམས། སྐྱེད་ཟེར་མཁྱེན་པོ་ངེས་ཤེས་ཁྲི་མཐུན་(དོན་ཅན)རྩོང་པོ་མཁྱེན་པོ་་བཅོམ། དེ་ལྟ་བུའི་ཡན་ཏན་འཛོམ་(འཛོམས)པའི་བན་དེ་ཆེན (དྲེ་)པོ་དགུ་ན་པྲ་བྷ་ཞེས་བྱ་བ། མཁྱེན་པ་དང་ནུས་པར་ན་པ། སྣང་(ས་)ིད་ཀིས་བྲན་དུ་འཁྲལ་ནུས་པ་ཅིག་(ཞིག་པོ་)ད་པ་དང་། །ཞེས་གསན་ནས། བན་དེ་གཉིས་པ་ན་རེ།

58 Nyima B 2014: 144 has mug pa.

59 In the manuscript la is inserted in a slightly smaller size below the line. Its place between mo and the tsheg is also indicated by one or two dots. Nyima B 2014: 144 has gsgs mo lam mtho'.

60 Nyima B 2014: 144 reads ban dha and corrects this to ban dhe (which is written without any doubt in the original manuscript).

61 Nyima B 2014: 144 reads ban dha and corrects this to ban dhe (which is written without any doubt in the original manuscript).

62 Nyima B 2014: 144 has (only) mthams.

63 Nyima B 2014: 144 has (only) rdzong.

64 In the manuscript sa is inserted between pa and zhal in a slightly smaller size below the line. Nyima B 2014: 144 has shad after zhus pas.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text


[435/f. 128a, ll. 1–7:]

བརྒྱ་ཉེར་བརྒྱད། །གིས་བཞེས་ནས། དགུང་ལྷོ་བྲང་གཡུ་རུང་ལྷ་རེ་ནས་ཕོག་ཐེགས། རེ་ཉིད་བོན་ཆེན་པོ་ཅང་ཨ་ཕོའི་བུ། ངས་ཡོད་གྱི་ལྷོ་ཕྲེག་བཞི་(བཀྲ་ཤིས་བཙན།) ཅོག་གྲུ་ལེབ། གཟིམས་མལ་བ་ཆོས་ཀི་ལྷ། མ་ཞང་བན་དྷེ། བན་ཆེན་པོ་གཉིས། གཞན་ཡང་ཞིག་བོན་པ་ཚབ། ཆོད་ལྷ། བན་ཆེན་སད། གཞན་ཡང་ཞིག་བོན་པ་ཚབ། ཆོད་ལྷ། བན་ཆེན་སད། དེའི་སས་གཉིས་(་)ཞང་རྒྱལ་བ་ཡོན་ཏན། མདོག་གཡུང་བ་ཞང་མེ་ཆེན་པོ། གཟིམས་མལ་བ་སཔ་ལུ་ལས་སགས་(ལ་སོགས་)་ཏེ། རེ་འབངས་རགས་བཏུས། ལྔ་བཅུ་དང་བཅས་ཏེ། བྱང་ལམ་ལ་ཕེབས། ཞང་ཞུང་ནས་བསྐུབ་ལ་རོ་པ་ལྔ་བཅུ་ར་གཅིག་ཕིན་པ་དང་འཛོམ་ཞིང་(འཛོམས་ཤིང་)། སིད་པའི་སྦྱོད་(རྫོང་)ར་ལ་མཁར་དམར་དུ་

65 Nyima B 2014: 144 has bion po.
66 Nyima B 2014: 144 has bion po.
67 Nyima B 2014: 145 has (only) rdzong.
68 Nyima B 2014: 145 has stod.
13. Folio 128b. [436/f. 128b, ll. 1–7:]

ལས། ཤེལ་གི་ཁིལས་བབས་སེམས། མཁར་ཁྱུང་ལུང་དངུལ་དཀར་ནས།  ཞང་ཞུང་ཁིས་འི་དམག་དང་ཆས་ནས།  ར་ལར་ཕེབས། འཁྲུགས (ཁིས་འི་དམག་) པོ་ལྷམ་དཀར་ནས།

གྲིབ་མ་ལ་སྒྲོན་ན་བརྒྱབ། །ལ་གས་ཀི་མི་རེང་དུ་སྐུ་འདུས་(རྫུས་)ནས།  བྱིན་སྐུ་ན་ལ། རྒྱལ་སོད་ཕུག་ཏུ་ཕུལ་ནས། སྐོང་ཚ་སྤུན་ལྔས (་)ཞུ་བ་མི་འད་བ་ལྔ་ཕུལ་ཏེ།  མང་ཝེར་བས་ཁོག་ཡངས་ལ་བརིད་ཆེ་

Nyima B 2014: 145 has (only) ste.
70 Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Nyima B 2014: 145 read go gor.
71 Nyima B 2014: 145 has (only) rdzus.
72 In the manuscript the prefix ba is written in a slightly smaller size above the ligature rgya.
73 Nyima B 2014: 145 has (only) rdzus.
74 Nyima B 2014: 145 has dpung mar.
75 Nyima B 2014: 145 has (only) ste.
[437/f. 129a, ll. 1–7:] བརྒྱ་ཉེར་དགུ། །ཤུགས་བྲག་གི་(དག་གིས་)ཤུགས་ཆེན་པོ་ནས་ཀང་རྒྱལ་ཕྱན་དང་། མི་མང་པོས་ཏེ། དེ་ནས་སྐོ་བད་ནུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྐོ་བསྲུངས། ཚོང་ས་པ་ལ་བེ་ས་ནག་པ། དང་པོ་ས་པྱང་ཚ་སྤུན་ལྔ། ལྷུ་གསུམ་བཞེར་གཅིག་གི་ཏོག བུ་དང་དྲུག་ནི། དེ་ནས་སྐོ་བད་ནུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྐོ་བསྲུངས་སྐྱར་པ་ནག་པ། དང་པོ་ས་པྱང་ཚ་སྤུན་ལྔ། ལྷུ་གསུམ་བཞེར་གཅིག་གི་ཏོག བུ་དང་དྲུག་ནི། དེ་ནས་སྐོ་བད་ནུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྐོ་བསྲུངས་ཞྀ་ཡི་ཚུལ་ལ། རྐོ་ཁས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་ཀི་རྒྱ་རྒྱས　

76 *Nyima* B 2014: 145 has ste.

77 The reading of nag is not entirely certain.

78 Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and *Nyima* B 2014: 145 read stod tsha. *Nyima* B corrects this to stong tsha.
བདུན་ནི་དེ་ཀ་ན་ཁ་ར།   དེར་ཕྲྐོ་བྲང་གི་བཀྐོད་དམཛད་ད།   །དེའི་ཚེ་དབང་མཛད་པས།   སྐུ་ཚེ་ལྔ་བཅུ་གསུམ་སངས་(བསོད་ངས་)ནས།   
སྤིར་རྒུང་ལྔ་(དགུང་ལྔ་)ལྔ་བཅུ་ར་དགུ་ཐུབ་པར་ལུང་བསན།   
དེ་ནས་འབྲུག་གི(་)ལྔ་སྐོན་ན་ཟླ་ར་བའི་ཚེས་ལྔ་ལ།   
དགེ་བཞེར་བཀྲ་ཤིས་བཙན་གས།   བྲེ་ཧྲངས་སུ་སྤན་དང།   
གུ་གེ་བྱང་རྒྱབ་ལ་ཕེབས།   
ངས་ཏི་སེ་དང་མཚོམ་པང་ལ་གཡས་བསྐོར། (སྐོར་དུ་མཛད།)   
སྨན་ནགས་གི(་)བོ་ད་དེ།   
སྐིད་ལེ་གླིང་དུ་ཕག་ཕེབས།   སྦྲུལ་ལྔ་དང་ར ལྔའི་བར།   
མངའ་རིས་འབྲོད་དང་སྦེད་ཅན་ལྔ་བ་སྐོགས་གནས་པའི་མ་ལ་བ་ཙམ་ལས་ཧ་ཅང་གྲུབ་པར་མ་གྱུར།
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtonshes Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

16. Folio 130b.

[440/f. 130b, ll. 1–7:]

...

N.B.: left part of line before sKyi’d is left empty.

Nyima B 2014: 147 has dge ver.

Nyima B 2014: 147 has (only) te.

Also dgas may be a possible reading. Nyima B 2014: 147 has dgas.

Read: mgu’d

Nyima B 2014: 147 has yum.
17. Folio 131a. [441/f. 131a, ll. 1–7:]

༄༅།ལེམ་ཐོངས།ཁབ་མུན་ཆེན་གསལ་བ། རོག་ཏེར་ཟླུམ་དཀར་ཆེན།

ཆིབས་འདོད་འཕྲུབ་བྱ་ཕུར (འཕུར།) བག་སྤན་འབྲོང་རེ་གུག །བའི་འབྲོང་
།ཕིས་དཔལ་གནན་དགུང་དུ་གཤེགས་ནས། བར་པ་བཀྲ་ཤིས་མགན་

དབུས་བར་ཁྲུངས (འཁྲུངས།) དུང་དཀར་པགཡས་སུ་འཁྱིལ་བ་དང་འདི་སེ།

མཁྱན་པ་དཀོལ་(དཀོལ་ནས་རྒྱས་ཅིང་(ཤིང་)) ཆེ་བར་ཁྲུངས (འཁྲུངས།)

92 Reading of do uncertain. Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) do.
93 Nyima B 2014: 148 has gi.
94 Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) cing.
95 Nyima B 2014: 148 has thod.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan's Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal skye dgu'i cod pan nyi zla'i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

18. Folio 131b.

[442/f. 131b, ll. 1–7:]

96 Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) srol.
97 Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) rdzas.
98 From here (spu hrangs sku mkhar .. de las (la) sogs po), despite some spelling differences and minor changes, the text corresponds to mNga' ri sgyal rabs (Vitali 1996: 51, ll. 1–4).
99 Read rong cung spu (that is, refering to Pooh/sPu in Rong chung)? Nyima B 2014: 148 has rong bud su.
100 Nyima B 2014: 148 has ching.
101 Nyima B 2014: 148 has ching.

---

102 Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) rdzas.
103 Nyima B 2014: 148 has (only) stobs.
104 End of line 7 (and page): cen is written without tsheg.
106

Nyima B 2014: 149 has strang.
110 Nyima B 2014: 149 has dang.
111 Nyima B 2014: 149 has (only) gtsang.

110 The following passage (marked by an x in the manuscript) is added in smaller dbu can script on the same page below line 7.

111 Read lhas (suggested by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po)? Nyima B 2014: 149 has lha sras dharma sras.

112 In the manuscript ni is followed by space as usual after shad.

113 Nyima B 2014: 149 reads mnga’ ris su hrangs and corrects this to mnga’ ris pu hrangs.
[444/f. 132b, l. 1]  
ཚུལ་བཞིན་དུ་སྐངས།  
[444/f. 132b, ll. 2–7:]  
ལྷ་ལེའི་བཀྲ་སྤྱི་བཙན་ནག་པའི་དགུང་ལོ་བཅུ་བཞི་པ་ལ་དགུང་དུ་གཤེགས་སྐོ།།

114 Nyima B 2014: 149 has (only) bskyangs.
115 Nyima B 2014: 149 has rdzas.
116 Nyima B 2014: 149 has (only) 'tshams.
117 gandi (see Dung dkar tshig mzdod chen mo 2002: 482)
118 End of line 3: gsol is written without tsheg or shad.
119 Nyima B 2014: 149 has rdzings su.
120 Possibly standing for gar.

[445/f. 133a, ll. 1–7:

༄༅། །བཞེངས་སོ། །དབུས་ཀིན་ལྷག་པར། རྒྱ་གར། རྒྱ་ནག

ནེ་བོད་པ་ཡིན་ནམ་ཟེར། གསེར་གིས་ལྷ་བཟོ་བའི་ཡན་སྫོངས

པའི་བས་པ་ཡིན་ནམ་ཟེར། གསེར་གིས་ལྷ་བཟོ་བའི་ཡན་སྫོངས

དེ་ཡང་ལྟས་བལྟས་པས་ཤིན་དུ་ལེགས་པ་བྱུང་།

སྐུ་མཁར་དུ་ཕེབས་པ་ན། ར་དངུལ་(རྔུལ་ཚིང་དུབ་པར་གྱུར་པ་གཟིགས་པས་ན། བས་ཀིས་སྤུ་བསེབ་(གསེབ་དང་། ད་བས

སྐུ་མཁར་དུ་ཕེབས་པ་ན། ར་དངུལ་(རྔུལ་ཚིང་དུབ་པར་གྱུར་པ་གཟིགས་པས་ན། བས་ཀིས་སྤུ་བསེབ་(གསེབ་དང་། ད་བས

In the manuscript the prefix ma is inserted in a smaller size below the line.

Nyima B 2014: 150 has (only) khengs..

Nyima B 2014: 150 has sgal. Also ne'u (or ne'u le), mongoose, weasel may be considered.

Nyima B 2014: 150 has (only) rdzongs.

Nyima B 2014: 150 has khra.

Nyima B 2014: 150 has bryad.

Nyima B 2014: 150 has (only) shin tu.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

[446/f. 133b, ll. 1–7]

129 Nyima B 2014: 150 has pa.
130 In the manuscript the letter nga is inserted in a smaller size below the line.
131 Nyima B 2014: 150 has cu.
132 sman dpuyad yan lag brgyad pa: gso rig gi gzung lugs (Tsering Drongshar).

22. Folio 133b.

109
བརྒྱ་སྐོ་བཞི། །༅། །པར་འབྐོས་པ་ལ་བོད་པ། བཤགས་པའི་བསྐོད་འགྲེལ་ལསངས་རྒྱས་ཞི་བས་མཛད་པ། བཤགས་པའི་བསྐོད་འགྲེལ་ལསངས་རྒྱས་ཞི་བས་མཛད་པ་ཤེས་རབ་ཀི་ཕ་རྐོལ་ཏུ་ཕིན་པའི་དོན་བསྡུས་པ། དབྱིག་ཚིགས་སུ་བཅད་པ་དགུ་པ་དེའི་འགྲེལ་ལ་པ་འགྲེལ་བསྲུངས་གཞན་ནས་མཛད་པ། དབྱིག་གོ་ནི། བསན་བཅུ་བརྐོད་པའི་གཏམ། ཡང་ཁམས་ཀི་དཔའ་བ བསྐོར་བའི་སྦྱན་བདག་འབུལ་བ་དང་། ཞབས་རྐོག་(ཞབས་ཏོག་ཕུན་སུམ་འཚོགས་ཚོགས་པ་བསྒྲུབ་)136 དད་གུས་ཆེན་པོའང་། དགེས་པས་137

135 In the manuscript khas grub is inserted in small dbu can script below the line. Its place between thugs and du is also indicated by two dots.
136 Nyima B 2014: 151 has (only) mbha'.
137 Nyima B 2014: 151 has (only) rdzogs.
140 Nyima B 2014: 152 reads 'khor re and corrects this to 'khor res.'
 Nyima B 2014: 152 has (only) dgyes. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po reads dgos.

142 Nyima B 2014: 152 has (only) dgyes. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po reads dgos.

143 Read: dpe thub (alias Spituk).

144 In the manuscript dam is inserted in small dbu can script below the line. Its place between thugs and du is also indicated by two dots.
ཞི་བ་འད་གསེར་དགས་སྐུ་བླུས་པས་ཁས

བུག་ལ།   དབུས་ཀྱིས་བུད་ཀྱིས་གུང་ཐང་དུ་ཕེབས་པས།   དེར་ཅེན་རྒྱས་གཅུང་ལ

ད་ཀྱིས་བྱང་ཆུབ་འརང་ཉིད་དང་ལབཅེན་སྒྲུབ་ནས་ཕེབས།   གསེར་མང་འགས་མཉམ་གས་ཀླུ་བྲྐོན་དེ་ལ།   མང་ཡུལ་སྐྲེ་ཏེ་རེས་སྨན་གས་ནས་དགེ་གས་དུག་བྱུང་ནས་གུ་གེར་ཕེབས་ལ་ཁད་དུ་

ཀྲ་གསེར་ཁ་དང་།   ཕྱི་བསྐུད་པས།   བད་པས།   ལམ་ལས་འཁོར་བསྐུད་པས།   མང་ཡུལ་སྐྲེ་ཏེ་རེས་སྨན་གས་ནས་དགེ་

ལ༔(ཉིད་དང་ལབཅེན་སྒྲུབ་ནས་ཕེབས།   གསེར་མང་འགས་མཉམ་གས་ཀླུ་བྲྐོན་དེ་ལ།   མང་ཡུལ་སྐྲེ་ཏེ་རེས་

145 Nyima B 2014: 153 has lcags ra.
146 Nyima B 2014: 153 reads tshal and corrects this to 'tshal.
147 Nyima B 2014: 153 has khug.
148 Nyima B 2014: 153 reads na and corrects this to nam.
149 In the manuscript nas is followed by space as usual after shad.
150 Nyima B 2014: 153 has (only) rdzangs.
151 Nyima B 2014: 153 has (only) smig.
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan's Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu'i cod pan nyi zla'i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

[451/f. 136a, ll. 1–7:] བརྒྱ་སྐོ་དྲུག

༄༅། །མངའ་བདག་ཁིིབ བཀྲ་ཤིས་üའི་སས་གསུམ་སེ།   སྐོ་ལྐོན་ཚ་བཙན་སོ། ཆེ་བ་བཙན་སོང་།   ཆོ་ཆེན་ཚ་ལེ།   ལྐོང་ར་ཁི་སྐོང་།   མཚན་གྲགས་མཚན་ལེ་ཡང་ཟེར་རྐོ།   །བཙན་སོང་སེས་ཁི་བཙན་ལེ།   དེའི་སས་དབང་ཕྱུག་ལེ།   ལྐོང་ར་ཁི་སྐོང་།   མཚན་གྲགས་མཚན་ལེ།   འདིས་ཁ་ཆར་དུ།   །བཙུགས།    

དེའི་སས་བཙན་ཕྱུག་ལེ།   ཤང་ཟའི་ལྷ་ཁང་བཞེངས།   ཞེར་ཆོས་འབྱུང་དུ་བཀྲར་(དཀར་མང་དུ་ཕུལ།   ཞིག་བསོ་(གསོ་བས་)མཛད་ད།   །དེའི་སས་བཙན་ཕྱུག་ལེ།   ཤང་ཟའི་ལྷ་ཁང་བཞེངས།   ཞེར་ཆོས་འབྱུང་

[152] Nyima B 2014: 153 has dē (that is, de with 'a chung subscript).
[153] Nyima B 2014: 153 has (only) stobs.

[154] Nyima B 2014: 154 has kha (that is, kha with 'a chung subscript).
[156] Nyima B 2014: 154 has kha (that is, kha with 'a chung subscript).
This page is missing entirely in the dPal brtsogs 2011 facsimile edition and also in Nyima B 2014. It was clear before the inspection of photographs of the complete MS that the sequence of the pages 452–453 as published in the 2011 facsimile edition (and rendered into dbu can script in Nyima B 2014) did not make sense.

This is added in smaller dbu can script below and in between the nga and the tsheg before grub. It is black while the remaining characters and ligatures (with the exception of the vowel signs) are written in red ink.
[453/f. 137a, ll. 1–7] 159

སྐྱིད་པོ་བོ་དངོས་སུ་བོད་པ། །

160 Nyima B 2014: 154 has nyer.
161 Nyima B 2014: 154 has (only) rdzas.
162 In the manuscript dzam is followed by space as usual after shad.
163 Nyima B 2014: 154 has (only) bar.
164 In the manuscript dngul is inserted in small dbu can script between sku and ga ra above the line.
དེའི་ས་ཁི་བཀྲ་ཤིས་རྒྱལ་བ་ལེ། དེའི་ས་ཁི་བཀྲ་ཤིས་རྒྱལ་བ་ལེ།

165 Nyima B 2014: 154 has 'du.
166 Nyima B 2014: 154 reads kha and corrects this to khā (that is, kha with a chung subscript).
167 Nyima B 2014: 154 has brtsegs.
168 Nyima B 2014: 154 has mda'.
Based on the inspection of the photographs of the complete MS it is evident that folio 138 is not fully preserved and that on the left ca. 4–5 cm of the page is missing (which is not clear from the 2011 facsimile edition (nor from Nyima B 2014). The reverse side of folio 138 is empty.

At the beginning of line 2 one or two words seem to be missing.

In the photographs of the original MS a fragmentary sa, the first letter in sogs, is recognisable.

Nyima B 2014: 155 has (only) tog.

Nyima B 2014: 155 has (only) bcos.

At the beginning of line 3 one or two words may be missing.

Unclear sign (perhaps subscript a chung?) below ma.

At the beginning of line 4 one or two words may be missing.

Left part of the prefix ma is missing in the manuscript.

At the beginning of line 5 one or two words may be missing.

The following text, starting more than a half page away at end of line 5, is written in smaller dbu med script.

At the beginning of line 6 one or two words may be missing.

At the beginning of line 7 one or two words may be missing.
དཔོན་དེ་གཞན་པ་ན་མཚམས་མཐོང་བྲུང་པོ་
གཞན་པ་ཐེས་པ་བཤད་པའི་སེང་གི་ཐོན་

32. Folio 138b.

118
Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan's Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu'i cod pan nyi zla'i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan Text

Bibliography


Nyima B 2014 = Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skyed dgu'i cod pan nyi zla'i phreng mdzes zhes bya ba bzhugs pa lags so by Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan. In: Nyi ma'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs dang zla ba'i rigs kyi rgyal rabs, ed. RDO BIS TSHE RING RDO RJE. 2014. Gangs can gtsug lag rin chen phreng ba, deb bdun pa. [lHa sa:] Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, 1–155.
Pāṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s work entitled lHa bla ma ye shes ‘od kyi mam thar rgyas pa (Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od) was published as a facsimile edition in 2011 by dPal brtsegs bod yig dpe rnying zhib ’jug khang in no. 43 (Pi) of the series Bod kyi lo rgyus mam thar phyogs bsgrigs (see Gu ge Paṇ chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011a). This manuscript, like Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nylu zla’i phreng mdzes (see Gu ge Paṇ chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011b), was originally written in dbu med script. Due to the frequent use of contracted words (skung yig), abbreviations (bsdus yig) and old (partly also ‘unorthodox’) spellings, it is not easily readable.

In 2013 an annotated dbu can version was published in which most of the contracted expressions (with the exception of numerals) were resolved and corrected. Also modern spellings were suggested. See Do rgya dBang drag rdo rje 2013: 1–55 (henceforth D2013) for the biographical text and ibid., pp. 56–130, for annotations and bibliography. This edition, which is certainly very useful, unfortunately has some shortcomings—it comes without the apparatus of a critical edition and most regrettably does not contain any references to the pagination of the facsimile edition—as well as a number of editorial problems (for example, in the resolution of skung yig).

The aim of the text published is here to provide an improved edition that overcomes these shortcomings and mistakes, in addition to the collation of original (dbu med) skung yig and bsdus yig expressions and resolved (dbu can) spellings. As research on the content of this text is only just about to begin and as new texts and documents that shed additional light on the history of Western Tibet are still turning up (see Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ‘dus 2012a, Pa tshab Pa sangs dbang ‘dus 2012b, Khyung bdag 2013, Martin 2019: 218, n. 90), the main goal at this point is to establish a sound textual basis for dealing with various critical questions that need to be investigated.

The work on this edition, which was based first on a typewritten version provided by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, was actually begun in January 2011, initially mainly with the intention to bring together and eventually publish relevant information on selected research questions. When the facsimile version became available and the existence of another relevant historical text by Grags pa rgyal mtshan was revealed by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po not only the scope of interest and approach but necessarily also the required input widened considerably. The main editorial work on the Tibetan text leading to its present state and form has been in the hands of Tsering Drongshar since autumn 2012.

Editorial Note
The Tibetan text edition is based on the facsimile of the original version (see Gu ge Paṇ chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011a: 273–355).

Editorial information, such as references to page/folio numbers of the facsimile publication appear in square brackets. Round brackets indicate the suggested correct spelling or grammatical form. The full (usual) spelling of contracted ligatures and of otherwise shortened forms (including numbers) are given in brackets [ ]. The related spelling of the dbu med originals of such contracted ligatures—sometimes complex or unusual forms—are given on the same line in the margin columns. ‘Tortoise-shell’ type brackets [ ] indicate brackets occurring in the Tibetan manuscript. Their function and meaning is not entirely clear. Sections between these brackets seem to represent quotations from other sources.
[274/vol. NYA/f. 1a:] 1 རིས།

[275/f. 1b:] 1 རིས།

[275/f. 2a:] 1 རིས།

[275/f. 2b:] 1 རིས།

1 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 1 has nye.
2 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 1 has dya (skung yig).
3 D2013: 1 has ba without indicating this as a corrected reading.
4 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 1 not indicated as skung yig. In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015 only about half of the skung yig are indicated as such.
5 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 1 bd is missing.
6 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 2 has "yig?" in parentheses after zhig.
7 shad (and space) after dang is missing in D2013: 1.
8 D2013: 1 has chen po.
9 D2013: 2 has kyi and suggests correcting this into kyi.
10 a chung below dza is missing in D2013: 2.
11 D2013: 2 does not correct the spelling ra' dza' (ra dza) into ra' dza (ra dza) in order to render the Sanskrit rāja.
12 Again D2013: 2 does not correct the spelling ra' dza' (ra dza) into ra' dza (ra dza) in order to render the Sanskrit rāja.
13 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 2 wrongly reads ꜘ.
14 Not corrected in D2013: 2.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

13 Not corrected in D2013: 2.
14 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 49, n. 23, suggests reading the skung yig as mam dag or mam gzhag and holds the latter as more likely.
15 Shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 2.
16 Not corrected in D2013: 2.
17 Shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 2.
18 Not corrected in D2013: 2.
19 Not corrected in D2013: 3 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 3. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 3 has only gzhung.
20 Not corrected in D2013: 3 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 3.
21 Not corrected in D2013: 3.
22 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 3 has ba.

[276/f. 2b]

[277/f. 3a]
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

35 D2013: 4 has bskur par.
36 In the facsimile of the original MS a few tsheg (not given or mentioned in D2013: 4) can be seen on both sides of pa'i (uncertain reading).
37 Not corrected in D2013: 5.
38 Not corrected in D2013: 5.
39 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 6 has wrongly kyi.
[281/f. 5a]

[282/f. 5b]

40 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 6 has wrongly mtsbo.
41 D2013: 5 has an inaccurate reading (mtshe'ur).
42 First instance of a bracket occurring in the Tibetan manuscript.
43 Not corrected in D2013: 6.
44 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 6 has bsrungs.
45 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 6 has prang but also srang seems equally possible.
46 Not corrected in D2013: 6.

47 D2013: 6 has dkon cog gi.
48 D2013: 6 has dkon cog gi.
49 Not corrected in D2013: 6.
50 D2013: 6 suggests reading gnang instead of snang.
51 Not corrected in D2013: 7.
It is not entirely clear whether the thin vertical line is meant to represent a bracket or not.

D2013: 7 suggests reading bstsal and not bcal.

D2013: 7 has an inaccurate reading (phyed do).

After khri pa la 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 7 adds ni (which is not in the original MS).

D2013: 7 has ni (which is not in the original MS).

It is not entirely clear whether gan should be read as a contracted or hidden word (skung yig) in this case as suggested by D2013: 7 (hence gzhan) or not.

D2013: 7 suggests reading bstsal and not bcal.

D2013: 7 suggests reading bcal (and not bstsal) for btsal.

D2013: 7 suggests reading chung du.

It is not clearly visible (as in all other instances where this occurs in the manuscript) whether the thin vertical line is meant to represent a bracket or not.

D2013: 8 reads the skung yig as dbyig gi bshes.

D2013: 8 suggests reading byung for byon.

Not corrected in D2013: 8.

D2013: 8 does not correct the spelling ra’ dza’ (rā dza) into ra’ dza (rā dza) in order to render the Sanskrit rāja.
this passage suggests that both works drew from the same sources or the later temples founded during his time. Ngag.dbang grags.pa invites the reader in 15th century sTod. It records Byang.chub.’od’s provision of maintenance to sources in West Tibet which were not available elsewhere. 

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]

\[\text{...}\]
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[286/f. 7b:]

Also bdzun slu is a possible (however likewise not fully certain) reading. Unfortunately, due to a black spot, the facsimile is not clearly readable. D2013: 9 suggests reading bdzun slu.

D2013: 9 suggests reading nyam ngan for nyams ngar.

Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 9 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 106.

Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 106.

Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 106.

D2013: 9 suggests reading sgron me for sgron ma.

Not corrected in D2013: 9.

82 Not corrected in D2013: 10.
83 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 106 a tsheg is missing after ya (no skung yig).
Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda

Various spellings are found in Tibetan historiographical texts. Deb ther sngon po ("Blue Annals"), for example, has ar tsho ban de (Roerich 1988: 696f). D2013: 10 has ar rdo'z ban dpe. The foundation for this reading (duplication of ra) is unclear.

D2013: 10 has bco (without indicating this as a corrected reading).
D2013: 10 suggests reading rdzangs.
D2013: 10 suggests reading rdzangs.
shad (and space) after zhung is missing in D2013: 10.
'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 107 has sgyeg and suggests reading khegs for this.
D2013: 10 has an inaccurate reading (sgeg) and suggests reading dgag for this.
Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 10 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 107.

shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 11.
shad (and space) after zhing is missing in D2013: 11.
Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 107.
In the manuscript las (without tsheg) is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between bus and ngan is also indicated by three dots.
In the facsimile a vertical line/bracket seems to go through bco (without space) after zhung.
This indicates perhaps the beginning of a marked passage the end of which is clearly visible in the bracket in line 4 (after bya'bs).
Not corrected in D2013: 11 and in Khyung bdag 2015: 108.
lö is missing in D2013: 11, obviously due to a different reading of the complex skung yig.
Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 rnam is missing!
Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 wrongly has bzhug par.
Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 wrongly has gzhiug.
Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108.

[287/f. 8a]

[288/f. 8b:]

[91] shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 11.
[94] shad (and space) after zhing is missing in D2013: 11.
[96] In the manuscript las (without tsheg) is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between bus and ngan is also indicated by three dots.
[97] In the facsimile a vertical line/bracket seems to go through bco (without space) after zhung.
This indicates perhaps the beginning of a marked passage the end of which is clearly visible in the bracket in line 4 (after bya'bs).
[99] lø is missing in D2013: 11, obviously due to a different reading of the complex skung yig.
[100] 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 rnam is missing!
[102] 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 wrongly has gzhiug.
[103] Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108.
that also the other fragments were incorporated into the established—and perhaps even as an indication, as argued by Karmay (2013: 289/f. 9a:

"Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 has only bsreg.


109 From gshin po'i don ... to ... gcig rtsal lo (btsal to) (f. 8b6–f. 9a6) the text corresponds to one of the so-called fragments or fragmentary copies of edicts (bka' gtsigs) of Ye shes 'od, in this case bka' gtsigs or Fragment Cha (see Ba se dKon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 125; van der Kuip 2015: 345f.). See also Karmay 2013, 2014 and 2015 for discussions of these fragments. Karmay pointed to the fact that at least in the case of two of these fragments they are rendered in the nam thar as quotations from other sources, a "sky-blue scroll" (drid snyon nam mkha') (Fragment Kha, f. 31a3–f. 35b2) and "a scroll on the activities of the three—the father [Ye shes 'od] and the two sons [De ba rā dza/Devarāja; Na gā dza/Nāgarāja]\" (Fragment Ka, part 1 according to Karmay 2015: 479–480, f. 24b7–f. 26b5; see also Dalton 2015: 102). Together with the fact that references to additional scrolls are found in the nam thar (including a quotation from a "moon-white scroll" [drid dkar zla ba] (f. 3b7) this can be taken as evidence that these fragments existed somehow independent of the nam thar (unless we mistrust the text)—in which way remains to be established—and perhaps even as an indication, as argued by Karmay (2013: 236), that also the other fragments were incorporated into the nam thar from one or the other of these scrolls.


110 ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 wrongly has yon.

111 ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 wrongly has yon bdab la ni la (adding ni and la).

112 ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 has "btsal (?)" for spyad.

113 po is missing in D2013: 12 and in ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108.

114 Not corrected in D2013: 12.

115 ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 has bal, in parentheses "ba la(?)".

116 Not corrected in D2013: 12.


118 Shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 12.

119 Shad (and space) after byung no is missing in D2013: 12.
[290/f. 9b]

འདེས་ཉིད་གཉིས་ཤེས་མི་མཐུན་པའི་དབང་པོ་[མཁན་]འདི་[ཝ་]

[291/f. 10a]

དེར་[ས་][འཛོམས་][བཅད་][པ་][མེ་][མོ་][ཁུན་][འདེ]

118 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 109 has bos.
119 In the manuscript after bkṣyes follows a tsheg and empty space and again a tsheg before nγid. D2013: 12 has bskyed pa which is not indicated as corrected reading.
120 In the manuscript zos te is inserted in a slightly smaller size under the line. Its place between pos and dri is also indicated by three dots.
121 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 108 has only bzang.
122 Not corrected in D2013: 12. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 109 has only tu.
123 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
124 From me mo khyi'i lo ... to ... brtsal lo (btsal to) (f. 9b4–f. 9b7) the text corresponds to the so-called Fragment Ja (Ra se dKon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 125).
125 Not corrected in D2013: 13. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 109 has only ṭsoms.
126 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
127 lo not corrected in D2013: 13.
128 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
129 D2013: 13 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 have an inaccurate reading (thar ba).
130 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

111 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
112 Not corrected in D2013: 13.
113 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 has pa.
114 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 de is missing (skung yig).
115 D2013: 13 reads bsregs pa'om (although there is no evidence for 'a).
116 In the facsimile a vertical line / bracket seems to go through the na of gnod por. This indicates perhaps the beginning of a marked passage the end of which is clearly visible in the bracket in line 7 (after zhes gsungs).
117 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 de is missing (skung yig).
118 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 gam is missing (skung yig).
119 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 1a is missing.
120 D2013: 14 suggests reading stsal for rtos.
121 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 150 has only tu.

132 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 14 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 151.
133 D2013: 14 suggests reading klubs for slubs.
134 In the manuscript rin chen is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line (on top of bzhin).
135 The printing of the subscribed letter is not clearly readable in D2013: 14 (perhaps bra').
136 Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 151.
[Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda]

[294/f. 11b]

[147] Not corrected in D2013: 15.


[149] D2013: 15 reads pheds pa las, obviously understanding pas as a skung yig for pa las. This seems to be quite unusual (at least within the present manuscript) and would imply a different if not contrary meaning.

[150] shad (and space) after bas is missing in D2013: 15.


[152] D2013: 16 has pantita.

[153] See also Dung dkar tshig mdzod chen mo 2002: 1269.
[295/f. 12a:] རབ་གྱུར་པ།

[296/f. 12b:] ིམ་པོ་ལ། འཁོར་གྱུར་པ། འཁོར་གྱུར་པ། འཁོར་གྱུར་པ། འཁོར་གྱུར་པ། འཁོར་གྱུར་པ།

154 Not corrected in D2013: 16 and in 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 152.
155 Not corrected in D2013: 16 and in 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 152.
156 Not corrected in D2013: 16.
157 Not corrected in D2013: 16 and in 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 152.
158 In 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 153 du is missing.
159 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 153 has only rtse.
160 Not corrected in D2013: 16.
161 Not corrected in D2013: 16.
162 D2013: 16 and 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 153 read bco (without wa zur).

163 In the manuscript byin nlab is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between dam and dang is indicated by four dots.
164 'Dar tsha Khung dbag 2015: 153 has only rdzongs.
165 In the manuscript the prescript ba is inserted in a slightly smaller above the line.
166 D2013: 17 has parṣīta.
167 D2013: 17 has shring.
168 D2013: 17 has parṣīta.
169 Not corrected in D2013: 17.
170 D2013: 17 has an inaccurate reading (budha bā la).
171 Not corrected in D2013: 17. On Ka ma la gub ta and the two other panditas see also Nyang ral chos 'byung A 336.3.6–337.1.2 and Nyang ral chos 'byung B 463.13–15.
172 D2013: 17 has an inaccurate reading (budha bā la).
[297/f. 13a]। མངའ་ར

[298/f. 13b]। མངའ་ནས།   བོད་སྤྱི་མཐུན་གྱི་བསོད་པས་དེ་ལྟར་ཡང་མ་བཏུབ།   མངའ་མཛད་ནས།   ར

174 D2013: 17 reads tu.

175 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has only bo.

176 From shing ma lug gi ... to .. bstan po dar bar bgyi (f. 12b7–f. 14b7) the text corresponds to the so-called Fragment Ngia (Ra se dkon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 124–125).

177 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 nyid yul is missing.

178 D2013: 18 reads wi phug mdor, obviously understanding mor as a skung yig for mdor.

179 Not corrected in D2013: 18.

180 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has/reads only gyur.

181 Not corrected in D2013: 18. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has only btsal.

182 Not corrected in D2013: 18. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has only btsal.

183 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has only te.

184 D2013: 18 reads de.

185 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has de bstus.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[299/f. 14a] ཞེས་དུ་མའི་བཐར་པར་པ་རེ་ཞ

[299/f. 14b] [སེམས་དཔའ་]

[300/f. 14b] [སེམས་དཔའ་]

[301/f. 14b] [སེམས་དཔའ་]

[302/f. 14b] [སེམས་དཔའ་] 191 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 154 has bsnyung.

192 Perhaps read dbu snyung grangs (or skyungs [bskyungs])? D2013: 19 reads dbu grangs. Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 155 has dbu grangs snyungs.

193 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 155 has dra.

194 D2013: 19 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after myed de and before da phyis.

195 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 19 and in Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 155.

196 shad (and space) after chad na is missing in D2013: 19.

197 shad (and space) after dang is missing in D2013: 19.

198 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 156 has only jo.

199 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 156 has bgyis. In the place of the sa only a black spot is visible.
[301/f. 15a:] རབ་མ་

[301/f. 15b:] བླ་མ་

200 From me mo bya'i lo ... to .. sras gnyis rab tu byung (f. 15a1–f. 15a2) the text corresponds to the so-called Fragment Ca (Ra se dKon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 125).

201 Not indicated as a corrected reading in D2013: 20.

202 D2013: 20 has an inaccurate reading (sir chog).

203 The usual old Tibetan spelling is dge’ ’dun (which is obviously rendered in the manuscript by way of a skung yig).

204 Not corrected in D2013: 21.

205 D2013: 21 suggests reading te for de.

206 Not corrected in D2013: 21 and in ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 156.

207 In ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 157 pa is missing.


209 D2013: 21 has shad (and space) after bya ba and before lo gcig.

[302/f. 15b:]
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[303/f. 16a] [དགྲ་མོག་]

[304/f. 16b] [བོད་ཁང་]

[305/f. 17a] [བོད་ཁང་]

[306/f. 17b] [བོད་ཁང་]

The reason for the double shad or "perpendicular stroke" (nyis shad) in this place is not clear. D2013: 22 corrects this into a single shad (without indicating the fact).

210 D2013: 21 has paṇḍita.
211 Not corrected in D2013: 21.
212 See also Dung dkar tshig mdzod chen mo 2002: 1113.
213 Not corrected in D2013: 21.
214 Not corrected in D2013: 21.
216 Not corrected in D2013: 21.
217 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 157 adds only pas.
218 Not corrected in D2013: 22.
219 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 157 suggests correcting to g.yeng.
220 Not corrected in D2013: 22.
221 D2013: 22 reads brtags.
222 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 157 has the skung yig as gtso'i (double na ro), that is gtso bo'i (as read by D2013: 22).
223 D2013: 22 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after sril (hril) po and before brgyad song. The reason for this seems to be a big space in the original manuscript (as usual after shad).
224 The reason for the double shad or "perpendicular stroke" (nyis shad) in this place is not clear. D2013: 22 corrects this into a single shad (without indicating the fact).
226 po ti—clearly standing for Spiti, in Tibetan pi ti, spyi ti, etc.—is not corrected in D2013: 22.
agree with phonetic qualities of syllables paired together.

As above, D2013: 23 reads 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has only shad (and space) after gzhon yang and before pu brangs su.

D2013: 23 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after gzhon yang and before pu brangs su.

D2013: 23 has only gzhon yang. D2013: 23 reads tshang par, which—in contrast to tshang bar—does not agree with phonetic qualities of syllables paired together.

The bracket indicating the beginning of the passage is either missing or not visible in the facsimile edition.

Read brid or 'brid (see D2013: 23) for brid?

According to Beyer 1992: 229 'og ma ("lower") and gong ma ("upper") serve to designate verso and recto sides of a folio. In this case, however, 'og (ma) serves to differentiate a second (or "lower") folio with the same page number from a preceding one with the same number.

D2013: 23 reads spyi ti, etc.—is not visible in the facsimile edition.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has do and corrects this to to.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has ros.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 159 has chos.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 159 has chos.

225 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has dkar.

226 This passage is added in smaller script on the same page below line 7.

227 D2013: 23 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after gzhon yang and before pu brangs su.

228 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has only gzhon yang.

229 D2013: 23 reads tshang par, which—in contrast to tshang bar—does not agree with phonetic qualities of syllables paired together.

230 As above, po ti—clearly standing for Spiti, in Tibetan pi ti, spyi ti, etc.—is not corrected in D2013: 23.

231 D2013: 23 reads spyi ti.

232 Obviously superfluous te plus shad.

233 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has mched and suggests a possible reading mchod(?).

234 = gzhis ka.

235 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 158 has mched and suggests a possible reading mchod(?).

236 = gzhis ka.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 159.

Not corrected in D2013: 24.

Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 24 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 159.

Not corrected in D2013: 24.

shad (and space) after kyi is missing in D2013: 24.

Not corrected in D2013: 24. D2013: 22 corrects this into a single shad (without indicating the fact).

D2013: 24 suggests reading rjes for rje.

Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 159.
བེན་པོ་བ། 264(བསྐད།) 265(བསྐེལ།) 266(བསྐེལ།)

[310/f. 18b:]

267 In the manuscript in addition to prā only fragments of a ligature (alternative possible subscripts ja or ny) are preserved.
268 D2013: 25 prang and suggests correcting this into pradznya, thus as rendering the Sanskrit name Prajñāpāla.
269 Rendering the Sanskrit name Prajñāpāla.
270 'Dar tsha Khung bdag 2015: 161 suggests reading the skung yig as nam mkha'.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[311/f. 19a] གནས་བཞི།

[277] Rendering the spelling in the manuscript (not indicated in D2013: 26 which has so man to).

[278] Rendering the Sanskrit name Samantāsrijñāna.

[279] 'Dar tsha Khyung dbag 2015: 162 has only gyi.


272 D2013: 26 has pantita.

271 'Dar tsha Khyung dbag 2015: 162 has only kyis.

270 Not corrected in D2013: 26.

269 D2013: 26 has pantita.
[312/f. 19b:]  

དར་ན་དང༌། བསྒྲུབ་ལ་སོགས་དང་དགེ་བཙང་འདུལ་མེད་པའི་ཀུན་ཆུ་མ་རིང་ཚུལ་ཁོངས་(འཛིན་པ་དུ་མ་དུང་)ན་ཐོག་བསྒྲུབ་གསེར་གྱི་བསྒྲུབ་ཆབུ་བཙུགས།   །འདུལ་བའི་དབུས་གཙང་བསྒྲུབ་གས་ི་བྱི་ང་ནས་མངོན་པའི་ཆུས་གི་དང་པོ་དཔེ་ཕྱི་དར་གྱི་དང་པོ་ན་པ་ཕྱི་དར་གྱི་དང་པོ་

[313/f. 20a:]  

དེ་དག་པ་བཙུགས།   །རྒྱལ་བ་ཤེས་རབ་ཀྱི་གྱི་བརྡ་ཁ་ཆེ་བ་བཙུགས།   །འདུལ་བའི་དབུས་གཙང་བསྒྲུབ་གས་ི་བྱི་ང་ནས་མངོན་པའི་ཆུས་གི་དང་པོ་དཔེ་ཕྱི་དར་གྱི་དང་པོ་

283 Not corrected in D2013: 26.  
284 Not indicated as a corrected reading in D2013: 26.  
285 Rendering the Sanskrit name Dipamkaraśrijñāna.  
286 D2013: 26 has pontita.  
287 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 163 pa is missing.  
289 Not indicated as a corrected reading in D2013: 26 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 163.  
290 Not indicated as a corrected reading in D2013: 27.  
291 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 163 tshan is missing.  
292 Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 163.  
293 D2013: 27 suggests reading dpal (and not dkyil 'khor) for dol.  
294 Not corrected in D2013: 27.  
295 Not corrected in D2013: 27.  
296 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 164 has only yis.
དེ་སུན་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་པོའི་མཐུས་བཏངས་དོན་ཆེན་མོའི་ཡེ་ཤེས་ཀྱི་མཐུས་བཏངས།  ། 

[314/f. 20b:]  

དེ་སུན་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་པོའི་མཐུས་བཏངས་དོན་ཆེན་མོའི་ཡེ་ཤེས་ཀྱི་མཐུས་བཏངས།  །
Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166.

Not corrected in D2013: 29.

D2013: 29 suggests reading dal (and not as a skung yig for dkyil 'khor).

Not indicated as corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166.

Not corrected in D2013: 29.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166 reads the skung yig as mdzad do.

Not corrected in D2013: 29.

Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166.

Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166.

D2013: 30 suggests reading dkrum (and not bkus) for dkrus.

shad (and space) after byas nas is missing in D2013: 30.
The Tibetan Text

Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan

The text is in Tibetan script and contains a biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od. The text is formatted in a traditional Tibetan script style, with lines of text separated by vertical spacing and characters written from top to bottom, right to left. The text includes the Tibetan script characters and sometimes includes punctuation or diacritical marks that are essential for proper pronunciation and meaning.

Special notes and symbols are interspersed within the text, denoting specific instructions or clarifications for the reader.

Footnotes and references are also included within the text, providing additional context and clarifications for specific portions of the biography.

The text is a historical and biographical account of the Royal Lama, offering insights into his life, accomplishments, and the cultural and religious context of his time.

---

Not corrected in D2013: 30.
122 Not corrected in D2013: 30.
124 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166 la is missing.
126 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 166 has only gzhag.
དེ་ལྟར་གྱི་བཀའ་ལུང་ནན་ཏན་ཡང་མཁར་༄༅།   །ལ་བཀའ་ལུང་མྱུར་བར་མཛད་ཅི།

[319/f. 23a:] ཨོ་[་གུས།]

[320/f. 23b:] ཨོ་[་གུས།]

332 Rendering the Sanskrit name Śrī-Nālandā.
333 Not corrected in D2013: 31.
334 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 31.
335 Not corrected in D2013: 31.
336 Yang is missing in D2013: 31!
337 Not corrected in D2013: 31.
338 D2013: 31 suggests reading bṛtsa (and not btsal) for rtsa.
339 Not indicated as a corrected reading in D2013: 31.
341 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has rang.
342 shad (and space) after dang is missing in D2013: 32.
343 Not corrected in D2013: 32.
344 shad (and space) after bcas pas is missing in D2013: 32.
345 D2013: 32 suggests reading bgrang for sgrengs.
346 Not corrected in D2013: 32.
347 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 dang is missing.
348 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has pas.
349 Before iha there is an unclear sign or ligature which seems to be crossed out.
350 D2013: 32 suggests reading rdzas (which is not even indicated as corrected reading) for sdzas. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has rdzas and suggests reading instead of this "mdzad". 
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

351 Not corrected in D2013: 32.
352 Not corrected in D2013: 32. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 suggest reading an additional su after legs.
353 Not corrected in D2013: 32. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has only sde.
354 Not corrected in D2013: 32. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has only btsan.
355 D2013: 32 suggests reading dra ma for grwa ma. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has 'grwa [dra?].
356 Not corrected in D2013: 32. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 168 has only bod.
357 The following passage (from tu bshegs ... lo la rab) is added in smaller script on the same page below line 7. The addition is indicated by three dots between rab and gnas.
358 Not corrected in D2013: 32.
359 D2013: 32–33 reads mangs bres (and not mangs brel) and suggests correcting this into mangs bris. A more appropriate word seems to be mangs gting.
360 D2013: 33 suggests reading brdzogs and not bsdzogs.
361 D2013: 33 has (that is, adds) su after dar rgyas. The foundation for this is unclear.
362 Not corrected in D2013: 33.
363 Not corrected in D2013: 33.
364 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 169 has rig and instead of this raises a possible reading as “ris?”.
In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 2013: 34 has nu shu rtsa gu (sic) pa. The foundation for this is unclear.

2013: 34 suggests reading (ka) tu (rgam) and not (ka) ru (rgam).
2013: 33 has pantita.
2013: Not corrected in 2013: 33.
See also Dung dikar tshig mdzad chen mo 2002: 1973.

In the manuscript this text is inserted in a small script above line 1. Its place between byung nas and chos la is indicated by an x below the line and an x before the addition.

It is not clear why 2013: 34 suggests reading pa and not ba.
2013: Not corrected in 2013: 34.
2013: 34 has na ga ra’ dza’ (ra dza) which does not correspond to the spelling in the manuscript nor does it render a correct Tibetanised spelling of the Sanskrit name.
[324/f. 25b]

[325/f. 26a] ཉོོོ

383 D2013: 35 suggests reading snying.
384 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 310 has rnying tshems bskde and suggests reading instead snying tshoms sde.
385 shad (and space) after g.yo is missing in D2013: 35. Furthermore D2013: 35 suggests reading yod cog for g.yo mchog.
386 D2013: 35 suggests reading rin chen which, however, does not include the na ro in the skung yig.
387 D2013: 35 suggests reading rim, however, without correcting kyis.
388 In the manuscript tshul is inserted in a small script above line 3. The addition is indicated by three dots between ni and khriams.

389 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 310 has only bar.
390 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 310 has only bzhig.
391 shad is not necessary here.
392 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 311 suggests reading "bcos(?)" instead of bces.
393 Not corrected in D2013: 36.
394 The facsimile of the original MS has lo with subscribed wa zur.
སུ་གཤེགས་པའི་གདན་ས་དཔེར་མཛད་པའི་འབྱུང་མོད་ཀྱི། ད་ལྟར་འེ་བཞུགས་པ་ཕུག་གསར་ཁམས་དགེ་འདུན་ཆོས་ཁམས་ཀྱི་གཞ་ན་གཤེགས་པ་རླུང་བཙང་པོ་མཐུན་པར་བསྒྱུར་བའི་དོན། དེ་ན་གཞན་གྱི་དོན། དེ་ན་གཞུང་དང༌། སྔ་རབས་ཀྱི་ཡབ་མེས། བདག་དང་གཞན་གྱི་དོན།

[326/f. 26b]

[327/f. 27a]

406 From de bzhin gshegs pa dgra bcom ... to ... smos pa ltar gyis shig (f. 26b5–f. 28a2) the text corresponds to Fragment Ka, part 2 (Karmay 2015: 480).
407 Despite the fact that the 'a chung below sho is clearly readable D2013: 36 reads shākya and has shākya (shākya) only as a corrected reading.
408 In Sanskrit Gangā (river). D2013: 36 reads gang gi rlung and corrects this into gang ga'i klung.
409 Not corrected in D2013: 37.
410 See Dung dikar tshig mdzo chen mo 2002: 462 for the Tibetan spelling. D2013: 37 reads the skung yig as 'khor lo bagṣyur ba'i rgyal po.
411 Not indicated as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312.
412 Not corrected in D2013: 37.
413 The facsimile reproduction appears to have a minor flaw in this place. Therefore ma is an equally possible reading. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312 has ma.
414 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312 suggests reading myog instead of snyog.

396 D2013: 36 suggests reading 'di instead of ding.
397 Not corrected in D2013: 36.
398 shad (and space) after cing is missing in D2013: 36.
399 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 311 has b instead of bo.
400 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 311 has only te.
401 shad is not necessary here.
402 Not corrected in D2013: 36.
403 In the manuscript gsol (without tsheg or shad) is inserted in a small script above line 4. The addition is indicated by three dots after kyang. After kyang one syllable, most probably gsol (plus shad) of which only the prefix ga remained visible) is covered by a black spot. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 311 has gsol go.
404 Not corrected in D2013: 36 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 311.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

414 D2013: 37 suggests readings lang pa and suggests correcting this into bslangs pa.
415 Not corrected in D2013: 37.
416 Also a corrected reading gal is possible (see 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 344, n. 11).

In this case the manuscript shows an inaccurate skung yig (mix-up of na ro and zhabs rkyu vowel signs, which is not indicated in D2013: 38). The intended expression in full is certainly dong du. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312 suggests reading the skyung yig as dud grol.

'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312 has only tung.
419 D2013: 38 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 312 read shas drag (and not shas rtog).
420 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 suggests reading bdag can instead of bdag bcag (cag).
421 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 suggests reading dam bca' instead of dam bzhag.
422 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 has only cung po.
423 After dang a few characters are hardly visible. Perhaps 'dul was written here, then erased and written on the following page? 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 has bal in this place.
དེ་དུ་འཚལ། མ་འཆག། (and space) after ད་མ་shad' Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 has only D2013: 39 has (that is, adds) ང་བར་འོས་པ་ཡོད་མ་གྱིས་མནོས་ནས་མཐོང་ཁང་ཤེས་པའི་རིག་པད་ནས་ང་བར་འོས་པ་ཡོད། ལུང་དང་མས་ལོག་པ། ལུང་དང་བཅོམ་པ། གཞན་ལ་ཡང་མ། གཞན་ལ་ཡང་མ་པ་འདེབས་པར་ངེས་པས། དོན་དུ་མདོ་པ་དང་བདེ་བར་འགྱུར་བའི་དུ་འཚལ། མ་འཆག། རྣམས་ཐ་བསར་སླབ་པ་སྣོ། ར་ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན།. [331/f. 29a] བཞིན། ཏུན་ཟློ་པོ་བཞིན་པའི་ཁམས་སྐྱེལ་ལེགས་པོའི་ཟིན་པ་ཤིན་ཏུ་དཀྱིལ་ཁང་ལེགས་པོའི་ཁམས་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཞིག་མཛོད། བརྡ་ད་ཁང་ལེགས་པོའི་ཁམས་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཞིག་མཛོད། བརྡ་ད་ཁང་ལེགས་པོའི་ཁམས་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཞིག་མཛོད། བརྡ་ད་ཁང་ལེགས་པོའི་ཁམས་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཞིག་མཛོད།. [330/f. 28b] ལམ། འབྲལ་བརྟེན་བཅས་པ། གཞི་བོད་དཔེར་མ་ཚོལ་དུ་འཚལ། མ་འཆག། རྣམས་ཐ་བསར་སླབ་པ་སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན། སྣོ། ཐོག་མར་སླབ་པ་ན།. [429] From dge 'dun gyi (gyis) chos ... to ... khams gzhon du dbyug go (f. 28a2–f. 28b3) the text corresponds to Fragment Ka, part 3 (Karmay 2015: 480). [427] Between spyad and pa’i there is an empty space (as that following after shad). [426] shad (and space) after pa’am is missing in D2013: 39. [427] D2013: 39 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after bsreg and before phyis. [428] ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 has only mi. [429] shad (and space) after zhih is missing in D2013: 39. [430] ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 313 has only la. [431] From dge ‘dun (dge ’dun) gyi khriins ... to ... bygyid tshal ste (f. 28b3–f. 30b1) the text corresponds to Fragment Ka, part 4 (Karmay 2015: 480). [432] D2013: 39 suggests reading rim, however, without correcting kys. [433] D2013: 39–40 reads ‘bad (and not as a skung yig, that is, ‘bad do) and corrects this to ‘bad. [434] ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 314 has only chos.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[332/f. 29b]

440 D2013: 39 suggests reading rim, however, without correcting kys.
441 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 314 has only gzhug.
442 The manuscript seems to feature two tshag after dang and before the shad.
443 Not corrected in D2013: 40.
444 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 315 has 'ches ni and suggests reading instead mchis pa ni.
445 shad (and space) after na and before rgyal is missing in D2013: 40.
446 shad (and space) after cing and before thugs is missing in D2013: 41.
447 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 315 has only snying.
448 shad (and space) after dang and before khyim is missing in D2013: 41.
449 shad (and space) after dang and before nγan is missing in D2013: 41.
Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda

[334/f. 30b]

Not corrected in D2013: 40 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316.

Not corrected in D2013: 40.

Not corrected as a corrected reading in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316.

Not corrected in D2013: 40.

D2013: 42 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316 have bstims without indicating this as a corrected reading.

[335/f. 31a]

Also a reading as gtso bor cher skung yig (f. 31a3–f. 32a1) may be possible. In this case the meaning of phug mdor (skung yig) in order to render phug dang mdor (ra' dzā), which is not supported by the spelling in the manuscript nor does it correspond to ra' dzā (ra dzō) in order to render the Sanskrit rāja. This is problematic as there is only one na ra and one 'greng bu.

Also a reading as mdor (skung yig) may be possible. In this case the meaning of phug mdor would be equal to phug dang mdor.

D2013: 42 has de ba ra’ dzā’ (rå dzō), which is not supported by the spelling in the manuscript nor does it correspond to ra’ dzā (rå dzō) in order to render the Sanskrit rāja.

D2013: 42 has ka tu hrogs.

Not corrected in D2013: 42.

From chos 'khor bstan (britan) par ... to ... bcas pa la 'gal ba bgyis na (f. 31a3–f. 35b2) the text corresponds to Fragment Kha (see Ra se dKon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 120–123).

Not corrected in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316.

---

450 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316 has se and suggests correcting this to pe.

451 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 316 suggests the skung yig as gtso bor cher.

452 Not corrected in D2013: 42.
The main editor of this text does not entirely exclude the possibility that

Instead of bod one should read bdo.

Not corrected in D2013: 43.

Not corrected in D2013: 43.

D2013: 43 has the Tibetan numeral 4 and does not suggest a corrected reading.

Not corrected in D2013: 43.

Not corrected in D2013: 43.

The main editor of this text does not entirely exclude the possibility that

Not corr ected in D2013: 43.

Not corr ected in D2013: 43.

Not corr ected in D2013: 43.

Not corr ected in D2013: 43.
skung yig bslab bo. D2013: 44 suggests reading slob bo (by assuming a skung yig). D2013: 44 suggests reading slob (bslab) bo. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has slob bo (stung yig) and suggests a corrected reading as bslab bo.

482 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
483 It is also possible to read this as slob bo (by assuming a skung yig). D2013: 44 suggests reading slob (bslab) bo. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has slob bo (stung yig) and suggests a corrected reading as bslab bo.

484 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has only gyi.
485 D2013: 44 suggests reading drangs (and not dren) instead of drang.
486 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 suggests a corrected reading of byad pa as yad pa.

478 Crossed out in the original manuscript (not contained in D2013: 44). In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 317 it is contained but not indicated as being crossed out.
479 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
480 D2013: 44 has reads sdzong, without indicating that this is a corrected reading of sdbong.
481 It is also possible to read this as slob bo (by assuming a skung yig). D2013: 44 suggests reading slob (bslab) bo. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has slob bo (stung yig) and suggests a corrected reading as bslab bo.

482 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
483 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
484 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has only gyi.
485 D2013: 44 suggests reading drangs (and not dren) instead of drang.
486 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 suggests a corrected reading of byad pa as yad pa.

487 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has yu nu and in n. 25 (p. 348) explains this as an expression of mNga' ri dialect for gzhon nu.
488 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
489 shad (and space) after rgal and before byag is missing in D2013: 44.
490 D2013: 44 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after bab and before byag.
491 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has pa instead of sa.
492 shad (and space) after bgyi and before la is missing in D2013: 44.
494 In 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 ma after tho is missing. Instead of gsum he has gsum gsum.
495 Read gos instead of bdos (as in D2013: 44)? 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has gos rta and suggests correcting this to sbo.
496 The manuscript has no shad and space after sbyangs which, however, seems appropriate.
497 Not corrected in D2013: 44.
[339/f. 33a]
ཞིི་བོད་[གཞུང་]

Not corrected in D2013: 45.

[340/f. 33b]

Not corrected in D2013: 45.

498 Not corrected in D2013: 45.
499 Read su instead of pu?
500 D2013: 45 reads zhing ba instead of zhib, perhaps understanding this a skung yig.
501 The main editor of this text does not entirely exclude the possibility that instead of bod one should read bdo.
502 Not corrected in D2013: 45.
503 Not corrected in D2013: 46.
504 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 319 has only rdzun.
505 Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 318 has rdzul as skung yig for rdzu 'phrul.
506 bo is missing in D2013: 46.
507 Obviously not understanding this as a skung yig D2013: 46 reads gan instead of gzhon.
508 Not corrected in D2013: 46.
509 The manuscript has no shad and space after gnang which, however, seems appropriate.
510 shad (and space) after dang and before chos is missing in D2013: 46.
[341/f. 34a:] བྱི་མི།

[342/f. 34b:] བྱི་མི།

---

513 D2013: 46 has (that is, adds) shad (and space) after re and before btsug (gtsug).
514 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 46.
515 Not corrected in D2013: 46.
516 D2013: 47 reads also dbri but suggests correcting this to dbri.
517 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 47.

D2013: 47 has dkon cog.
517 The prescript ba is entirely black in the original manuscript (not contained in D2013: 47).
519 Not corrected in D2013: 47.
520 In the manuscript phod par is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between kyong and mi is also indicated by two dots. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 320 has only phod (not identifying the skung yig).
521 D2013: 47 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 320 have tshogs and also suggest correcting this to phyogs.
522 D2013: 47 has sdbar, without indicating that this is a corrected reading of rdar. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 321 has dhar and suggests correcting this into sdbar.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text

[343/f. 35a] ཞེས་

[344/f. 35b]

[345] In D2013: 48 yang is missing.

514 From ye shes bd kyi (kya) ‘bangs ... to ... bcod pa (gcod pa) mi ndzad re ’i (f. 35b2-3.6a) the text corresponds to Fragment Ga which ends with red (see Ra se dkon mchog rgya mtsho 2004: 123-124) while the nam thar has re ’i (shes sogs kyang byung).

517 D2013: 48 has dkon chog [sic] gsum.


520 Not corrected in D2013: 48.

521 ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 321 has dga’ pa’i.


523 Not corrected in D2013: 48.

524 D2013: 49 has ’tsal (obviously suggesting this as a corrected reading of tshal).

525 D2013: 48 has dkon cog gsum.

526 D2013: 49 has shad (and space) after dang and before sku is missing in D2013: 49.

527 D2013: 49 also reads chum shing but suggests correcting this into chun zhi ng.
D2013: 49 has *dal gyu*.

D2013: 49 has *pe par*, without indicating that this is a corrected reading of *pa par* appearing in the MS. By referring to *mNgā’ rīs rgyal rabs* (1996: 60; see also Vitali 1996: 114), D2013: 124 (n. 253) explains *pe par* and *dpe pa* as variants of the same name. 

The manuscript has las followed by a *tsheg*. *Shad* (and space) after las (without *tsheg*) and before *lha* are suggested as corrected reading (see also D2013: 50 where this is, however, not indicated as such).

*lha* is inserted in a slightly smaller size above the line. Its place between *las* and *na*’ (*na*) is also indicated by two dots.

Not corrected in D2013: 50.

Not corrected in D2013: 49.

536 shad (and space) after dzas and before kha che’i yul is missing in D2013: 49.

540 Not corrected in D2013: 50.  
541 D2013: 49 reads srog dum, obviously understanding also the skung yig in a fully different way. In particular a reading of *dum* seems to be entirely unfounded. ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 323 suggests reading the skung yig as *srog gsum*. 

542 The manuscript has kan followed by a *shad*. *Tsheg* after kan and no space before g.yu’i me tog are suggested as a corrected reading (see also D2013: 50 where this is, however, not indicated as such).

550 Read ke ta ka or ke ke ru (precious stone)? ‘Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 323
The Tibetan Text

[347/f. 37a] དོན་དབུ་

[348/f. 37b] དུས་བྱང་(སྤུ་) ཕྱེའི་ཞུ་མྱས་ སྤུ་པ་ བཞག་པས་

551 Not corrected in D2013: 50.
552 Not corrected in D2013: 50.
553 D2013: 50 has an inaccurate reading of the skung yig as bcu gcig.
554 Read ke ta ko or ke ke ru (precious stone)?
555 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has indra ni.
556 D2013: 50 has stsal (instead of rtsal) and does not indicate this as a corrected reading.
557 D2013: 50 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 have karke.
558 Read ke ta ko or ke ke ru (precious stone)?
559 Read spu gri instead of pu dri? 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has pu dri and suggests correcting this to pu ti.
551 D2013: 51 reads mu tig gi for the skung yig.
558 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 51.
559 Read spu gri instead of pu dri?
560 D2013: 51 has bco.
561 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 have karke.
Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda

[349/f. 38a] གཞལ་

ཅ བར་གཞི་དབང་ཆེ་བ་ཚད་ཀྱི་གདུབ་བུ་ལ་གཡུ་ཆེ་བ་

[349/f. 38a] གཞལ་

D2013: 51 has bcal instead of btsal and corrects this into bstsal.

D2013: 51 has bcal instead of btsal and corrects this to bstsal.

Db on tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has mub and suggests correcting this to gdub.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

The number 2 in Tibetan is inserted in a slightly smaller size below the line. Its place between lam and gnyis is also indicated by two dots.

D2013: 51 reads bcu drug bcu drug gi.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

D2013: 51 has bstsal and does not indicate this as a corrected reading. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has btsil and suggests correcting this to “phya tshai”.

Not corrected in D2013: 51 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has bzulms.

One of the two 'phya at the end of this and beginning of next page is superfluous. The repetition may represent a scribal mistake. (In D2013: 51 the two 'phya appear without comment.)

'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has only ma'i.

In the manuscript the second bar is inserted in a smaller script above line 1. Its place between bar and du is also indicated by three dots.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

D2013: 51 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 have karke.

Ketaka ta: perhaps identical with ketaka.

shad (and space) after dang and before intra ni is missing in D2013: 51.

'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 324 has indra ni.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

Not corrected in D2013: 51.

Not corrected in D2013: 52.

Not corrected in D2013: 52. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 325 has btsam.

Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 325 has indra ni.
The Tibetan Text

Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od Written by Paṇḍita Grags pa rgyal mtshan

[350/f. 38b]

[351/f. 39a]

604 D2013: 52 has gtsal bo. The foundation for this is unclear as there is no ra at the end of the skung yig.

605 D2013: 52 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 325 have mchod pa'i which is, however, not indicated as a corrected reading.

605 Not corrected in D2013: 52.

606 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 325 corrects rtsal into tshal.

607 In the manuscript there are three horizontally arranged dots above the letter ga the meaning of which is unclear. (The letter etc. is not rendered or mentioned in D2013: 52).

607 Not corrected in D2013: 52.

608 D2013: 52 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 have mchod pa'i which is, however, not indicated as a corrected reading.

609 Not corrected in D2013: 52.

610 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

611 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 has gser khris.

612 D2013: 53 has rin chen (without indicating this as a corrected reading of the expression in the skung yig). The foundation for this is unclear as it does not account for the na ra vowel sign.

613 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

614 shad (and space) after brgyad and before rtse is missing in D2013: 53.
The manuscript has D2013: 51 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 has only tu.

The corrected readings (as given here in parentheses) is shakya thub pa

[352/f. 39b] [353/f. 40a] 

[D2013: 51 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 have tu (without indicating this as a corrected reading).

615 The manuscript has pa (with tsheg) which is followed (without shad and space) by shakya thub pa (again with tsheg), again followed (without shad and space) by rigs gsum mgon po. The corrected readings (as given here in parentheses) is also contained in D2013: 53 (however, without indicating it as such).


617 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

618 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 has only tu.

619 The manuscript has Inga (with tsheg) which is followed (without shad and space) by rdo rje etc. The corrected reading (as given here in parentheses) is not contained in D2013: 53.

620 The manuscript has bdo n (with tsheg) which is followed (without shad and space) by skal bzang etc. The corrected reading (as given here in parentheses) is also contained in D2013: 53 (however, without indicating it as such).

621 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

622 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

623 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

624 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

625 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 326 has only ba.

626 Read mying pa instead of snying pa?

627 D2013: 51 has bco.

628 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

629 Not corrected in D2013: 53.

630 Not corrected in D2013: 54 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327.

631 Not corrected in D2013: 54.

632 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has ltbang.

633 Not corrected in D2013: 54.

634 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has only skong.
[354/f. 40b.]

The second chen (at the beginning of line 5), seemingly a scribal mistake, is crossed out in the original manuscript. This is not present in D2013: 54. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has chen chen (not indicating that the second chen is crossed out).

Not corrected in D2013: 54.

Not corrected in D2013: 54.

Not corrected in D2013: 54.

The second chen (at the beginning of line 5), seemingly a scribal mistake, is crossed out in the original manuscript. This is not present in D2013: 54. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has chen chen (not indicating that the second chen is crossed out).

Not corrected in D2013: 54 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327.

D2013: 54 and 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 have only rdza, which is, however, not indicated as a corrected reading.

D2013: 54 has the Tibetan number 1, which is an inaccurate reading. The manuscript facsimile clearly shows the Tibetan number 2, with the characteristic horizontal line in the lower part (as usual throughout the manuscript).

Not corrected in D2013: 54.

631 One of the two tshar at the beginning of this or at the end of the previous page is superfluous. The repetition may represent a scribal mistake. (In D2013: 54 the two tshar appear without comment.)

643 After ti and before sum not much of the ligature or number remains visible, at least not in the manuscript facsimile edition. D2013: 54 has brgya which represents a possible reading. 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has ba and suggests "brgya?" as a possible reading.

640 D2013: 54 has yi ge which is, however, not indicated as a corrected reading.

642 Not indicated as corrected reading in D2013: 55 and in 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327.

641 D2013: 55 has a dpung shad before snying rje, which is, however, not contained in the manuscript.

644 'Dar tsha Khyung bdag 2015: 327 has only ba.

645 Not corrected in D2013: 55.
Bibliography


DO RGYA DBANG DRAG RDO RJE. 2013. lHa bla ma ye shes ’od kyi rnam thar rgyas pa bzhugs so. Gu ge pan thita [sic!] Grags pa rgyal mtshan gyis mdzad. lHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dman gs dpe skrun khang, 1–130.


---

650 D2013: 55 has pan di ta, which is not supported by the spelling in the manuscript nor does it correspond to the Tibetan rendering of the Sanskrit pandita.
651 Not corrected in D2013: 55.
The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od Written by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan Text


KHYUNG BDAG. 2013. mTho lding dgon par bshugs pa'i rgyal rabs zla rigs ma ngos sbyor mdor bsdus. In: Krung go'i bod rig pa, 2013/4, 68–103.


Christian Jahoda

Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s Report on Nyarma, 1917

Founded most probably in 996 CE, the monastery of Nyarma1 in Ladakh was seemingly one of the earliest and also one of the most important Buddhist monuments in historical Western Tibet at the time, on account of its function, size and the rank of its founders,2 whom some Tibetan sources, such as mNga’ ’ris rgyal rabs (“Royal Genealogies of Western Tibet”) (Vitali 1996: 110, 148) and Rin chen bzang po nam thar ‘bring po (“Middle-length Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po”), record or allow the interpretation as the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od (947–1019/1024) and the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po (958–1055). Other sources, such as Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs (“Royal Genealogy of the Solar Lineage”) mention the ruler Khri bKra shis Od ide btsan, more commonly known als ’Od Ide, as having founded a gtsug lag khang at Nyarma.3

The first published reference to Nyarma in a modern scientific study was made by August Hermann Francke in his preface to H. Lee Shuttleworth’s monograph on the Buddhist temple of Lalung in Spiti. There he names Joseph Gergan as the one who “discovered, copied and translated the biography of this famous lama”. And he also says that “Ñar-ma was discovered a few years ago by Joseph Gergan as a ruined site near Khri-rtse4 in Ladakh.” (Francke 1929: i).5

Joseph Gergan (1878–1946) was born into a family of Central Tibetan descent living in the Nubra valley of Ladakh and received the Tibetan name bSod nams Tshe brtan. He was baptised in 1890 by Moravian missionaries and took the name Joseph. He then stayed for fourteen years in Srinagar where he visited the Church Mission Society and learned English and Urdu (see Guyon Le Bouffy 2012: 20; Bass and Burroughs 2018: 19, 45). Upon his return to Leh, he became a teacher at the Moravian Mission School in Leh. By 1913, he is already mentioned as the headmaster of this school. In 1920 he was ordained as a minister of the Moravian Church. Gergan, who is referred to as a disciple and colleague of Francke’s, must have known the Moravian missionary and scholar since at least around 1906. They collaborated not only in the translation of the Old Testament into Ladakhi (begun by Gergan in 1909) but also in the field of historical studies of Western Tibet (Walravens and Taube 1992: 198; Guyon Le Bouffy 2012: 21).

Over a long period of time, Gergan collected and copied a large number of historical texts, documents, treaties, song books and inscriptions. He did this mostly in the form of brief excursions or longer

1 Throughout the text, the popular modern spelling Nyarma is used. In Tibetan sources, various spellings are found, such as Myar ma (Rin chen bzang po nam thar 4, f.29b2), Nyar ma (Nyang ral chos ’byung B: 463.13; Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 140; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 305 and Do rgya dBang drag rdzogs 2013: 22), Nya mar (Nyang ral chos ’byung A: 336.1.2) and Nyer ma (gDung rabs zam ’phreng, cited in Yo seb dgergan 1976: 338.16).
2 See also Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 279ff.
3 See Jahoda, “Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ’ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs: Notes on the author and the content”, this volume, p. 82, and Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ’ris as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text (with variant readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda)”, this volume, p. 111.
4 Also known as Thikse and Thiksay. Variant Tibetan spellings are Khriig rtse and Khriig se.
5 See also the MS version among the Shuttleworth Papers, BL, p. 2.
Christian Jahoda

field trips, at the beginning perhaps directly inspired or motivated by Francke, later also by H. Lee Shuttleworth. These trips seem to have been at least partly (co-)financed by Sir John Marshall, Director-General of Archaeology in India, on whose "strong recommendation" August Hermann Francke had already been employed in 1909/1910 to carry out an archeological survey of Kinnaur, Spiti and areas of Ladakh6 in order to record the archaeological and artistic remains of the ancient Buddhist culture of these areas. Some of the materials and information collected were published by Gergan himself, such as an essay on the cult of the dead and funeral rites in Ladakh (Gergan 1940), a collection of Tibetan proverbs and sayings (Gergan 1942), and a work on the history of Ladakh which was published posthumously (dGe rgan 1976). Further material he collected has been published in recent decades, for example by Dieter Schuh (2008). Nevertheless, a considerable number of papers and documents seem to have remained unpublished or may have even been lost.

The report published here is held among the August Hermann Francke papers in the Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin Preussischer Kulturbesitz, Manuscript Department. It is contained in a notebook entitled on the cover (see Fig. 1):

Nyarma temples
Ladakh
by Joseph Thse-brtan

The title may well have been written by Gergan while the small addition in line 2 on the cover stating "Lhasa Inschrift" is certainly in Francke's handwriting.

The report is entirely handwritten, most probably by Gergan himself. It starts on the top of a right-hand page numbered 2—"Note: (near Khri-rtse) Nyarma, April 10th 1917"—and extends over 14 pages (all lined), the last two pages being dedicated to a to-scale survey of the main temple and not-to-scale sketch of other temples. Like the beginning, the ending on the last page of the narrative description is in the form of a report: "May be more temples of him [the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po] in Ladak than the above, Joseph Thsertan." Joseph Thsertan can be clearly read and understood as a signature. The spelling is unusual and seems to reflect the writer's individual preference for how to write his personal (Christian/Tibetan) name, in contrast to the rules of transliterating its spelling in Tibetan with which he was entirely familiar (as is manifest from the report).

This report seems to be one of the earliest examples of this kind reports from Gergan's pen until the late 1920s which were most probably produced deliberately for and sent to Francke (identical copies perhaps at the same time to Sir John Marshall).7 From the early 1920s onward also H. Lee Shuttleworth was part of this "collaborative network" (see Jahoda 2007: 362–363).

Annotated Edition

The text of the report given here has kept the spellings and formatting used by its writer. The only exception is first-line indentation of paragraphs for better readability. Uncertain and revised readings, also corrections appearing in the notebook, explanations and other comments have been added in footnotes. Minor additions, such as a missing apostrophe, have been added in square brackets. Unless absolutely necessary for understanding Gergan's text the English has not been corrected. All pages of the original report in the notebook are reproduced individually in facsimile in order to enable future researchers to make full use of the visual and textual information without (having to) access the original hard copy. The format of the notebook is 14 x 17,7 cm. The first right-hand page is paginated 2 in the top right-hand corner but is otherwise blank (Fig. 2). The report starts at the top of the reverse side of page 1 (which is a left-hand page and has no pagination. The right-hand page opposite this is paginated 2. Therefore I tend to assume that the author/writer used a kind of system which is used in Tibetan-style loose-leaf books (dpe cha) where recto folios are numbered 1, 2, 3, etc. while the reverse side of the leaves is left unnumbered. This is also followed in the edition where recto pages are therefore identified as [1a], [2a], etc. while verso pages are referred to as [1b], [2b], etc. The editorial sequence of pages is numbered in Roman numerals, starting with I for the cover, II for the reverse of the cover etc.

The transliteration of Tibetan names and words in the footnotes follows the principles of the Wylie transliteration system, as described by Turrell Wylie (1959). Similar to the system used by the Library of Congress, diacritical marks are used for those letters representing an Indic language.

The existence of further reports is evident from correspondence which the author was able to study briefly in the archive of the Archaeological Survey of India in Delhi in 2009.

---

6 The route of his expedition did not lead him to Nyarma as the location (and perhaps also importance) of this site was not known at the time.

7 The existence of further reports is evident from correspondence which the author was able to study briefly in the archive of the Archaeological Survey of India in Delhi in 2009.
Joseph Thsértan Gergan's Report on Nyarma, 1917

I. Cover (see Fig. 1)

Nyarma temples
Ladakh. Thsasa
Inschrift.
By Joseph Thsértan

II. Cover reverse (see Fig. 2, left)
[without writing]

III. Page [1a] (see Fig. 2, right)

IV. Page [1b] (see Fig. 3, left)
[without writing]

Tsértan. The spelling follows the transliteration of the letter th (tsha) as ths.

Pagina, Arabic numeral, top right-hand corner.
Note: (near Khri-rtse) Nyarma, April 10th 1917

On the above date I visited Nyarma 11 temples of the Great-Lotsva-Rinchen-bZangpo.12 And there are 4 temples and 31 Chhodrtens13 ( stupas) inside of the wall on a plain just outside of village Nyarma; but they are all in a very bad state, without owner, roof and door frames. The biggest temple is near the northern wall and the second temple is connected with it in the corner of south east. The third temple is a little southward, and the fourth temple lies to the east of the last 2 temples.

The shape of these temples are strange in building, therefore the big[gest] temple “Chhos-skor”14 = “Dharma-chakr” (Chart No. I)15 has been measured to show the building plan. Every door of the temple looks to the east,16 the doors are mostly small in size.

10 Pagina, Arabic numeral (see also page [3a] through [8a].
11 Formatted underlined (here as elsewhere) as in the notebook. Judging from the pencil used for underlining this may well have been made by the author/ writer (in order to highlight certain words or phrases; often found in MS of this time as an indication what should be italicised in print). If not done by the author/writer the underlining could also have been made by the recipient of the report, August Hermann Francke.
12 Great Translator (lo tsā ba chen po) Rin chen bzang po (958–1055). Gergan’s spelling of the letter ལ (cha) is chha.
13 In Tibetan mchod rten.
14 In Tibetan chos skor (also chos ’khor), Gergan gives this word as synonymous with dharmacakra, literally the “wheel of dharma” representing the teachings of the Buddha. According to Gergan this name refers exclusively to the main temple and not to the whole sacred complex or religious area of temples and monuments. The designation as chos skor or chos ’khor (the latter occurs with regard to Nyarma already in Nyang rol chos ‘byung A 336 and Nyang rol chos ‘byung B 463) was “given to monasteries, where the translations of the ‘words’ and the commentaries, the revisions of the translations, the teachings and discussions on holy dharma by Indian panditas and siddhas—who had arrived on invitation—took place during the later propagation of the doctrine. Such monasteries, for example, are mNga’ ris mTho lding, Mar yul Al ci, and sPi ti Ta po monastery.” (Shastri 1997: 336). This explanation of the word chos ’khor corresponds to that given in Dung dkar thig mdzod chen mo (2002: 2115) with reference to the example of bSam yas as a place where the holy dharma was spread and an excellent location where translators and panditas translated many Buddhist teachings or cycles of esoteric instructions. Gergan’s description as chos skor seems to imply that this designation was used by local people to refer to the main temple.
15 See Fig. 16 and Fig. 17.
16 The underlining stresses the orientation of all doors (and also of the main axis) of the temple towards the east. This remark is also a testimony to Gergan’s knowledgeable observations.
The "Dharmachakr" temple has 4 rooms from east to west. The inner one is quite a small room 12 F x 12 F, the walls of this room are now quite blank, some spots of colour only can be seen as a trace, but no more. The Lamas said, that in this room was placed the "Rdorje-chhenmo" (Maha-vajr) on the elevated throne of the west wall. But now the same idol is placed in the new second story of this room. The throne and behind & above is the clay ornaments in the old room can still be seen. By the Lamas of "Khri-rtse dGonpa" has been erected the above mentioned new temple after the Dugra [sic] war, in which one can see the "Rdorje-chhenmo" on a painted wooden pony. Painted with gold Rdorjechhenmo’s formerly green face, and she holds an arrow & a mirror in this hands, his size is no

17 Gergan’s word “room” relates to the Tibetan word khang. This inner room (or central shrine chamber) is usually designated as dri gtsang khang.

18 See also the contributions by Hubert Feiglstorfer, “The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, and Christiane Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in context”, this volume.

19 In Tibetan rDo rje chen mo. Gergan’s rendering into Sanskrit as “Maha-vajr” and the male gender he uses in this report seem perhaps to imply that he saw and identified this protective deity as male.

20 Read Dogra war(s). The war(s) mentioned seems to refer to the invasion of Ladakh by the Sikhs and their Dogra allies carried out by Raja Gulab Singh’s wazir, Zorawar Singh, in four waves from 1834 to 1839. The erection of the new temple by monks from Thikse (Khrig rtse) monastery—who are still in charge of this temple today—must have taken place, according to the oral account, some time in the 1840s.

21 From Gergan’s description it is not entirely clear whether this clay statue was moved from its former location to the new one or whether a new statue was made and installed in the new temple. See Fig. 20 (and Fig. 27 in Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in context”, this volume, p. 273) for a photo of the statue in place in 2009.

22 “she” is added in small script (perhaps by a different hand) on top of (meant to replace) he.

23 The word here seems to have been written “this” or “thes”, perhaps an incomplete “these”. The t is crossed out so that the corrected version most probably reads his (implying an intended reference to a male deity).
more than a cubit. On the left of him there is a new Dzambala. And on the left of latter idol there are 3 jagged stones, one of which is smeared with butter. It looks similar to the Hindus’ linga.

The second big room is 43 F. x 43 F. and height 14 feet. Inside there were 2 standing idols, one on each side of the door, nearly the same in size as the height of the wall. But at present left nothing only can be seen the back clay ornaments of them, both idols were fastened there by nails, as there are several holes in the wall. In the centre of the same room there is still a broken clay throne with lotus leaves and back wall. Perhaps on it was the biggest idol of the Nyarma temples. In both the corners of the west wall 2 standing idols, one in each

24 In size, construction and general iconographic features (including the horse) this statue very much resembles the rDo rje chen mo statue in the temple of the protective deities (sRun ma khang) at Khorchag in Purang (see Jahoda and Kalantari 2012: 118–119).

25 Dzam bha la (Sanskrit Jambhala), the god of riches.

26 Gergan’s description seems to relate to religious items kept at the time of his visit on the new second story of the temple. In July 2009, there was no trace of any ‘jagged stone’ in the rDo rje chen mo lha khang (as it was referred to). A few big gtor ma (ca. 30 cm high) had been placed in front of the glass case holding the statue. One of them was kept in a kind of wooden box or altar with a carved front opening. These gtor ma were decorated with butter. The stones described by Gergan in all likelihood may have been small rdo ring which had perhaps been removed since then or were not visible in 2009.

27 These measurements correspond with those of the square ‘du khang taken by Feiglstorfer (see Feiglstorfer, “The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, this volume, p. 240).

28 The earlier existence of two clay sculptures mounted on the wall is also suggested by Feiglstorfer (ibid: 239), who interprets the absence of pedestals as an indication that they were not standing. It is unclear whether Gergan’s statement that there were two over-life-size standing images (around 4 m high) is based on local oral tradition or his conclusion from the archaeological evidence.

29 See Fig. 22 in Feiglstorfer (ibid: 240) and Figs. 19-21 in Kalantari (“Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in context,” this volume, p. 269) for photographs of the throne taken in 2006 and 2009.

30 In his later work on the history of Ladakh, Gergan states, quoting from gDung rabs zam ’phreng (not available to me), that the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po built the Nyer ma gtsug lag khang in Mar yul, with Sangs rgyas Mar me mdzad (Buddha Dīpaṃkara) as the main deity (dGe rgyan 1976: 338). This information corresponds with that in the biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 140, and Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 284).
corner were placed. They were smaller in size than the above two standing idols, but fastened as they.\(^{31}\) In the third room, there is no trace of fresco or clay ornaments in anywhere.\(^{32}\) 

The fourth room (court yard).\(^{33}\) There is also no mark of fresco but quite blank, there are 2 small rooms, one to the north, and another to the south from the courtyard.\(^{34}\) The gate of the courtyard has been measured 12 feet in breadth.\(^{35}\) 

There are four pilgrimage ways to go round it.\(^{36}\) First way lead only round the inner temple. Second way leads round the second and the inner temples. The third leads round the temples, outer, middle and inner. The fourth way leads round from the outside of the above three temple rooms

---

\(^{31}\) The photographs in 2006 (see Fig. 22 in Feiglstorfer, this volume, p. 240) show that at this time only the remains of an aureole in the corner on the north were extant. Gergan's description and use of past tense suggests that in 1917 the aureoles of both statues were still there but not the statues.

\(^{32}\) The “third room” here (as in Gergan’s drawing; see Fig. 16. and Fig. 17) seems to refer to the spaces to the south and north of the square du khang. These spaces represent the circumambulation path (skor lam) and one (originally two) small temples (lha khang) attached to this (see the reconstruction of the ground plan based on the information provided by Gergan in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Figs. 13, 44, and 49, pp. 235, 251–252).

\(^{33}\) The “fourth room” here refers here to the easternmost space (as in Gergan’s drawing where it is described as “4th Hall or courtyard”; see Fig. 16 and Fig. 17).

\(^{34}\) A reconstruction of the ground plan of these two small rooms (lha khang) to the south and north of the courtyard is contained in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Figs. 13, 44, and 49, pp. 235, 251–252).

\(^{35}\) Gergan’s drawing of the gate and the related caption (see Fig. 16 and Fig. 17) is not entirely clear. The information seems to imply that the wall on the east was fully closed (indicated by the uninterrupted line) but that an earlier opening or gate may have been visible or reconstructable (allowing him to take the measurement of twelve feet). The gate seems to be represented by two oblong rectangular spaces indicating perhaps his reconstruction of an earlier gate (walls or open door wings?).

\(^{36}\) I conclude from Gergan’s description and use of the present tense that the four “pilgrimage ways” (standing presumably for the Tibetan skor lam, literally circumambulation path) were used in popular ritual practice at the time of his visit or perhaps mentioned to him by local people as actual or recent practice. This is also suggested by the detailed information on these paths in relation to the built space. See the section on circumambulation paths in Feiglstorfer, this volume, in particular Fig. 52, p. 254, for a visual reconstruction of these paths based on Gergan’s report.

In the recent past, due to the erection and closure of walls, it is not longer possible to walk along these circumambulation paths. Other paths, in particular the gling skor, the route leading around the wider village (including the monastic site), are still in use in Nyarma today (see, Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 2, p. 227, and for more information, Feiglstorfer 2021).
through a narrow passing (breath\textsuperscript{37} of it 3 F x 4 feet), one in the north wall and another in the south wall. By cause of three different pilgrimage ways the temple is called “chhos-skor” or “[Dharma chakr” (Alchi temple is also a “Dharmachakr”).\textsuperscript{38}

II. The second temple is only a big room in which has no marks of images, but the walls are quite strong as the others. The door looks to the east.\textsuperscript{39}

III. The third temple has southward from the second temple a little distance, in the centre of the room there is a broken chhodrten.\textsuperscript{40} The door looks to the east.\textsuperscript{41}

IV. The fourth temple is very wonderful in shape, and it has several corners, there were placed 16 idols in it. The throne marks a lotus of clay witnessing to those 16 gods’ images. The opposite room which

\textsuperscript{37} Read: breadth.

\textsuperscript{38} In this instance Gergan’s designation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang as chos skor reads like the rendering of an oral account perhaps given to him at Nyarma by local people. The practice of circumambulating this temple along a system of paths (skor lam) is also known from other early sites, such as Tabo in Spiti. It was perhaps connected to the original religious programme of these monuments but it cannot be excluded, however, that these forms of practice only developed at a later, more recent time. Obviously, Gergan’s explanation of temples being designated as chos skor “by cause of three different pilgrimage paths” does not agree with the system of four such paths extant at that time in Nyarma. A system of circumambulation paths at Alchi has recently been identified and analysed by Feiglstorfer (2021). Also the designation chos skor with regard to Alchi is still in use today. As stated by Lobsang Shastri, “according to some other people, the term chos khor also means the monasteries, the objects for prostration and offering for pilgrimage; they have considered the term chos khor a synonym of gnas bskor (pilgrimage). Although, this is doubtful we cannot deny this notion completely.” (Shastri 1997: 335–336).

\textsuperscript{39} The “second temple” (II) is identical with Temple II in the upper part of Fig. 18 (ground plans) and corresponds to Temple 2 of the site map in the lower part of Fig. 18. It is the temple to the south-east of the gtsug lag khang (corresponding to Temple II in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 229).

\textsuperscript{40} In Tibetan mchod rten.

\textsuperscript{41} The “third temple” (III) corresponds to Temple IV in the upper part of Fig. 18 (ground plans) and Temple IV (or 3) of the site map in the lower part of Fig. 18. It is the temple further to the south of Temple II and corresponds to Temple IV in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 229.

\textsuperscript{42} An possible alternative reading for marks a may be “works &”.

may be have frescoes in the time\textsuperscript{43} of the founder, but it has been washed by rain, the sun has spoil it, by its having roofless. The out door\textsuperscript{44} looks to the east.\textsuperscript{45}

V. On the back of the smaller temples there is a temple-chhodrten.\textsuperscript{46} It looks an ordinary one, differenciated only by the small door, which also looks to the same direction as the other temples, inside it is a small temple 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ F. with frescoes.\textsuperscript{47} There is also a sky light hole through the second story.\textsuperscript{48} The frescoes are in a bad state, but better than the other temples.\textsuperscript{49} The sun & rain has not been allowed to spoil it, but the children; most of the painted coates were scratched down by their hands or sticks.\textsuperscript{50} On the east wall there are 26 “Grub-thobs,”\textsuperscript{51} on the first line. On the second line can be seen only some

\textsuperscript{43} Read: maybe had frescoes from the time.

\textsuperscript{44} According to the ground plan of this temple given in the drawing in Fig. 18 and Fig. 19 the door referred to here as outer) door is located on the eastern side of the temple, at the intersection of the two architectural spaces—a square one and a maṇḍala- or “several cornered”-shaped one (see also Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 4 and Fig. 5, pp. 228–229).

\textsuperscript{45} The “fourth temple” (IV) corresponds to Temple III in the upper part of Fig. 18 (ground plans) and Temple III (or 4) of the site map in the lower part of Fig. 18. It corresponds to Temple IIIa and IIIb in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 229.

\textsuperscript{46} In Tibetan mchod rten. The designation as a temple mchod rten is clearly related to a cycle of murals associated with a specific religious programme and ritual function.

The temple mchod rten (V) corresponds to V (described as “Temple chhodrten”) of the site map in the lower part of Fig. 18. It corresponds to V (temple-mchod rten) in Feiglstorfer, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 229. See also Figs. 21–23.

\textsuperscript{47} This mchod rten and its artistic remains were described and analysed by Panglung Rinpoche in an article on the remains of the Nyarma monastery in Ladakh (Panglung 1995 [19383]). His photographic documentation of the frescoes dating from the late 1970s or early 1908s and Christiane Kalantari’s from 2009 provide comparative information on the remains of the architecture and paintings. See also Panglung 1995: plate IX.

\textsuperscript{48} The “skylight” hole at the top of the mchod rten, noted as a sign of destruction by Panglung Rinpoche, must have occurred before Gergan’s visit and has remained seemingly unchanged since then. The visit in 2009 revealed a corbelled roof construction similar to that of another mchod rten in the area between Thikse and Nyarma studied by Kozicz (2014)). See also Figs. 22–23.

\textsuperscript{49} The overall state of preservation of the paintings does not seem to have deteriorated since Panglung Rinpoche’s visit.

\textsuperscript{50} After the word sticks and the beginning of the next sentence there is an empty space of ca. 4 cm in the notebook.

\textsuperscript{51} In Tibetan grub thob, accomplished master, great yogin. According to Panglung Rinpoche, the figures depicted are (from left to right) Vajradhara (Do rje ‘chang), eight Mahāsiddhas, and seventeen monks facing one another. See also Fig. 24 for an overview of the east wall and Fig. 25 for a detail.
parts of Yogies’ cotton cloth (picture). There has been a couple of bigger images, but it is impossible to recognize them, because they are spoilt. In the bottom of this wall, there are the pictures of Rnam-sras (The of wealth Rnasms ras = son of A[??]b), and Six-handed-gonpos, and no more on this wall. On the south wall: There are 5 Lama races, Avalokiteshvara, Th thugs-pa-med (the Buddha as a god of life) & a Lama of a Brugpa sect (red capped), who holds phurpa (d[a]gger) and a cup of skull, all are situated in the first line. In the second line, can be seen only some the 80 “Grub-thobs,” some Lamas & slob-dpon-Klu-sgrub (Nagarjuna). “Tsonkapa” is the biggest image in this wall. In this small room there were the one thousand-Buddhas, as there are several small images of him still.

On the west wall, can be differentiated the

---

52 I assume that Gergan is referring to the monks further down the line in the first row as the figures in the second row are clearly no yogins but deities (none of which are mentioned by him). Also none of the figures in the third row from top, showing images of teachers, among them according to Panglung (1995: 285) the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po, is mentioned by Gergan. Actually, plate IXb in Panglung 1995 as well as the photographs from 2009 show only seven teachers and a deity. See Fig. 24, Fig. 26 and Fig. 27.

53 In Tibetan rNam sras (also rNam thos sras), Sanskrit Vaiśravaṇa.

54 Read: god.

55 Read: god. Read: Arumb?

56 Read: Six-handed-gonpo (or -gonpos)? In Tibetan mGon po phyag drug pa, six-handed (sadbhujā) Mahākāla.

57 Gergan and Panglung both speak only of two deities on the lower part of this wall, one on each side of the entrance. Panglung describes the flaming areoles on both sides and a sword on the proper left side, implying one is not depiction of two protective deities. However, the photographs from 2009 clearly show that two figures (one above the other) were painted on either side of the door, altogether four figures (see Fig. 24).

58 The d is added below se.

59 Obviously Gergan’s description refers to eight figures painted in the top row of this wall. Based on the photographs from 2009, (from left to right) of the first three figures (to the left of the capital), the first two are wearing flat red caps (as also stated by Panglung 1995: 285). The headgear of the third one is not visible. Between the capitals there are two monks with pointed paṇḍita-type hats. These five figures of monks belonging to different schools seem to correspond to Gergan’s description as “5 Lama races”. The figures to the right of the second capital are sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokitesvara) and Tse dbag med (Amśtāyus). The last figure on this side according to Panglung (1995: 285) possibly represents a form of Padmasambhava holding a rdo rje (vajra) and a scull-cup (see Fig. 28).

60 Due to the poor state of preservation, the second line or row of paintings as well as the greater part of the lower sections on this wall it is difficult to identify the religious cycle(s) and figures depicted. Panglung (1995: 286) suggested Tsong kha pa, possibly also Sa skya Pandita, as the main figure on this wall.
XII. Page [5b] (Fig. 11)

clear images of Rdorje-chang (Vajradhara), Tili, Naropa, Marpa & “Ras chhungpa”, and Manymed-aDzar, Marme-mdzad on the bottom of his image are written these Tibetan small letters: [empty space of ca. 6 cm] = Many-med-adzar la-namo praising to the Many-med-adzar!! Nearly all the coats are fallen down of the North wall, and now only can see three Lotsavas & these Tibetan letters:

Brangpa-Rdorje-pal-la-namo = Praise to the Dangpa-Dorje-pal!!

chhos-Baku-...... bZangpo la namo = Praise to the Chhos-Baku-..... Zangpo!!

Perhaps by seeing the above temple-Chhodrten; the Buddhist has been taught to build their Kakanings. Some Lamas say: "In ancient times these was no temple in every house, as in these days. Therefore the death-ceremonies were performed in such

61 Rdorje ‘chang (Vajradhara, not Vajrapāṇi). This image to the left of the destroyed main figure (like three more below it of similar size) was clearly identifiable by Panglung (1995: 285, plate X) as well as in 2009 (see Fig. 29).
62 Panglung (1995: 285) described the two figures below Rdo rje ‘chang as siddhas and the one at the bottom as a monk. It is probable although not entirely clear that Gergan’s identification of “Tili” (Tilopa?, 988–1069), Naropa (1016–1100), Marpa (Mar pa) (1012–1097) and Ras chung pa (1084–1161) is correct.
63 nyin in Manymed-aDzar is not entirely certain. As the immediately following “Marme-mdzad” is underlined; it seems that, as in the following sentence, this should be understood as the intended name (instead of “Manymed-aDzar”).
64 In Tibetan Mar me mdzad (Buddha Dipamkara).
65 Marme mdzad is added in small script above Many-med-aDzar.
66 Gergan’s description suggests that Mar me mdzad was on the same wall as the above-mentioned figures but in a different place. The question of whether the inscription (which seems to have disappeared) could have referred to the main figure, which was identified as Buddha Śākyamuni by Panglung (1995: 285) (see also Fig. 29), cannot be answered.
67 In 2009 on the north wall were visible two figures in the upper left (western) corner and three figures in the upper right (eastern) corner. In the top centre the fragmentary remains of further two figures were visible (see also Fig. 30). Cf. Panglung (1995: 285): “Die Nordwand ist sehr stark beschädigt und Malereien sind nur noch in den Zwischenräumen der steinernen Deckenträger erhalten, nämlich links zwei Mönche mit flacher roter Mütze sowie in der Mitte, vermutlich, Rin chen bzang po.” The basis for the identification of Rin chen bzang po is unclear.
68 Empty space of full line before =.
69 In 2009, these inscriptions were still there, and the photographs confirm Gergan’s reading (see Fig. 31 and Fig. 32). They were obviously written by different hands and in different script. Brang pa Rdo rje [d]pal lo na mo seems to refer to the figure in the corner and may have been added only after a part of the painting had fallen down.
70 Meaning unclear.
71 Read: there.
temples & Chhodrtens, for that purpose the doors are made very small, to hinder the corpses from fleeing, which rise & can walk for a few hours or days by the power of goblins, and such risen corpse ( = Betal)\(^1^2\) cannot bend down to creep through such a door, as a true living person can."

VI. All the 4 temples and 31 chhodrtens\(^7^3\) are protekted by a wall, the greater part of it is fallen down, but can see the foundation of it.\(^7^4\) There are several Lhabab-chhodrtens\(^7^5\) outside of the wall.\(^7^6\) In some of them one can find Thsathsas\(^7^7\) (clay images in which mixed the ashes of human bone) with Sanskrit or Tibetan letters on or in them, in which mostly written the Rten-aBrel-Snyingpo\(^7^8\) = Ye dharma essence of the connection between cause & effect.\(^7^9\) Perhaps Lotsava Rinchhen-bZangpo\(^8^0\) taught the western Tibetans to build

\(^{7^2}\) Perhaps a popular expression of the Sanskrit vetāla designating a kind of demon or ghost, also revenant, in Śaiva and Buddhist belief systems. Such spirits may by belief possess a dead body and may use it as vehicle (see, for example, Dezső 2010).

\(^{7^3}\) In Tibetan mchod rten. According to dKa’ chen Blo bzang bzod pa’s biography of Rin chen bzang po (1976) altogether eight major and smaller temples were founded by Rin chen bzang po at Nyarma. This source says that at times there were more than a hundred bigger and smaller mchod rten (quoted after Panglung 1995: 283, n. 13).

\(^{7^4}\) This enclosure wall (lcags ri), including its measurements, is also mentioned in dKa’ chen Blo bzang bzod pa’s biography of Rin chen bzang po (1976) (see Panglung 1995: 283, n. 13). In 2006 only fragmentary remains were still extant at the eastern and southern end of the site (see Feiglstorfer, this volume, p. 247).

\(^{7^5}\) In Tibetan lha bab (also babs) mchod rten, commonly referred to as the Stūpa of the Descent from Heaven (more precisely, the realm of the gods), one of the Eight Stūpas representing the Eight Great Events in the Life of the Buddha.

\(^{7^6}\) See Kozicz 2007 and 2014 for information on mchod rten outside the Nyarma enclosure wall or rather in the area between Thikse and Nyarma.

\(^{7^7}\) In Tibetan tsha tsha.

\(^{7^8}\) In Tibetan rten ‘brel snying po, the Heart (literally essence) of Interdependent Origination, in Sanskrit pratītyasamutpāda. See Namgyal Lama 2013 for an overview on inscriptions on tsha tsha, and Jahoda 2019 for further contexts of such inscriptions in historical Western Tibet.

\(^{7^9}\) The Sanskrit verse (ye dharmā hetuprabhavā hetum tesām tathāgah hyavodat tesām ca yo nirodha ebam vadi mahāśramanah, “All things originate from causes of which the Tathāgatas [Buddhas] have taught the causes, and that which is the cessation of the causes is also proclaimed by the Great Sage”) of this essential “Buddhist creed” is often also found written in Tibetan script on objects or paintings.

\(^{8^0}\) Great Translator (lo tsa ba chen po) Rin chen bzang po (958–1055).
XIV. Page [6b] (Fig. 13)

chhodrtens,81 Thhsad-khangs,82 and 108 wall chhodrtens83 as he seen the style of them in eastern & western India. He was zealous to build religious buildings and also in translation (one may see his translated list in bKa-gyur84). We can find such buildings in several parts of western Tibet. In these days the most of Ladakies call his temples “The Mongol-Temples”.85 As most Tibetans have forgotten their kind reformers name.86

VII. By walking some hundred yards to the east from the “chos skor”, there is the ruin “Ensas” (dBensa = hermitage)87 on the top of a small hill, which is surrounded by 3 very small hermitages & 3 chhodrtens, in which are stored Thsathhas88 with letters as told above. “Ensas” also has a protecting wall of 108 chhodrtens around it.89 At present no one can build the 108 wall chhodrtens. People say, that

81 In Tibetan mchod rten.
82 This word also appears in Gergan’s description of funeral rites in Ladakh. There the Tibetan transliteration is given as tshad khang (Gergan 1940: 232), corresponding to tshad khang in our system of transliteration. Tshad khang are explained as “Tsatsaschrein”, buildings where tsha tsha are placed (commonly referred to as tsha khang).
83 By wall mchod rten, Gergan seems to be referring to a row of a hundred and eight mchod rten (mchod rten brgya rtsa) which are built next to each other so as to form a wall. Such rows are known to have existed at Tholing (see Vitali 1999: 101) and also at Tabo (where the remains were still visible in 1997).
84 In Tibetan bKa’ ‘gyur, literally the “translated words” of the Buddha, the first part of the Tibetan Buddhist canon.
85 The Tibetan word corresponding to this designation is not clear.
86 At this time, Gergan’s source for information on the Great Translator seems have been a version of an abbreviated biography (rnam thar bsdus pa) of Rin chen bzang po (as mentioned further below), local oral tradition in places where the Great Translator was credited with having been active and colophons in the bKa’ ‘gyur and bsTan ‘gyur where he is listed as translator of 174 texts (see Rigzin 1984: 32–37).
87 In Tibetan dben sa (hermitage).
88 In Tibetan tsha tsha.
89 The hermitage which was not mentioned by Panglung was studied in detail by Hubert Feiglstorfer in 2006. His description of this site agrees entirely with Gergan’s from 1917 (see Feiglstorfer, this volume, pp. 232–233).
there was a spring near “Ensa” in ancient times, which flows now in Nang village & they call it “Murtsomg.”

Rinchhenbangpo’s temples of Ladak are always one story, without windows in the walk, most of his temples are deserted, because they are situated in the desert; they are mostly built with bricks.90

VIII. bKrasḥiṣsgang (Trashi-sgang)91 temples are in ruins, like the Kyilibug near Shel92 temple, Nyerchung temples and Garagrong temples. Another temple chhodrten also has been made by him at Trashisgang, & it was painted both stories. But all images are in a bad state & cannot be recognized except 8 images of chhodrten.93

Several people say: The best preserved idols of Nyarma temples has been brought into the “Kongka-Lhakhang” at She,94 by the She people dancing and singing.95

90 See the contributions by Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings” (this volume, pp. 202–203, 206, passim) and Feiglstorfer (this volume, pp. 234–235, passim) for an analysis of the bricks used at Nyarma.
91 In Tibetan bKra shis sgang.
92 “near Shel” is added in small script above the word temple.
93 These temples and mchod rtan still need to be identified.
94 In Tibetan Shel.
95 The temple referred to was documented as far as possible in 2009 by Christiane Kalantari, in addition also by Bettina Zeisler and Wofgang Heusgen, who provided their photographs to the author.
Still they remember that time at “Srubla”\textsuperscript{96} (harvest Feast),\textsuperscript{97} once in a year in the 7th month (August).

This Nyarma temple is one of his 4\textsuperscript{98} big\textsuperscript{99} temples (see his Biography). And the following ten temples are of his 108 smaller temples:

1. Alchi chhoskor\textsuperscript{100}
2. Temple of chiling Sumda\textsuperscript{101}
3. ” Mangrgyu.\textsuperscript{102}
4. ” Wamlia (Wanla).\textsuperscript{103}
5. ” GYungdrung (yuru)?\textsuperscript{104}
6. ” Atitse (near yuru).\textsuperscript{105}
7. ” Mulbe - dPal-Idanrtse.\textsuperscript{106}
8. ” Tarchud Lhakhang (in Sabu)\textsuperscript{107}
9. ” Lhakhang - gSumrtsegs\textsuperscript{108} at Leh (one is quite ruin.)
10. ” Temple of Chhos-skor,\textsuperscript{109} at Leh (ruin)

May be more temples of him in Ladakh than above.  Joseph Thsertan.

\textsuperscript{96} In Tibetan srub lha. The meaning of srub lha is an offering to local deities on the first day of fall harvest, which used to be performed in various places of Ladakh and Zangskar, such as at sKyur bu can and Karsha (Francke 1923: 30–31; Gutschow 1997: 44–45). In Shel this event assumed the character of a monastic festival (dNgos grub nam rgyal 1979: 105–113; Brauen 1980: 125).

\textsuperscript{97} Read: Feast.

\textsuperscript{98} A 3 has been added in smaller script above the 4, written in a different hand.

\textsuperscript{99} In smaller script above “is one of his 4 big”, written by a different hand (most probably by Francke), “1) Kho-char, 2) Mtho-ldin, 3) Nyar-ma” has been added.

\textsuperscript{100} In Tibetan chos skor.

\textsuperscript{101} In Tibetan Phyi gling gSum mda’.

\textsuperscript{102} In Tibetan Mang rgyu.

\textsuperscript{103} In Tibetan Wan la. See Tropper 2007 for an edition of an historical inscription in the gSum brtsegs temple at Wanla, including a discussion of the question of Rin chen bzung po’s foundation of this temple. While extant inscriptive and art-history evidence (dating from the 13th or 14th century) does not support such claims, an earlier foundation cannot be entirely excluded (see ibid.: 108–109).

\textsuperscript{104} Nowadays usually referred to as Lamayuru. In Tibetan, Bia ma g.yung drung. Yuru (g.Yu ru) is a popular spelling based upon the local pronunciation of g.Yung drung. At Lamayuru, not only the original foundation of the temple but also a few mchod rtse are locally attributed to Rin chen bzang po (see also Luczanits 2014: 145).

\textsuperscript{105} This site still needs to be identified.

\textsuperscript{106} In Tibetan Mul bhe dPal ldan rtse.

\textsuperscript{107} In Tibetan Sa phud. The temple still needs to be identified.

\textsuperscript{108} In Tibetan IHa khang gsum brtsegs.

\textsuperscript{109} In Tibetan Chos skor.
Plan of the biggest temple of Lotsava Rinchhen-bZangpo\textsuperscript{110} at Nyarma, near Khrińtse\textsuperscript{111} in Ladak.\textsuperscript{112}

The numbers are feet.

Measured from the outside of the wall –
Height of wall 14 Feet, Breadth of wall 3 \(\frac{1}{2}\) Feet.

\textsuperscript{110} Read: lo tsa ba Rin chen bzang po.
\textsuperscript{111} Read: Khri rtse (see also n. 4).
\textsuperscript{112} Read: Ladak (Tibetan: Bla dwags, also La dwags).
Plan of the biggest temple of Lotsava Rinchhen-bZangpo at Nyarma, near Khrirtse in Ladak.

No. I.
The numbers are feet.
Measured from the outside of the wall —
Hight of wall 14 Feet, Breadth of wall 3½ Feet.
XVIII. Page [8b] (see Fig. 18)
The above showing only the shape of the temples rooms without measured

Several corned temple

Temple in which contains a trace of Chhodrten (stupa).

Temple chhodrten

Dharmachakr
Conclusion

In his preface to Shuttleworth’s book *Lha-lun Temple, Spyi-ti. Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India*, No. 39, Francke cited an “account of the Nar-ma ruins” by Joseph Gergan where he (Gergan) produces another list of 10 temples built by the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po in Ladakh (Francke 1929: ii), in addition to many other temples in areas of Western Tibet (such as Guge, Purang, etc.) listed in his biography. This account of the Nyarma ruins by Gergan from which Francke quoted was never published. After his death in 1930, Francke’s copy of this account—there may be other copies—was kept together with his papers and is accessible in the Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage (Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin Preussischer Kulturbesitz).

Gergan’s motivation for visiting Nyarma and writing an account of it is not clear. From the fact that he wrote it in English (we have no indication of a Tibetan version), it can be assumed that, in addition to his fundamental interest in the history of Ladakh and its rich cultural traditions, it was most probably part of his collaboration with August Hermann Francke, as a background perhaps also the Archaeological Survey of India’s interest in recording the archaeological and artistic remains of the ancient Buddhist culture of this area. The latter may have had some influence on the form and accuracy of Gergan’s account, in particular in the description of the whole site and the detailed measurements of the main temple. Gergan’s account thus can also be seen as standing in the tradition and mode of operation established and used at the time by the Archaeological Survey of India and also by Francke whose *Antiquities of Indian Tibet, Part I* was published in 1914 and must have been known to Gergan.

Gergan’s site map or plan (see Fig. 18) of what seems to have once constituted the core area of the monastic compound of Nyarma, and even more his measured plan of the main temple (*gtsug lag khang*) (Fig. 16), are striking examples of his accurate work in this regard. It took decades until similar work was done by Romi Khosla (1979) in Ladakh and other areas of the Western Himalaya and again much later by others.

Gergan’s account and as well as his other works as a collector of oral traditions and written sources and authorship are among a few rare examples of scholarship that combines knowledge and methodological approaches from diverse settings, in his case the learning, ideas and socio-cultural practices of Ladakh, Tibet, India, and the ‘West’, in particular Western Europe. In terms of language this comprised the languages of Tibet, Ladakh and Northwestern India, such as Hindi and Urdu, and the religious traditions of Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism and Islam.

Gergan’s account is remarkable for various specific reasons. First of all, in that he provides an overview of the whole site and a description of the extant temples as he found them in 1917. In addition to what he describes as an eye-witness, his account also includes local oral traditions and recollections, in particular by monks, most probably from nearby Thikse/Khrig se monastery.

Based on his knowledge of sites and through the discovery of related textual sources, he was able to identify the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po as responsible for the construction of the main temple of Nyarma. While the exact basis for his list of ten further, smaller temples built by the Great Translator in Ladakh is not given and remains unclear, research in recent decades and years has shown that in their current state the temples on this list are among the earliest extant Buddhist temples in Ladakh. Whether they were originally founded by the Great Translator is still an open question for research that will occupy scholars in the future, with Gergan’s list certainly providing a valuable orientation.

Of particular importance are his findings regarding the original main deity of the Nyarma main temple, Sangs rgyas Mar me mdzad / Buddha Dipamkara, again through a combination of the result of this survey and subsequent textual studies that were confirmed by
information in historiographical sources which have only become accessible in recent years).

His major findings may also include the relevance of the cult of rDo rje chen mo in this (as in other major early monastic foundations of historical Western Tibet where the Great Translator was (is said and mentioned to have been) active, such as for example Tabo, Tholing (mTho gling), and Khorchag (‘Khor chags). The information presented by Gergan on the cult of rDo rje chen mo in Nyarma comprises various aspects, such as the basis of her cult in a local deity whose residence was related with a spring located near a hermitage (dben so) associated by local oral tradition with Rin chen bzang po, the transfer of her cult from Nyarma to Shel (and the relationship to a particular festival) and the continuing presence of her cult in Nyarma. All this information, like nearly all of Gergan’s report, was (re-)traced by the present author together with Christiane Kalantari in situ in 2009. This also holds true for his description of the so-called “temple-mchod-rten”. His remarks on its state of preservation (obviously only minimally deteriorating between 1917 and 2009), construction and function are another example for the remarkable qualities of his account.

Finally, the system of four “pilgrimage ways” or circumambulation paths that he mentions leading around the gtsug lag khang is not only an essential historical observation (which together with his measured plan allowed Hubert Feiglstorfer—see his contribution in this volume, p. 225–257—to reconstruct them) but one that represents a great potential in helping to “read” past and present ritual and popular practices in relation to the built space (and religious “decoration”) and ultimately understanding the contemporary concept of the Buddhist monuments as well as later transformations.\textsuperscript{113}

Bibliography


\textsc{BRAUEN, Martin. 1980. Feste in Ladakh.} Graz, Akademische Druck- und Verlagsanstalt.

\textsc{DEZŠÓ, Csaba. 2010. Encounters with vetilos: Studies on fabulous creatures I.} In: \textit{Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hung.}, 63/4, 391–426.

\textsc{DO RGYA DBANG DRAG RDO RJE. 2013. \textit{lHa bla ma ye shes ‘od kyi nam thar rgyas pa bzhus so.} Gu ge pantha [sic!] Grags pa rgyal mtshan gyis mdzad.} lHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, 1–130.

\textsc{Dung dkar tshig mdzod chen mo (ed. by Dung dkar blo bzang ‘phrin las).} 2002. Beijing: Krung go’i bod rig pa’i dpe skrun khang.

\textsc{FEIGLSTORFER, Hubert. 2021. Material culture in the Western Himalayas: \textit{Mandalic} settlement patterns and material components of the ritual space.} In: Kümmer, Fabian, Majorossy, Judit and Hovden, Eirik (eds) \textit{Practicing Community in Urban and Rural Eurasia (1000–1600): Comparative and Interdisciplinary Perspectives.} Leiden: Brill, 155–188.


\textsc{GERGAN, Josef. 1940. Totenbräuche der buddhistischen Tibeter.} In: \textit{Dropta Namgyal, ein Tibeterleben, ed. S.H. Ribbach. München-Planegg: Otto Wilhelm Barth, 207–235 (text); 257–261 (notes).}

\textsc{GERGAN, Rev. J. 1942. A thousand Tibetan proverbs and wise sayings with short explanations of obscure phrases. \textit{Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal} 8, 157–276.}

\textsc{DGE RGAN, Yo seb (bSod nams Tshe brtan). 1976. \textit{Bla dwags rgyal rabs chi med gter} \textit{[Eternal Treasure of Royal Genealogies of Ladakh], ed. bSod nams sKyabs Idan dGe rgan. Srinagar-Kashmir: S. S. Gergan.}}

\textsc{GU GE PAN CHEN GRAGS PA RGYAL MTSHAN. 2011. \textit{lHa bla ma ye shes ‘od kyi nam thar rgyas pa bzhus so.} In: dPal brtsegs bod yig dpe mying zhib ‘jug khang. \textit{Bod kyi lo rgyus nam thar phyogs bsgrigs, vol. Pi (43).} Zi ling: mTsho ngnon mi ri rigs dpe skrun khang, 273–355.}


\textsuperscript{113} See the following contributions by Devers, Feiglstorfer and Kalantari in this volume for accounts and analyses of the site of Nyarma and its main temple from the perspectives of archaeology, architecture and art history respectively.


Fig. 21. *mchod rten* with painted decoration (view from east), Nyarma (H. Feiglstorfer, 2005).

Fig. 22. *mchod rten* with painted decoration, corbelled roof construction, Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).

Fig. 23. Ground plan and section A-A, *mchod rten* with painted decoration, Nyarma (drawing: H. Feiglstorfer, 2019).
Fig. 24. *mchod rten* with painted decoration (overview east wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Fig. 25. rDo rje 'chang (Vajradhara) and siddhas (mchod rten with painted decoration, east wall, top register), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).

Fig. 26. 'Jam dpal dbyangs (Mañjuśrī) and monks (mchod rten with painted decoration, east wall, top registers), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).

Fig. 27. sPyan ras gzigs (Avalokiteśvara) (mchod rten with painted decoration, east wall, top registers), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Fig. 28. *mchod rten* with painted decoration (overview south wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Fig. 29. *mchod rten* with painted decoration (overview west wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Fig. 30. *mchod rten* with painted decoration (overview north wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Fig. 31. Monks with inscriptions below (mchod rten with painted decoration (detail inscription, north wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).

Fig. 32. Detail of inscriptions (mchod rten with painted decoration, north wall), Nyarma (C. Kalantari, 2009).
The village of Nyarma, located on the left bank of the Indus a little upstream of Thikse (see Fig. 1: map), houses a rich archaeological heritage (Figs. 2 and 3). It stands out as having been the place that had both the most numerous and the largest temples before the mid-fifteenth century. As a comparison, whilst the temples in Alchi (inside and outside the Choskor) add up to a total surface of about 350 m², the ruins of Nyarma and its surrounding area come to roughly 860 m² (Devers 2015, forthcoming). The village has received attention mainly for its famous complex of temples in ruins, reportedly founded by Rinchen Zangpo (958–1055). Various studies of this complex—including the chörten (Tib. mchod rten, Skt. stūpa)—have been conducted, the most important one being by Panglung (1983), Neuwirth and his team (see Neuwirth 2008), Kozicz (2007a-d, 2011), and myself (2015, forthcoming). Further investigating the antiquity of the complex, B. R. Mani of the Archaeological Survey of India found five clay tablets “datable to about eleventh century AD” (Director General Archaeological Survey of India 2006: 184). The second site that has been researched is the little fort, described by Howard in his study of the fortresses of Ladakh (Howard 1989: 269–71). Beside

1. The fieldwork for this paper was funded by the Centre de Recherche sur les Civilisations de l’Asie Orientale (UMR8155, CNRS/EPHE/Paris Diderot-Paris 7/Collège de France) in 2009, and by the École Française d’Extrême-Orient in 2010 and 2011. I would like to thank Olivier Tochon, who accompanied me for the documentation of some of the structures described in this paper.

1. Also known and referred to as the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po [editors’ note].

2. Earlier descriptions and reports on Nyarma are by Joseph Gergan (bSod nams Tshe brtan) (see Jahoda, “Joseph Tsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917,” this volume) and by Rāhula Sāṅkṛtyāyana. Mention of Gergan’s report (although with reference to Francke) is also made in Kozicz (2007b: 1, 4). Concerning the activities by Rāhula Sāṅkṛtyāyana in Nyarma, John Bray kindly indicated to me that he mentions the excavations he made at the complex in the 1930s with the help of a young member of the Moravian mission, Tsetan Phuntshog (personal communication by John Bray, January 2012). If such digs did take place, it would be ground breaking to know which part of the complex was excavated and where the report or the results could be consulted.
The monastery of Thikse can be seen in the background (Q. Devers, 2011).

these, there are other structures that haven’t received the same attention yet: overlooking Nyarma on the east is a small hill-temple complex, and north of the rocky formation on which the fort stands is a series of four ruins of temples.

The goal of this paper is not to comment on and confront what has already been written on Nyarma, instead it is to bring a much-needed fresh archaeological look at the ruins, especially at Temple 1, whose relative complex chronology has been the source of confusion in the existing literature as regards the reconstruction of its original plan and the distinction of its successive transformations. To close this introduction, it should be noted that the numerous *mchod rt’en* found in this area of study, though of indubitable interest, are, like modern structures, intentionally left aside: we will focus exclusively on the ruins of temples and on the fort.

The Main Complex of Temples

Nowadays only five temples are left in the main complex, along with

2. General view of the area of study from the south-south-east: a) main complex, b) fort, c) hill temple complex, d) Thikse-Nyarma area. The monastery of Thikse can be seen in the background (Q. Devers, 2011).
some portions of the original enclosure on the southern and eastern edges (Figs. 5 and 6). These structures are all built with unbaked bricks, none of the walls are in stone. As the different sizes and textures of the bricks indicate (Fig. 29), these constructions were likely erected at different times.

From an archaeological perspective, important recent activity has damaged the complex, the most important being the construction of a new temple and the extraction of construction material from most of the southern and eastern part of the complex. This is carried on an industrial scale, with trucks coming on a daily basis to carry the extracted material. The size and the depth of the pit is growing every year—in 2011 it was about 50 x 70 m and over 2 m deep (on Fig. 21, a truck and the beginning of the pit on the left can be seen; the same pit is also visible on Fig. 5 on the right).

The complex is constructed on a location that has a clear water-drainage problem. Indeed, the little pond on the northern side does not flow anywhere: water comes both from the pond down the fort...
With the extraction pit, the fluctuations of the pond and the construction of the new temple there is probably no chance of retrieving the foundations of the three missing temples that once stood in the complex (see Panglung 1983: 283) along with the five that are current. While these walls were still standing in 1965 as can be seen on Fig. 4, they have now dissolved into the ground. A possible scenario is that on the completion of this installation large quantity of water likely ended up rushing to the complex, where it had nowhere to escape, as the topography goes slightly uphill in all directions, provoking an increase in the size of the pond which dissolved the base of walls 15, 16 and 17, resulting in turn in their eventual collapse.

3 It can be suspected that it is indirectly responsible for the collapse of some of the walls of Temple 1 (walls of Space B and Chapel C, i.e. walls 15, 16 and 17 on Fig. 7)
rently visible. The largest of these temples, Temple 1, is reported to have been founded by Rinchen Zangpo. It has undergone several modifications over time, which we will review in detail.

Temple 1

Temple 1 is composed of several parts (Fig. 8): there is a central temple (A), an ambulatory around it visible only on its southern flank with a room opened in it (E), and a large open space in front of it (B) framed on both sides by two chapels (C and D). The central temple (A) is in turn composed of a large assembly area, opening on the west on an inner ambulatory that contains a central cella. A small temple was built in the relatively recent past (most probably in the 1840s, see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 175) above this cella and above part of the inner ambulatory, as can be seen in Fig. 9.

In order to reconstruct the original plan and to trace the various changes, the walls need to be studied by looking at their various components like the bricks—both size and texture—the mud coats, the beam marks etc.

In Fig. 8, the walls are differentiated according to their chaining, and according to the traces of mud coats. For example, the sections of wall 2 are chained together, making it one long single wall. On the other hand, while they are straight and contiguous, walls 5 and 19 are not the same,

7. Reconstruction of the original plan of Temple 1 (Q. Devers, 2012).
because the external mud coat of wall 5 goes all around its tip at its junction with wall 19, thus separating them. In addition, in Fig. 8, the walls are coloured according to the size and texture of the bricks.

**The Original Temple**

The original plan is easily visible: it is drawn by the walls coloured in light grey (walls 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 10 and 11). It is made with 40 x 26 x 10 cm bricks that have a fine texture without straw inside.
The study of the mud coats corroborates this plan: in II and VI they tie these original walls together (walls 4 and 6 on the one hand, 10 and 11 on the other), while in I, III, IV, V and VII they clearly separate them from those added later. The preserved walls are about 4 m high.

Some elements allow for reconstructing the missing walls of the ambulatory. In Fig. 8, in b and c the tips of walls 5 and 9 are not coated, and they are made with bricks that have a rougher texture, with pebbles inside like those of walls 6, 7 and 8. Walls 5 and 9 were as such very likely a single wall that was cut at b and c in order to build room E. In d, the mud-coat on the tip of the wall indicates that it ended there, while in e a break in this coat shows that the wall protruded here. From there, if we consider that the temple was symmetrical, then we can reconstruct the walls all the way to wall 10, as shown on Fig. 7. In a and j the mud coats are continuous; walls 4 and 11 had as such no protruding counterparts from walls 2 and 3.

There is a small wall in the assembly area that is not represented in the plan. This is usually said to testify to the existence the former inner mchod rten of the temple. As its bricks are not directly observable, it is difficult to venture whether it is original or not.

The positions of the beams that once supported the roof of the assembly area are still visible: they correspond to the vertical recesses at the top of the walls. There were four of these, about 2.5 m apart (Fig. 8: indicated by the small grey triangles in wall 2; Fig. 9: indicated by the white arrows). These can be seen only on wall 2: the upper part of wall 3 was levelled (Fig. 9).

The roof of the ambulatory is more difficult to assess. Like wall 3, the tops of walls 5 and 9 were levelled, and, as the rest of the ambulatory wall is missing, no trace of a roof is left. If there was one, it could not have been lower than that of the temple: it would have otherwise required either a wall with a recessing profile (Fig. 10: a) or a wall with holes to fix the beams (Fig. 10: b)—the walls of the temple are straight and without holes. As such, if the ambulatory had a roof, the only possibility is that it was at the same height as that of the temple, as illustrated in c in Fig. 10.

The external top of the entrance walls has small marks of a porch roof (Fig. 8: small holes on the upper part of wall 3). However, given the later development that took place in front of the temple (see below) one must remain cautious as to whether these marks are original or if they are due to this later development.

There are two sets of halos visible on the walls of the assembly area, and a third inside the central cella. The first set consists of a large halo on either side of the main door, at h and i in Fig. 8. They are 1.5 m wide (Fig. 11). The second set of halos is in g. It has four smaller halos, 80 cm wide, in two registers (Fig. 12). The lower halos seem to have had three vertical fixings with another one on the left near the halo. The holes of the upper halos are not as clear, they seem to have had fewer fixings spread in a different fashion. The elevation of the wall in f is missing: as such the existence of another four halos is a matter of speculation. A third set composed of at least one small halo can be seen on the back of the central cella (wall 1).

Frontal Development: Space B and Chapel C

In a second phase, a development took place in front of the temple with the construction of a large space (B) along with at least one lateral chapel (C) (Fig. 8). Another chapel was likely on the other side of space B, but, as we will see, in its current state it is not from the same period as chapel C.

As there is no direct relationship between walls 12-13 on the one hand and walls 14-15-16 on the other, it is questionable to state whether the development of space B is contemporaneous with that of chapel C. But the fact that they are made from the same bricks, and that walls 12-13 use special bricks shaped with a recess in order to fit a doorframe (Fig. 13) indicates that it was designed with a door right from the beginning. As such, chapel C is likely contemporaneous with space B.

Two elements in chapel C are worthy of discussion. First, an opening in the wall suggests that there was a narrow door about 80 cm wide leading outside of the chapel in k. The second element is that in l wall 14 has no external mud coat, whereas the rest of the wall does. These elements raise the question of the existence of a former room there. Fig. 15 shows a possible reconstruction of this stage with the hypothesis of a chapel in D similar to that in C, and with the hypothesis of an adjacent room north of chapel C.

Alteration of Chapel D

If chapel D as it currently stands had been built at the same time as chapel C, it would likely have had the same floor plan, the same dimensions and the same bricks. Instead, it is quite the opposite: the layout is different, it is much smaller, and the walls are built with

---

4 In his report from 1917, Gergan referred to it as a “broken clay throne with lotus leaves and rear wall” where “perhaps” the main cult image was located (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsurtan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 176).

5 I would like to thank my colleague Martin Vernier with whom this question of the roof of the ambulatory was discussed.

6 During my fieldwork, my main focus was to understand the chronology of Temple 1. As such, I did not closely record the traces of stucco halos on the walls. It is only at the request of Christiane Kalantari that I am describing those I documented in my notes: it is possible that other halos are to be accounted for.
Quentin Devers

at least three different types of bricks. Indeed, wall 18 is made with bricks surprisingly larger, 42-45 cm long, wall 17 is made with bricks like those of chapel C but is only 75 cm thick, wall 21 has a unique thickness of 115 cm, is made with bricks that have a unique sandy texture, and it is the only wall that was built with timber lacing—in walls 19 and 20 no bricks are directly accessible to be properly measured. In addition, wall 22 is, as we will see, a true enigma.

In order to see into this structure more clearly it is necessary to examine the different elements separately.

Wall 17, with bricks of a texture similar to those used in the walls of chapel C, could have been built at the same time. However, with no direct visible stratigraphical relationship it is not possible to assert this definitively.

Walls 18 and 21 seem to be tied together by the coat in VIII. However, the drips of dissolved bricks there make the reading of the relationship between the two walls difficult and open to debate. Even if the mud coat between these two walls is the same, they were still clearly not built at the same time: they are far too different, with different bricks, different thicknesses, and even different techniques, as wall 21 featured timber lacing.

A relationship between walls 20 and 21 is difficult to assert as a mass of dissolved bricks separates them, but they are probably from the same state.

As for wall 19, it is the same thickness as wall 18 and, from what is visible, its bricks seem to be larger than 40 cm: as such it is probably the continuation of wall 18.

An element in favour of an original chapel similar to chapel C is the position of the door. As it is now, it is not centred: it is closer to the right-hand wall, creating a right/left asymmetry. However, if we reconstruct a layout similar to chapel C, then the door is exactly at the location where it would have been.

As we will see, the modifications of chapel D have to be considered in relation to the construction of Temple 2. Indeed, if it was originally similar to chapel C it would have overlapped with Temple 2 (Fig. 17).

Wall 22 is the most bewildering in the complex. With its length of about 1 m, it is more of a wall fragment. It is slightly inclined: it lies against wall 17. It has no mud coat, and at 42 cm long and 30 cm wide its bricks are both longer and wider than those of the other walls. Its thickness is not constant: it decreases as the height of the wall increases. Two bricks thick at the base, it is about only one brick thick at the top. No further trace of it can be observed on the ground around: it is as if this wall never went farther than the metre it currently stretches. Its function and former layout are quite enigmatic.

With these elements, the following chronology can be proposed:
- In a first step, a chapel similar to chapel C was likely built along with temple B. Wall 17 is the last testimony to this development.
- Then, for some reason, the chapel underwent two modifications that led to the construction of walls 18-19 on one hand and walls 20-21 on the other.
- As for wall 22, it is an open question to why it ended there and what its function was. The only element that can be stated is that it was built after walls 17 and 21.

Room E

As seen earlier, the section from wall 5 to 9 was dismantled for the construction of room E. As there is no direct stratigraphical relationship with the other walls of B, C and D, it is not possible to relate its construction to the other later developments of Temple 1. As it stands now, the room has undergone at least one change since its construction. Originally made of apparently unchained walls, it is coated outside but not inside. Rear wall 7 has a line of holes: above it the wall is coated, below it is not (Fig. 14). These holes are probably
those of the timbers of the original roof: the upper part of the wall was coated as it was outdoors, while the lower part was not. This roof was then destroyed or dismantled, before being rebuilt along with new parting and entrance walls.

Temple 2

Temple 2 is immediately south of Temple 1 (Figs. 16 and 20). It has the thickest walls of the complex, which are 125 cm. They are made with bricks that are 45 x 26 x 10 cm—some are 45 x 20 x 10 cm. Its porch was roofed with one large transversal beam as indicated by a large recess on the left wall, and a series of smaller beams as the profile of the exterior entrance walls show. The doorjams of the entrance wall were straight, accounting for a straight doorframe.

Inside, the walls of the assembly area have a series of small holes closely spread in line about half way above the current ground (Fig. 18). The holes on the entrance walls are slightly lower. The lateral walls of the rear niche have two parallel lines of small holes: one about half way, and one near the top of the wall (it can be seen on Fig. 16). The rear wall has an upper line of small holes only on its right third (Fig. 19). The walls of the rear niche are higher than those of the assembly area: they are 5 m rather than of 3.7 m. The positions of the beams that once supported the roof are not clearly visible, except on the rear wall where there used to be two beams about 4 m apart and 2.5 m from the lateral walls.

This temple does not have an external mud coat. According to Kozicz, “the most proper explanation would be it had never been finished” (2007b: 4). Though it is true that they rarely miss external coat, temples do not necessarily need to have one in order to be functional. As we will see later, one ruin of temple in the area between Nyarma and Thikse, which has no reason to be considered unfinished, also lacks external mud coat.

The western wall of the porch of Temple 2 is only a few meters away from the rear wall of chapel D (Fig. 17). If in its original state chapel D had the same layout and size as chapel C, then its rear wall and Temple 2 would have overlapped.

This raises the question of the chronology between chapel D and Temple 2. To sum up, there are four events that took place, given here in a non-chronological order:

a) Construction of original chapel D.
b) Modification of chapel D, which saw the construction of walls 18-19.
c) Modification of chapel D, which saw the construction of walls 20-21.
d) Construction of Temple 2.

In the current state of research it is impossible to know the exact
sequence in which these events took place. Indeed, even stating that Temple 2 was built after the original chapel D is speculative. For instance, we could imagine that Temple 2 was built just after Temple 1. In that case, when the development in front of Temple 1 took place, the two lateral chapels would have been built in different sizes: one on the northern side, which would have been larger as there was space there for building a large chapel, and one on the southern side, which would have been smaller because of the constraint of space imposed by Temple 2. Then, at some point, some problem could have led to the reconstruction of walls 18-19, followed by another problem leading to the reconstruction of walls 20-21. In this scenario we would have exactly the same remains as those currently observable.

As such, the only sequence that can be established is that events b) and c) happened after a). Then, the construction of Temple 2 (event d) could have taken place at any point before or after any of these events. And in the absence of excavations, events b) and c) could have happened in any order.

Temples 3 and 4
Though facing each other and looking as two coherent parts of a same whole, Temples 3 and 4 were probably not built at the same time (Fig. 21). Indeed, while Temple 3 is built with large bricks that are 45-47 x 26 x 10 cm, those of Temple 4 are 40 x 26 x 10 cm.

The walls of Temple 3 (Fig. 22) are built in two different thicknesses: the entrance wall is 90 cm thick, while the other walls are 82 cm—they are 4.2 m high. The roof used to be supported by two beams 3.4 m apart, 2.3 m from the entrance and rear walls. There are no apparent traces of stucco halos or fixation holes. The door jambs are not straight: they are wider on their upper parts, indicating for a particular type of door frame that used to fit there, different from that used in Temple 2. As can be seen on Fig. 21, one mchod rten is built against its right wall. The wall of the temple is not coated where the mchod rten is: the latter was as such not built after Temple 3. The temple was either built against this existing mchod rten, or both were built at the same time. To sort this chronology one would need to see whether the mchod rten is coated on the side touching the temple: if it is, then it means that it was finished before the temple was constructed, if it is not then both the temple and the mchod rten were likely built at the same time. When I conducted my field survey, the drips of dissolved bricks prevented me from seeing whether the mchod rten was coated. Temple 3 is currently used to store various materials, such as long wooden sticks whose pressure against the walls tends to damage the internal mud coat.

Temple 4 (Fig. 24) is the smallest of the temples still standing in the complex and has the thinnest walls—only 70 cm thick. It is one of only three temples in all Ladakh with a plan with three niches—the other two are the famous three-storied temples in Alchi Choskor and in Wanla, leaving this one as the only single-floored example (Devers, forthcoming).

Its walls do not exhibit clear signs of stucco halos or of fixation holes, except maybe for one hole that goes right through the rear

---

7 For all we know, Temple 2 could even be older than Temple 1. As far as material evidence is concerned, nothing proves that Temple 1 was necessarily the first one built in the area.
The door jambs are larger towards the top, as in for Temple 3. Some type of low podium ran along the walls (Fig. 23).

Temple 5
Temple 5 is the southernmost in the complex (Fig. 21 and 26). Its walls are 90 cm thick, built with bricks that are 40–42 x 26 x 10 cm. The porch shows signs of the beams of its former roof both on the side walls and on the entrance walls. In addition, a series of vertically aligned small holes can be seen in the left corner (Fig. 27). The door jambs are straight. The roof of the assembly area was supported by two beams about 3 m apart, 2.6 m from the entrance wall and 3 m from the rear wall. The rear niche, which has walls 5.9 m high rather than 4.6 m for the assembly area, appears to have had one beam. The inner walls do not show clear signs of stucco halos or of fixation holes. The access to the two closed rooms on each side of the rear niche (A and B on Fig. 25) is open to question: the room on the right...
Quentin Devers

25. Plan of Temple 5
(Q. Devers, 2012)


can be seen only through a hole in the wall in a, while one on the left can be entered only through a hole at the base of the wall outside in b. As of now it is not possible to state whether these holes are original or if they were added later on, raising the issue of whether the interior of these rooms was designed to be accessed or even seen.

A mchod rten is in the middle of the rear niche. As can be seen on Fig. 26, this mchod rten is made of stones that were apparently left uncoated and as such undecorated. This element is somewhat surprising and opens the question of the dating of this mchod rten: is it contemporaneous with the temple or was it built afterwards?

Enclosure

Only small sections of the enclosure that once delineated the complex are still preserved on the eastern and southern sides. They are 70 cm thick, built with bricks 40 x 26 x 10 cm. They are mainly uncoated on both faces, except in two, maybe three, places as indicated in Fig. 6 (sections indicated with a, b and c). Furthermore, in b and c additional elements indicate that structures were likely constructed there.

In b, the wall has a small recess at its base, which is not due to a recent removal of bricks as its coating indicates (Fig. 28). The coat on this section, which is a little over 5 m long, does not go all the way to the top of the wall, it stops somewhere above the middle of the elevation.

In c, the section of the wall that is coated also has a different profile, with an upper half that is thinner, as indicated in Fig. 6. This section is about 4 m long, but it is not complete, as the wall is broken on its southern end. The function of the coat of these two sections and of their recesses is open to question.

General Observations

The door jambs of the temples have two shapes: they are either straight or with a recess making them wider towards the top. Fixation holes can usually be seen on them: a study of them could possibly enable a reconstruction of the type of door frame that was used. Finally, the door jambs are always uncoated, showing the importance of wooden door frames the presence of which made coating unnecessary. In the temples that do not have such frames, such as the small hill temple and temples 2 and 3 between Nyarma and Thikse, which we will see further below, the door jambs on the other hand are duly coated.

The thicknesses of the walls seems directly related to the size of the temples, and more specifically to the span of the roof. As such, the smallest temple has the thinnest walls (Temple 4 has a span of less than 5 m and walls 70 cm thick), while the largest temple has the thickest walls (Temple 2 has a 14.4 m span and walls 125 cm thick). The other temples also fit in this scheme: Temple 3 has a 7.8 m span with walls 82 cm thick, Temple 5 has a 12 m span and walls 90 cm thick, while Temple 1 has a 13 m span and walls 100 cm thick.

For example, it is conceivable that it was built when the site was being abandoned, to bury sacred objects that were not being carried elsewhere, such as pieces of broken statues or other broken sacred objects. Other such explanations could well explain a later origin for this inner mchod rten.

After measuring bricks in all types of ruins throughout Ladakh, I could see that their dimensions are highly irregular. In length, bricks vary from 24 to 52 cm;
29. Walls of the main complex coloured according to their type of bricks (Q. Devers, 2012).
The Fort

The fort of Nyarma (Figs. 30, 31 and 32) was described by Howard in his article on the fortifications of Ladakh (Howard 1989: 269–271). As such we will proceed only to a brief general description before reviewing its roofing technique and chronology in greater detail.

The rear of the main building consists of a tower (level +3) that appears to be D-shaped—not round as described by Howard (ibid.: 269)—the upper elevation of which is made of bricks reported by Howard as being 40 x 25 x 10 cm (ibid.: 269). In front of the tower is a succession of narrow rooms (level 0). An enclosure delineates an open space in front of the buildings with two entrance structures (A and B), while two spaces are delimited by more recent walls on the western side (C and D).

The layout of the rooms of level 0 is dictated by the technique used for the roof. Culminating at 3.1 m above the ground in the front rooms, it is made only of stones (Fig. 36). It is built with a technique based on three structural levels: a first level of spaced corbels supports a second level of stones bridging the distance between the two facing walls, while the third level is made of transversal stones that cover the remaining space (Figs. 33 and 35).

This technique is the most widely encountered in stone-roofed structures in Ladakh. It imposes particular constraints on the design of the buildings: the rooms cannot be more than 1 m to 1.5 m wide in order to have walls close enough to be bridged by the stones of the second level. This conception of space applied to multiple rooms can also be observed in the Kadam mchod rten in Stok (Fig. 34). Beyond Ladakhi frontiers, stone-roofs are a main feature in ancient buildings of Upper Tibet, where they can attain important expressions (cf. Bellezza 2008: 32–37).

The two entrance structures A and B were also stone-roofed: structure A has only its corbels left, while structure B has its high stone-roof intact. It is made of a single level of lintels that directly bridge the space, except for the middle stone, which rests on corbels (Fig. 33).

The walls of spaces C and D are later additions. They use more mortar than the main building, and some shards of ceramics can be seen in it, as was observed by Howard (1989: 269). Another clear indication that the walls of space D are later additions are the stone corbels protruding from the main building (Fig. 33): there are no similar corbels protruding from its facing wall, and no stones can be found fallen on the ground. This means that the roof that used to rest on the corbels protruding from the main building was dismantled at some point and that the facing wall that had been built with stone 10

In some sites bridging stones can be as long as 2 m (Bellezza 2008: 33), and among unique examples is the large lantern-like ceiling at gZims phug (ibid.: fig. 1, p. 33) and the no less than three-storey high tower at Thophu, which uses stone ceilings for all three levels (personal communication, Nov. 10, 2010).

10
corbels was either destroyed or dismantled before being replaced by the current one. This restored space D was then either left open or roofed with wooden beams resting on the corbels of the main building on one side, and on top of the new wall on the other.

Finally, the walls of space C were built after those of space D, as they lie against them. Another larger entrance to the site was likely open then, delineated on one side by the wall of space C and on the other by the former entrance B.

In large buildings, this type of stone-roof is undoubtedly ancient. The main reason is the constraint of layout it imposes: rooms need to be very narrow. However, this type of roofing had a more perennial use in smaller structures, in which rooms did not need to be more important, the most common of which were the *mchod rten*. This longer use in smaller structures is also noted by Bellezza in Upper Tibet (Bellezza, personal communication, Nov. 10, 2010).

To understand further the antiquity of this fort, one can look at two sites. The first, taken in the corpus of fortifications, is the castle of Wanla. From its woodcarving, this can be dated roughly to the same period as the three-storied temple near it, i.e. to the late thirteenth or early fourteenth century (Luczanits 2005: 89, Martin 2015). One can appreciate the radical difference in design. There is an abundant and ostentatious use of wood for roofing three stories (instead of one), for timber lacings, for woodcarvings and for balconies.

The second site to bear in mind is in the complex of temples just below the fort: this is Temple 1. Datable to the eleventh century through its supposed foundation by Rinchen Zangpo, it was already making important use of wood to span no less than the 13 m of the assembly area, showing that, if needed, wood could be obtained in this village at that time.

The use of wood in these two sites shows the radical difference in design from the fort at Nyarma, and gives an idea of its greater antiquity.\(^{11}\)

\[^{11}\] For more details about the evolution of fortifications in Ladakh, see Devers 2016.
At the other end of the rocky formation on which the fort stands are the ruins of a small square structure covered with prayer flags (Fig. 37). It would be hazardous to venture the nature of this ruin. One possibility is that it was a watch post linked to the fort: as there is no view downstream from there towards Thikse and Shey it could have been an intermediary watch post as the eyes of the fort.

Down the hill, amidst the ruins of the former village there is a very weathered stela, while to the west, near the pond are four other stelae—three lie against a mani wall, one is on top of it (Fig. 38a-e; see also Fig. 3 for the location of the stelae). They are (width x height) ca. 98 x 130 cm (a), ca. 70 x 120 cm (b), ca. 68 x 113 cm (c), ca. 60 x 90 cm (d) and ca. 27 x 86 cm (e).12

12 The author is currently working on a comprehensive account of Ladakhi Buddhist stelae and rock reliefs with Laurianne Bruneau and Martin Vernier.
38. Stela amidst the ruins of the ancient village (a) and the three stelae against (b, c, d) and standing on (e) the mani wall (a: Q. Devers, 2012b; b, c, d, e: Q. Devers, 2009).
The Hill Temple Complex

The small temple complex on the hill to the east of the main complex has so far received little attention (Fig. 39, Fig. 40). However, in my opinion it is an important site, the study of which could potentially shed exclusive new information on the history of Nyarma. The hill is covered with several structures, including a temple, a series of small rooms and several mchod rten.

Two to three stages can be observed in the temple (Fig. 41). The first corresponds to the construction of the temple itself. It is very small, only 2.6 x 3.2 m. The door, with a stone lintel, is also very narrow, only 80 cm wide. The walls, 2.6 m high, are of stone masonry. In a second step, a wall was built around the temple on its south-eastern and south-western sides. This creates two distinct spaces, A and B. The floor of space A is at the same level as that of the temple, while the floor of space B is one level above it. The external coat of the temple in B was either removed or never existed. Finally, in what seems to be a third step, an additional structure was built at the entrance with two walls protruding from the building, reducing the doorway to only 60 cm in width.

The sort of corridor created by space A is only about a metre wide. The corridor-like space B is slightly wider, about 1.8 m, but it features two buttresses protruding from the wall, reducing the distance to the temple to only a little over a metre. The distance between these two buttresses is 1.1 m. These lead to consider the possibility that spaces A and B were originally roofed with bridging stones, the metre being the key distance for the use of this technique in other edifices. However, no stones can be seen on the floor, so this possibility has to be treated with caution.

North of the temple are the ruins of several rooms (Fig. 42). Some parts still have the stones of their roof. The technique used is the same as that in the fort, with three levels of corbels and bridging stones (Fig. 43). The ceilings are low, only 1.2 m high. The rooms used to be coated, as can be seen in the spaces still roofed.

Several elements are surprising in this complex:
- The temple is of stone masonry while all the other temples of the main complex down below are strictly brickwork.
- The door to the temple has a stone lintel—the only temple ruin I surveyed in Ladakh that clearly has one (the only others may be Temples 2 and 3 between Nyarma and Thikse, but their lintels are not directly visible).
- The rooms behind the temple are stone-roofed.

These points raise the question of the dating of this small complex. Its overall design and the material used are radically different from what can be seen in the main complex. Instead, these create more parallels with the fort. In that way, the possibility that it could
predate the complex founded by Rinchen Zangpo has to be considered. The local tradition says that the Translator used to meditate on this hill. If there is any truth to this, could he have come to meditate in an already established Buddhist installation? The answer to this question can potentially provide important new elements in the study of Nyarma and of Buddhism in Ladakh in general.13

From Nyarma to Thikse
North of the rocky formation on which the fort stands, in the direction of Thikse, are several ruins of ancient temples (Fig. 3). By their proximity to the structures described so far they can be considered as being part of the archaeological environment of Nyarma. For this reason, I have chosen to include their description in this paper.

Temple 1
This stands immediately after the rocky formation (Fig. 44 and 45). Built of some of the longest bricks I have measured in Ladakh—52 x 22 x 10 cm—its walls are quite thin compared with those of the main complex: they are only one brick thick, i.e. 55 cm when adding the thickness of the mud coat.14 They are 4.9 m high. The shape of the door jambs is not visible, both having deteriorated. The right half of the porch is marked with a line of small holes on the entrance and side wall (Fig. 44). The roof of the temple was supported by one main beam in the middle of the side walls. There are still stones in the recesses into which the timber used to fit, protecting the bricks from the pressure it created. These stones show the width of the former beam: about 50 cm. The walls do not have clear marks of stucco halos or of fixation holes.

Compared to the brick walls of the other temples described in this paper, the relative thinness of the walls of Temple 1, while there is still a 6 m span denotes a technique and custom of construction that differs from the other temples. This may be a sign that this construction is from a later period.15

This temple is currently used to enclose Dzos (mdzo) when need-

13 Indeed, while the large corpus of Buddhist stelae and of rock carvings of mchod rten found throughout Ladakh point to the presence of Buddhism in Ladakh before the “Later Diffusion of Buddhism” (for an excellent summary see “Le stūpa au Ladakh” by Bruneau 2010: 266–286), the earliest temples known so far are only from this “Later Diffusion”. It would not be a big surprise if one or more of the ruins of temples scattered across Ladakh was found to predate Rinchen Zangpo.

14 This wall thickness is probably the reason for the unusually long bricks: indeed, the thickness of walls determines the type of bond that can be used. In this way, a wall can only be the thickness of one brick length or of one brick length plus one brick width; no in between variation is possible. As such, if the builders were intending to build a wall of this precise thickness, they had only two choices: to mould bricks the length of which was just the thickness of the wall, or to mould bricks in proportions that one length and one width would equal the thickness of the wall. In this case the former solution was chosen. Fig. 50 shows a comparison of the different walls described in this paper and their brick bonds. One can see the different bonds used according to the thicknesses of the walls. It can be noticed that when the walls are just two lengths of brick thick the builders did not know how to chain the rows of bricks together: in one case they push the bond used for thinner walls to its limits where the stretchers no longer overlap, on the other they do not even alternate them with headers—the bricks are only laid as two piles of stretchers side by side.

15 If the categorisation of bricks mentioned in a footnote above is correct, this later dating is corroborated by the ratio between the length and the width of the bricks, which in this case is 2.3.
ed. Following the footpath to Thikse, about 300 m away, are three small painted mchod rten, on which Kozicz (2007c) has published.

Temples 2 and 3
About 180 m further north-west of these mchod rten are the ruins of two temples side by side. Built on a raised platform—1.3 m at its highest point—they are both made in stone masonry (Figs. 46 and 47).

Temple 2 is the least well preserved: its walls are falling to pieces. Due to their degradation, their thickness is now variable, from 50 cm to 70 cm, for a height of 2.2 m. Except for the front façade, the walls do not have an external mud coat. Its door is very narrow and low—only 55 cm wide and 1.15 m high. Its frame is decorated with four successive recesses, the outermost of which is T-shaped (Fig. 47[a]). Its intact mud coat conceals the material used for the lintel of the door. Only one small porch wall protrudes on the right: made of bricks, it is possibly a later addition. However, from the side one can see one long stone sticking out from the masonry to penetrate into the bricks: this may be an indication that although it is made of brick it is contemporaneous with the temple (Figs. 48 and 49).

Temple 3 is coated both inside and outside. It has the particularity of having an additional inner brick wall built against the outer stone wall. This brick wall is a later addition, as the internal coat of the stone wall shows. The inner brick-wall is only 21 cm thick, made of bricks that are 40 x 20 x 8 cm. It has the marks of the single beam that used to support the roof. The stone walls are 90 cm thick and 2.8 m high. The door is also very small, though a little bigger than that of Temple 2: it is 75 cm wide and 1.25 m high. The door frame is decorated in a similar way, with four successive recesses and a T-shaped outer one (Fig. 47[b]). Similarly, its intact coat makes it impossible to see which material has been used for the lintel.

Both temples are small: their inner spaces are about 3.4 x 3.4 m. The relative chronology of these two temples is difficult to assess. One would need to see whether the right-hand wall of Temple 3, which is side by side with the left-hand wall of Temple 2, has an external coat: if it does it would mean that Temple 3 was built before Temple 2; if not then it is most likely that Temple 2 is the earliest.

Several characteristics separate these temples from the other temples presented in this paper, and more generally from the ruins of temples recorded throughout Ladakh, which are:
- The raised platform: none of the ruined temples of this area are built on one.
- The decoration of their door frame, which is not encountered elsewhere.
- The reduced size of their door.
- Their stone masonry

To these characteristics one can add their orientation: they face south-west, like the temple on the hill above the main complex. Instead of an absolute direction, these temples could be seen as being oriented towards the Indus river—several early temples with such orientation appear to be linked to older funerary sites (about
49. Thikse-Nyarma: Temple 2 from the south-east. The porch wall in bricks can be seen on the left, with a stone in the middle that sticks out of the masonry to penetrate into it (Q. Devers, 2010).

50. Brick bonds of the profile of the walls categorised by thicknesses (Q. Devers, 2012).
the orientation of temples in Ladakh until the mid-fifteenth century, see Devers, forthcoming). Their dating would probably be a subject of interest, potentially providing complementary information on the history of the area by seeing how they are positioned chronologically in relation with the hill temple and the main complex.

Temple 4 "Kiki lha khang"

About a hundred metres to the north-west is the ruin of Temple 4, said to be called "Kiki lha khang". It is in a very bad state of conservation, with only its entrance and left walls still standing (Figs. 51 and 52). These are 90 cm thick and 5.2 m high. Their bricks are highly irregular, varying from 40 cm to 47 cm in length, with a width and a height of 26 cm and 10 cm. The door jambs are straight. The roof of the temple was supported by two beams 4 m apart, 2.8 m from the entrance and rear walls. Given its state of preservation, the holes in the walls are difficult to interpret as being fixation holes for statues or simply as normal marks of degradation. Like Temples 2 and 3, it faces south-west.

To the west, at the edge of the vegetation, there is a collapsing mchod rt'en (see also Kozicz 2007a, 2011 (Nyarma Northern Section: Stupa with the Hidden Chamber) and Devers et al. (2014). It has a constructional feature of interest to us: like Temple 3, it has an internal brick wall built against the original outer stone wall.

**Conclusion**

Carrying archaeological work only from ground observations, without excavation, is always a difficult task. In Ladakh it is made more laborious by the absence of existing studies with dated material. Indeed, in other places archaeologists can date shards of ceramics gathered on the surface just by examining them. When they observe standing buildings, they can form a fair idea of their date through their different architectural features: the objects and structures they study fit into defined chronological frameworks. In Ladakh this is not possible: the chronological frameworks are still to be constructed.

In this study, relative chronologies between elements were established whenever possible using the methods developed by the discipline of the archaeology of buildings. However, when there are no physical contacts that make it possible to establish stratigraphical relationships, the task was to observe the characteristics and compare them in order to create groups that share similar traits. Hopefully, in the future the chronology will also be revealed when proper lab dating can be carried out.

In this process, the following groups were outlined. The oldest structure is probably the little fort, whose design evokes ancient construction customs without wood. The hill temple complex and the two small temples side by side between Nyarma and Thikse have characteristics that bring them closer to the fort than to the other temple ruins. Surprisingly, the rooms behind the hill temple are stone-roofed, while the temple combines a reduced size, stone masonry and a stone door lintel. The two small temples between Nyarma and Thikse, on their raised platform, share similar characteristics. Here we probably have a group of early Buddhist temples, possibly predating the foundation of Rinchen Zango—but only carbon dating can determine this. The third group is formed by the temples of the main complex, to which should be added Temple 4 between Thikse and Nyarma. Though probably all erected at different times, they are built in similar ways, with some coherent fashion as for the thicknesses of the walls in relation to their size. Finally, following this distinction, Temple 4 between Nyarma and Thikse seems to conform to a different type of construction custom, and probably belongs to a later development.

It is now to be hoped that the on-going study of the other archaeological remains of Ladakh will lead to the refining of this tentative chronology, and that series of lab datings will help to anchor it in time.
53. Comparison of the different temples (Q. Devers, 2012).
References


Hubert Feiglstorfer

The Architecture of the Buddhist Temple Complex of Nyarma

This article discusses results of studies on the architecture in Nyarma (Myar ma, Nyar ma) in Ladakh, based on field research in 2002, 2006, 2009 and 2011, including the survey of the temples of Nyarma and its remaining structures. From the viewpoint of architecture and architectural history, with the site of Nyarma we are dealing with one of the key-projects of early Western Himalayan Buddhist temple architecture and with one of the earliest surviving Buddhist temple sites of historical Western Tibet (mNga’ ri s skor gsum).

State of Preservation and Documentation
Nowadays, the remains of the early historical structure of the Nyarma temple site are in ruins. All the wooden parts have been removed from the site and the pure earthen adobe brick structures remain. Apart from some wooden parts in the innermost sanctum (dri gtsang khang) in the main temple (gtsug lag khang) on which a new temple (lha khang) was constructed as a second storey, no wooden parts are left. This building extension, initiated by the lamas of Thikse (Khri/gstse, Khrig se) monastery, can be related to a later addition, probably to the period after the Dōgra wars, i.e. after AD 1842.

Most of the walls are in such a good condition that it was possible to make measurements and to draw plans of the whole site, including the height of some of the walls, and to make three-dimensional models of the temples. At several temples one can see the former position of main girders and in some cases even the rafters. To obtain a good picture of the architecture of Nyarma, in addition to the traditional structural recording it was helpful to use historical building research methods by reconstructing models, as well as building-materials research in identifying the materials used (see Feiglstorfer 2014). Using a horizontal level along the walls facilitated the study of the different levels, and in a further step the examination of the three-dimensional concept of the temples.

As this study of Nyarma would not be complete without a comparison of architectural data from other early temple structures of the early Western Himalayan period of temple building, a comparative study with these early structures became inevitable. As the gtsug lag khang of Nyarma belongs to the earliest period of the West Tibetan kingdom, a comparative study provides the answer to the question of the extent to which this temple has architectonic parallels to other sacred structures of the early period and how far it belongs to a superordinate architectural concept.

The Temple Site: Location of the Temples
The Buddhist temple complex is located on a plain. A range of hills rises to the east and the north side is flanked by a few rocky hills. Close to the gtsug lag khang, to the east and to the north a lake, which is nowadays surrounded by willows, adjoins the temple area (Fig. 1). To the west, the temple area is connected by a dirt road to the metallised Leh-Hemis road. Several individual chörten (mchod rten) as

---

1 The research in Central Tibet and in Khorchag in February/March 2010 as well as the research in 2011 in Ladakh was funded by the FWF research project P21806-G19 “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Tibet”. Christian Jahoda and Christiane Kalantari provided field documentation, in particular selected additional measurements of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang from their field trip to Ladakh in July 2009 and of the temples in Tabo from their expedition in September/October 2009, also funded by the FWF Project P21806-G19.

well as groups of mchod rten accompany the footpaths connecting the sacred site or chos skor3 with particular surrounding areas.

To the north a footpath leads along the uneven, arid plain from the monastery of Thikse towards the chos skor of Nyarma about 2.5 kilometres away. Today this path is a part of the outermost circumambulation path or gling skor, which defines a wider sacred space including the Nyarma chos skor as the southern extension and Thikse monastery as the northern one. The importance of the element water in relation to this sacred area is emphasised by the fact that not only is the lake to the north and north west of the chos skor part of this pilgrim’s path but so is the stream to the west, which a section of the Leh-Hemis road follows, and which is involved in the ambulatory area (Fig. 2). The gling skor is accompanied by several stone reliefs. A single stone relief (see Fig. 2: Sr1) is located along the stream in the western section of the gling skor (Fig. 3). The first part of the gling skor, after passing the temple site, leads north, passes a trio of stone reliefs which are placed alongside each other facing south. These are located at the intersection of several paths just beside the lakes at the crossing of the footpaths passing one of the lakes towards the west when following the gling skor. Passing these stone reliefs northwards a path leads to the fortress on top of a rocky hill. Before reaching the hill another path leads east towards a Rigs Gönpo (rigs gsun mgon po) represented by three coloured chörten,4 to the cemetery and further on links with the nang skor to the south (see Fig. 2: Sr3).

To the east, approximately 580 metres from the gtsug lag khang, a hermitage was built on the slopes of the range of hills. About 64° to the north-west of the gtsug lag khang, about 360 metres away, the ruins of a fortress with a crowning lha tho top a rocky hill with a riggs gsun mgon po at its foot. These elements are also part of pilgrims’ ritual paths, such as the fortress by the gling skor and the rigs gsun mgon po by the nang skor.

To the south of the temple area a path accompanied by a row of mchod rten connects with some village houses merging into a plain of fields. The position of the various groups of mchod rten—i.e. to the north and west of the lake and to the west and south of the gtsug lag khang and at the site of the hermitage to the east—define the temple site and particularly the main temple in their cardinal intersections as their geometrical centre.

The core of this archaeological site consists of a temple complex which to facilitate further studies can be divided into five structures, which will be mentioned in the following text as the gtsug lag khang (temple I), the lha khang to the south of the gtsug lag khang (temple II), the square lha khang (temple IIIa), opposite a maṇḍala-shaped lha khang (temple IIIb), the lha khang containing a broken mchod rten in its dri gtsang khang (temple IV) and the temple-mchod rten, which can be entered from the east, in the shape of a mchod rten (temple V) (see Fig. 4). As well as these temple structures we find several mchod rten inside the remaining parts of the enclosure walls as well as outside the wall and across the lake. In this description temple III was divided into two parts, IIIa and IIIib, as it was mentioned as one temple in the text by Gergan (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 178, and Fig. 18, p. 188).

3 See also Feiglstorfer 2011a I: 158–168 for a discussion of the term chos skor (or dharmaakra) with respect to Nyarma and other early monastic foundations in Ladakh as well as in Central and Western Tibet.

4 The name of this “protective chörten-triad” (cf. Gutschow and Ramble 2003: 146) can be explained by the association with the Lords of the Three Families (rigs gsun mgon po).
2. Nyarma gling skor and nang skor (satellite image: Google Earth, drawing: H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). The gling skor (white line) surrounding among others the Nyarma chos skor and Thikse monastery as well as lakes and a stream, the fortress, lha tho (La), 108 mchod rtan walls, single mchod rtan (C) and mchod rtan groups (Cg) and stone reliefs (Sr) as part of the outer circumambulation path. Today mainly two different nang skor (or inner circumambulation) paths are known by pilgrims: The outer one (yellow line) encloses the chos skor as well as its enclosure wall to the east, the nunnery to the south, the new temple and the historic temple site in the centre and the lake to the north. The inner path for circumambulation or skor lam (dashed yellow line) is primarily focused on the circumambulation of the new temple (Lk).

3. Stone relief by the stream, as a part of the Nyarma gling skor (H. Feiglstorfer, 2011).
Interestingly in Nyarma, the entrance to temple II faces the entrance of the *gtsug lag khang*, similarly still facing the lake. The IIIa and IIIB structures form a common and approximately square interspace; facing each other and away from the lake their common axis approximately intersects with that of temple II at the intersection point of the longitudinal axis of the *gtsug lag khang*.

The Enclosure Wall (*lcags ri*)

The five temples, which are equal to the six structures mentioned, are partially enclosed by a wall which may previously have surrounded the whole temple area. Today this wall is reduced to fragments at the eastern and southern end of the temple site. In the Western Tibetan region, enclosure walls can be found around *gtsug lag khang* of the early building phase, i.e. late 10th and 11th century. These sites are Tholing, Nyarma, Khorchag, Tabo and Alchi. Conceivably they follow Central Tibetan monastic examples such as Samye (bSam yas) (founded in AD 767, completed AD 779) with a *lcags ri* (*cakravāda*) as a part of the whole architectural concept, which was part of the original master plan of the whole monastic site. None of the dates

---

4. Nyarma temple site overview
Picture taken on the way to the hermitage (*dben sa*). (I) *gtsug lag khang*, (II – IV) unnamed *tha khang*, (V) temple- *mchod rten* (H. Feiglstorfer, 2006).
of origin of these West Tibetan enclosure walls are documented. A closer look at the plans of Alchi chos skor drawn by Khosla shows that in the 1970s the western section of the enclosure wall existing today was not entirely part of the original structure (Khosla 1979: plate 8). His plan of the whole compound primarily shows the wall enclosing the temple compound up to the So ma Iha khang (“New Temple”). In his description he mentions this part of the wall as being more rectilinear and better preserved, whereas he describes the western part along the houses as an informal continuous semi-ruin without any rectilinearity. He describes this part as a kind of “village boundary” (Khosla 1979: 55). Referring to a satellite image of Alchi,¹⁰ it has to be said that the part given by Khosla as rectilinear does not approach a right angle either.

This would confirm the above-mentioned proposal by Goepper (1996: 21) that the cakravāḍa-parvata only encircles the main temple halls. Parts of this former and probably original construction of this enclosure wall surrounding the ‘Du khang, the oldest structure of this temple site, can today be seen to the east of the compound, with the surmounting mchod rten referring to the idea of a 108-mchod rten wall (Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 19, fig. 39). The plan of the chos skor given by Huntington agrees with this statement, as she marks the eastern section of the enclosure wall as “old wall” (Huntington 1985: 379), similar to the description given by Linrothe (1999: 23).

In Khorchag, the erection of the enclosure wall that exists today was initiated a few years ago. Based on an interview with a local lama, we can redraw the approximate plan of the previous outer boundary of the outer circumambulation path or phyi skor surrounding the Jo khang and the IHa khang chen mo (also referred to as brGya rtsa) temples. This boundary was partially built as a wall and largely formed by the facades of the adjoining houses of the local village people.¹¹ This kind of an occupied enclosure wall is comparable to

the cakravāḍa-parvata only encircled the main temple halls in Alich, as stated by Goepper (1996: 21). The idea of the lcags ri probably follows a cosmological concept elaborated in the Abhidharmakośa by Vasubandhu. This seems to have also formed the basis for Giuseppe Tucci’s comment that “bSam yas was intentionally built to be a reflex and a synthesis of the universe itself. It was surrounded by a wall, the Cakravāla, the girdle of mountains that surrounds the universe” (Tucci 1956: 280). Compare also Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 63, sketch 1, where two interpretations of the Buddhist cosmos after the Abhidharmakośa based on Brauen 1997: 31 and Sadakata 1997: 27 are juxtaposed. Brauen mentions the surrounding wall as a symbol of the iron mountain that fences off a world system. Sadakata calls the circular range of iron mountains cakravāda.

¹⁰ Satellite image of Alchi (July 25, 2010; Earth Data Analysis Center, University of Mexico, Albuquerque) (FWF research project P21806-G19).

¹¹ Part of the enclosing housing structure can be seen on a black-and-white image in Sherring 1906: 206. See also Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 52, plan 54. Plan 46

the dwelling houses, bordering the bar skor around the Jo khang in Lhasa. In Khorchag none of these adjoining housing structures survived. A historical text—Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum dkar chag by Wa gindra karma (1996: 34)—mentions the restoration of the boundary wall (lcags ri) in the early 16th century. According to this text an enclosure wall existed at that time.

(ibid.: 203) shows these bordering structures as part of the whole sacred site as a reconstruction in a chronological sequence.
The orientation of the structures is based on a satellite image (Sept. 22, 2009, Earth Data Analysis Center, University of Mexico, Albuquerque) provided by the FWF research project P21806-G19.

The four-cornered mchod rten mark the vertices of the site, probably close to the original structure. The lines connecting the centres of these mchod rten intersect in the area of the 'du khang of the gtsug lag khang (1), possibly planned as the site's geometrical centre. The course of the enclosure wall follows the position of these corner mchod rten. The position of the gSer khang (2), the 'Brom ston lha khang (3), the Byams pa lha khang (4) and the 'Brom ston lha khang chung ba (5) roughly follows the north-south axis. The dKar chung lha khang (6) is located on the western end of the east-west axis, the longitudinal axis through the gtsug lag khang. The dKyi lhang (7) does not follow this obvious geometry as it is located at the rear side of the gSer khang and the 'Brom ston lha khang.
Neither in Tabo nor in Tholing is there any archaeological evidence of the foundation of the enclosure wall being of the same period as the foundation of the original structure of the respective gtsug lag khang. The enclosure wall in Tholing follows the orientation of the temples, like the gtsug lag khang as the earliest structure founded in 996, and the orientation of the ‘Du khang or the lHa khang dkar po (“White Temple”) as later additions. It seems to have been built according to the spatial conditions given by the temples inside the temple enclosure.

A somewhat different situation to the one in Tholing can be found with the enclosure wall at Tabo. The ground plan of this wall shows a geometric regularity that is not of a rectangular shape but more like a parallelogram (Fig. 7). The course of the eastern as well as of the western section of the wall faces rather exactly north-east. Unlike these, the northern and southern sections of the wall diverge at about the same angle from the right angle to the western and the eastern sections of the wall. It seems likely that the position of these non-orthogonal walls was forced by the corner mchod rten, which may have been part of the original structure, similar to the layout of the four surrounding mchod rten located on the inter-cardinal lines meeting in the centre of the main temple in Samye and in Tholing. In each case the course of the wall was determined according to their position.

According to these temple sites, which still show the existence of a lcags ri, as well as their different appearance there are also several similarities, but not necessarily general features. The course of the walls at Tabo and at Nyarma follows a regular geometry. At Alchi, the ‘Du khang can be described as the ideal and historical centre of the ensemble of temple structures but it is not located in the geometrical centre of the whole compound (Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 53, plan 55).

As can be seen from the site plan (Fig. 6), the position of the walls of Tabo define the gtsug lag khang as the geometric centre, which is not the case at Nyarma (see Fig. 5). According to Nyarma’s appearance today, its location is defined by the lake to the north, which is a unique feature among the early temples mentioned. In Nyarma there is no specific definition of the geometric centre.

Panglung (1995: 283) cites a description of Thikse monastery by dKa’ chen Blo bzang bzod pa, who refers to the enclosure wall in his brief biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzan po as follows: “The length of the enclosure walls measured on each side 250 gom pa with a width of 1.5 lag khru and a height of a little bit more than 8 lag khru.” Converting 250 gom pa gives about 155 metres, by

---

When we compare the remaining parts of the former enclosure wall of Nyarma and put them together on the satellite image we get the two sides of an approximate square (Fig. 8). A lineament analysis of the satellite image of the area of the possible former location of the site of the western section of the wall shows a dividing line between the sandy zone of the temple area and a bushy area on the other side of this dividing line. If we position a wall on this dividing line it would form the third side of this approximately square area of the temple site. Interestingly we do not find a lineament of this kind to the north of the site. On the satellite image, this northern side has much more natural shape, which would coincide with the theory that the northern boundary was formed naturally by the lake.

In the temples from the early phase in the West Tibetan region, we can distinguish between two different kinds of temple enclosure walls. The first is the enclosure of a whole temple complex consisting of different and architecturally separate temple structures as mentioned above. These sites are partially or completely surrounded by an enclosure wall. The second kind of a free-standing temple enclosure can be found at only two sites, namely at Nyarma, surrounding the gtsug lag khang, and at Alchi, surrounding the ‘Du khang.’

Like the one in Nyarma the course of this inner enclosure wall in Alchi is adapted to the course of the outer wall of the temple structure (Fig. 7). Both of these enclosure walls are only partially preserved but can largely be reconstructed. A difference in their course is that the enclosure wall in Nyarma runs parallel to the outer shape of the temple walls while the enclosure wall in Alchi continuously diverges from the wall. Since the ambulatory path of the Alchi ‘Du khang was closed by adding further constructions, it can no longer be used in its original form. Thus originally this wall can only be supposed to have been an outer border of an ambulation path. Regarding the relation between the wall and its bordering of an adjoining skor lam or “pilgrimage way” as described by Gergan, one can presume that the enclosure wall in Alchi fulfilled a similar function. The course of the enclosure wall in Nyarma is more accurate than the one in Alchi and thus its geometric affiliation to the common structure of the gtsug lag khang of Nyarma is more obvious.

The Proximity: A Hermitage (dben sa)

Outside this enclosure wall, especially towards the north, the south and the west, we find various sizes of mchod rten scattered over the plain. Towards the east, in the extension of the east-west-axis of the gtsug lag khang on the slope of the above-mentioned hill range, there is a hermitage (Fig. 9). It faces about 20 degrees north from the east-west-axis of the gtsug lag khang. From the hermitage the whole site of the temples of Nyarma as well as the monastery of Thikse are clearly visible. The enclosure itself can be seen from inside the assembly hall (‘du khang) of the gtsug lag khang through the eastern gate (see Fig. 1: 3b). This small area of about 30 by 15 metres includes two chambers and a row of three mchod rten, positioned approximately along one line with an orientation of about 50 degrees to the east (Fig. 11). This site opens towards the east onto the slope

---

13 Discussed by Feiglstorfer as part of a joint presentation with Jahoda at the 20th EASAA conference, Vienna, 2010 (Jahoda and Feiglstorfer 2010).

14 The remains of the enclosure wall flanking the ‘Du khang at its lateral and rear side “can be interpreted as fragments of an original ambulatory” (Luczanits and Neuwirth 2010: 80). Compare also Kozicz 2007a: 26, fig. 14.


of the hill and is closed on the other three sides by a 108-stūpa wall roughly constructed of stones (Fig. 10). According to Gergan’s records, it is said that in ancient times there was a spring close to this hermitage, which in his time flowed through the village of Nang and was said to be called Murtsemig.17 Today there is no evidence of a spring in the surroundings of this site. Giving credit to this legend, would mean that unlike the situation today this area around the temples of Nyarma had abundant water.

The gtsug lag khang
As the largest structure in the temple area of Nyarma the gtsug lag khang opens towards the lake shore to the east. The whole structure is embedded in a plain, which slopes down slightly into the lake on the eastern side (see Fig. 1 and Fig. 12). The gtsug lag khang can be described as an assembly of different parts which could have been built consecutively although the basic design of the core structure seems to be of a common geometrical and proportional system, potentially related to a superordinate proportional concept as discussed by Kozicz (2007b, 2009 and 2010). Even without clarity on this question, we can identify the chronology of the construction sequence of the development of the different parts of the whole gtsug lag khang (Fig. 13).

A geometrical analysis of the whole structure of the gtsug lag khang (see below, Fig. 51, p. 253; cf. also Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 105, plan 35, and 108, plan 39) shows that the starting point for the construction must have been its central core, the dri gtsang khang. Based on this geometrical and constructive centre, the various segments of the compound were erected consecutively, each depending on the position of the previous segment. According to the chronological sequence of the erection of this spatial order, the several layers of the gtsug lag khang, from the centre outwards, can be given as follows: dri gtsang khang, nang skor as the skor lam around the dri gtsang khang, the ‘du khang, the skor lam around the ‘du khang and the adjoining open skor lam around the dri gtsang khang and the courtyard to the east of the central hall flanked by two lha khang (Fig. 13).

The dri gtsang khang
The spatial centre of the gtsug lag khang is the dri gtsang khang together with the surrounding ambulatory. Because of its niches, which are located as projections along the outer wall, this ambulatory is of a cruciform shape. Based on what was said above, we can proceed on the assumption that this central structure originally formed the first part of the whole. It cannot be said definitely whether this central core was built as an independent structure in the first phase and was later extended to the east with the ‘du khang or whether they were planned and built as a consistent concept at one time.

According to the superordinate geometrical concept it was planned as a proportionally interrelated structure, based on a master plan. Nonetheless, concerning the formally solitary appearance of the structure of the dri gtsang khang together with its surrounding ambulatory corridor, this part of the building appears as an autonomous structure. The narrow entrance from the ‘du khang into the nang skor of approximately 120 cm, a symmetrical ordering of the two

side walls—given that only one can be clearly reconstructed—emphasises this theory. The level of the nang skor is raised to the level of the ‘du khang in a way that suggests there must once have been a staircase here. Regarding the left junction of the ‘du khang wall with the nang skor wall, which is in such a state of ruin that we can observe the effective bond, we find that the bricks of these walls are weak or partially without bonds. These parameters give the whole constructive body of the enclosed nang skor a separate and independent appearance. In this respect the dri tsang khang together with the enclosed nang skor may also have existed independently of the other parts of the gtsug lag khang, similar to one-cella temples with a surrounding ambulatory, such as the Mirkulā Devī temple at Udaipur (Fig. 15) or the Lotsāba lha khang at Ribba in Kinnaur (Khu nu).

A feature that emphasises this appearance and thus separates it clearly from the formal organisation of the dri gtsang khang in Tabo is the laterally exposed brickwork in the entrance zone into the dri gtsang khang. These laterals do not exclude the possibility that there was previously a door here (Fig. 13). In contrast, in Tabo the dri gtsang khang was built with a U-shape, completely open along the whole width of the dri gtsang khang towards the surrounding ambulatory. With this open connection between the dri gtsang khang and the ambulatory in front, a door would not be conceivable. Together with the Tholing gtsug lag khang (Khang dmar dpe med lhun gyi grub pa’i gtsug lag khang), these three temples are the only known West Tibetan temples with a dri gtsang khang as a cell. The West Tibetan successors such as the Du khang in Alchi and later temples have a reduced version of this central cell in the form of a niche or no spatial extension at all, like many of the later Tibetan and north Indian temples.

The remaining pillars on stone bases in the dri gtsang khang in Nyarma today most probably do not belong to the original phase of the foundation of this temple, as their rough and undecorated dressing does not correspond to other examples of wooden pillars and capitals that we know from the early West Tibetan period. Furthermore, these two pillars would be the only remaining wooden parts of the whole original temple complex, thereby leaving a quite unrealistic picture. Thus the remaining pillars are not of priority interest. The question is far more whether the original form of the dri gtsang khang included pillars at all.

Without any supporting pillars, the span of girders would be about 360 cm. This is the upper limit of the average length of girders used in the Western Tibet tradition of temple-building. Statistically the average length is approximately between 240 cm and 360 cm. The girders in the dri gtsang khang of Tabo, for example, are about 250 cm while the girders in the ‘du khang in Tabo are up to 360 cm. By comparison, the dri tsang khang of Tabo was built without pillars. With regard to the statics and the traditional constructions, in the case of the dri gtsang khang of Nyarma a pillar would not be necessary to support its roof.

On the contrary we cannot exclude that the original structure may possibly have been built with pillars, possibly with only one central pillar, as we know this from the Brom ston lha khang chung ba in Tabo (see Fig. 6). Comparing this structure with early one-cella structures in the Western Himalayas such as the Mirkulā Devī temple at Udaipur, the Lotsāba lha khang in Ribba or single-cella temples in Pāndrethān or in Narastān—both in today’s Jammu and Kashmir, and all built before the dri gtsang khang of the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma—one can state that none of these temples shows any vertical load-bearing...
structure like a pillar inside the garbhagṛha. In this context, pillars in the dri gtsang khang in Nyarma, which is in its appearance similar to a Hindu type of a single-cella structure, seem to be a later addition. Probably at the time when a second storey was added on top of the dri gtsang khang, a further support for the load of this upper floor became inevitable. The position of the pillars in the lha khang in the upper storey in Nyarma was chosen according to the position of the beams and pillars in the dri tsang khang below (see Fig. 48).

Like most of the walls of Nyarma, the inner surface of the walls of the dri gtsang khang is in a plain and nowadays undecorated state. A closer look at the surfaces shows small remains of particles of a colour to which also Gergan refers in his notes. He was able to witness the existence of clay ornaments on the wall at the rear of the throne (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 176). Parts of an aureole can still be seen in the centre of the rear wall of the dri tsang khang above the pedestal. By this we can assume that the existing wall plaster is from the original phase. The same must be the case with the colours mentioned. Also along the lateral walls, holes are evident for a former fixture, possibly of statues. The pedestal below the aureole has partial cracks along the connecting line with the adjoining walls. This fact possibly weakens the hypothesis that this pedestal must necessarily have been part of the original structure. At least it shows that the pedestal was built after the walls had been plastered (Fig. 16). This fact provides important information about the previous existence of a statue fixed to the rear wall in the earlier usual manner by wooden brackets.18

18 The upāsāle is used to mount the clay sculpture onto the wall. It is fixed in drilled holes in the clay brick wall, as described at the example of Tabo (Luczanits 2004: 263, fig. 279).
With the pedestal and the clay ornaments on its rear wall, the dri gtsang khang is of the type of a directional room and not focused on a geometrical centre similar to the Hindu temples mentioned, similar to Tabo, but in this case contrary to the central quadripartite sculpture of Vairocana in the central lha khang in the Tholing gtsug lag khang. This architectural feature in Tholing enables this central statue to be circumambulated, which differs from the other early West Tibetan temples as directionally and not centrally built structures.

The Inner Ambulatory (nang skor)

The nang skor leads around the dri gtsang khang and today, except the area in front of the entrance is roofed. The southern, western and northern sections of the surrounding wall of this ambulatory have a projection in the form of a niche. To the east, the entrance to this ambulatory is in the cardinal position of a niche. The dri gtsang khang and the structure of the ambulatory are certainly built as a functional unit and probably they were the first structural core built as a single-cella structure. Also in this case, the typology of this cella ambulatory unit (sāndhāra) is more similar to Indian predecessors such as the Hindu temple in Udaipur or the Sakti Devī temple in Chatrāṛhī, even if the ambulatory of the Mirkulā Devī temple in Udaipur was possibly not roofed in its original phase.

Regarding the spatial typology with the focus of the ambulatory on its geometrical centre, these garbhagṛhas are much closer to the dri gtsang khang in Nyarma and in Tabo than to the later Tibetan spatial typology, based on a ḍu khang with an added cella niche at its rear as nirandhāra. The development of the Hindu temple is characterised by a garbāgṛha orientated inwards like a cocoon. It can be entered by the priest and in special cases by the devotees and it has a door that can be closed and locked. This cocooning feature coincides with the situation at Nyarma, where as previously mentioned the wall projections beside the opening to the cella separate it from the surrounding ambulatory.

One difference between the architectural appearance of the nang skor in Nyarma and in Tabo is their different geometries. While the ground plan of the interior space of the dri gtsang khang at Tabo is a square, the ambulatory is rectangular (see Fig. 14). In contrast, in Nyarma the dri gtsang khang and the ambulatory are square. A geometric reason why the ambulatory in Tabo is not square is the integration of the dividing wall between the ambulatory and the ḍu khang with its outer border along the inner limit of the square formed by the outer walls of the ambulatory (Feiglstorfer 2011a I: 146).

To obtain the same width of the ambulatory path surrounding the dri gtsang khang the front wall section with the entrance to the dri gtsang khang was shortened by the respective length.19 As opposed to Tabo, in Nyarma there is a square-in-a-square. Furthermore, in contrast to Tabo the ambulatory is provided with niches and also shows no traces of former clay ornaments. On the north, west and south sides, the axes through the northern and southern niches were shifted westwards, thereby not being congruent with the north-south axis of the dri gtsang khang. The location of this niche can be created by drawing a circle with a diameter of the distance between the centre of the dri gtsang khang and the outer shape of the wall of the dri gtsang khang. The centre of this circle is the intersection

19 In a proportional analysis, Kozicz (2007b: fig. 8) argues that a reason for this change from a square towards a rectangle shape was the shifting of outer walls by the width of the particular walls towards the centre of the square. Apart of this geometrical fact, one has to note the reason for this shift, as in some temples it was performed and in others it was not. Regarding the central pentalic core of the gtsug lag khang in Tholing, one can see the shift of the dividing wall between the rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana) lha khang and the adjoining four lha khang, which turns them from squares into rectangles (Feiglstorfer 2011a I: 244–45 and Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 112, plan 43). This is similar to the situation one can find between the nang skor and the ḍu khang in Tabo but diverges from the situation in the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma. The reason for these decisions cannot primarily be found in certain planning principles as mentioned by Kozicz but they follow a certain intention in defining the two adjoining chambers belonging together or being separated according to a superordinate religious and spatial programme. Besides this geometrical tool it seems to be necessary to include several other parameters such as measuring units, possible proportional relations according to an Indian system, a modular unit or a three-dimensional relation between the individual parts of a temple before being able to give scientific statements of “principles of spatial design”. In this context the “principles”, given by Kozicz are geometrical tools among several others, and their occasional assessment as the principles appears to be an overemphasis.
of the north-south axis with the outer shape of the wall of the *dri gtsang khang*. The eastern edge of the northern and southern niche seems to have been defined by the location of the north-south axis through the centre of the *dri gtsang khang* (Fig. 17).\(^{20}\)

Another geometrical order to achieve this non-square shape of the ground plan of the ambulatory in Tabo can be mentioned: as many of the early West Tibetan temples have a square modulus of a certain size as their basic measuring tool, according to the desired shape and size of the temple, this feature can also be found in Tabo and in Nyarma. The division of the square shape of the ambulatory into nine squares of same size has a modular system, which we can find in other West Tibetan temples of the early phase. Most of the temples of Nyarma are based on a regular grid. In some cases even the height of the buildings is in proportional relation to this modulus. One of the most common formations is the 3x3 grid which means the division of one square into nine equal ones. In Tabo the generation of a 3x3-grid defines the area of the *nang skor*. It is based on the size of the square which forms the interior ground plan of the *dri gtsang khang*.

Similar to the modulus of the central core in Tabo, as a possible basic measuring tool for creating the inner shape of the ambulatory, in Nyarma too this is related to a 3x3 division. In the case of the Tabo *gtsug lag khang*, the size of the *dri gtsang khang* is proportional to the ‘*du khang*’. The perimeter through the inner corners of the *nang skor* equals the width of the adjoining ‘*du khang*’, unlike the *gtsug lag khang* in Nyarma. In this case the outer width of the *nang skor* equals the inner width of the adjoining ‘*du khang*’ (Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 99, plan 22).\(^{21}\) The inner length of the ‘*du khang*’ which, unlike the Nyarma *gtsug lag khang*, is not a square but a rectangle, equals the external width of the *dri gtsang khang* extended by approximately the width of the outer wall (*ibid*). Similarly, the external width of the Nyarma *dri gtsang khang* fits into the inner width of the adjoining ‘*du khang*’ (Fig. 18). A study of the proportional relation between the *dri gtsang khang* and the ‘*du khang*’ of early West Tibetan temples shows it to be one of the main tools for fixing a temple’s ground plan. A comparison has revealed four basic patterns to find this relation, as shown in Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 99, plans 22–29.\(^{22}\)

Concerning early examples of the use of a modulus as the basic unit for further proportional planning decisions, we again have to refer to the layout of the monastery of Samye. The size of the dBu rtse temple of Samye, which is in the shape of a square, can be used as the basic measuring tool for organising the entire layout of the monastery enclosure, including the location of the four intermediate *mchod rtse*, the four temples representing the four continents and their side temples in addition.\(^{23}\)

In the case of Nyarma, the square modulus is based on a 3x3 grid with the interior shape of the *dri gtsang khang* as its outer limit. The length of the interior walls of the ambulatory is equal to the length of eight *moduli* as the smallest element of this grid and also the niche on the western wall of the ambulatory is divided on a 3:2:3 ratio. In this way the length of the niches in the ambulatory is based on the length of two moduli while the width of the entrance to the *dri gtsang khang* is based on the length of one modulus (Fig. 19).\(^{24}\)

\(^{20}\) The geometric operation mentioned shows one possibility among others. Also the shifting of the axis by approximately the width of a wall as given by Kozicz (2007b: fig. 7) can be mentioned as a possibility. Unfortunately there is no written evidence for the significance of either of these hypotheses.

\(^{21}\) According to this study the relationship between the size of the *dri gtsang khang* or the surrounding *nang skor* and the adjoining ‘*du khang*’ is mentioned as the proportional type IV within four different methods of proportion. This was also discussed and presented by the author at the 12th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Vancouver, Aug. 16, 2010 (Feiglstorfer 2010b).

\(^{22}\) According to this study the proportional relation between the size of the *dri gtsang khang* or the surrounding *nang skor* and the adjoining ‘*du khang*’ is mentioned as the proportional type IV within four different used methods of proportion.

\(^{23}\) See Feiglstorfer (2013) for a proportional analysis of the layout of Samye based on a satellite image. Compare also Mémet 1988: 32.

\(^{24}\) The division of the western section of the ambulatory wall into eight parts is mentioned in Kozicz 2007b. In his explanations he does not mention the
The ‘du khang

The ‘du khang in Nyarma, which is square, is attached to the nang skor in the west and opens towards the east onto a courtyard via a doorway that is today bricked up. In the early phase the only possible entrance to the ‘du khang and further to the enclosed nang skor and dri gtsang khang was through the gate in this doorway. The east-west-orientation follows the orientation of the dri gtsang khang and the ambulatory. There is a 60 cm to 80 cm drop between the entrance from the ‘du khang and the nang skor, which suggests that there must previously have been some steps here, steps which may be the reason for the slightly raised floor level at the rear of the lotus throne, as mentioned by Gergan.

As parts of the floor have been washed away and others are increased by earthen debris, the measurement of the several levels varies. Nevertheless, the step between the ‘du khang and the nang skor obviously separates these two parts and gives this section of the temple a completely different appearance to the levels in Tabo, where the floors of the ‘du khang and the ambulatory are at approximately the same level. On the other hand in Tabo the floor level of the dri gtsang khang is raised towards the surrounding and the adjoining nang skor slightly surmounts the adjoining platform of the dri gtsang khang, not only the dri gtsang khang, whose upper level is the highest in the whole gtsug lag khang.

This correlates with most of the West Tibetan temples, excluding those which have no possibility for an ambulation inside the dri gtsang khang, such as temples II and IV in Nyarma (Fig. 21), the ‘Brom ston lha khang and the Byams pa (Maitreya) lha khang in Tabo (see Fig. 6) and the Lotsāba lha khang in Nako. According to the spatial programme of Nyarma, the dri gtsang khang and the surrounding nang skor were built as a unit on one level, clearly separated from the ‘du khang in front, which has a completely different spatial programme. In a wider context this feature, which cannot be seen in this way at Tabo, Tholing or any other West Tibetan temple, much more has the special feature of a Hindu temple whose adhiṣṭhāna is raised towards the surroundings and supports the garbhagṛha at its centre. This fact of separating and unifying two adjoining chambers is related to the above-mentioned integration of a wall into a square, as in Tabo, or the keeping of the squares by separating the adjoining chambers, which is the case in the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma.

The passageway between the ‘du khang and the adjoining nang skor is laterally limited by projecting walls, with only the right part being partially preserved and the left part being solely part of a hypothetical reconstruction that assumes the projecting walls were constructed symmetrically. The original width of this passageway is unclear. On the right of the passageway a remnant of a wall which slightly surmounts the adjoining platform of the nang skor may be evidence of the former width of a quite narrow passageway of roughly 125 cm, as far as it had its position symmetrically in the centre of this wall. This emphasises the hypothesis of the nang skor being built as a spatial unit together with the enclosed dri gtsang khang. Again, unlike the spatial programme of the gtsug lag khang of Tabo with the open corridor between the ‘du khang and the dri gtsang khang, not only the dri gtsang khang of Nyarma but the whole unit together with the surrounding ambulatory appears as a separate unit accessible through a relatively narrow doorway, probably with a staircase in front, as mentioned before.

On the right-hand wall projection (view towards the dri gtsang khang) traces of five shaped aureoles of approximately similar size can be found (Figs. 22 and 23). They are situated as two vertically organised pairs of aureoles above one another so that a sixth aureole
on a part of the wall that is missing today can be suggested to maintain a symmetrical order. As far as the fragments are preserved, each aureole is made of two vertically organised partitions, one for the torso below and one for the head, both oval. Each of these aureoles surrounds several holes in the wall for the former attachment of clay sculptures by wooden sticks (upaśūla). The existence of these holes indicates the existence of another row of two vertical aureoles to the left of the fragmentarily preserved aureoles.

On the eastern wall inside the 'du khang, the doorway is flanked by an aureole on either side. These consist of a lower torus and an upper much smaller head section as well (Fig. 24). The construction holes in the wall indicate the earlier existence of two clay sculptures mounted on the wall, as there is also no trace of pedestals for standing figures. Both these aureoles overlap a straight vertical gap caused by the addition of a part of the wall inside that they reveal, leading to different hypotheses: One of these is that these were added during later renovation, which would mean the aureoles are not from the original building phase. Luczanits (2005: 70) argues the aureoles may possibly be from the early building phase, as he could find no traces of colour below these clay ornaments. According to this discovery, we do not know in which phase these aureoles were moulded, as the walls may also have been added during a very early stage before the surface was painted. Kozicz (2010: 70) sees an explanation in the placing of these wall additions as parts of a general ground plan based on an 8x8 grid25 and argues with a plan that would lead to structural weaknesses.

According to Gergan, the remains of a lotus throne were located along the east-west axis of the 'du khang, not in the geometrical centre but close to the entrance from the 'du khang into the nang skor, According to the geometry of the square and the orthogonality inside the gtsug lag khang, the built ground plan is very accurate. This seems to be characteristic for the temples of the early West Tibetan phase. Thus it appears unrealistic that this addition of the wall was based on an alteration during the first building phase. Examples of such changes to a temple’s structure in the early building phase are very rare: the lHa khang gong ma in Nako has an alteration by closing a former cella niche, which can probably only be explained by an alteration during an early building phase, an example which does not completely exclude an alteration as mentioned in Nyarma. Furthermore it is not known if in the case of a possible renovation including the addition of clay aureoles parts of the plaster were removed and renewed to provide a better bond with the subsurface for the in situ work. Nevertheless one cannot exclude the idea these joints may have been part of the early building phase. Referring to the example of the Sumtsek (gSum brtsegs) in Wanla (Wan 1a), given by Kozicz 2010: 71, we cannot exclude the theory of the joints having been planned. Especially the surface of the wall inside the temple of Wanla indicates a later wall addition inside the reveals of the door. A proved clarification of the reason of these vertical cracks remains open.

20. The gtsug lag khang of Tabo and Nyarma (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). Longitudinal sections. Top: Nyarma, below: Tabo. The roof of the Nyarma 'du khang is reconstructed according to the height of the remaining walls on the north side. The height of the lintel between the 'du khang and the nang skor in Nyarma is freely reconstructed. The entrances face east, on the plan facing left.
(1) dri gtsang khang, (2) nang skor, (3) 'du khang, (4) sgo khang in Tabo, and the forecourt in Nyarma; (5) an outer ambulatory along a free-standing enclosure wall. The red line marks the sequence of different levels from the entrance towards the pedestal in the dri gtsang khang as the highest level.

thus hiding this entrance (see Figs. 13, 20 and 22). The position of a throne inside the ‘du khang is rare among the West Tibetan temples and reminds of the throne of the quadripartite sculpture of rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana) in the ‘du khang of Tabo, also located in an eccentric position along the east-west axis. As in Nyarma the westernmost fragments of the throne indicate the earlier existence of a protecting throne back, today about 270 cm high; a quadripartite sculpture of the kind found with the Vairocana sculpture in Tabo can be excluded.

A proportional comparison between the two gtsug lag khangs of Tabo and of Nyarma shows the position of the Vairocana sculpture in Tabo and the lotus throne in Nyarma fixed at a similar position inside the ‘du khang. In both cases the position of the sculpture is related to the geometrical centre of the dri gtsang khang. In Nyarma the position of the throne back is located on the intersection of the east-west axis with the circum circle around the outer corners of the nang skor. In comparison to this in Tabo the centre of the Vairocana sculpture is defined by the intersection of the east-west axis with the circum circle around the inner corners of the nang skor surrounding the dri gtsang khang (Fig. 25).

The throne itself is in ruins. A pedestal adjoins the curved back of the throne. Next to it a platform supports the left quarter of a round base, probably the former pedestal of the main statue. Towards the east, but still on this pedestal, two symmetrically arranged sockets flank the main statue. In general one hypothesis is that the whole constellation may have been the main statue on a lotus throne in the centre with a relatively high throne back, flanked by two smaller statues. All of this throne is made of earth. A quadripartite structure according to the Tabo Vairocana sculpture can be excluded. This kind of a tripartite organisation of this throne may refer to a constellation of sculptures with a sitting Dipamkara at the centre, flanked by Sakyamuni and Maitreya. The question of Dipamkara as the central deity is also discussed by Jahoda (“The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 284, 287). The size of the platform and the relatively large size of this throne in proportion to the dri gtsang khang again raise the question of whether the ‘du khang was part of the original structure. In view of the proportions, it cannot be excluded that with this huge statue the spiritual centre was shifted into the ‘du khang and that the ‘du khang might have been a later adaptation.

The wall of the ‘du khang is about 105 to 110 cm wide, similar to the wall of the dri gtsang khang. Gergan mentions the square ‘du khang as being 43 x 43 feet and 14 feet high, which correlates with the existing sizes on the site, the height being a third of the internal length (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 176). Along the coping of the northern wall of the central hall four large notches from the former supports of the main girders are still visible (Fig. 26; see also Fig. 23).

Along the eastern wall and the western wall projections beside the main gate, notches from former rafters remain, but not so clearly that we can reconstruct all their exact locations. The notches on the north wall are relatively similar distance apart and quite clearly show a wall division in five parts. The distances from east to west are approximately 246 cm, 270 cm, 248 cm, 252 cm and 295 cm, which is thus the approximate length of the rafters. The last-mentioned division of 295 cm towards the western end of the north wall is up to 50 cm longer than the others, which should play a role in a further discussion about the location of the lotus throne. This wall division thus equals a sequence of four pillars in east-west direction.

According to the length of the main girders used in the ‘du khang of Tabo, which average 360 cm, a division of the width of the ‘du khang in Nyarma into five equal parts would result in the main girders being 260 cm long. Technically this length seems to be realistic. The 3D reconstruction was modelled on this hypothesis, although this result has to be qualified with regard to the following considerations (Figs. 27 and 28):
23. Nyarma 'du khang (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). Wall displays. View from inside. From left to right: (1) remains of the right wing of the west wall. The left section no longer exists; (2) north wall; (3) left section of the east wall; (a, b) wall additions. (c) infill brickwork as a later addition; (4) right section of the east wall; (5) remains of the north wall. The elevations (1), (3) and (4) show the position of the remaining aureoles including the fixing holes for the upāsūlos.


25. Tabo and Nyarma gtsug lag khang (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). The position of main statue in the 'du khang, i.e. the rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana) statue in the case of Tabo and a lotus throne in the case of Nyarma can be related in both temples to the geometry related between the nang skor and the 'du khang.

26. Nyarma 'du khang (H. Feiglstorfer, 2006). North wall with notches on top. To the left: parts of the remains of the lotus throne.
The discussion of the vertical gap on either side of the entrance gate on the eastern wall of the 'du khang could not make it clear how the two massive column-like wall parts along the gate were fixed to the adjoining sections of the east wall. In any case, if this gap goes right through the wall this would worsen the load-bearing stability of these two wall parts, especially in the case of the division of the width of the 'du khang to install one row of four columns. The fact is that in this case the rafters would be located over these two column-like wall parts and their installation as a further support cannot be excluded. From a static point of view, this raises the question of how these two wall parts are really fixed to the rest of the wall. All in all this does not exclude the possibility of there being one row of four pillars across the 'du khang.

Another point to discuss is the position of the lotus throne in relation to the pillars. The existing remains of the lotus throne and the back of the throne would fit well into this concept of a row of four pillars. This reconstruction might resolve some further open questions concerning the lotus throne. The location of the throne fits with the grid of the wooden construction. As the position of the westernmost row of pillars is shifted eastwards to increase the space for the lotus throne, a far more important statement can be made: the location of the throne was not chosen according to the wooden grid construction but was already fixed beforehand, and the wooden construction was adjusted to house its cult object as central spiritual core.\[26\]

An alternative to the four pillar-concept would be a two pillar-concept, as the three pillar concept would set the central pillars in the axis of the room which is very rare in the West Tibetan temple tradition, apart from one-pillar temples such as Lalung (lHa lung) in Spiti. The concept with two pillars in one row seems to be unrealistic because of the great length of the main beams that would be needed—about 435 cm. This far exceeds the average length of beams used in Western Tibet. The four-by-four-pillar concept (= 16 pillars) seems realistic, concerning the construction itself as well as its relation to the position of the lotus throne.

Clay Aureoles

As the aureoles, 'od (s)kor or klong 'khyil in Tibetan (halo or luminous circle), are generally related to a votive figure; their size, shape and position are dependent on the religious programme to which they are related. Not all early West Tibetan temples contain this kind of aureole, which are moulded out of clay in situ on the wall. In other words, clay aureoles are relatively rare in early West Tibetan temples and more common in later phases. The aureoles are mainly painted directly onto the wall.

The remains of aureoles in the dri gtsang khang and in the 'du khang of Nyarma are in a ruinous state, partially broken off and washed away. Nevertheless, some remains give a clue about their former shape and the way they were moulded. This will be briefly outlined by a comparison with several other early West Tibetan temples.

As a result can be summarized that the aureoles I was able to examine differ in shape and execution in detail. In general they are part of the front of a votive sculpture. The uniform way they are made and a kind of an early West Tibetan style of clay aureole can primarily be seen in the symbolism of Vajrayāna Buddhism used. Regarding the shape and grade of detailing as well as the technical approach, clay aureoles are in most cases specific to each temple and technically executed according to each temple's particular way of expressing a religious figurative programme.

The Jo khang and the lHa khang chen mo temples in Khorchag currently do not contain any clay aureoles. Similarly the 'Du khang in

\[26\] On the subject of the temple as the vessel for housing a cult object, cf. Feiglstorfer 2011a: 98.
Alchi has no aureoles of this time, as the walls in the 'Du khang are painted and the *dri gtsang khang* contains smaller clay sculptures mounted onto the wall with painted aureoles, as far as I could observe. No such aureoles were to be found in the temples of Nako and in the village temple of Gumrang either.

In Tabo there are moulded aureoles only in the *gtsug lag khang*. Two different shapes of aureole are used—single-piece circular ones, and oval, vertically orientated ones, either as a single piece behind the sculpture’s head or bipartite, with the upper part behind the head and a lower part behind the torso. The circular aureoles are not as common as the oval ones.

In Tabo the circular type forms the background to the sculptures mounted on the wall in the 'du khang (see Fig. 20: section below). They appear in two sizes, the larger ones related to the four Jinas (Luczanits 2004: 43, fig. 30) surrounding the Vairocana statue. The aureoles behind the guardians in the 'du khang are U-shaped, with
their open side at the bottom. The smaller circular aureoles are about 123 cm in diameter, the larger ones about 136 cm; they are about 8 cm wide, up to 6 cm thick, and covered with flames (Figs. 29, 30 and 31).

Round aureoles can be found in the monastery of Radni (Rad nis) (Fig. 32) or in the Vairocana lha khang27 between Nimmu (sNye mo) and Basgo (Ba sgo/mgo, Bab sgo) in Ladakh (Fig. 33). The examples in Basgo seem to be of a similar type to those in Tabo, regarding the separation of the figure and its base and their circular shape. The relation between the upaśula and the aureole with the position of the upper upaśula in the aureole’s centre is an early Western Himalayan feature, as mentioned by Luczanits (2004: 264). This circular type cannot be found in Nyarma. They belong to the second, oval, either single piece or bipartite type.

In the dri gtsang khang of Tabo the aureole of the sitting central Tathāgata is of the second, bipartite type. The heads of the standing Avalokiteśvara and Vajrasattva28 who flank the central figure are blackened aureoles of a simpler style (see Fig. 20). The aureole behind the central Tathāgata is about 115/115 cm at the upper part, which is open at the bottom, and about 160/130 cm at the lower part which is open both at the bottom and the top. They are 13 cm wide, up to 10 cm thick and covered with flames and pearls, seen from the outside to the inside (Figs. 34 and 35). Other oval shaped aureoles can be found in the gtsug lag khang of Tholing. In the Sa skya court, as shown by Phun tshogs rnam rgyal et al. (2001: 83), the aureole behind the head of a Maitreya Buddha is in relatively high relief, the outer band covering flames of a floral design and the inner band lotus beads. The torso-part of the aureoles behind the standing Buddhas in the north-western mchod rten in Tholing, which are also embellished with flames, but not florally, and with adjoining lotus beads are also relatively high relief (see Luczanits 2004: 32, figs. 14 and 15).

Similarly, the relief of the aureoles in cave 2 in Dungkar (Dung dkar) (see Luczanits 2004: 117, fig. 127) is high compared to the western type we find in Spiti and Ladakh. In comparison to the aureoles in Tholing, those in the Dungkar cave appear massive and not as graceful as those in Tholing (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, Fig. 27, p. 420). This cave also contains the circular type of an aureole.

Interestingly, the main sculptures in the Lotsāba lha khang in Ropa (Ro dpag) in upper Kinnaur are also bipartite and high
relief (Fig. 36), in contrast to those found further north in Spiti and Ladakh. Their outer bands are covered with flames in a naturalistic style, with both sides adjoined by a plain broad band in between a row of pearls. The shape of the aureoles in Lalung/Spiti behind Śākyamuni and Prajñāpāramitā follow the type found in the Tabo dri gtsang khang and in the Nyarma ‘du khang (Fig. 37).

The two examples of aureoles in Lalung have a tripartite ornamentation, with a band of vajras adjoined by a band of pearls and a band of flames from the inside towards the outside. In Basgo, the temple known locally as Lotsāba iha khang is completely in ruins. Not enough of the aureole remains to make any further comment in this context. It is interesting to note that the upper part of this bipartite aureole seems to have been fixed to the wall with wooden sticks (Fig. 38).

At the temple site of Nyarma, clay aureoles can only be found in the gtsug lag khang. As clay aureoles are relatively rare in West Tibetan temples, and they must have involved considerable effort, they become somewhat special, being reserved for places of a high value, exemplarily in main temples. Although in Nyarma we can find remains of upaśūla fixing holes in temple IIIb as well as many of

33. Basgo Vairocana iha khang. Aureoles along the west wall (H. Feiglstorfer, 2005).

34. Tabo dri gtsang khang. Cross-section (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). Central view towards the aureoles of the central Tathāgata in sitting position, flanked by the pedestals of Avalokiteśvara and Vajrasattva.

35. Tabo dri gtsang khang. Detail of a clay aureole (H. Feiglstorfer, 2012). Vertical section: upside is the outer boundary and downside the inner boundary of the aureole. (a) ring of pearls, (b) ring of flames.
them along the inner wall surfaces in temple II, there are no existent aureoles in these temples. In the side lha khang along the southern ambulation path in the Nyarma gtsug lag khang the former fixing of statues to the wall is obvious, but also without any aureoles.

The aureole in the dri gtsang khang in Nyarma is oval and made as a single piece behind an earlier, no longer existent sculpture, probably behind the sculpture’s head as the lower part of this aureole is open (Fig. 39). It is interesting to note that the clay was modelled on top of the lower layer of the plaster and not onto the bare wall. The tear line between the different layers of the plaster in the area of the aureole suggests they were added in one step (Fig. 40). This aureole is about 62/72 cm (width/height), with a modelled aureole rim about 12.5 cm wide and about 6 cm thick. In cross-section it appears approximately triangular and severely washed away. The degree of the decay suggests the dri gtsang khang was without roof for quite a long time.

The aureoles in the ‘du khang, on the eastern wall as well as on the western wall, are bipartite with a head part and a torso part, both open at the bottom (see Fig. 23). Although washed away they indicate that each flame was modelled in clay. After reconstruction, the aureoles on the western wall of the ‘du khang are about 65/65 cm (width/height) at the upper section and about 110/82 cm at the lower section and about 12 cm wide, and with an aureole rim between 2 cm thick at the outer edge and 5 cm at the inner edge (Fig. 41).

The aureoles flanking the entrance gate on the eastern wall suggest the two sculptures in front were huge, nearly touching the ceiling (Figs. 42 and 43). These aureoles are broader than those on the western wall. After reconstruction, the aureoles are about 74/87 cm (width/height) at the upper section and 160/206 cm at the lower section, whereas the lowest end of the aureole is still about 106 cm above floor level. The highest part of these two aureoles is an impressive 360 cm above the floor. The width of the clay modelling varies between the head and torso sections, at the head measuring about 10 cm and up to 8 cm wide and at the torso measuring about 15.5 cm and about 5 cm high. The aureoles are divided in two bands, the outer one decorated with a ring of flames. The ornamentation of the inner band is too worn to be identified (see Fig. 43).
The position of the aureoles mounted on the wall is high enough for pilgrims to pass below the sculptures (see Fig. 20 and Fig. 29: c). This type was used in the 'du khang of Tabo while those modelled on the western wall of the 'du khang in Nyarma are too low to pass beneath.

The Outer Path of Circumambulation

A circumambulation path, closed to its outside by a free-standing enclosure wall, leads around the 'du khang and the nang skor. Today, only the southern section of this wall exists. The rest has completely disappeared. Opposite the 'du khang, this enclosure wall has a projection formed as a niche. The front of the niche is closed by a recent brick wall, including two doors into a storage room covered with a flat roof. It is the only roofed section of this enclosure wall, which does not preclude the former roofing of the whole outer circumambulation path. Remains of wooden sticks for attaching statues to the wall emphasise that this niche was once a lha khang, and thus probably roofed.

As this existing section of the free-standing enclosure wall runs parallel to the wall of the 'du khang and the nang skor, it follows the mandala shape of the ground plan of the inner structure. After this wall, a Tibetan-style toilet has recently been built at the intersection of the 'du khang and the nang skor. The coping of the section of the ambulatory wall opposite the wall around the nang skor has indentations that may mark the position of a former roof of this outer ambulatory.

The south-eastern corner of this enclosure wall includes a short piece of the western section of the wall. From here onwards towards the north and along the northern section no traces of this enclosure wall remain. In this case, Gergan's notes are helpful in reconstructing this missing section of the outer enclosure wall. He gives measurements of the course of the eastern and northern sections. After a reconstruction, according to Gergan’s measurements we can state that the former course of the western section was built without any further wall projection and the course of the northern section was approximately symmetrical to the southern section, mirrored along the east–west axis of the whole gtsug lag khang (Fig. 44).

The outer ambulatory is slightly (= 30 cm) lower than the level of the 'du khang and slightly higher than the level outside this ambulation path. This enclosure wall is about 310 cm high. If this ambulatory path were roofed, the walls of the adjoining 'du khang would have been visible up to about one metre above the roof of the ambulatory, calculating the height of the 'du khang as about 435 cm.

---

29. This aspect of devotional tradition in a temple is discussed by Kalantari (2016) and by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari (“Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, p. 420).
The Courtyard

At around 290 cm to 300 cm, the distance between the outer walls of the 'du khang and the walls around the nang skor on the one hand and the surrounding enclosure wall on the other is approximately the same along the whole existing section of the wall. The existing eastern projections of the southern and the former northern part of the wall are a similar distance from the outer course of the eastern wall of the 'du khang. Both these ends of the enclosure wall have been integrated into two later additions probably as lha khang. The area enclosed by these two wall projections to the north and to the south as well by the eastern wall of the 'du khang to the west must have been a forecourt of the whole gtsug lag khang, facing the lake in the east.

There are several holes for mounting any objects along the outer surface of the eastern wall of the 'du khang, some of them still containing wooden remains of former suspension brackets (Fig. 45). As these holes are at about the same level and a similar distance from the doorway, the position of sculptures here, possibly covered by a roof, cannot be excluded, which would mean a quite extraordinary composition in comparison with other early West Tibetan temples. On the other hand, the whole arrangement of this forecourt, including the two openings towards an enclosed ambulatory, has no West Tibetan parallels. Compared to other early temples such as the Jo khang in Khorchag, the gtsug lag khang in Tholing and the gtsug lag khang in Tabo, which are horizontally organised in three parts—the dri gtsang khang, the 'du khang and the sgo khang—in the case of the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma the sgo khang is missing. Temples II and IV in Nyarma both have two laterally flanking antae as parts of a former porch and as an elongation of the lateral walls of the 'du khang.

It is interesting that the porches of these two Nyarma temples, temples II and IV, were integrated into the whole proportional concept of each of these temples. In a similar way the forecourt of the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma is also organised as a part of the gtsug lag khang, proportionally integrated in its whole structure. Constructive evidence at temples II and IV in Nyarma suggest their
porches were roofed. At the gtsug lag khang the evidence is not as clear. The distance of about 290 cm from the façade of the 'du khang, which is similar to that between temples II and IV as well to the eastern wall projections of the outer ambulatory wall, would allow for a roof without the need for any supporting pillars.

Along the uppermost part of the eastern wall of the 'du khang the plaster of the wall has broken off horizontally and the outer surface of the wall is further back. In addition, in places this upper zone has holes to support former wooden beams. If this were the roof zone it would be slightly lower than the roof of the 'du khang, thus following a common feature of West Tibetan temples, especially the ones in Nyarma, by raising the level of the roof of the 'du khang to the level of the roof of the porch (Fig. 46).

Imagining this porch of the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma with pillars approximately four metres high and a porch about 21 metres long, it must have had an imposing appearance. Although several of the early West Tibetan porches, like those at Alchi or Wanla are built in an exquisite manner, none of those appears as a peristyle of this kind. Today this forecourt is flanked by a lha khang to the north and south. The outer terrain along the eastern wall of the 'du khang is slightly below the terrain inside the 'du khang and slopes down towards the shore of the lake.

Assuming that the protections of the free-standing wall of the outer ambulation path define the front of the veranda, we can use approximately the same length of rafters as may have been used in the above-mentioned concept of a 20-pillar grid. In this case the position of the rafters would be similar to that of the rafters inside the 'du khang. The rafters would further constructively correlate with the length of the eastern wall of the 'du khang as well as with the position of the door opening (Fig. 47). This ideal reconstruction of the veranda in front of the 'du khang is not shown in the three dimensional model as it is still too hypothetical. Hopefully, further archaeological surveys can solve this question.

According to Gergan’s notes this eastern courtyard was closed to the east by a wall, and he estimates the gate inside this wall as being 12 feet wide (see Jahoda, “Joseph Tshertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 177). Traces of this wall can still be seen at its southern end. Today, both of these two lha khang remain as fragmentary ruins. Of the northern lha khang only, the southern and the western walls still exist. The southern wall has holes inside the lha

khang which can be associated with support holes for former wooden brackets for mounting sculptures. The south-western corner of this lha khang has a wall projection that forms a niche. The whole northern wall and the shape of the eastern wall of this lha khang can only be reconstructed hypothetically as there are hardly any traces left.

A hypothetical reconstruction of the eastern wall section follows the course of its western wall, mirrored along the north-south axis of this lha khang. According to Gergan’s sketch and measurements (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917” this volume, Fig. 16, p. 186), this niche exists only in the western wall of this northern lha khang but not in its eastern wall. The unplastered sections of the wall on either side of the doorway can be interpreted as traces of a former wooden doorframe.

Of the southern of these two lha khang, only some parts of the northern and eastern wall can be identified. The niche of the eastern wall is similar in form to the western niche in the northern lha khang. The only remains of the southern wall of the southern lha khang is a heap of earth. The reconstruction of this lha khang is similar to the reconstruction of the northern lha khang, mirroring its eastern niche along the north-south axis of this lha khang, always on the hypothetical assumption that this side temple was planned with a symmetrical shape.

The rDo rje chen mo lha khang
A new lha khang, nowadays commonly referred to as rDo rje chen mo lha khang, was built on top of the original walls of the dri gtsang khang and of the nang skor (most probably after 1842; see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, p. 175). The coping of the original walls had to be levelled in order to construct a new storey on an existing earth construction. Unfortunately, because of this later addition we do not know the original height of the walls of the dri gtsang khang and of the adjoining nang skor. The shape of the central lha khang on the second floor follows the location of the walls of the dri gtsang khang below.

The walls of this new storey were set flush with the outer boundary of the walls in the lower storey, continuing the sloping of the original walls. The new pillars on the first floor may have been necessary to support the pillars of the central chamber of the new lha khang.
The cella niche of this lha khang is on the right above the doorway below. The niche in this lha khang contains a statue of rDo rje chen mo, today protected in a glass case, located in the east of this lha khang opposite the west-facing entrance. With the lantern on top of the roof of the central lha khang, the two windows and this proportion of a veranda on its western side, this lha khang follows a more recent type of architecture. The two pillars in the upper lha khang are located above the pillars and the beams below.

On its lateral sides this veranda is flanked by two other approximately square chambers, the southern one linked to another and bigger chamber. The northern chamber is used for butter lamps; the two adjoined chambers to the south are used as a store room and a kitchen. To the west the veranda can be accessed via a staircase. The two western projections of the veranda flanking the upper part of the staircase are located on the walls of the western niche of the inner ambulatory of the former construction below. This niche in the ground floor has been closed at the front to provide further support. The access to the staircase is located in a small forecourt enclosed by a wall. A gate to the west connects this forecourt with the surrounding garden and a doorway to the east, i.e. a hole in the former walls of the ambulatory which connects this forecourt with the central part of the original construction of the gtsug lag khang.

Constructive and Spatial Changes
Alongside these many perceptions in the field of early West Tibetan temple architecture, which were enabled by the gtsug lag khang as a construction that was possibly never reconstructed or renovated, later changes give an insight in possibilities of later additions. As well as the already mentioned later additions of the forecourt to the east of the ‘du khang and of a second storey, one can find several other smaller important changes (Fig. 50).

As a transit gate from the ambulatory space to the staircase, the transition was enabled by breaking a hole into the western wall of this ambulatory path. (1) The space including the staircase to the upper storey was separated by the erection of a wall with an entrance gate. A small forecourt as a transition zone links the western access with the eastern nang skor via a passageway as a wall breakthrough, also as a later addition. (2) The opening into the dri gtsang khang, was reduced in its size by erecting a brick wall with a small door and a window. (3) According to several materials inside the former nang skor as well as inside the dri gtsang khang, recently these chambers have not been used for spiritual purposes rather than as a store room. The ambulatory around the dri gtsang khang was closed on the southern side by a brick wall which made its use as ambulatory path impossible and the former function as such was lost. (4) The outer ambulatory was closed at both eastern ends by a brick wall on either side in addition to the original wall projections. (5) This action must have been taken after Gergan’s visit in 1917, the ambulation was then part of his description. After the ambulatory was closed it could no longer be used for its original purpose. The eastern gate of the central hall was closed with a brick wall. (6) This measure could only have taken place after breaking a hole inside the western wall of the ambulatory to enable a further access to the ‘du khang-area. A flagpole was erected on the western side of the gtsug lag khang. (7) As flag poles are generally erected in front of a lha khang rather than behind it, it was probably not on this side before the upper lha khang was built, as the gtsug lag khang originally faced east.

A Tibetan style toilet was built in the outer skor lam, at the intersection of the ‘du khang-walls and the nang skor-walls. (8) The lha khang along the outer skor lam was closed at the front and divided into two rooms, in the present state both used as storage rooms. (9) At this point has to be stated that relatively high building precision was a specific feature of the early West Tibetan temples. Building the

(1) lha khang, (a) position of the statue of rDo rje chen mo, (2) veranda, (3) kitchen, (4) store room, (5) butter-lamp room, (6) stairs, (7) forecourt linking the nang skor and the access from the garden, (8) light grey hatch and light grey lines: original structure of the dri gtsang khang and the nang skor in the ground floor.
corners of these massive walls of clay bricks close to a right angle is a result of the geometric programme that the whole structure is based on. In this context the right angle has to be mentioned as a result of a superordinate geometric concept and is not primarily autotelic. The precision with which these clay structures are geometrically based indicates that the master builders and workers must have been highly skilled. The opposite can be seen in the above-mentioned constructive and spatial changes, which are all far from any precision in building and maintaining right angles.

The Vertical Shaping
With regard to the above-mentioned different levels of the several parts of the gtsug lag khang, i.e. the forecourt and the outer ambulation path and the dū khang and the dri gtsang khang, a continuous vertical shaping of the whole gtsug lag khang from its outer zones towards its central core, with the pedestal in the dri gtsang khang becomes apparent. The whole construction of the gtsug lag khang seems to have been built as several platforms at different heights along the level of the natural ground, which was actually the lowest level of the whole construction (Fig. 51).

A planning sequence according to a proportional system of each part of the building linked to the proportion and geometry of the dri gtsang khang was probably the centre of a further proportional development. For a construction sequence of the several layers, the lowest level must have been erected first and finally the dri gtsang khang. Thus the setting of the marking points on the site, before starting the construction must have been decided and defined at the lowest level, followed by a complement of the marking points on each newly built level. A longitudinal section through the whole gtsug lag khang shows a rise in the individual layers between the lake on the one side and the garden on the other towards the spiritual centre, and gives it the appearance of an artificial temple mountain.

According to this work sequence, the whole proportional concept must have been fixed at the lowest level, the terrain, and then refixed at each level. For the master builder this process requires a precise knowledge both of the geometrical and proportional interrelations and the of related religious programme as well as the method of construction itself (Fig. 50).

This understanding would be indicative of the whole sequence of levelling the individual platforms having been planned as one geometric concept, not excluding the possibility that the dū khang and the surrounding structures of the gtsug lag khang were erected at a later stage.

The Circumambulation Paths
As the practice of circumambulation inside the gtsug lag khang is no longer possible because of the deliberate closure of the ambulation paths with brick walls, we are reliant on historical sources for the reconstruction of the former ambulatory concept. So far, the oldest available information according to a practice of skor lam in Nyarma is provided by Joseph Gergan’s account, recorded in 1917 (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, pp. 177–178). This mentions four different ways of ambulating the gtsug lag khang, which today can no longer be followed owing to several later additional walls blocking the way (see Fig. 49). Although we cannot say that his remarks are completely identical with the ambulation paths used about a thousand years ago, they give a great insight into the way this temple was used by pilgrims for the ritual circumambulation. In his report he mentions four pilgrimage paths (cf. ibid.: 177–178) (Fig. 52):

(1) The inner ambulatory (nang skor) leads around the central core,
namely the *dri gtsang khang*. Its path is defined by the course of the walls of the inner ambulatory. To reach this ambulatory one had to pass through the gate of the *'du khang*, which is on its eastern side.

(2) The second ambulatory includes the ambulation along the inner border of the *'du khang* and combines it with the above-mentioned *nang skor*.

(3) The third ambulatory leads around the *dri gtsang khang* and the *'du khang*. To the south, the west and the north this *skor lam* was defined by the inner boundary of the free-standing enclosure wall. Parts of this path were possibly formerly roofed. To the east, this ambulation path passes the forecourt with the gate of the *'du khang*.

(4) The fourth ambulatory mentioned by Gergan surrounds the whole structure of the *gtsug lag khang* and is defined by the outer shape of the free-standing enclosure wall. For this *skor lam* he describes a passageway through an opening leading from outside the *gtsug lag khang* into the third ambulatory.

Gergan describes this as a narrow three by four foot opening (see Jahoda, this volume, p. 178) in the southern and northern sections of this free-standing enclosure wall. His description may explain today’s slope in the terrain in the area of the passageway described in the northern section of the wall. In this context this slope may concern a former earthen stair or slope leading from the outside of the northern wall into the ambulatory around the central hall. The eastern section of this *skor lam* follows the course of the third ambulation path.

For the devotee, the *skor lam* is defined by the shape of the architecture that leads through the materialisation of a religious programme. The outer or inner shape of walls guides through this programme along its different levels. The number of ambulation paths in a temple depends on the particular religious programme defined at the time of a temple’s foundation.\(^{30}\)

For comparison, in the *gtsug lag khang* in Tholing the inner ambulation path leads around the Vairocana sculpture in the


51. Vertical shaping of the single levels of the *Nyarma gtsug lag khang* (H. Feiglstorfer, 2011). The individual zones of the circumambulation scheme described by Gergan (1917) follow the vertical shape of the “temple mountain”. The levels described from outside towards the innermost core: Surrounding terrain – outer *skor lam* – *'du khang* – *nang skor* together with *dri gtsang khang*. This shape shows the innermost core, i.e. the *nang skor* together with the *dri gtsang khang* as a spatial unit, which cannot be excluded as having existed on its own in an early phase as an independent temple.

\(^{30}\) Personal communication by Tashi Tsering at the 12th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies in Vancouver (August 2010).
central lha khang. A further skor lam leads around the pentalic core, passing the various lha khang of the brGya rtsa (see Vitali 1999: 79). In Tabo, today the nang skor leads around the dri gtsang khang and along the inner shape of the 'du khang. An ambulatory around the gtsug lag khang probably ceased to exist when the gap between the 'Brom ston lha khang and the gtsug lag khang was closed (see Fig. 6). In the Jo khang in Kharchg the innermost ambulatory leads around the sculptures of the Rigs gsum mgon po (or Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum, “Three Silver Brothers”). The circumambulation of the Jo khang along its outer walls is described locally as the nang skor. The nang skor in the lha khang chen mo in Kharchg surrounds the innermost tripartite structure, the Byams pa (Maitreya) lha khang in the centre, flanked by the sGrol ma (Tārā) lha khang to its left and the mgon khang (Protectors’ Temple) to its right. Since several walls have been built it is no longer possible to follow this path.

In Nyarma the original circumambulation path (prodaksinopatha) around the temple area follows the borders of a sacred space, and at this time was probably based on a new religious programme associated with new translations of tantric texts (for which the designation gsar ma, “new”, or gSang sngags gsar ma, “Secret New Mantra”, was coined), commonly considered as having started with the translation work of Rin chen bzang po (958–1055) (see Jahoda, “The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 284). These tantric concepts and practices have defined the architectural space of the temple plan. The location of the skor lam thereby at the same time becomes the concept of space for the popular movement of the devotee who becomes involved in the rhythm of a clearly defined spatial sequence.

**Vertical Interlacing**

Having described several architectural features of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, namely the horizontal interlacing, the vertical shaping and the pilgrims’ ritual of circumambulation, the question of a spatial model including all these aspects arises. The gtsug lag khang in general was built as a horizontally organised structure (see also Feiglstorfer 2010a: 126, 131 and 132). Each of its individual parts

---

31 Based on information by Sonam Tsering, a local informant from Tabo (personal communication by Veronika Hein, July 2010).

32 The horizontal organisation of a centralised West Tibetan temple structure was discussed in Feiglstorfer 2010a in the context of a spatial development related to centrally organised structures such as the dBu rtse in Samye or the Somapura vihāra in Pāhārpur. The vertical interlacing including a description of the several components was presented by the author at the 20th EASAA Conference 2010 in Vienna. Prior to this a sketch was shown in Kozicz 2010: fig. 1 without giving any further empirically proven explanation. According to this sketch
fits into the shape of a concentric order. The size of the square inner ambulatory is linked to the size of the dri gtsang khang by using its modulus of a 3x3 grid. The square outer shape of the inner ambulatory, including its wall extensions, fits into the inner shape of the square du khang. The inner border of the free-standing ambulation wall can be defined by the inner width of the dri gtsang khang, measured from the dri gtsang khang’s centre.

In the same way, the outer shape of the inner ambulatory fits into the inner shape of the adjoining du khang, the outer shape of the free-standing enclosure wall around the inner ambulatory of the dri gtsang khang fits into the inner shape of the adjoining free-standing enclosure wall opposite the du khang (Fig. 53). The two lha khang to the east fit into the whole structure as their geometrical centre is located on an equilateral triangle. A similar interrelation between the dri gtsang khang and the two flanking towers can be found at the 'Du khang of Alchi. These geometrical interrelations are elements of several proportional interrelations. Their existence shows the interrelation of several layers in material form.

Interestingly, from a constructive point of view the two lha khang are obviously a later addition to the gtsug lag khang, but on the other hand they fit into this common geometrical concept. Raising the question of whether they belong to an original proportional concept or whether the original concept was extended by these two lha khang keeps the hypothesis alive that the whole proportional concept of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang is a succession of several structures in the following chronological sequence: dri gtsang khang—du khang and outer ambulation path—two lha khang flanking the du khang on the eastern side.

The several layers used for the concentrically horizontal shape find their parallels in the vertical shape of the structure of the gtsug lag khang. Each layer of the horizontal shape matches a particular level, which increases as it approaches the centre. From the lowest to the highest layer, the several horizontal zones can be mentioned as: the outer terrain—the outer ambulatory—the du khang—the nang skor and the dri gtsang khang (Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 104, plan 33). Comparing these horizontal and vertical zones with the space used by pilgrims for their ritual circumambulation results in an interrelated accordance. The several zones described by Gergan can be described in the same spatial way, namely: the outer terrain—the outer ambulatory—the du khang—the inner ambulatory and the dri gtsang khang. According to the vertical shape, the movement of the pilgrim rises towards the innermost centre.

Thus, the features mentioned show a proportional and geometrical as well as a functional interdependency according to a certain superordinate religious programme. The vertical interlacing of the several features shows the materialisation of a three-dimensional proportional structure in a horizontal order (Jahoda and Feiglstorfer 2010) (Fig. 54). This means that the individual layers of this structure are not built in a centralised manner, as can be found at the gtsug lag khang in Tholing, but that the layers of the centralised structure were organised horizontally beside and around each other. In this regard, we can note similarities between the gtsug lag khang of Nyarma and the one at Tabo but also with the gtsug lag khang at Tholing and the Jo khang at Khorchag (Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 95, plan 18). This concept would also coincide with a superordinate tripartite sacred

---

33 This triangular geometry was shown as a sketch in Kozicz 2009: 18, plate 1.10 without any further explanation. In Feiglstorfer 2011a II: 103, plans 17, 28 and 29, the triangular concept is compared to temples whose layout has a similar feature of a triangular relation between particular parts of the gilding, i.e. the gtsug lag khang in Nyarma, the 'Du khang in Alchi and the Ramesvara temple in Ellora.

34 The reconstruction of the original shape of the Jo khang in Khorchag shows a possible cruciform shape, not only of the exterior as it is today but also of the interior shape. See also the ground plan of the Jo khang by the author in Feiglstorfer and Jahoda (2012: 81).
concept over the territory of the early West Tibetan Empire, with the *gtsug lag khang* of Nyarma, Tholing and Khorchag as its centres. A possible association of these temples with Dipamkara, Śākyamuni and Maitreya would refer to a superordinate religious concept (Feiglstorfer 2011b; see also Jahoda, “The foundation of the Nyarma *gtsug lag khang*, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 286–287), each temple characterised by its own proportional and geometrical concept. In a broader sense this concept may be mentioned as a basic structure for a further development in early West Tibetan temple architecture. By talking of a three-dimensional *mandala*, if this was ever the intention of the master-builders, the *dri gtsang khang* could be understood as its central core on top of the spiritual mount embedded in a spatial and ritual concept as a part of a superordinate religious concept marking one of the three spiritual centres of the West Tibetan Empire.

**Bibliography**


——. 2010. Verdeckte Fugen. Aspekte der räumlichen Symbolik im tantrisch geprägten Buddhismus in Ladakh und deren Auswirkung auf


Note on the Spatial Iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in Context

In recent years more material and documentation of early Buddhist temples in the Western Himalayas from the period of the 10th–13th centuries has been published, allowing a study of typologies of structures and an interpretation of functions and meanings of different architectural themes as well as their relation to religious ideas and forms of devotion.

However, existing monographs on early Buddhist temples in the Western Himalayas centre on isolated religious monuments and their artefacts, with little study of interrelations between the different sites. In addition, important examples from this phase, namely the ensembles of three major foundations of Nyarma (Nyar ma, etc.), Tholing (mTho gling, etc.) and Khorchag (’Khor chags, etc.), have received little attention up to now due the political conditions limiting access to the latter two temples. Their ruinous condition or altered state is one of the additional major reasons for this situation. Collating data from different perspectives such as built reality, ritual practice and iconographic function as a single corpus provides a fresh perspective on the evolutionary history of the temples and their symbolism.

This study will discuss new data from the historically linked major royal temple foundations of the period around the first millennium CE, in particular specific features of the programme and of the spatial configuration of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang and will attempt to embed the temple in its artistic-cultural as well as in its ritual context.\footnote{Field research in Ladakh has been conducted by the author since 2000; studies on site in Nyarma were carried out on initiative and in collaboration with Christian Jahoda in 2009. I wish to thank the nuns and the abess of the nunnery at Nyarma in particular for their hospitality, support and valuable information.} The basis of the comparative perspective is extensive field research in areas of historical Western Tibet since 2007 and the collection of data on hitherto little-studied monuments of the West Tibet kingdom. The analysis will include questions of the historicity of the form and symbolism of the site, through comparative analysis of

Focusing now on the royal foundation at Nyarma, the main temple or gtsug lag khang impresses—despite its ruinous state—because of the monumentality of the walls, the precision of the layout and outstanding quality of the construction. Furthermore it is of central importance for religious-artistic and architectural studies because it provides an almost intact original layout of an early sacred space in the region (Figs. 1–3).

The temple lies on an east-west axis with the main hall (du khang) and a shrine-chamber-cum-ambulatory at its west end (Fig. 4). The present structures clearly convey that one of the main forms of devotion, i.e. a circumambulation, or meditative walk outside and inside the temple, is expressed in the architectonic layout, namely as corridors around the main hall (du khang) and the sanctum (dri gtsang khang) as well as an entrance hall (sgo khang). Gergan was the first to show the relationship between the architectural structure and the ritual practice as discussed by Jahoda ("Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917", this volume, pp. 171–199). A comparable spatial configuration with an outer ambulatory can be found in the Alchi ‘Du khang, as already observed by Luczanits and Neuwirth (2010: 80; see below, Fig. 13). Luczanits (2004: 307, n. 118) also described the typological link between Nyarma’s core structures and the Tabo gtsug lag khang. While Tabo has no outer ambulatory path, the assembly hall features raised sculptures (dating from the renovation phase, ca. mid-11th century) attached to the walls at a height of ca. 160 cm from the current ground level, indicating a form of worship through a meditative walk under these sculptures and thus giving a lead to the ritual circumambulation of the temple and dynamic perception of its programme (Kalantari 2016); the latter is a contrasting feature to Nyarma (see below). With regard to the original function of the biggest structure at Nyarma, Gergan suggested that—in addition to the size and complex shape—the pilgrimage paths in and around this temple indicate the original function of this structure as gtsug lag khang ("main temple"), also designated by him as chos skor. The physical dynamic perception of sacred space representing the progression within an inner spiritual development is a typical feature of Vajrayāna Buddhism (see below).

detailed plans of ground plans and elevations (see www.archresearch.tugraz.at/results/Nyarma/nymarma3.html; accessed April 29, 2013). More comprehensive research on the remaining structures of Nyarma are by Gerald Kozicz (2007, 2009, 2010a and 2010b) and Feiglstorfer (2010). Kozicz provided detailed floor plans of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang and various other monuments of the compound. (For further plans by Kozicz see also: http://www.tibetheritagefund.org/media/forum/Berlin_conf_paper07/kozicz_berlinpap.pdf.)

The narrative programmes in the different spaces represents increasing spiritual levels as described by Luczanits (2010). I am grateful to Eva Allinger for discussions on this topic.

2 Few studies have as yet focused on the historic context of the early Buddhist building forms in Ladakh; pioneers in this field are Romi Khosla (1975, 1979) and Roger Goepper (1996).

3 A short description of the architectural remains and of the interior decoration of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang ("Main Temple") is provided by Christian Luczanits (2004: 29ff), who also published some results of comparative research focusing on the early monuments at Alchi (Luczanits and Neuwirth 2010). Holger Neuwirth provided a general map of the sacred site of Nyarma as well as the temple art and architecture in the neighbouring and historically linked regions of Central Tibet, Ladakh, Himachal Pradesh and the Indian plains, as well as Kashmir.

4 The narrative programmes in the different spaces represents increasing spiritual levels as described by Luczanits (2010). I am grateful to Eva Allinger for discussions on this topic.
An additional new perspective—as already mentioned—is provided by recent archaeological research. Nyarma has been surveyed in detail by the archaeologist Quentin Devers, who was the first to chart the remains (residential buildings and religious structures) of that site.5 The data of archaeologists are required to specify the historical stratigraphy of the remains of the main temple and to analyse the temple’s wider layout.6 In this article some aspects of the analysis of the entrance space—which has been modified, enlarged and transformed in later periods—as well as questions regarding the remains of the interior decoration are results of discussions with Devers.7

The “Shrine-Chamber”: “garbhagṛha” Versus “caityagṛha”

The gtsug lag khang of Tabo (Figs. 5–6) and Nyarma are exemplary of composite religious functions in the tradition of classical tripartite vihāra structures, i.e. longitudinal temples with entrance hall, assembly hall and shrine at the rear. However, while their religious symbolisms and functions may be comparable, the sizes and shapes of the individual structures within each of the two temples at Tabo and Nyarma differ considerably, suggesting diverging cultural contexts.

As regards the spatial concept, the shrine chamber (dri gtsang khang) of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang is comparable to that of the Tabo gtsug lag khang (Fig. 7) as already observed by several authors.

5 Quentin Devers included the remains of residential architecture in his archaeological research and survey on Nyarma (see Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 214–216), both featuring all-stone corbelled structures. The all-stone building at Nyarma was first described by Neil Howard in 1989. See for images also "Flight of the Khyung" by John V. Bellezza (http://www.tibetarchaeology.com; accessed May 7, 2013).

6 In addition, fragments of sculptures and wall-paintings might perhaps be found in the debris in future, providing important clues for questions of chronology.

7 I am grateful to Quentin Devers for his generosity in sharing his insights with me.


7. Tabo gtsug lag khang (plan after R. Khosla 1979: fig. 2 on p. 44).
Luczanits (2004: 307, n. 118) summarised the main features as follows: "The ground plan of the inner part of the temple at Nyarma is very similar to that of the Tabo Main Temple (gTsug-lag-khang; [...]), but niches were added to the three sides of the ambulatory, and the opening between the main hall and the apse is comparatively narrow. One of the niches preserves the remains of a large circular aureole and a pointed nimbus which project considerably beyond its upper edge."

The architectonic arrangement of both temples features spaces along a main axis and a horizontal hierarchy of sacred spaces leading to a cella. While the Tabo sanctum's walls are higher, Nyarma is placed on a raised platform as observed by Feiglstorfer ("The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma", this volume, Fig. 50, p. 253) both features signifying that the cella is imagined as spiritually elevated. The horizontal, axial orientation in the inner core leading to a cella stands in clear contrast to the—roughly contemporaneous—centralised plan of the so-called Ye shes 'od temple (or Gyatsa [brGya rtsa]) at Tholing, with a cult image at its centre—the latter appears to have a different iconographic and cultic function. The oblong tripartite shape also differs from the multi-storey structure of Shalu (Zhwa lu) in Central Tibet (ca. 1030), having a vertical hierarchy, described as a mandala and representation of Mount Sumeru (Chayet 1988: 23). The longitudinal-type of temples at Nyarma and Tabo combine a monastic function with a ritual function for public and congregational forms of devotion. In particular, the longitudinal shape and the spatial order at Tabo recalls the axial succession of halls (entrance hall, assembly hall) leading to a sanctum sanctorum or shrine-chamber (garbhagṛha, or womb chamber) for perambulation, recalling the Buddhist and Hindu religious landscape of Lahaul and Chamba known for their wooden temples complete with magnificent toranas as a lead-in and gateway to the sanctum. In this context it has to be mentioned that as regards the internal programme at Tabo, featuring a distinctive hierarchy in the religious programme, there are commonalities with cave temples of Ajanta (Ajanṭā), e.g. Cave XVII (see below), although no direct genetic link is postulated here. The Hindu and Buddhist wooden temples in the bordering regions of Himachal Pradesh are in close geographical and historical proximity. Examinations of the structures of the latter—typically featuring a garbhagṛha with sheltering toranas (gateways) combined with a mandapa (a pillared hall for public rituals)—and their decorations reveal significant commonalities with Tabo (Papa-Kalantari 2007).

---

8. Udaipur, Mirkula Devi temple, Lahaul: view of the garbha-gṛha with the sheltering torana (C. Kalantari, 2002; WHAV).

As a characteristic element, the ceiling programme of the cella at Tabo has a centralised, mandalic layout, featuring airborne offering divinities venerating the cult image below between large lotus rosettes, and auspicious symbols in the corners, giving this space a vertical direction of ascent, almost reminiscent of a sikhara typically positioned above the garbagrha. This ceiling design is opposed to the decoration of the wooden planks above the main hall, with its ornamental depictions imitating a textile cover protecting a pillared hall, recalling the mandapa in Indian temples. The wall above the Tabo cella’s entrance portal features Indic and Hindu deities (stemming from the mid-11th-century renovation phase) in their function as protectors, who typically occupy the entrance wall of a temple. Accordingly, a hierarchy of divinities is shown in this room, indicating that the shrine chamber with its permambulation is perceived as a separate unified sacred space.

At Tabo much of the ceiling decoration above the shrine and ambulatory are reminiscent of the architectural ornamentation in Himachal Pradesh, such as at Udaipur and Ribba (Lotsāba lha khang), the latter featuring large lotus rosettes and airborne spirits on the ambulatory’s ceiling. In general, along the processional axis to the shrine chamber a progression in elaboration and size of ceiling decorations is observable, and their motifs indicate how these spaces were conceived. Particularly significant for comparison are the elements on the transition zone between the assembly hall and the sanctum at Tabo, featuring a complex tripartite doorway with pilasters (Fig. 9). The surface decorations in this area have the most elaborate detailed ornamentation in the temple. They do not appear to imitate textiles but rather architectural decorations such as the woodcarvings on toranas (monumental gateways), which are a constant feature in the wooden temples mentioned (Fig. 8; cf. Kalantari, “Shaping space, constructing identity. The illuminated Yum chen mo manuscript at Pooh, Kinnaur”, this volume, Fig. 22, p. 373). At Tabo characteristic features of such richly carved portals seem to be translated into the medium of painting with the aim of sacralising and spiritually elevating the sanctum intended to lead into spaces of increasing sacredness.

While the decorations of the various spaces at Tabo indicate a hierarchic relationship leading through a torana into a (dark) enclosure or shrine chamber for the focus of worship, at Nyarma these units of assembly hall and shrine chamber are more clearly distinguished at the level of the architectonic layout—as already observed by Luczanits (2004).

The shrine at Nyarma—with a central (square) chamber (dri gtsang khang) and surrounding ambulatory (skor lam)—has a distinctive contrasting feature, namely projections or niches on three sides of the ambulatory, vesting the space with a cosmological dimension. Various authors have described this fact but without tracing its architectonic context and meaning. Luczanits (ibid.) mentions that one of the niches preserves the remains of a large circular aureole. Thus Nyarma’s programme of the shrine must have been considerably more complex than the ambulatory of the small enclosure at Tabo, where no niches can be found.

Nyarma shares this type of projections in particular with Buddhist cult buildings in the Trans-Indus region and in particular in Kashmir and Lower Ladakh, i.e. zones geographically and culturally closely linked. Also the sanctum and its relation to the assembly hall has characteristic features recalling building traditions of that region.

One example is the Buddhist complex of Parihsapura, an enclosed monastic compound near Srinagar related to royal patronage of Lalitāditya (Mukhtāpida) from the Kārkota dynasty in the 8th century. Parihsapura is in particular renowned for a colossal Buddha image in the vihāra, which still existed in Kalhana’s time (12th century) and which according to some scholars is perhaps depicted inside a pent-roof structure in the Alchi Sumtsek (Goeppler 1996: 83). At Parihsapura the buildings for worship (stūpa, caitya) and

9 The sikhara, a tower or spire, a dominant feature in North Indian temple structures, is imagined as equated with the central deity in Indian temple architecture.

10 In an attempt to trace the evolutionary history of this architectural theme, a relationship to the Indic traditions in Himachal Pradesh and the Indian plains has been suggested (cf. Papa-Kalantari 2007: 154ff.).

11 Cf. also Luczanits and Neuworth (2010: 81) who found a parallel interpretation of the different storjes of the Alchi Sumtsek (gSum brtsegs).

12 Udaipur (Mirkula Devi temple, Lahaul) has a lantern ceiling with elaborate figural and ornamental woodcarvings above the mandapa (Papa-Kalantari 2007). I wish to thank Rob Linrothe (2003) for discussions on this topic.

13 The magnificent portal of Khorchag attests to the continuation and significance of this tradition in the overall designs of temples in Western Tibet (see Kalantari 2012b: 150).

14 Meister and Dhaky (1988: 356) describe the main features of Kashmir temples thus: ‘The plan of a Kashmir temple is characterized by an open rectangular courtyard surrounded by cells and an elevated […] shrine at the centre facing a prominent entrance gateway. […] The typical pent-roofed central structure of a Kashmir temple has pedimented entries on four sides, three of which are often closed off or turned into niches.’

15 Romi Khosla was among the first architecture historians to point to the relationship between architectural motifs of that site with the Alchi Sumtsek, in particular the trefoil arches, a leitmotif of Kashmir architecture (1979: 57; cf. also Meister and Dhaky 1988: figs. 724–726).

16 R. C. Kak (2002: 52–53) described the Buddhist monastery at Parihsapura: ‘Of the monasteries there is little to be said, as only one example survives—
namely, the Rajavihara of Parihasapura. In plan it is a cellular quadrangle facing a rectangular courtyard. The cells were preceded by an open veranda. In the middle of one side was the flight of steps which afforded an entrance and exit. The central cell on this side served as the vestibule. In the range of cells on the opposite side is a set of more spacious rooms which served either as a refectory or as the abbot’s private apartments. Externally, and probably internally also, the walls were plain. The roof was probably sloping, and gabled like modern roofs in Kashmir. Parihasapura has also bequeathed to us the only surviving example of a Buddhist chaitya, or temple. It is a square chamber built upon a square base similar to that of the stupa, save for the offsets and three stairs, and is enclosed by a plain wall, with entrance facing the temple stairs. The stairs lead up to the portico which gave admission to the sanctum. The latter was an open chamber surrounded on all sides by a narrow corridor which served as a circumambulatory path. At the four comers of the sanctum are bases of pillars which no doubt held some sort of screen designed partly to conceal the Holy of Holies from profane eyes. As the external wall of the corridor has been almost razed to the ground, it is very difficult to say whether there were openings in it for admission of light and air; probably there were.”

R. Fisher (1989: 22) describes Parihāsapura as “evidence of the creation of a new, composite structure where the traditionally separate buildings used for worship (chaityas–halls) and residences for monks (viharas) are joined into one.” The stupa of cruciform plan, and monks cells around it created a composite structure. “The stupa was thus moved inside the vihara, occupying the centre position and thereby creating a temple.” (Ibid.: 23). On the Ushkur stūpa (5th century) Fisher (ibid.: 23) writes it “is cruciform in plan (or rather a square centre with projections; my addition, CK), with stairs on each of the four sides”, on a high plinth, the “configuration, featuring the four stairs, high plinth and cells built into the enclosure, constitutes a distinct, regional type. It is seldom found on the Indian subcontinent, where the single stairway and circular-plinth types dominate. Some similarity can be found in the late eighth-century eastern India Buddhist vihara at Paharpur, which does use this type of platform, but this is not typical, and the Paharpur platform, with its small shrines, attached, is different from any found in Kashmir. The geographically closest parallel (…) is found in the nearby Central Asian site of Khotan. The Rawak vihara, dated to the fourth or fifth century, exhibits the same structural features”, i.e. cells within the surrounding wall (Ibid.: 23–24).

Several authors have remarked that stūpas with four projecting stairs are often found in Gandhāra, and became popular in the Trans-Indus regions including Kashmir, Central Asia and Afghanistan (Tepe Rustam in Balkh, Rawak in Khotan; cf. Fig. 12), a type which continued in Ladakh and Tibet (Kuwayama 2008: 170ff.).

17 The term star-form is more appropriate, while the frequent designation as “cross or cruciform” should be avoided, as the association with Christian-Byzantine building forms is misleading; the stupa is a centralised space with lateral projections which are not part of the actual shrine. The sanctum in the church is not at the centre but at the rear, in the apse, while the transept has the function of additional space for monks and emphasises the sacrality of the apse; also the Christian catholic connotation of the cross and its relation to the building form appears to be misplaced in a Buddhist context.
space or chamber with lateral niches or stairs (and recessing corners) symbolically allowing access for the devotee from all directions of the world (cf. Figs. 10–11).18 The Cankuna stupa (of pāñcaratha design) features a rectangular base or plinth with offset projections for the steps on the four sides recalling this universal, cosmic orientation also found at Nyarma, the latter featuring niches in the ambulatory.19

The combination of stupa worship and assembly of monks is also reflected in the caitya hall of Parihāsapura, featuring a shrine on a square base with lateral niches on three sides.20 A related composite function has a “caitya hall” at Nyarma (cf. Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 204, and Fig. 26, p. 212; cf. also Kozicz 2010b: fig. 6, who calls this composite structure the “Stupa (Chorten) Temple”). There a stupa occupies the space at the rear of the hall of this smaller structure, which may stem from a slightly later phase than the main temple.

The Spatial Symbolism of the stūpa: from Monolithic Structure to Cultic Space21

Of crucial importance for the reconstruction of the architectonic context of the Nyarma shrine complex is the development of the stupa and stūpas of Ladakh in particular. Kottkamp (1992: 420ff) described the evolutionary history of the stupa from a monolithic structure for circumambulation to a cultic space with integrated, centrally organised internal shrines for external and internal worship. In his retracing of the transformation of the spatial symbolism of the stupa in India, the placing of niches (with cult images placed in the respective position in the cardinal directions) attached to the dome or plinth can be regarded as an intermediary phase, which gradually led to an intrusion of cult images into the dome (ibid.: 421).

The extent to which building forms of sacred structures in Ladakh are related to the spatial idea of the stupa with internal shrines or stūpas can be seen in the entrance stūpa/kakani (ka ka ni) stūpa or “Great Stūpa” at Alchi as well as the “Four-Image mchod rten” at Mangyu (Fig. 17);22 the latter featuring projecting niches inside and

18 For further images see Fisher 1989: 26ff; Meister and Dhaky 1988: 366.
19 Maillard (1983: 170) assumed that the form of the central shrine with four stairways, the ‘star-shaped stupa’ developed between the 6th and 8th centuries in border regions between Central Asia and north-west India (such as Khotan) in connection with the propagation of tantric teachings and rituals.
20 The latter, of course, is in the tradition of a classical building type of early Mahāyāna cult in India such as at Ajanta.
21 I wish to thank Eva Allinger (2012) and Gerald Kozicz (2009) for discussion on this topic.
22 A variety of Kashmir-style building forms for shrines and sacred spaces for cult images can be found on the dhoti of the Sumtsik’s Avalokitesvara featuring...
an inner stūpa for circumambulation. These structures are typically covered with internal decorations like those of temples.23 An example at Nyarma of this type is a still intact stūpa temple, presumably from the 13th–14th century (Fig. 16).24

Concerning the presumptive ritual use and forms of devotion associated with the stūpa at that time it is important to note that the stūpa was not only associated with the relics of the Buddha but above all represented a form par excellence to materialise Vajrayāna ideas. In tantric Buddhism the interiors of shrines in stūpas are perceived as a dharmadhātu circle used for ritual actions and for symbolic “entry” into the dharmadhātu. Such ideas can be found in relevant tantric texts, e.g. in the Kriyāsaṃgraha (12th century; cf. Kottkamp 1992: 423). As Goepper put it (1979: 252), while in Exoteric Buddhism pagodas and cult-halls are dwelling places of the Buddhas, in Esoteric Buddhism, they are symbolic embodiments of the realization within oneself; the movement inside is equal to a realisation of buddhatā; Goepper (ibid) describes these spaces as representations of the “absolute reality of mind”.

As described by Kottkamp (1992: 462) in the late tantric form of Buddhism, the Vajrayāna, the stūpa was perceived as a yantra, i.e. as a tool or instrument for the religious path, realised as actual paths, surrounding the stūpa as corridors and as ambulation paths, which serves the devotee for the physical understanding of the stages of meditation, which has an equivalent in the two-dimensional form of the maṇḍala (dkyil ’khor).25

A building form that is typologically related to the star-shaped stūpa are structures with three projecting niches and a central stūpa for ambulation. As can be seen in the Alchi Sumtsek (gSum brtsegs) (Fig. 13) the latter are occupied by monumental bodhisattvas in clay.


23 The “Four-Image mchod rten” at Mangyu contains a large chamber with paintings and sculptures. The latter feature Protectors of the Three Families (rigs gsum mgon po) placed in four niches in the upper section of the side walls (cf. Luczanits 2004: 170).

24 A comparison with a stūpa at Nyarma (Fig. 14), denominated as “Stupa 4” by Kozicz, is also relevant for the reconstruction of the typology and meaning of the shrine chamber of the Nyarma main temple and its star shape with inner and outer ambulatory (for images and a description see http://stupa.arch-research.at/cms/index.php?id=111; accessed May 2, 2013). In his short presentation of the site the author describes a plinth of cruciform plan and two flights of steps, again in cruciform or star shape.

25 Cf. also Snodgrass (1985: 126ff) for examples of stūpas as maṇḍalas; furthermore Tucci 1988a: xvii.
In the Nyarma compound is situated a structure (Fig. 15; cf. Devers, "An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh", this volume, Fig. 6: Temples 3 and 4, p. 204; classified as an "Initiation Temple" by Kozicz 2010b: fig. 6) one square and one with lateral niches recalling the Alchi Sumtsek. Thus the functions of worship related to the star-shaped temple (Temple 4) and the assembly hall (Temple 3) appear to be separated and represented in two single buildings. The dates of these two constructions are unknown, but they may perhaps be from the 11th century. Interestingly, although the two spaces are positioned in close relation to each other, they are not erected on one axis, and thus show no consideration of a symbolic alignment or relationship.

A feature indicative for the comparison with Nyarma can also be seen in the vihāra at the Kashmiri Buddhist complex of Parihasapura. Like the Nyarma assembly hall, the latter has a square ground plan contrasting to the oblong shape of Tabo, which also contrasts on account to its much smaller size. The Kashmiri vihāra is situated immediately to the south of the stūpa and has a shrine at the rear wall vaguely comparable to the main image in the 'du khang of Nyarma.

As a working hypothesis it can be proposed that early Buddhist Kashmiri building forms of ensembles of vihāras and related shrines or stūpa types with internal shrines (on raised platforms) in a sacred compound, reflecting traditions of devotion consecrated through tradition—i.e. the cult of the stūpa for public and congregational worship—have to be considered among the possible forerunners of early West Tibetan building forms in Ladakh. Also the outstanding quality and precision of the temple recalls the fine masonry of ancient Kashmir. In the earliest phase of temple architecture in this region, Kashmiri Buddhist temples associated with prestigious royal foundations, representing distinct regional types of building forms, may have been translated into indigenous West Tibetan construction techniques of mud bricks and timber.

The complex layouts of early constructions at Tabo and Nyarma appear to feature rather conservative architectonic ensembles and forms of devotion with shrine chambers as foci of worship. Successive structures show a unification and systematisation of sacred space, featuring centralised architectonic concepts. This coincides with the appearance of Five-Family group configurations around Vairocana. Exemplary is the free-standing, four-fold Vairocana image (ca. mid-11th century) in the assembly hall at Tabo. In this centralised conception

the entrance hall of Tabo features a complex programme of protectors, local spirits and donors engaged in rituals of consecration and a Wheel of Rebirth and cosmological imagery, as prescribed in Mūlasarvāstivāda Vinaya. Extensive narratives are shown in the main hall, representing higher spiritual attainments of didactic purpose. The latter are rendered prominently and are designed to bring different forms of virtuous life to the mind of the devotee, characteristic of this early phase of establishment of Buddhist ideas in the region. In contrast, in later phases of this architectural tradition, single-chamber structures with niches at the opposite side of the portal emerge transforming the complex composite structures to single-chamber temples with a niche in the rear wall of the du khang featuring the main theme of the overall programme. Thus, in the same way as the internal programmes show a shift from Three-Family configurations (with a central Buddha and flanking bodhisattvas) to Five-Buddha-Family configurations in this period, with Vairocana as the core deity presiding over the Vajradhātu mahāmaṇḍala, the spatial layouts of temples are also gradually systematised and transformed to single-chamber structures. This period of systematisation coincides with the reduction of narrative didactic scenes, while fully developed mandala palaces for ritual and initiation depicted on the side walls of the assembly halls become a dominant feature of interior programmes. This transformation of space and programme may also indicate a change and division of functions related to different types of spaces: one reserved for monastic use, thereby conservative forms of devotion such as the worship of the Buddha through a meditative circumambulation and honouring of the Buddha with offerings of the cult image in shrines, appears to lose importance, and iconographic programmes leading the practitioner around the

This concept contrasts to the older Three-Family configuration in the cella of Tabo from the foundation period.

The adoption of conservative building types in this early phase is in line with internal decorative programmes and the emphasis on early Mahāyāna concepts and Yoga Tantra teachings in this period of "translation and transformation": e.g. 26

26 This concept contrasts to the older Three-Family configuration in the cella of Tabo from the foundation period.

The adoption of conservative building types in this early phase is in line with internal decorative programmes and the emphasis on early Mahāyāna concepts and Yoga Tantra teachings in this period of "translation and transformation": e.g. 26

26 This concept contrasts to the older Three-Family configuration in the cella of Tabo from the foundation period.

The adoption of conservative building types in this early phase is in line with internal decorative programmes and the emphasis on early Mahāyāna concepts and Yoga Tantra teachings in this period of "translation and transformation": e.g.

sacred space spreads from the centre to the cardinal four directions. Often positioned below an opening or lantern, allowing light to come in, such configurations recall the meaning of the name Vairocana "resplendent, exceedingly bright" and forms of his representation as Sūrya, the sun-god at Lalung and Khorchag (Kalantari 2012b: 157; cf. also Luczanits 2004: 208). This spatial concept contrasts with the (dark) shrine chamber in the previous period, in which the cult image is a focus of devotion protected from direct gaze of the devotee. In a later phase of the evolutionary history, small structures reserved for temple in a dynamic way are also less prominent, which made it possible to pay homage to the cult images of the side walls of the temple and by bowing down or walking below them. At that time a division of the ritual-cultic functions is observable in Nyarma and Ladakh. At Alchi specific types of building forms, namely small multi-storey sanctuaries, “stūpa shrines” and small sanctuaries with a cult image at the centre, are focus of public and congregational worship, which are found in one monastic complex with large assembly-halls-cum-veranda or a courtyard for monastic use and rituals involving the community in larger ceremonies and festivals.

a three-dimensional free-standing cult image emerge (Lalung, Alchi and perhaps Nyarma), while in contemporary assembly halls the old form of the “shrine chamber” is “condensed” into shallow niches in which there are typically complex Five-Family clay configurations virtually covering all the three walls of the niche (Nako, Alchi ‘Du khang), thus generating a three-dimensional configuration.

The evolutionary history and the intermediary phases of transfer and transformation leading to the specific formulation of the shrine-cum-vihāra type in the earliest foundations of Nyarma have to be established in future research.27

The Assembly Hall

As already mentioned, the square ground plan differs from the oblong assembly hall at Tabo, vaguely recalling the Parihāsapura vihāra in Kashmir with a chamber at rear for worship. Concerning the internal programme, little has been preserved of the original decoration in the main temple. In the middle of a floor covered with debris there is a throne28 (Figs. 18–20) on which Gergan was still able to identify a lotus pedestal. The throne is placed on the main axis, shifted towards the western end of the main hall, and consists of a flat backdrop which is strengthened by layers of additional bricks behind and a pedestal placed in front of it. Thus the cult image was once orientated towards the main hall, virtually heading the assembly of monks during ceremonies. As already mentioned, this concept contrasts with the fourfold Vairocana of the renovation phase (11th century) in the Tabo assembly hall presiding over the thirty-two sculptures along the walls representing the main deities of a Vajradhātu mandala.

Clay sculptures decorating the walls at Nyarma were reserved for the entrance wall and the one leading to the cella. On these walls are remains of nimbs and aureoles (prabhāmaṇḍala) and the holes (Figs. 18; 22–23) where these sculptures were fixed. The fragments of reliefs appear to be of considerable antiquity. As already observed 27 An important question of future research is the definition of a typology of different structural themes, their function and symbolism. This study requires a plurality of approaches in order to arrive at a definition of the interrelation of built realities and more abstract ideals and religious concepts and their developments, which also have consequences for the changing meanings of building forms. Thus future research on Nyarma certainly has to combine historic sources and data from different disciplines: historiography, religious studies, architecture, art history and archaeology. We also require more evidence on the ancient political and religious affiliations, and the possible consequences it had on the choice of architectural types and spiritual programmes.

28 According to local saying the base is regarded as a former stūpa (cf. Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 207).
by Luczanits (2004: 30), the absence of mural traces underneath may indicate that they derive from the foundation period of the temple itself. The shape with characteristic flames encircling a pearl border is comparable to the aureoles on the walls of the Tholing Gyatsa documented by Tucci. The holes and fragments of aureoles on the rear wall flanking the portal are arranged in two registers. There are four halos on each side (cf. Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 207). It is possible that they once were subordinate to the image on the throne in the centre (see below).29

As already mentioned, the Tabo ‗du khang has sculptures attached to both the rear and the side walls (Fig. 5), which is not the case at Nyarma. The Tabo sculptures are raised ca. 160 cm from the current ground level, indicating a form of worship through a meditative walk under these sculptures—paying homage and receiving their blessings—and thus giving a lead to the circumambulation of the temple and dynamic perception of its programme (Kalantari 2016).30

The practice of veneration through respectful greeting and bowing down in front of the image in veneration, touching the feet of the sculpture, can be found in relevant texts such as the Divyavadana, describing different sets of efficacious rituals in the temple (cf. Rotman 2009: 53). The shrine or niche as well as the stupa are typically the focus of the cult of the Buddha, where his image is venerated and honoured through circumambulation as well as through offerings to achieve merits. In later Vajrayana Buddhism the shrine chamber represents the dharma body of the Buddha.31 Measurements by Devers show that the nimbs on the wall leading to the shrine-chamber are ca. 120 cm from the original ground level, thus a ritual function of meditative walk below these images is rather unlikely (cf. Fig. 23).32

29 The ensemble perhaps featured the Eight Bodhisattvas surrounding a central Buddha, but this must remain speculation.
30 The narrative programme has increasing spiritual levels as described by Luczanits (2010).
31 The offerings are laid in front of or placed on a small altar. As described by Gombrich (1995: 145ff) this gesture of respect shows that the gods are perceived as being present in the sculptures, and live in the cult image from the moment of its consecration. Donor images reflecting these “conservative” ritual actions are typically depicted in close relation to respective cult images. Examples are images in the Tabo sanctum, showing donations of flowers, while donor images at Nako and Alchi include incense, ceremonial scarves and jewels.
32 Comparisons with earlier traditions of Buddhist temples predating Western Himalayan temples in Kinnaur (Ribba, Lotsaba ‗ha khang, 9th century) are also relevant in this context: the wooden temple of Ribba features a garbhagriha with outer ambulatory path; the shrine shows sculptures attached in elevated position on side walls: they comprise seven clay sculptures, which in 2002 were in a massively altered state. Some of them are perhaps later additions. Only the main deity is perhaps an original, featuring Avalokitesvara like the central deity
On the entrance wall there are large halos with nimbs. The position recalls the usual configurations of monumental gate-keepers, who typically live near the entrance. Comparable early examples are found in many places, such as in the Nyag cave temple at Khartse (mKhar rtse, etc.) (Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari 2009).

The cella or apse (Figs. 24–25) to the west of the throne in the main hall is empty with the exception of a pedestal, which was used in former times as the throne of the local territorial deity, identified by Gergan’s informants as Dorje Chenmo (rDo rje chen mo).33 Spots

33 See Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma, 1917”, this volume, pp. 175. A small temple—built on top of the remains of the cella dedicated to this local protectress—is still in use up to the present day (Figs. 26–27).
of colour in the small room, as described by Gergan, seem to have disappeared and also the halo behind and above the throne mentioned in his account was not visible to the author in 2009.\textsuperscript{34} The age of the throne is unclear and also its original function. Archaeological information might help in the future. The niches of the ambulatory around the cella contain further remains of halos (Luczanits 2004) indicating that there must once have been sculptures for worship during circumambulation, perhaps protector gods. The latter were no longer visible to the author either.

\textbf{The Veranda}

From the existence of sections of the ambulatory that project from the level of the temple (ca. 2.8 m, Quentin Devers, verbal communication) we can relatively safely conclude that there was once an entrance hall or a niche, recalling the entrance hall at Tabo (cf. Kalantari, “Hārīti and Pāñcika at Tabo”, this volume, Fig. 3, p. 303).\textsuperscript{35} In general, the size and complexity of the temple suggests that the entrance to the temple may once have been protected. At Nyarma characteristic holes on the entrance wall can be identified, confirming this hypothesis. Typically, the timber beams of a vestibule are positioned in holes of this type and position, indicating a covered space in front of the main hall. However, according to Devers, the age of these holes is uncertain. In addition, recesses on the uppermost zone of the wall can be observed—although not as pronounced as in front of the lateral temples—serving as a further indication of a former roof in front of the main hall. Due to the fact that the entrance wall underwent massive modifications it is impossible to arrive at a final conclusion on this point. Closer examination of the floor in this area is necessary in future to arrive at a better understanding of the original shape of the entrance hall, and it could perhaps reveal the bases of columns.\textsuperscript{36} This entrance space may have once been protected by a wooden "portal-wall" comparable to the monumental wooden structure of the Khochag lHa khang chen mo temple, although the latter was perhaps never free-standing, as can be concluded from the relatively unaltered condition of its surface. Considering the width of this space at Nyarma, the existence of a wooden veranda protecting the façade is more likely, comparable to that found in front of the Alchi ‘Du khang’s entrance wall combined with a courtyard. At Alchi, however, the side-walls of the veranda are projections of the temple’s side walls, which is not the case at Nyarma. At present we have to rely on typological comparative information until we can obtain further detailed data from this site.\textsuperscript{37}

\textsuperscript{34} Kozicz (2007: 41) writes about fragments of paint, but a documentation of these is unknown to the author.

\textsuperscript{35} Of interest for a comparison in future research is also the veranda and courtyard attached to the rajavihara in Parhāsapura (cf. Kak 2002: 53).

\textsuperscript{36} According to Quentin Devers (verbal communication) the original wall projected 2.8 m in front of the temple. On both sides, the end of the wall is still there and the coat is still visible, showing that the wall was not destroyed in order to be extended. The later extensions were built directly against the original wall without modifying it. There are two tiny walls projecting from the ambulatory wall: however, the way they are preserved does not permit any conclusion as to whether they are original or not.

\textsuperscript{37} Archaeological research (Quentin Devers, verbal communication) cannot identify traces on the top of the entrance wall showing recesses, that is, the
Though little can be said about the shape and, of course, nothing about the interior programme of this space at Nyarma, the entrance hall at Nyarma is an important early example of a consistent spatial and iconographical theme in Western Himalayan temples. It constitutes a component of a specific type of temple design and overall spiritual programme. The Tabo main temple (which perhaps had a comparable ritual function to the Nyarma main temple), with the dominant theme of the entrance hall and its interior painted programme intact, is a paradigm for the role of this space, reflecting an early stage of a tripartite system of entrance hall, main hall and sanctum. This spatial configuration is an expression of a specific, early Buddhist iconographic programme and of ritual practices of the period (see Kalantari, “Hārītī and Pāñcika at Tabo: On the metamorphosis of the protective couple in early Western Tibetan Buddhist temples”, this volume, pp. 301–325).

Typically, in the entrance halls of Tabo and Shalu in Central Tibet (the latter has the most complex form; ca. 1030) lay assemblies and didactic images are shown together with “lower spirits” and Indic deities in their function as protectors, headed by local territorial deities who watch over the portal to the sacred space of the mandala. The donors or ruling elites are depicted as engaged in ritual actions and in various forms of devotion, perhaps commemorating the consecration of the temples.

The entrance wall of the Tabo sgo khang (or entrance hall) features a Wheel of Life as prescribed in the Mūlasarvāstivāda Vinaya concerning the decoration of the entrance hall of a temple flanked by a representation of the Buddha in bhūmisparśamudrā. The accompanying text encourages the conversion to Buddhism and the following of the teaching of the Buddha. Another important function is related to the consecration of the temple as depicted at Tabo. The related rituals, perhaps carried out in this transition zone between the mundane and the sacred sphere, also appear to have involved rituals appeasing indigenous spirits depicted on the entrance wall of the Nyag cave temple at Khartse and in the corridor of the Zhag cave, and inviting the local spirits to act as guardians. Such rituals are mentioned in relevant tantric Buddhist texts (Kriyāsaṃgraha), which describe efficacious actions before erecting the temple and generating the mandala (cf. Gu ge Tshe rig rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 413–414).

On the level of devotional practice, the tripartite structure also appears to reflect specific forms of Buddhist devotion, namely the practice of offerings, typically taking place in the entrance hall, which has a public function, and the courtyard in front. Lay persons were usually not present in the main hall during ceremonies by the

---

26. The lha khang above the old sanctum with the local protectress as the focus of devotion: nun of Nyarma and ritual offerings (C. Kalantari, 2009).

38 The space of the entrance hall occupies an important position in the symbolism of the temple’s structure and ritual life comparable to a narthex in Byzantine tradition.
monastic community. Donor depictions on the opposite side of the consecration scene in the Tabo entrance hall perhaps reflect such a form of devotion (cf. Kalantari, “Hārīti and Pāñcika at Tabo: On the metamorphosis of the protective couple in early Western Tibetan Buddhist temples”, this volume, Fig. 6, p. 305).

In contrast to the simpler longitudinal ground plan at Tabo, where the devotee is led through the spaces of increasing sacrality along a horizontal axis, the practitioner at Nyarma is first led from the entrance hall to the ambulatory path around the inner core of the sacred site. He then enters the main hall, from where he can proceed to the sanctum, which lies hidden behind the main icon in the main hall. There, a clear separation of the entrance hall plus ambulatory path and the main hall-cum-sanctum can be observed, perhaps reflecting different ritual functions and practices of devotion, recalling Vajrayāna perceptions of sacred space as tools for the spiritual path, as already mentioned. The addition of a large courtyard in front of the main hall in later periods flanked by side temples that can be reached from this open space is an indication that the public function of the temple reflected in the entrance hall continued in later periods and was even expanded.

In contrast, in the later monastic Buddhist tradition religious culture was transformed into more systematised forms with centralised layouts of assembly halls. Here the programme of the former entrance hall is partly depicted in a condensed form above the portals as shown at Khartse in the Nyag cave temple, and later integrated into the outer spheres of the mandala depicted on the side walls of temples such as in the Nako Lotsāba lha khang. The entrance hall appears to have gradually lost its (iconographic) importance, coinciding with the tendency towards single-chamber centralised rooms with shallow niches at the rear end of the temple opposite the portal. In the evolutionary history of spatial unification of temples all dimensions of space are integrated into the overall programme. In this new development the temple’s accoutrements—including the ceilings as vertical openings to heaven as shown at Dungkar and Zhag—represent the Buddhist system of the universe (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 421–422).

The theme of the veranda is a constant feature during various phases. An interesting example is the Alchi Sumtsek, which Luczanits (2010) described as three superimposed temples each with a veranda. A comparable construction appears to have existed at Nyarma (cf. Kozicz 2010b: fig. 6, IT 1, IT2).

The complex architectural layout of Nyarma only features a niche in front of the temple façade (perhaps protected by a veranda as found inter alia at Alchi) reflecting the spatial, iconographic and ritual tradition of the entrance hall but in a different shape. However, the fact has to be acknowledged that Nyarma is typologically more closely linked to Lower Ladakh and Kashmir, and also that Tabo was a minor foundation. Accordingly, the meaningfulness of comparative studies between Tabo and the three great royal foundations (Nyarma, Khorchag and Tholing) is somewhat restricted.

With regard to the evolutionary history of West Tibetan temples, the Nyarma gtsug lag khang stands typologically between the gtsug lag khang of Tabo and the Alchi ‘Du khang. While Nyarma shares with Tabo the mixed function of assembly hall and shrine for public and congregational worship featuring a longitudinal shape with a horizontal hierarchy plus a cella-cum-ambulatory, it also has features typical of structures in Lower Ladakh—namely an ambulation path around the temple and projecting niches in the ambulatory around the shrine. In contrast, the ‘Du khang at Alchi—of a later phase—has the usual tripartite system of a shallow entrance hall or niche, main hall and shallow sanctum featuring a configuration around the old sanctum with the local protectress as the focus of devotion (C. Kalantari, 2009).
Vairocana on its main and side walls, thus oriented virtually towards all the cardinal directions. In these later phases a separation of cultic functions is observable, as also shown in the Nyarma Temples 3 and 4 (facing each other; see the article by Quentin Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh” this volume, Figs. 21–24, p. 211).

The ambulatory paths around this core complex at Nyarma have a corridor with a niche to the south (see Fig. 4). It is likely that there was also a niche on the northern side, thus forming a symmetrical arrangement of side extensions, which is a contrasting feature to Tabo but which several authors have compared with Alchi. In addition, at present there is a courtyard with lateral temples in front of the main hall. We can conclude from the interpretation of architectural remains that do not belong to the original concept, while he includes those flanking the main hall do not belong to the original temple and that, due to the different composition of the bricks (see Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 205), the niches flanking the main hall cannot be safely attributed to the earliest structure (ibid: Fig. 15, p. 208). Thus an interpretation of its meaning in the context of a discussion of the evolutionary history of the oldest remaining structures does not appear to be useful.

The Overall Programme

Important information on the iconography of the three major royal foundations are given in literary sources, in particular in the mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (cf. Vitali 1996: 259ff.). According to these sources the deity on the throne of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang may have represented Buddha Dipamkara (the Buddha of the Past). This theme often occurs in Gandhāran art and in Ajanta, but it appears to be highly unusual in the iconography of early Western Himalayan art. A configuration of a single Buddha or a group of the Buddhas of the Three Ages presiding the iconography was a common programme in Central Tibet in the 11th century. Examples are in the temples of Yemar (g.Ye dmar) and Thig phyis (Southern Tibet; cf. Neumann 2008). The latter features Buddhas of the Three Ages flanked by the Eight Bodhisattvas on the side walls, while sculptures of protectors on the entrance wall guard the portal, and there is a stūpa at the centre. The comparatively early (9th century) Buddhist temple at Keru in the ‘On valley features Śākyamuni, flanked by bodhisattvas and large protectors on the entrance wall (cf. Jahoda and Kalantari 2009, and Jahoda and Kalantari, “Power and religion in pre-modern Western Tibet”, this volume, p. 37). Of interest is also a 14th-century Tibetan Buddhist historiography describing the erection of the Samye (bSam yas) temple, according to which there is a self-organized image of Śākyamuni flanked by the Eight Bodhisattvas on the ground floor of the great Central Cupola temple (dBu rtse chen po), while the upper storeys feature Vairocana and Sarvavid Vairocana in their respective centres (Sørensen 1994: 376–78). A comparable hierarchic stratification of spaces can perhaps be found at Nyarma.

The same sources also say that the future Buddha Maitreya was the main image at Khörchag (Vitali 1996: 259) while the Buddha of the Present, Śākyamuni, is represented at Tholing (ibid: 258). Thus the three temples may have once been connected in terms of an overall spiritual programme featuring a triad consisting of the Past, the Present and the Future Buddha. This may have shaped a supra-regional sacred topography as earlier suggested by C. Jahoda and Tsering Gyalpo (verbal communication; see also Jahoda, “The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladak’”, this volume, pp. 286–287); however, the identification of underlying textual sources is necessary to define the religious-doctrinal context of such a configuration. Thus while the iconographic ensemble is unusual in this region, the idea of ensembles of temples defining a territorial order is a topos in Tibetan culture. Exemplary, as Sørensen and Hazod (2005) have shown, are the Border Tamig Temples of the dynastic period, with Lhasa at their centre, as described in a Tibetan chronicle by Nel pa Pandita (ca. 13th century; cf. also Uebach 1987). This constellation of temples is at the same time an emblem of the civilising of the untamed land, embodied as a demoness (Sørensen and Hazod 2005: fig. 94). While the throne at the western end of the main hall at Nyarma perhaps once accommodated a Dipamkara (Mar me mdzad) image.

---

40 Concerning the date of Temples 3 and 4, the star-shaped and the rectangular buildings have “old” brick sizes (i.e. indicative of early periods), but according to Devers they may stem from different phases; the stūpa temple is also old, but if the stūpa positioned in the niche is original cannot be said with certainty according to archaeological research (ibid.).

41 In his article Kozicz (2009: 18) proposes that the niches flanking the main hall do not belong to the original concept, while he includes those flanking the courtyard, although they can safely be excluded.

42 At Pariḥasapura the vihara quadrangle is preceded by an open courtyard and an open veranda (Kak 2002: 53). A flight of steps afforded an entrance, to a certain extent recalling the raised position of the courtyard at Nyarma.

43 I am grateful to Eva Allinger for discussions on this topic. In this context Yarlung stūpas, forming groups of the three sacred stūpa-domes (*bum gsum), classified according to the trikhyo, are also of interest. They represent iconographic ensembles defining a territorial order. They also represent complex multi-storey structures with internal shrines (cf. Sørensen and Hazod 2005: 103).

44 The position corresponds to that of the Vajradhātu Vairocana, as the centre of the Vajradhātu mahāmandala in the zone between assembly hall and
the shrine chamber may have originally represented the highest spiritual level. As a consistent feature from the earliest phase in the 10th century onwards, in Western Tibet religious orientation was dominated by religious traditions with the presence of Vairocana presiding over the programme as seen in the Tabo sanctum (in the early form as a meditating Vairocana)\(^46\) and in the Nyag cave temple. As already mentioned, the spatial layout alluding to the shape of a stūpa with lateral niches projecting from the side walls of the ambulatory path provides this space with a cosmic dimension. Another consistent feature of the hierarchisation of the programme in this phase is the concept of three bodies of the Buddha—reflecting main ideals of Mahāyāna Buddhism—described by Schopen (1997: 258) as “each thought of in ever-increasing abstract terms; that finally, the real Buddha was thought to be ‘the Dharmakāya’ which has no flesh or blood or bones”. While the walls in the entrance hall or in the assembly hall may have been once adorned with images of the nirmānakāya (the “apparitional or emanational body”, the sambhogakāya may have been represented by the Buddha (Dipamkara) and bodhisattvas in the main hall, while the dharmakāya, the “absolute body” of the Buddha, his teaching, and the highest sphere of wisdom is perhaps related to the sanctum, in which Vairocana may originally have dwelled, representing in a particular context the absolute nature of a Buddha (Luczanits 2004: 2).\(^46\) Although this must remain a speculation, the symbol of the dharma-body par excellence is the stūpa. The stūpa, and related spatial types, as a cosmological symbol of and substitute for the Buddha, is of course the architectural form par excellence to represent the dharmakāya.\(^47\)

The evolutionary history of early Buddhist temples in Western Tibet is a complex process of transferring traditional building types from India, Kashmir and Central Tibet and their translation into a unique local idiom. The latter was constantly transformed under the influence of changing religious ideas, forms of worship, the context of donorship and artistic interactions. These processes need to be examined further from a multi-disciplinary approach in the future.\(^48\)

... materialised in architecture in Western Tibet. Different suggestions in this direction have been made by Kozicz (2007, 2009, 2010 a, b) and Feiglstorfer (2010, and “The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, this volume, pp. 225–257).

Linrothe (1996) tried to interpret the overall programme of the Alchi Sumtsek as a mandalas site. One cave temple in the Dungkar (Dung dkar) site, and the Great Alchi stupa feature mandalas realised as a three-dimensional configuration carved into the ceiling which alludes to such conception of space, but concentrated on the ceiling only.

Concerning the overall spatial arrangement of the gtsug lag khang Kozicz (2007, 2009, 2010a, 2010b) analysed the iconometric patterns based on a proportional system superimposing the layout of the “Main Temple” (gtsug lag khang) and the ‘Stūpa Temple’ and a smaller structure (the two latter are of a later date). His formal studies on proportional relations led him to the assumption of an abstract “mandalic” design as the basis of the main temple’s layout. Kozicz’s models are based on earlier assumptions by Tucci (1988b [1935]) and Khosla (1975, 1979), who were among the first to pose the important questions of the underlying proportional systems, the symbolism of Western Himalayan temples and the question of architecture as materialisation of religious ideas. Rob Linrothe (1996, 1999) was the first to analyse the iconographic programme of the Alchi Sumtsek (Ladakh) assuming that the underlying conception is the cosmological topography of the mandala.

With the help of a survey of the ground plans of different building complexes Kozicz (2007) was able to demonstrate a proportional system based on a grid of squares of equal size. On the basis of the latter he developed ideas concerning the symbolism of space. He proposed a vertical arrangement of spaces in the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, which could simultaneously be perceived as a mandala if one imagines the single spaces shifted along the main axis and superimposed shaping a single structure with the sanctum in the centre.

It is well-known that in Indian philosophy mathematics is regarded as an expression of the structure of the universe and a tool to shape a link between man and the universe. Accordingly, cosmological symbolism and proportionate systems play a crucial role in Tibetan temple architecture. Stella Kramrisch, an eminent scholar of Asian art (1887–1993), who studied art history at the University of Vienna, was a pioneer in the study of the form and meaning of Indian temple architecture. In her monumental work The Hindu Temple (1946), she defined the sources and basic concepts of Indian temple art. According to her mainly text-based analysis, all the architecture is a representation of the cosmos, and its principles are based on the same plan, the Vāstupuruṣa mandala, and proportionate measurements around which are gathered the multitudes of architectural themes. See also Michael Meister (1989) on Śāastric traditions in Indian arts their relation to actual practice based on plans and built structures.

Previous studies in the field of West Tibetan temple architecture to a certain extent lack the dimension of historicity of built forms and their symbolisms. Future studies on the meaning of the building forms need to combine formal studies with analyses of the internal programme. It is significant to note that none of the early West Tibetan temples’ interior decorations represent fully...
The Three Major Foundations in Context

In this preliminary summary, characteristic features with regard to the artistic remains of the ensembles of the three major foundations can be observed. At Khorchag two structures may stem from the earliest period (i.e. the founding phase in the 10th century or beginning of the 11th century). One of them, the lHa khang chen mo, has a Maitreya statue as a cultic centre—as mentioned in sources—while the sanctum of the Jo khang temple is occupied by the “Three Jobo Silver Brothers” (jo bo dngul sku mchad gsum). However, the original program perhaps featured a monumental Avalokitesvara. The Jo khang has a tripartite, longitudinal structure comparable to the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, with a cultic centre at the south end with a niche and an entrance hall recalling that of Tabo. No sculptures from the earliest phase have so far been found, and until now the monumental wooden door frame of the lHa khang chen mo has been considered as the only remains from the early period. However, during field research in 2010, paintings from the earliest phase were re-discovered on the walls of the ambulatory in the Khorchag Jo khang as well as a niche projecting from the rear wall. The newly discovered wall-paintings are not only the largest remains of paintings from the earliest phase of the West Tibetan kingdom, they also feature the first known mandala configuration in a geometric shape in the period of the Second Diffusion of Buddhism in the region, featuring the Eight Bodhisattvas surrounding a central Buddha. Distinctive painting styles (of outstanding technical and artistic quality suggesting royal workshops) also appear to be indicative of this early group of temples. The ambulatory paintings under discussion represent a unique artistic tradition with strong Newari elements reminiscent of mid-11th century book-paintings from Nepal (Kalantari 2012a: 113). Small fragments of early paintings in the Gyatsa temple of Tholing, which hitherto were thought to be the only early paintings extant from the West Tibetan kingdom, appear to show comparable stylistic features. However, the remains are too small to arrive at a final conclusion at this point. Certainly, both painting styles differ from contemporaneous paintings in the entrance hall at Tabo. The latter represent a different local stylistic idiom related to early Tibetan art in Central Tibet, which emerged in the 9th century and is first identifiable in the region in a stone stele at Purang (Jahoda and Papa-Kalantari 2009).51

We can thus find significant indications of shared characteristics and innovative features that appear to be distinctive of the major royal foundations. The fact that the constructions, paintings and woodcarvings at Nyarma, Khorchag, Tholing and Tabo were royal commissions indicates not only that some of the best available craftsmen in the realm were involved in their creation but that also new aspects of building forms adapted to the religious demands were being developed as well as complex combinations of complementing temple types and functions. In an attempt to define the context of the earliest temples at Nyarma, the tradition of royal foundations of outstanding Buddhist temples in Kashmir in particular, predating Nyarma, is perhaps relevant. The well-preserved portal at Khorchag52 is particularly interesting for the artistic context of the tradition of toranās in this region. The magnificent door frame is closely related to the rich and lasting tradition of wooden temples in Himachal Pradesh. The Khorchag portal and its complex spatial layout clearly demonstrates the various contributions of the rich religious-cultural and “material” milieu of Himachal Pradesh and Kashmir in the Trans-Himalayan regions near the Tibetan plateau, giving impetus to the development of independent and creative artistic traditions in the Western Himalayas from the 10th century onwards.53

All the artistic media discussed in this short description of the three complexes reflect a high level of artistic and technical skill, monumentality, and an intense exchange with centres in north India, preserved so far belonging to the original decoration of temples from the West Tibetan kingdom. Significant in the Gyatsa paintings is the wavy outline of the eyes, with high eyebrows and the characteristic shape of the mouth. Aureoles can also be seen on the walls of the Gyatsa at Tholing in addition.51 The spatial layout of the Tholing Gyatsa temple is unique, with a centralised layout and a central space around which are chapels facing in the four cardinal directions.52 Concerning the cultural-religious context of the woodcarvings, the portal’s programme at Khorchag and the early paintings in the entrance hall at Tabo are characterized by the fusion of Hindu, non-Buddhist and Buddhist religious ideas.53 As wall-paintings do not play an important role in wooden temple art, it does not surprise that wall paintings at Khorchag just discussed show completely different stylistic characteristics and appear to derive from different artistic traditions and from different regions in Nepal.
Nepal and Kashmir. Perhaps one may imagine a situation of local monastic workshops with the continuous input of masters from the Indian plains, Nepal and Kashmir working together. These workshops under the guidance of Tibetan masterminds defining the spiritual programme and the spatial layout had the genius to integrate very diverse elements in an original way, thereby creating a distinctive, indigenous cultural-religious expression that contributed to the renaissance of Buddhism in the Western Himalayas.54

Bibliography


54 In a short closing remark it should also be delineated that the significance of the—still impressing—site of Nyarma would make it urgently necessary that the temples be protected and preserved.


Christian Jahoda

On the Foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh*

Despite its significance as a major historical and archaeological religious site attesting to the appropriation of Indo-Buddhist civilisation in Ladakh around the turn of the 10th/11th century CE,¹ no detailed comprehensive and comparative study of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma² has yet been carried out, a circumstance that is certainly also due to the fact that the majority of the original structure has long been ruined. There are only a small number of works that deal with Nyarma, such as publications by David Snellgrove and Tadeusz Skorupski (1977, 1980), Jampa Losang Panglung (1995 [1983]), Roberto Vitali (1996) and Gerald Kozicz (2007, 2010, 2014). Most are confined to certain aspects of the archaeological remains and architecture of Nyarma and provide a partial (re-)evaluation of various historical evidence relating to this site.

Based on field research on the archaeological, architectural and art historical remains of the site and the discovery of a hitherto unknown substantive report, including drawings and measurements, by Joseph Gergan from 1917, the archaeology, architecture, art and religious traditions of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang are discussed in distinct contributions in this volume.³ The gist is a reassessment of the archaeological, architectural and art-history evidence, with the aim of arriving as far as possible at a sound reconstruction of the main temple or gtsug lag khang in its original setting and the contemporary religio-political context from an integrated interdisciplinary perspective comprising archaeological, architectural, art-history and historical approaches. Based on this and in addition to these findings, the present contribution looks into the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang from an historical social anthropological view by re-evaluating relevant textual materials and through a comparative analysis of the historical processes during the period in question.

The earliest references to Nyarma as one of the first and major ground-breaking Buddhist foundations in the period of the Later Diffusion of Buddhism (bstan pa phyi dar) in mNga’ ris skor gsum are found in religio-historical texts and inscriptions. The Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po⁴ is probably the oldest

¹ See Seyfort Ruegg 2010 for a discussion of this process in a wider historical context of the creative absorption of Buddhism in Tibet.
² Throughout the text, the popular modern spelling Nyarma is used. In Tibetan sources, various spellings are found, such as Myar ma (Rin chen bzang po nam thar, f. 29b2), Nyar ma (Nyang ral chos byung B: 463.13; lHa bla ma ye shes od kyi nam thar rgyas pa, see Tsering Dronshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 140; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 305 and Do rgya dBang drag dgo ri 2013: 22), Nya mar (Nyang ral chos byung A: 336.1.2) and Nyer ma (gDung rabs zam ’phreng, cited in Yo seb dGe rgan 1976: 338.16).
⁴ Of this biography, a couple of what are known as medium-length versions (nam thar ‘bring po, a designation found at the end of these texts) have come down to us which agree to a large extent with one another in terms of content and structure despite some significant variations in terms of language, orthography and certain details of the account. In addition to these explicitly designated medium-length versions, several shorter versions exist whose extent is about half of that of the medium-length versions or even less (see, for example, CBM 1977: 230-278 and Tucci 1988: 103–121). It is not clear whether
and also most reliable source in terms of the validity of the historical information contained in it.⁵ In the various extant versions of this

they can be identified as short or abbreviated versions (nam thar bud rot po). The only example of such an abbreviated version is contained in CBM 1977: 147–229, which is an extract from a history of mGur gyi mgon po and in fact much longer than the medium-length versions. Tucci referred to a short or “modest” version which consisted just of a few folios that came into the possession of Joseph Gergan in 1926 (and which he made available to August Hermann Francke) (Tucci 1933: 53; Tucci 1988 53).

According to this and other information, it was only in 1926 “when Francke was ‘enabled to study the biography of this famous lama, which had been discovered, copied and translated by Joseph Gergan.’” (cited from Francke’s manuscript of his Preface to Shuttleworth 1929 [...]). This accords with Shuttleworth who mentions in his unpublished work ‘History of Spiti’ that ‘R(in chen bzang po)’s biography [...] was found in 1924/5 [...]’ (Jahoda 2007: 372, n. 35).

The version possessed by Gergan and used by Francke is not available at present. Tucci considered it as an abbreviation of a longer version, such as the medium-length version sent to him in 1932 from Poo in Upper Kinnan (held in the Tucci Archive of the ISIAO in Rome; see Rin chen bzang po nam thar). Questions related to the possible origin of these short or ‘concise’ versions remain to be clarified, as well as other questions of interest in relation to the middle-length version authored by Ye shes dpal from Khyi thang (see also Martin 2008: 17, n. 12).

The existence of a long or extended version of Rin chen bzang po’s biography is mentioned in the medium-length versions, where it is referred to as nam thar chen mo. So far, this long version has not come to light, although its existence was indicated to the author by several informants in Western Tibet in 2010.

Unpublished versions are Gu ge’i Khyi dang ba dpal ye shes, Lo tsha tsa ba rin chen bzang po’i nam thar (see under Rin chen bzang po nam thar in the bibliography), 58 folios, dbu can MS, Tucci Archive, ISIAO, Rome, shelf number 654; see De Rossi Filibeck 2003: 330) which is mainly used here. Zhang zhung ba Chos dbang grags pa’s Gins can gyi skad gyis smra ba thams kyi gtsug gi rgyan lo chen thams cad mkhyen pa rin chen bzang po’i nam thar sryn an dngags pundra ri ka’i phreng ba, 6 folios, woodblock print (Arnye Machen Institute, MCLeod Ganj, see Martin 2008: 30–47), in addition also Gins can gyi skad gyis smra ba thams kyi gtsug gi rgyan lo chen thams cad mkhyen pa rin chen bzang po’i nam thar sryn an dngags pundarka’i phreng ba, 6 folios, dbu can blockprint (Tucci Archive, ISIAO, Rome, shelf number 653; see De Rossi Filibeck 2003: 330); Vig rten mig gyur lo chen rin chen bzang po’i nam thar gsal de’bs, 9 folios (incomplete text), dbu can blockprint (Tucci Archive, ISIAO, Rome, shelf number 655; see De Rossi Filibeck 2003: 330). Further unpublished versions are mentioned in the Drepung Catalogue 2004 II: 1529 and 1563.


⁵ Some scholars like Tucci and Snellgrove expressed doubts regarding the antiquity of this biography or treated the existing versions as later redactions (see Tucci 1932: 27–28, 55; see also Tucci 1988: 27–28, 55; Snellgrove 1987: 477–478). Dan Martin holds this text to be “genuinely old and preserved today in a form reasonably close to the original” (Martin 1996: 177 [n. 24]) and “dating as early as 1060 A.D.” (ibid.; see also Martin 2008: 17). Jampa L. Panglung expressed the view that although the existing written versions cannot be dated to the 11th century, they contain a high degree reliable information going back to the 11th century (Panglung), personal communication, Vienna, May 2002) (see also Jahoda 2006: 23–24, n. 20).

⁶ Mar yul refers to the area which can be identified to a large degree, at least with its core region, with that of the later kingdom of Ladakh (see also Vitali 1996: 156). Vitali (2005: 99–100) defined it with reference to the 13th–14th centuries as the “upper side” of the region of La dwaqs, with a dynasty or lineage of rulers centred in Shel (also She ye). Vitali (“Territory and Trends in land control”, this volume, p. 2) follows Cunningham, Francke and Pelliot in identifying Mar yul with “Mo-lo-so” (Moluosuo) in the report by the 8th-century Chinese pilgrim Xuanzang (see also Zeisler 2010: 432–436 for a critical discussion and the likelihood of this identification). Pre-12th-century Tibetan inscriptions evidence for the use of Mar yul seems to be missing. Also it does not occur in Yig rnying, where, however, yul is only used with reference to countries outside of stod mNga’ ris and only a few place names appear, without reference to a specific region. In Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes, Mar yul appears as the main inherited land which dpal gyi mgon received from this father skyid ide Nyi ma mgon. The reference to Mar yul, which appears five times in this chapter seems to refer to an area along the river valley plain of the Indus. She ye (Shel) and dpal dug (dpal thub) are explicitly mentioned as places belonging to Mar yul (see Gu ge Tshe ring gyi rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris as as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text (with variant readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda)”, this volume, pp. 101, 103, 104, 109, 111). According to Nils Martin, Mar yul (stod) is mentioned in a 12th-century manuscript of Matho in Ladakh as the region where the temple of Nyarma was erected. His assumption that “by the 11th or 12th century, mar yul designated primarily a region lying along the Indus River, extending westward at least down to Alchi” (2019: 222, n. 105) seems reasonable.

⁷ Various spellings such as Kha char, Khwa char, Kha phyar, Kho char, etc. are found in historical texts.

⁸ Also in this case various spellings such as Pu hrangs, sPu hrangs, Pu hrang, Pu rang, sPu rangs appear in written sources. According to Dan Martin, “the name of Pu-hrang, like many other place names in Western Tibet, is in pure Zhang-zhung language. The pu means ‘head,’ while the hrang means ‘horse.’ Hence it corresponds to Tibetan ‘Rtso-mgo, and means the ‘head’ [of the river which comes from the mouth of the] ‘horse.’” (Martin 2008: 47).

⁹ As stated by Vitali, this description that the gtsug lag khang consisted of a central temple surrounded by four major buildings, to which eight lesser buildings—gling phran, “temple divisions”—were attached, agrees with the notion found in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (see Vitali 256–257, n. 374; see also Vitali 1999: 119). In later sources, such as in Chos byung mkhas pa’i yid p’rogs, this classification is also found and specific names are given for these temples, which is different from the corresponding classification in the Tho lding rten deb (see Vitali 2012: 17). Variant spellings such as mTho gling (used, for example, predominantly in the Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od; see Tsering
said that their foundations were laid on one (that is, the same) day. It is also mentioned that after these three big gtsug lag khang were completed, their religious consecration (rab gnas) and inauguration (zhal bsro) was executed in a detailed and extended manner. At a later time, referring to years or even decades after the work on the temples was finished and the opening ceremonies had been carried out, it is reported, that the sPu rang people said, that “the Great Translator was here and founded our temple and consecrated it”, while the Gu ge people said that he stayed at Tho ling and the Mar yul people said the same of Nyarma (Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 92). It seems that this piece of information was part of oral traditions which were perhaps based on early contemporary oral accounts and which were still prevalent at the time when Gu ge Khyi thang pa composed the Great Translator’s rnam thar. In the version of the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po from Pooch, which in style and language possibly represents one of the earliest redactions available at present, the description of the foundation of Nyarma and the other two gtsug lag khang is given in the following words:

de nas bla chen po lha Ides/ kha char kyis gtsug lag khang bzhengs su gsol pa dang/ gu ge ru ‘phibs pa dang/ lha bla ma ye shes ’od kyis tho ling gi gling phran bcu gnyis bzhengs pa dang/ mar yul du myar ma bzhengs pa dang/ gsum gi smang zhag cig la ‘things pa yin no/10 (Rin chen bzang po rnam thar, f. 29a3–f. 29b3)

After that the Great Superior One (bla chen po)11 lHaIde requested [Rin chen bzang po] to build the gtsug lag khang of Kha char [‘Khor chags], and [then Rin chen bzang po] went to Gu ge, and [there] the Twelve Isles of Tho ling were built by the Royal Lama (lha bla ma)12 Ye shes ’od, and in Mar yul Myar ma [Nyarma] was built [by him?]. The foundations of [these] three were laid on one [that is, the same] day.

Based on the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po contained in CBM this passage was translated by Roberto Vitali as follows:

de nas bla chen po lha Ides/ kha char kyis gtsug lag khang bzhengs su gsol pa dang/ gu ge ru ‘phibs pa dang/ lha bla ma ye shes ’od kyis tho ling gi gling phran bcu gnyis bzhengs pa dang/ mar yul du myar ma bzhengs pa dang/ gsum gi smang zhag cig la gtsugs pa yin no/ (CBM 1977: 88.5–89.2; different readings are underlined)

“Then bla.chen lHa.lde requested [Rin.chen bzang.po] to build Khwa.char gtsug.lag.khang. [The latter] went to Gu.ge and bui lt the twelve mTho.liding gling.phran.-s w i t lha.bl.a ma Ye.shes.’od. Th e y built Nya.rr.ma in Mar.yul, these three. Their foundations were laid in one day.” (Vitali 1996: 262; my emphases).

Vitali’s translation as well as his résumé13 differ from the above one in several points, which is not due to the slight variations or variant readings in the case of a few words. The biggest difference is that, according to his translation, Rin chen bzang po is regarded as having built the Tho ling gtsug lag khang together with the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od, and moreover he also names them as having built the Nyarma gtsug lag khang. In my view, it is necessary to pay attention to the final passage, which mentions that the foundations of the three temples were laid on the same day. This makes it impossible for Rin chen bzang po to have been present in a physical sense at the three places at the same time. In my view, the meaning of the introductory words of the passage cited therefore need to be interpreted with regard to the foundation. It is basically a statement about the builder (in the sense of the initiating person/power-holder/donor) of the gtsug lag khang at ‘Khor chags (explicit mention of lHa lde) and the one at Tho ling (explicit mention of Ye shes ’od). In my view this text does not explicitly state who was responsible for initiating the building of the gtsug lag khang at Nyarma, although Vitali’s version of that passage presents the phrase “mar yul du myar ma bzhengs pa dang” as a continuation of the one before (and in relation with Ye shes ’od) is likewise maintainable. The text mentions Rin chen bzang po’s appointment to build the gtsug lag khang in the case of ‘Khor chags. On the basis of the passage

bla ma ye shes’od du mtshan gsol/“. See also Appendix I, p. 290.

10 Gu ge Khyi rang Dzynyanashi 1990: 141 has “… dang gsum gyi mngang zhag cig la btsugs pa yin no/”.

11 For a discussion of this and other titles see Appendix I: A note on some titles of rulers and other members of the West Tibetan royal family according to 10th- and 11th-century inscriptions and the “Old Manuscript” (Yig myiing) from Tholing.

12 According to the Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes’od this was his title upon his ordination as a monk (gceg srog nge rab tu byang ba ni/ lha bla ma ye shes’od di nyid do)’ (see Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 122; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 275). This agrees with Yig myiing, p. 37 (“thar par gshegs te/ lha bla ma ye shes’od du mtshan gsol/”). See also Appendix I, p. 290.

13 In a summarising statement later in the text, Vitali says that “Rin.chen bzang po rnam thar bring.po attributes Kha.char to lHa.lde, Tho.ling and Nyar.ma to Ye.shes.’od, somewhat eulogistically adding that they were all built with the collaboration of Rin.chen bzang.po (p. 88 line 5–p. 89 line 2)” (Vitali 1996: 259).
related relevant oral accounts in this regard (see below), we can assume without much doubt that he was not only responsible for laying the foundation but also for the architectural building activities as well as the final consecration of this temple. In contrast to this, in the case of Tho ling, it is (only) said that he went there, and from this we can assume that he was involved in the (building and/or other) works there at least at some point in time.\(^{15}\) As regards Nyarma, in the above passage relating to the foundation, based on a strict reading of the text, nothing is really stated explicitly about the initiator/donor or about Rin chen bzang po’s participation.

A few lines further on in the same text, again taking the *Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po* from Poo in as reference, the topic of the foundation of the three *gtsug lag khang* and Rin chen bzang po’s participation in each case is continued, this time with the focus on the phase(s)\(^{15}\) after the work on/in all three *gtsug lag khang* was finished and the ritual consecration and formal opening had been concluded:

\[
de\text{nas pu hrangs kyi} 'khā 'char/ \text{gu ge'i} \text{tho ling/ mar yul gi myar ma dang gsum ste/ } \text{gtsug lag khang chen po gsum po de}\]

\(^{14}\) Trusting the accepted chronology based on his biography that Rin chen bzang po went to Kashmir some time in 996 and returned with sculptors only in 1001 (see Vitali 2003: 59, 60), his involvement in the construction and even decoration works could only have been very limited.

\(^{15}\) While it is plausible and consistently mentioned in all relevant sources that the foundations of the three *gtsug lag khang* were laid on one day, we have to assume with great probability that the consecration and inauguration, depending on the requirements of the different programmes and the progress of the various building and other activities must have happened at different times. Despite the fact that the events described in these two passages seem to have followed each other closely in time, we have to assume rather the opposite. From the *Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od*, we know that, for example, in the case of the Tho ling *gtsug lag khang*, from the year in which the foundation took place (in Fire Male Monkey year 996) it took eight years to finish the sculptures and the wall paintings (consecrated in Wood Male Dragon year 1004). See Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text,” this volume, pp. 138–140; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 301–305. Later on in the text the consecration (*rab gnas*) of the Great Temple (*Ha khang chen mo*) is mentioned, without any further information, as having happened in the Fire Dragon year 1016, perhaps mistakenly using the element fire (*me*) instead of wood (*shing*). See Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text,” this volume, p. 149; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 320. mNga’ ris rgyal rabs provides another (also Dragon) year date for a consecration or great renovation according to Vitali, Earth Male Dragon year 1028 (Vitali 1996: 53, 109).
As was mentioned above, the founding of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in Mar yul is related in conjunction with that of the gtsug lag khang in 'Khor chags in Pu hrangs and Tho ling in Gu ge. From a comparative perspective it is therefore necessary to include these other temples, and in addition also some more in a number of smaller places in view of the wider related context.

Of course, one has to take into account the respective genre (whether rnam thar or chos 'byung) and perspective (and interest, perhaps even bias) informing a textual source. In the case of the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po, this perspective and interest is, of course, related to the presentation of lo chen's deeds by Gu ge Khyi thang pa Ye shes dpal, one of his direct disciples. Moreover, in terms of his regional or political affiliation it seems to reflect certain priorities and a chronological sequence. Of the three “regions” or “power spheres” (mnga’ ris) under discussion here, Pu hrangs is presented as having been personally more important to him, at least during certain periods of his life, than Gu ge (not to speak of Mar yul). Not only does the making of his “career” appear to have been critically associated from the start with incidents reported to have happened there, but various events are also strong evidence for this. For example, his defeat of a monk (dge bshes), which earned him great respect, took place in sPu hrangs and his appointment as dbu’i mchod gnas and rdo rje blo dpon as well as the receipt of sites in sPu hrangs by lHa lde preceding in the rnam thar the narration of the latter’s request to found the gtsug lag khang at ‘Khor chags as well as the prominent role he seems to have fulfilled in this case. The area where he is said to have founded 108 temples (and that he seems to have favoured for meditational practice) is described as stretching “from Zher sa in Pu hrangs as far as Ho bu lang ka”, which covers a coherent geographical zone along the upper rMa bya gtsang po (Peacock river, Karnāli) and Glang chen kha’ babs (Sutlej) rivers from lower sPu hrangs to the area of present-day Ribba in Kinnaur respectively. sPu hrangs and in particular ‘Khor chags seem to have played also a key role in the later phases of lo chen Rin chen bzang po’s life. Various textual sources as well as oral and festival traditions closely related to the Great Translator can still be found in ‘Khor chags today (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2006: 119f., Jahoda 2012: 42; Jahoda 2015a [2012]: 226).²¹

On account of the evidence contained in the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po, we can conclude that Rin chen bzang po was heavily involved throughout the whole foundation process (laying of the foundation, construction, consecration, inauguration) of the gtsug lag khang at ‘Khor chags, most probably as a result of the leading religious function and support assigned to him by lHa lde. Only after his initial work at ‘Khor chags was finished did he go to Guge, where Ye shes ‘od built the gtsug lag khang in Tho ling (see above). As already stated by Vitali, lHa lde and, of course, Rin chen bzang po receive comparatively much more attention in Rin chen bzang po rnam thar ‘bring po than in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs, while there, in contrast to Rin chen bzang po rnam thar ‘bring po, Ye shes ‘od’s role and deeds are generally highlighted. In mNga’ ris rgyal rabs, Rin chen bzang po is consistently referred to as lo chen or lo tsa ba and, not only due to the longer historical period treated in this text, appears as a more marginal figure (beside many others) whose activities are mainly characterised by (and in fact appear limited to) his work as translator.²²

Comparing the result of this preliminary résumé with the account contained in the Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od,²³ which

²¹ Field research and documentation of these traditions at ‘Khor chags was carried out in February-March 2010 by Hubert Feiglstorfer, Veronika Hein, Christian Jahoda, Christiane Kalantari and Patrick Sutherland (collaborators in research projects located at the Austrian Academy of Sciences in Vienna) in cooperation with Tshe ring rgyal po (Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences, Lhasa).

²² Vitali’s comment is certainly to the point when he states that “mNga’ ris rgyal rabs does not treat Rin.chen bzang.po as a major figure of bstan.pa phyi. dar in sTod. Little is said about lo.chen in the text, while the members of the Gu.ge Pu.hrang royal line are given priority, probably because this work is a rgyal.rabs, not focusing on religious exponents as would a chos.byung.” (Vitali 1996: 240).

²³ See Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011 and Do rgya dBang drag rdo rje 2013.
centres to a large degree on the deeds of this ruler and later Royal Lama, who was largely responsible for the political and religious reorganisation or Buddhist transformation of historical Western Tibet in the late 10th/early 11th century (between the 980s up to 1019 when he died in Tho ling according to this source), it emerges that the information contained there with regard to the foundation process of the three *gtsug lag khang* is quite precise in the case of the Tho ling Khang dmar dpe med lhun gyi grub pa’i (*gtsug lag khang*) but that it is rather silent about that of the *gtsug lag khang* in ’Khor chags and in Nyarma, in particular concerning the questions of its founders/initiating donors as well as lo chen Rin chen bzang po’s participation. Despite the fact that Rin chen bzang po’s work as translator and his participation in the introduction (and dissemination) of various tantric cycles finds some consideration, there is no explicit mention in the case of a particular temple as to the where, what and how of his contribution(s). On the basis of a future critical study of the texts he translated (and partly also revised) over the years (in fact, decades) which are found in the *bKa’* *gyur* and *bsTan* *gyur*, it will perhaps become possible to reconstruct and assess the influence of his work in greater detail that has so far been possible, also with regard to the temporal dimension.24

The *Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od* states that the foundations of the Tho ling IHa khang chen po (also the variant IHa khang chen mo) occurs were drawn in a Fire Male Monkey year (996)25 and—in the consecutive passage resembling one in Vitali 1996: 59.13–16, 113 where it appears embedded in a *khang chen mo* occurs) were drawn in a Fire Male Monkey year (996)25 from foundations of the *Pil chog*26—which is the area of the Spiti valley—and thirty from Mar yul. In a later passage, the consecration of the above-mentioned temple (*Iha khang de nyid*) is said to have taken place in a Wood Male Dragon year (1004), an event that is mentioned in the text immediately after the invitation of the relevant *sa chog* rituals is referred to as the centre of the peculiar power of this location (*sa’i dmigs*) (cf. Labdrón 2003: 319, n. 26; Gardner 2009: 4). From the consecration ritual until the performance of the concluding “eye-opening” ritual, a great festival was celebrated for twenty-one days. The temple was named Tho ling khang dmar dpe med lhun gyi grub pa’i gtsug lag khang. In the centre a statue of the Great Lord of the Teachings (*bsTan pa’i gtsos che sku*), Buddha Śākyamuni was built. From the Fire Monkey year (996) until the Wood Male Dragon year (1004), for full eight years, in each of the “Isles” (*gling*) murals and statues were made of the assembly of deities of the Vajradhātu *mandala* and Dharmadhātu *mandala* according to the Yoga Tantras. It is said that furthermore (one can assume during the same period mentioned) the Yid bzhin lhun gyis grub pa’i gtsug lag khang was built at ’Khor chags in Pu hrangs, with about a hundred pillars, diverse “Isles” and a statue of Maitreyanātha (Byams pa’i mgon po) at the centre. Moreover, at Ta po in Pi ti (*Spit*) a *Iha khang*, the ornament of *Icog* la, in Mar yul the *Ila khang* of Nyarma, with a statue of Buddha Dipamkara (Sangs rgyas mar me mdzad) residing in the centre, the border-protecting *gtsug lag khang*, such as the *Ila khang* of Ka nam in Ngag ra, the *Ila khang* of Mo na in Drug pag, the *Iha khang* of *sPu* in Rong chung and furthermore in Pu hrangs *Tsha ba sgang and others, more than 100 *Iha khang* and countless *mchod rten*, silver, gold and bronze statues were made.27

In *Nyanga rol chos ’byung*, this phase of erecting new temples is narrated as immediately following the assassination of Ye shes ‘od’s *mchod gnas* Ser po:

*Spu* rang du kho char dang/ pil cog du rta po dang/ mar yul du nya mar dang/ bu rig su sha ling dang/ gu ger tho ling gtsug lag khang chen mo bzhangs so / gtsug lag khang de’i lcags ri cig gi khongs na ghan jin rwa btsgus pa’i *Iha khang drug bcu rtsa bzhi yod do/* (*Nyanga rol chos ’byung A* 336.1.1–4)28

See, for example, Weinberger 2003: 317ff.

25 See Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 138; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 301.

26 Cf. Yo seb dge rgal 1976: 182, n. 2 for an explanation of the meaning. “The terms sPhI Icog, sPhI Icog la, sPhI sde Icog la or Icog la’i sde found in inscriptions and texts (see Petech 1997: 252, n. 20) presumably reflect a larger historical (administrative) regional unit to which Tabo also once belonged, as attested by the expression Pil Cog du rTa po ([*Nyanga rol chos ’byung* A 336.1.1–2].” (Jahoda 2015b: 24). Cf. *Nyanga rol chos ’byung* B: 461.11 which has the spelling sIl chog tu rTa po.27


28 Apart from some variant readings, *Nyanga rol chos ’byung* B 461.10–12 has the same text: sPu [rang] du kho char dang/ sIl chog tu rta po dang/ mar yul du nyar ma dang/ dBi rig tu sha ling dang/ gu ger tho ling gtsug lag khang chen po bzhangs so/ gtsug lag khang de’i lcags ri cig gi khongs na ganydzira btsgus pa’i *Iha khang drug bcu rtsa bzhi yod do/*.
In sPu rang Kho char ['Khor chags] and in Pil cog rTa po [Tabo] and in Mar yul Nya mar [Nyarma] and in Bu rigs Sha ling and in Gu ge the great Tho ling gtsug lag khang were built. Within the boundary wall of this gtsug lag khang, there are sixty-four lha khang with multi-lobed spires (gan dzi ra).

In contrast to Roberto Vitali, who says that "Nyang.ral chos.byung [...] credits Ye.shes.'od with the impulse that led to the foundations of Kha.char in sPu[rang], rTa.po in Sil.chog (sic for Pi.Cog), Nyar.ma in Mar.yul, Sha.ling in dBu.rig (sic for sPu.rig) and Tho.ling in Gu.ge" (Vitali 1996: 261; my emphasis) and that "Nyang.ral chos.byung (p. 461 lines 10-12), after introducing the episode of Ye.shes.'od obtaining the Dong.rtse.wang gold-fields from the Sa.sang 'Brog.mi-s, records the founding of his main temples" (ibid.: 261, n. 384; my emphasis), in my view the text does not explicitly mention who built these temples or who was the responsible or initiating person/power-holder/donor. In my understanding, the intention of the statement is merely to narrate the sequence of events and which temples were built but not by whom. Aside from the mention of a temple in Pu rigs, however, it is remarkable to note the reversed order of giving the places where temples were built, even without using the words lha khang or gtsug lag khang, except for the great gtsug lag khang at Tho ling, which is described with some valuable details.

Neither Rin chen bzang po nor any other religious figure is explicitly mentioned in direct relation to these building activities. An interesting detail is contained a few lines further on, in the context of reporting the invitation of numerous panditas from India and Kashmir and the results of their work, when, as an introduction to his translation activities, Rin chen bzang po seems to have been involved with the temples, except for the great gtsug lag khang at Tho ling, which is described with some valuable details.

There is some evidence which makes it possible to determine a relatively narrow period for this event and the panditas' activities in Western Tibet. These three are also named in the Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes 'od with other panditas and scholars (mKhas pa) such as Śraddhākaravarman and Padmakaragupta, who were invited to Western Tibet and who, by their translation work, were responsible for introducing various new religious cycles. They are mentioned there—in the same order and slightly different spellings—in the context of Rin chen bzang po's work as translator etc. and his contribution to the introduction of new doctrinal cycles (chos skor).22

22 Cf. Nyang ral chos 'byung B 463.13–15: Mar yul sum mdo'i chos 'khor nya mar/ paังdi ta Buddha shi shan tam ba dang/ Buddha pa la dang/ Ka ma la gub ta gsum dang mjal nas zhu ba phul/ chos mang po bsgyur'.

21 The designation as chos 'khor or chos skor was used for monasteries where the words of the Buddha and related commentaries were translated by learned spiritual masters from Kashmir and India together with Tibetan scholars. The new teachings were obviously also taught at the newly erected temples, which were decorated with up-to-date religious cycles (chos skor). See also Shastri 1997: 336. bSam yas in Central Tibet is considered the earliest example of chos 'khor in the sense of a place where the holy dharma was spread and an excellent location where translators and panditas translated many Buddhist teachings or cycles of esoteric instructions (see Dung dkar tshig mdzod chen mo 2002-2015). See also the classification of the three temples of IHa sa, bSam yas and Khra brug as chos 'khor gnas gsum (discussed by Sørensen and Hazod, in cooperation with Tsering Gyalbo 2005: 4).

20 At the chos 'khor of Nya ma in Mar yul sum mdo, the panditas Buddhaśrīsantipā[da], Buddhapāla and Kamalagupta met and then a request was made to them. Many religious writings were translated.

From this piece of information (which suits the one contained in his translation activities), Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung") (Zhang zhung gi lha

In Mar yul, Sa ling in dBu rig, (sic for sPu rig) and Tho ling in Gu ge” (Vitali 1996: 261; my emphasis) and that “Nyang ral chos byung (p. 461 lines 10–12), after introducing the episode of Ye shes’od obtaining the Dong rtse wang gold-fields from the Sa sang Brog mi s, records the founding of his main temples” (ibid: 261, n. 384; my emphasis). In my understanding, the intention of the statement is merely to narrate the sequence of events and which temples were built but not by whom. Aside from the mention of a temple in Pu rig, however, it is remarkable to note the reversed order of giving the places where temples were built, even without using the words lha khang or gtsug lag khang, except for the great gtsug lag khang at Tho ling, which is described with some valuable details.

Neither Rin chen bzang po nor any other religious figure is explicitly mentioned in direct relation to these building activities. An interesting detail is contained a few lines further on, in the context of reporting the invitation of numerous panditas from India and Kashmir and the results of their work, when, as an introduction to his translation activities, Rin chen bzang po seems to have been involved with the temples, except for the great gtsug lag khang at Tho ling, which is described with some valuable details.

There is some evidence which makes it possible to determine a relatively narrow period for this event and the panditas’ activities in Western Tibet. These three are also named in the Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes’od with other panditas and scholars (mKhas pa) such as Śraddhākaravarman and Padmakaragupta, who were invited to Western Tibet and who, by their translation work, were responsible for introducing various new religious cycles. They are mentioned there—in the same order and slightly different spellings—in the context of Rin chen bzang po’s work as translator etc. and his contribution to the introduction of new doctrinal cycles (chos skor).22


21 The designation as chos ’khor or chos skor was used for monasteries where the words of the Buddha and related commentaries were translated by learned spiritual masters from Kashmir and India together with Tibetan scholars. The new teachings were obviously also taught at the newly erected temples, which were decorated with up-to-date religious cycles (chos skor). See also Shastri 1997: 336. bSam yas in Central Tibet is considered the earliest example of chos ’khor in the sense of a place where the holy dharma was spread and an excellent location where translators and panditas translated many Buddhist teachings or cycles of esoteric instructions (see Dung dkar tshig mdzod chen mo 2002–2011). See also the classification of the three temples of IHa sa, bSam yas and Khra brug as chos ’khor gnas gsum (discussed by Sørensen and Hazod, in cooperation with Tsering Gyalbo 2005: 4).

20 At the chos ’khor of Nya ma in Mar yul sum mdo, the panditas Buddhaśrīsantipā[da], Buddhapāla and Kamalagupta met and then a request was made to them. Many religious writings were translated.

From this piece of information (which suits the one contained in his translation activities), Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung" (translation activities, Rin chen bzang po is characterised or referred to as the "statue-maker from Zhang zhung") (Zhang zhung gi lha
Like Śraddhākāravarman, Buddhaśrīsānti[pāda?] and Kamalagupta are known as direct collaborators of Rin chen bzang po. They are mentioned as having assisted him in the translation of a considerable number of texts (cf. the lists in Gangnegi 1994: 104ff.). Śraddhākāravarman, Kamalagupta and Rin chen bzang po collaborated, for example, in the translation of Anandagarbha’s *Extensive Commentary on the Śrī Paramādya* (dpal mchog dang po’i rgya cher bshad pa) (see Weinberger 2003: 88). One can therefore assume that their activities fell into the lifetime of Rin chen bzang po and that their translation activities can be dated most probably in the late 10th or, more probably, in the early 11th century. Furthermore, one can also conclude that the Buddhist complex that existed at Nyarma at this time, certainly the gtsug lag khang founded in 996, was not only conceived but most importantly functioned as a chos ’khor in the above-mentioned sense. Information that Nyarma served early on—according to certain historical sources immediately after its foundation—as a place where Kashmiri panditas went for summer retreat and were requested to spread the Buddhist teachings is also contained in Dung rabs zam ’phreng (cited in Yo seb dge rgyan 1976: 338.18–19) and in the rNam rtse version of rGyal rabs gsol ba’i me long (cf. Vitali 1996: 576, n. 989).

The way in which the temple at Nyarma as well as the other early contemporary temples are referred to in terms of classificatory designation (gtsug lag khang, chos ’khor, lha khang) and individual name in trustworthy historical sources shows some remarkable differentiations: the main divisions are between a group of mostly three or four temples in major places whose foundations were laid in 996 and which are commonly referred to as gtsug lag khang or gtsug lag khang chen po and a group of temples in smaller places and a third group of border-protecting temples (referred to as mtha’ ‘dul gtsug [gyi] lag khang or lha khang). It is obvious that these divisions are based on a hierarchical spatial concept which has the most important temple(s) in the centre of a major area, less important temples in smaller places or in the centre of smaller areas and temples specifically dedicated to the protection of these areas in peripheral border zones.33

In the *Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po*, as mentioned perhaps the earliest relevant source in this respect, the temples in ’Khor chags, Tho ling and Nyarma are collectively referred to as the three great gtsug lag khang, which are located in the three different areas or political territories of sPu hrangs, Gu ge and Mar yul. A strong territorial notion or relationship is also visible in the *Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od, Nyang ral chos ’byung and mNga’ ris rgyal rabs*, also in the case of the temples in smaller places. Nevertheless, as we have seen in the passage cited above from Rin chen bzang po rnam thar, f. 29a3–f. 29b3, there is an important “internal” differentiation in referring to these three temples that is based on their religious programme and design, in particular the main (central) cult statue.

As in most other sources, in the *Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po* the temple in Tho ling is referred to as the “Twelve Isles” (gling phran bcu gnyis), in respect of its particular structure and obviously also paramount importance, while Nyarma—in contrast to ’Khor chags (referred to as gtsug lag khang)—is without any specific designation. In the *Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od*, highest priority is given to the foundation of the temple at Tho ling, which, in the context of laying the foundations, is first referred to as Tho ling lha khang chen po and simply as lha khang de nyid but after its consecration with its full individual name and classificatory designation as Tho ling khang dmar dpe med lhun gyi grub pa’i gtsug

---

33 In 996 (Fire Male Monkey year) altogether eight major foundations were founded simultaneously: the main monasteries (gtsug lag khang) of Tholing, Nyarma, Khorchag and Tabo as well as four smaller ones, the monasteries and temples at Phyang (Pi wang/Phyi dbang), Kanam (Ka nam), Ropa (Ro dpag) and Pu (sPu). The latter three in present-day Upper Kinnaur were designated as ‘border-protecting temples’ (mtha’ ‘dul gyi gtsug lag khang). Presumably only the four bigger ones were designated and functioned as chos ’khor. See Vitali 1996: 53–60, 109, 148.
lag khang. Additional details are given, such as the central statue of the Great Lord of the Teachings (bstan po’i gtso che sku). Basic analogous information is also provided with regard to the temple at ‘khor chags in Pu hrangs—the Yid bzhin lhun gyis grub pa’i gtsug lag khang, with about one hundred pillars, diverse “Isles” and a statue of Maitreyanātha (Byams pa’i mgon po) at the centre—and the temples at Tabo and Nyarma, both referred to simply as temples (Iha khang). Tabo, which in this case is listed before Nyarma, is referred to as the temple of Tabo in Spiti, the ornament of lCo gā la (pi ti ta pod lco la rgyan gyi lha khang). Nyarma is mentioned as the temple (Iha khang) in Mar yul, with a statue of Buddha Dipamkara (Sangs rgyas mar me mdzad) in the centre. In the case of the border-protecting temples (collectively designated as mtha’i ‘dul gtsug lag khang as in the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po and mNga’ ris gyal rabs), the individual location of these temples, referred to on this instance only as Iha khang, is given in terms of place and area or territory (for example, Iha khang of Ka nam in Nga ra, the Iha khang of Mo na in Drug pag, the Iha khang of sPu in Rong chung). Nyang ralchos’byung mentions also Sha ling temple in Bu rigs as an early foundation.

Appendix I: A Note on Some Titles of Rulers and Other Members of the West Tibetan Royal Family according to 10th- and 11th-Century Inscriptions and the “Old Manuscript” (Yig rnying) from Tholing

The title bla chen po given to King lHa lde in the Biography of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po (see, for example, Rin chen bzang po mam thar, f. 29a3-f. 29b3, and CBM 1977: 88.5–89.2) is not unique. It appears to have been used, also in the form of bla chen, in later (post-14th-century) sources (such as the Blue Annals) commonly as a purely religious title, most probably as an abbreviation of bla ma chen po (lit. ‘great bla mon’). In the earlier historical context of 10th–12th-century Western Tibet, the usage and understanding of this title seems to have been closely connected to and ostensibly introduced as part of the regulations of the code of laws (rgyal khrims) issued by King Khri lDe srong gtsug btsan,34 which specifically related to the royal family. Roberto Vitali’s translation of the relevant passage contained in mNga’ ris gyal rabs (Vitali 1996: 55.4–5) reads as follows: “Given that in antiquity there had been a law by which, unless the king had died, the heir apparent (rgyal.sras) could not be enthroned, a custom was introduced according to which, if his (the heir apparent’s) father became a monk (bla.chen), [his] son was to be appointed mnga’.bdag.” (Ibid.: 110). According to this view, the usage of this title was therefore intimately connected to the rules of succession that were set up in accordance with the religio-political system of governance established by King Khri lDe srong gtsug btsan together with other leading members of the royal family. The author of mNga’ ris gyal rabs seems to have more or less followed the usage of bla chen/bla chen po in this sense consistently throughout the whole text. An exception is represented by rTse lde, who is referred to as mnga’ bdag bla chen of Guge (Ibid.: 72, 123). Vitali does not think that in this instance bla chen implied that rTse lde was a monk (Ibid.: 123, n. 113).

As we have seen, several West Tibetan rulers were designated as bla chen in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ris in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi gyal rabs.35 This was stated not only in the case of bla chen rTse lde, who is said to have ruled over Guge (Gu ge la mnga’ mdzad), but for earlier times with regard to bla chen po sTong (an ancestral ruler of related Zhang zhung clans) (see ibid., p. 77) as well as later with regard to Khri ‘bar btsan (early 13th century), also known as sTag tsha Khri ‘bar (see ibid., p. 83). Of the latter it is stated in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi gyal rabs that he was called bla chen po sTong tsha at the instance of the appointment of his son to the throne of mNga’ ris and that he was reputed to be an incarnation of Byang chub sems dpa’ zla ba rgyal mtshan.

The information contained in an untitled fragmentary text from Tholing (designated as Yig rnying [Old Manuscript] by the late Guge Tsering Gyalpo) serves to shed more and better light on this and other titles. This document, which may date from the 12th century, tells the history of the early (Central) Tibetan rulers until the collapse of the empire in the 9th century and continues with the rulers of the West Tibetan kingdom up to King rTse lde (d. around 1088 according to Vitali 2003: 66). Initial studies of this important source are by Patshab Pasang Wangdu (2012a, 2012b) (the latter includes a pale black-and-white facsimile of the manuscript) and by Khyungdak (2013). Recently this document was also discussed by David Pritzker (2017). I am basing my reading of this work on the original photographic documentation of this manuscript (in colour) by Guge Tsering Gyalpo in 2012 in situ at Tholing.

A preliminary analysis of this text shows that the titles and terms of reference denoting a certain kinship status for the rulers

34 Also named Khri lDe srong btsan, Khri lDe srong gtsug btsan and Khri Srong lDe gtsan (see Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes’od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, pp. 124, 132, 148, 149; see also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 278, 290, 320, 321), identical with Srong nge, known as Ye shes’od after his ordination as a Buddhist monk in 989.

35 See Gu ge Tshe ring gyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris as as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi gyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 83.
mentioned appear to have been used in a very specific way. The text seeks to provide a strong individual and genealogical profile of the rulers, in particular for those close to the present time when the text was written, for the 10th and 11th century period, in addition also of further prominent members of the royal family. For this reason, together with the relatively close chronological proximity to the West Tibetan rulers of the 10th and 11th centuries and due to the probability that it was written by someone close to or perhaps even belonging to the West Tibetan royal family, the information and historical views contained in this document seem highly likely to express an authoritative elite (self-)view of the royal family. The stress on conveying the correct (time-)specific authoritative titles of the members of the royal family, partially also with related explanations, is quite obvious. The specific choice of the names of the rulers as well as the spelling of their names seems to represent the common or prevalent use in oral contemporary contexts.

Four earlier rulers, two of the Central Tibetan dynasty are designated as ancestor (myes Srong rtsan sgam po, ca. 605–649; mes Khri Srong lde brtsan, 742–ca. 800 [Yig mying, p. 11 and p. 19], fittingly with their necronym or valedictory, posthumous names (see Dotson 2016: 27). Also the founder of the West Tibetan kingdom is referred to as ancestor (mes Khri skyil Iding [Yig mying, p. 33])—perhaps also a necronym or valedictory, posthumous name, nickname or the name as he was remembered. His three sons, in later sources commonly named as sTod kyi mgon gsum (the “Three Protectors of sTod”), are also collectively referred to as mes mched gsum, the “three ancestor siblings” (Yig mying, p. 33–34).

Other rulers of the Central Tibetan dynasty are referred to as prince (tha sras), such as Iha sras Mu ni btsan po (reigned ca. 797–798, remembered as Mu ne btsan po; see Dotson 2016: 27) and Khri (accession name of rulers), such as Khri lde gTsug brtsan (704–754),37 Khri gTsug ldeRal pa can (plus added nickname) (reigned 815–841) and Khri Dar ma Wi dur brtsan (phonetic rendering of ‘U’i dum brtsan/brtsan, commonly remembered through his nickname Glang dar ma, reigned 841–842).

The last ruler of the Central Tibetan dynasty, bearing the accession name Khri ‘Od srung brtsan (reigned ca. 846–ca. 893), is referred to as Lord (rje) gNam lde ‘Od srung (Yig mying, p. 29), his nickname or name through which he was remembered posthumously (Dotson 2016: 27). The designation rje is applied to nearly all other rulers of the Western Tibetan royal family, such as bkra shis mgon (Yig mying, p. 34), lHa lde brtsan (Yig mying, p. 42), dBu ‘byams pa (that is, ‘Od lde) (Yig mying, p. 44), and rTse lde brtsan (Yig mying, p. 49). In addition, they are referred to mostly as mnga’ bdag (ruler), for example, rje mnga’ bdag bkra shis mgon, rje mnga’ bdag chen po (great ruler) dBu ‘byams pa. The title rje is also given to other members of the royal family who, as far as we know, were never in a position as rulers, such as rje bla ma chen po btsun po (Lord Great Lama Monk) Zhi ba ‘od. This means we have to differentiate between rje as a status designation for a member of the royal family and the following title associated with a specific function, such as great lama (bla ma chen po) or monk of divine descent (Iha btsun [pa]), (great) worldly ruler (mnga’ bdag, mnga’ bdag chen po) and (former) ruler with superior status (bla chen po). Based on the case of King lHa lde, who is first named in the text as lHa lde rtsan, the ruler, the nephew (of King Srong nge/Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od) who had been given (“offered”) power over worldly affairs; “myi chos kyi mnga’ dton mnga’ bdag phul,” Yig mying, p. 37)38 and for a later period (after he had handed over worldly power to ‘Od lde, most probably in 995 or 996)39 as rje bla chen po (Lord Superior One). lHa lde brtsan, a clear differentiation is to be made between bla ma chen po and bla chen po. The latter title (rje bla chen po) is also given to King rTse lde rtsan. This leads back to what was stated above in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs with regard to mnga’ bdag bla chen rTse lde and with regard to bla chen po STag tsha in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs. In agreement with a custom that had been introduced—most probably by King Khri IDe srong gtsug btsan (later known as Iha bla ma Ye shes ‘od)—the royal heir apparent’s father received the title bla chen (Great Superior One) as soon as (his) son was appointed mnga’ bdag (ruler).40

36 A phonetically similar name for skyid lde Nyi ma mgon—Khri skyid Iding—is quoted by Vitali 1996: 158.
37 He is also characterized as younger (gcung) although in a chronologically wrong setting.
38 Thus Yig mying clearly expresses the view that worldly power was handed over from Srong nge to his nephew lHa lde (and not to his elder brother ‘Khor re). Cf. n. 60 on the possible temporary administering of power by ‘Khor re instead of Srong nge from ca. 986 to ca. 989.
39 According to Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs, King lHa lde became a monk at the age of thirty-six and took the name Dharmaprabha (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, ‘Relating the history of mNga’ ris as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text’, this volume, p. 109), thus adding new chronological information on this incident (also reported in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (see Vitali 1996: 61.12–13, 115, 243; Vitali 2003: 61). This piece of information, together with other chronological considerations, makes his abdication in 1024 as suggested by Vitali (2003: 61) highly unlikely. See also Appendix II: Some Thoughts on the Chronology of the Rulers of the West Tibetan Kingdom Between the Years 879 and 1042.
40 I suggest translating sngar yab rgyal po ma drongs par rgyal sras rgyal sar mi’ don pa’i khriams yod pa la khong gi yab bla chen du ston nas/ sras mnga’ bdag tu bkur bo’i srol stod/ (Vitali 1996: 55) in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs thus: While earlier [relating to the period of the Central Tibetan dynasty or at least pre-Ye...
Due to lack of sufficient evidence, for example on the real power associated with the title bla chen, its exact meaning and function can hardly be determined. According to written evidence, the available information on the four rulers who held this title (IHa lde, rTse lde, sTag tsha) or who can be suspected of having held this title (Ye shes ’od), records that they were active—according to the available information seemingly exclusively—as founders of Buddhist monuments (temples and monasteries), as sponsors of monks and as donors of precious religious objects. Thus, while they seem to have handed over political power entirely to the respective ruler (mnga’ bdag), they must have had ample access to and/or control over land and economic resources for financing these religious projects as well as over personnel (recruitment of monks, provision of estates and related lay subjects). Their clearly visible focus on religious activities in some of the main religious centres of the kingdom (such as Tabo in Spiti, Shel in Mar yul, Tholing in Guge, Khorchag in Purang) with an exemplary function, visibility and publicity across the whole dominion must have been associated with sufficient socio-economic power and supported or legitimated by the attribution of a unique superior title and status of a transcendental nature. sTag tsha was regarded as the incarnation of a revered bla ma. Ye shes ’od was at least posthumously considered a bodhisattva.

Taking the historical inscriptions and captions in the Entry Hall (sgo khang) and the so-called Renovation inscription in the Assembly Hall (du khang) at Tabo monastery as the authoritative (self-)representation of the leading members of the West Tibetan royal family, it is clear that there the social and religious status of those depicted is given in particular through titles in the case of the royal family, it is clear that there the social and religious status of those depicted, first in terms of their actual social status—descent (royal family, clan) and function/title (only in one exceptional case of an outstanding figure of highest religious status does descent seem not to have been mentioned)—and second through their actual personal names (see Luczanits 1999: 105–113; on these inscriptions see also Jahoda 2017: 142–144; Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 85–89; Jahoda and Kalantari 2019: 215–220). Unfortunately, the first part of the caption identifying Ye shes ’od (.. chen po ye shes ’od) was no longer clearly readable in 1991, when Christian Luczanits photographed and documented it. While Iha bla ma is not supported by the remaining traces (see Luczanits 1999: 105), reading dge slong chen po (great monk)—also in view of the generally frequent occurrence in further captions—or dpal chen po (Great Glorious/Holy One)—echoing Ye shes ’od’s designation as skyes bu chen po in Yig rnying, p. 37—is not excluded by the remaining traces (considered on the basis of Christian Luczanits’ 1991 photographs in the Western Himalayan Archive Vienna).

In Yig rnying the common denominator in the references to actual and former rulers as well as to members of the royal family in leading religious positions seems to be rje (lord); rje mnga’ bdag bKra shis mgon, rje bla chen po IHa lde brtsan, rje mnga’ bdag chen po dBu ‘byams pa, rje bla ma chen po Zhi ba ’od, and rje bla chen po rTse lde rtsan. The only exception is Iha btsun pa Byang chub ’od. However, in the Renovation inscription at Tabo he is named as rje rgyal lha btsun (Lord-Ruler Royal Monk) Byang chub ’od and also as chos rgyal rje btsun (Dharma King Lord-Monk) Byang chub ’od (see Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999: 17), that is, at a time when he was holding highest power over religious and worldly affairs. According to the convention followed in Yig rnying, it would make sense to find rje also as initial reference in the case of Ye shes ’od. Reading the letter ja (with the superscript ra and ‘greng bu perhaps gone) instead of da (which “seems fairly clear” according to Luczanits 1999: 105, but also clearly slightly differs from the final da in ’od in the line below) an initial rje is not entirely excluded by the remaining traces. The next letter(s) which “can be read in the range of slob to bla ma” according to Luczanits (ibid.) can be read with much probability as a subscripted lha. However, while the reading slob chen po seems highly unusual, the reading bla ma is possible although in view of the space taken by the letters in the words chen po and ye shes in the first and ’od

---

41 Personal names in historical Western Tibet were subject to change, following alterations in the social or religious belonging and/or status. They were therefore associated with performative aspects (rite de passage), and biographical stages, in particular also in the case of kings, as has been demonstrated by Dotson (2016: 27), who differentiates the following categories: birth name, accession name, necronym/valedictory name and nickname/remembered as.
1999: 222). Based on the "no doubt weakened by illness, but still alive" (Scherrer-Schaub in the colophon dates most likely from 1019, when Ye shes 'od was colophon and the inscriptional evidence from Tabo, Tholing and has been analysed by Cristina Scherrer-Schaub on the basis of a to as a bodhisattva (byang chub sems dpa’i yis yul chung ni shu rtsho gzig ‘phul nas mchod pa las/ gnas gzhhi nyi shu rtsho gzig/ yul chung nyi shu rtsho gzig tu lo cig khuyu ‘khor la/ mdo’ mangs cha gsum gsum/ yum cha bdun bdun la sogs pa/ sku gsung thugs kyi rten dpag tu med pa zhabz rtag mdzad do/” (Rin chen bzang po rnam thar, f. 34a2–34b2; my emphasis). These events relate to the time when Ye shes ‘od fell seriously ill and passed away before the Great Translator (who conducted the funeral rites) was able to see him. Obviously related to this, the Great Superior One (bla chen po) lHa lde and the Great Superior One (bla chen po) the Bodhisattva—certainly no other Ye shes ‘od who must have ordered this donation prior to his passing away (as in the case of the donation for consecrating a Shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyn pa stong phrag brag pa in advance (see below)—offered twenty-one minor domains (yul chung) dedicated to worship, together with many other offerings.

The titles given to Ye shes ‘od in various contemporary and later sources and the question of whether he was already referred to as a bodhisattva (byang chub sems dpa’) while he was still alive has been analysed by Cristina Scherrer-Schaub on the basis of a colophon and the inscriptive evidence from Tabo, Tholing and Pooh. She concluded that the reference as byang chub sems dpa’ in the colophon dates most likely from 1019, when Ye shes ‘od was “no doubt weakened by illness, but still alive” (Scherrer-Schaub 1999: 222). Based on the Extended Biography of the Royal Lama, 1019 seems to be have been the year when he passed away. As regards the question of when he received the title lha bla ma (Ye shes ‘od) it is said in Yig rnying (p. 37) that this happened after he had embarked on the path of liberation (in Earth Female Ox year 989 according to the Extended Biography of the Royal Lama). In view of the narrative in Yig rnying, which continues with the handing over of worldly power to his nephew lHa lde rtsan (which must have taken place prior to his, most probably in the same year), the reference to Ye shes ‘od as bla ma or lha bla ma can be assumed to have started from 989.

The Renovation Inscription at Tabo, which starts by referring to Ye shes ‘od as mes byang chub sems dpa’ (ancestor bodhisattva), names him in addition as having been born of divine descent from a lineage of bodhisattvas (lha’i rig ’khrungs byang chub sems dpa’i gdungs) (thus retrospectively exalting his status), also honours him as king (ruler over men, myi rje), personified by/acting in the way of a god (lhas mdzad) and protector of all black-headed people (mgo’ nag yongs kyi mgon), does not name him as lha bla ma, bla chen po or bla ma chen po. This is not surprising since, in the understanding of the author of the inscription, the bodhisattva status attributed to him must have seemingly outdated such “preliminary” titles of his earlier worldly form of existence. Practising the conduct of a bodhisattva and proceeding towards highest enlightenment is also mentioned as the motivation of the noble donor (chos rgyal rje btsun Byang chub ‘od) and explicitly formulated as the desired goal of all lay people (see Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999: 18, 23).

To understand the full range of the religio-political connotations of the bla chen (po) title, the related customs and social import, further enquiries are necessary, which should also be extended to include the actual contemporary inheritance practices and status culture (also on the basis of visual materials, such as portraits). It is, however, quite clear that bla chen po is a title with the additional

42 Cf. Snellgrove and Skorupski (1980: 106–107) where it reads similarly at the end of chapter 8: “lha bla ma ye shes ‘od snyung bar gcig nas/ myur du zhal rnal du byon pa la/ snyung gzhis drag po gcig gis zin nas zhal ma rnal lo/ gzung mchod nang song sbyong ba la sogs pa n/ lo tsho ba khong rang gis mdzad do/ ‘bul ba ni bla chen po lHa lde dang/ ‘bla chen po byang chub sems dpa’i yul chung nyi shu rtsho gzig ‘phul nas/ mchod pa la gnas gzhhi nyi shu rtsho gzig/ yul chung nyi shu rtsho gzig tu lo khuyu ‘khor la ma chen ma chang cha gsum gsum/ ‘bum cha bdun la sogs pa sku gsung thugs kyi rten dpag tu med pa’i zhabs rtag mdzad do/” (my emphasis).

43 See Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ‘od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 149: “rabs byun byung zhing (bsnyen par bsdzogs (bsdzogs) nas lo sum bcu (cu) gcig gi bar du sangs rgyas kyi bstan pa’i bdag por gyur nas/ dar rgyas mdzad pa dang/ ston pa sha kya seng ge nyi kho na ltar gyur ta/ de nas mo lug gi lo la mtho gling gzin(s) khang du zhi bar gshegs po/” (after having been ordained for 31 years [he] became the owner of the teaching of the Buddha and spread it, until he became himself like the Teacher, the Lion of the Sakyas [Sākya Simha, an epithet of the Buddha Sākyamuni]. Then [he] passed away in his residence at Tholing). See also Gu ge Pan chen Grags pa rgyal mtshan 2011: 321).
religious connotation of a former ruler after giving up secular power and following either Buddhist vows as a layman or entering the Buddhist order, which endowed him perhaps with an elevated status by way of a particular religious legitimation that went with this title (and inherited tradition). Based on the existing evidence, one can suspect that lHa Ide may have assumed this title at the latest by 995 or 996, when his son ‘Od Ide seems to have become ruler (and he himself was ordained to the dge slong vow, thus perhaps following his uncle’s model) See below, pp. 294–295.

Following the information given in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs for the sons of ‘Od Ide, it cannot be excluded that a differentiation between rule over Purang and Guge and related titles needs to be considered. So lon tsha bTsan srong (commonly known as bTsan skye dgu’i cod paṇ nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text (with variant readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda), this volume, p. 113. and handing over of power did not take place in this generation. According to Vitali (2003: 66) King rTse Ide was murdered around 1088 and dBang Ide (also known as ‘Bar Ide), the son of rTse Ide’s (younger) brother Grags btsan rtse (named lDong rtsa Khri srong, also Grags mtshan Ide in Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs) together with a woman of the Zangs kha clan usurped the throne of Guge at the age of thirteen. This led to the establishment of a separate lineage ruling over Guge, and from then there were different genealogies in Purang and Guge.

Appendix II: On the Chronology of the Rulers of the West Tibetan Kingdom and Their Activities Between 879 and 1042
The current understanding of the chronology of the West Tibetan kingdom, the rulers and their activities was to a large degree established by Roberto Vitali based on his translation and analysis of mNga’ ri s rgyal rabs by Gu ge mkhan Chen Nqag dbang grags pa (Vitali 1996). In an article published in 2003 he compiled a chronology of events in the history of mNga’ ri s, which was based primarily on the information contained in mNga’ ri s rgyal rabs, in addition also on other sources, such as La dabs rgyal rabs, Nyang ral chos ‘byung, rGya Bod yig tshang, Rin chen bzang po rnam thar ‘bring po, Baidür ser po and others. It is the aim of this appendix to present the chronological information contained in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ri s in his Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes and in lHa bla ma ye shes ’od kyi rnam thar rgyas pa (Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od), highlighting in particular those—new or deviating—data that suggest consideration of a different chronological view on certain incidents. In addition, new information on the sequence of certain activities contained in Yig rnying is quoted and finally also a few new conclusions based on a re-reading of Rin chen bzang po rnam thar ‘bring po will be included, with the aim of adding to an overall coherent chronological framework chronology of the rulers of the West Tibetan kingdom and recorded events and activities in the 10th and 11th centuries.

Abbreviations
NR = Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs, f. 123b–f. 137b.
TD = Tsering Drongshar and Jahoda, “The Extended Biography of the Royal Lama Ye shes ’od”, this volume, pp. 121–169.

45 How the relationship in particular between bla chen (po)/former ruler and mnga’ bdag (actual ruler) was defined and practised is entirely unclear due to missing evidence.

46 See Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ri s as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text (with variant readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda)”, this volume, p. 113.

47 See Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ri s as set down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text (with variant readings by Tsering Drongshar and Christian Jahoda)”, this volume, p. 113.
TG = Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the History of mNga’ ris,” this volume, pp. 89–119.

YO = lhA bla ma ye shes’od kyi nam thar rgyas pa, f. 1a–f. 41a.

879 (Pig year):
skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon was born (NR, f. 124a; see TG, p. 95).48

906 (Tiger year):
In the middle autumn month Khyung po Khri lhen skyu se and dGe shing A ring mo were sent to invite dPal ’khor btsan po Khri bKra shis skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon to come to mNga’ ris (NR, f. 127a; see TG, p. 96).

At the age of twenty-eight, skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon went to mNga’ ris stod (NR, f. 124a; see TG, p. 95), together with ministers, monks, altogether fifty people (NR, f. 128a; see TG, p. 99).49

907 (Rabbit year):
From Zhang zhung fifty-one horsemen arrived at the Srid pa

48 The year of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon’s birth is not given by any other sources. The Pig (phag) year given in NR is difficult to determine. It could possibly refer to 891 and 903 but 879 works best in view of the dates of his predecessors, successors and additional chronological context. The dates established for his father dPal ’khor btsan—according to various sources born in an Ox (glang) year (chronologically best fitting is 857), on the throne for eighteen years, most probably between 893 and 910; and assassinated during the second kheng log, which began in gTsang in 905 and lasted approximately until 910 (Vitali 1996: 547–548; see also Hazod 2013: 85, 101–107; who sets the plundering of the tombs of the Tibetan emperors in ‘Phyong rgyas in southern Central Tibet by a number of aristocratic clans for 913, nine years following the outbreak of the kheng log in gTsang and three years after dPal ’khor btsan’s death, an event which marked the end of the imperial era)—also the dates established for ’Od srung (840–893), the father of dPal ’khor btsan and grandfather of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon, would fit with these dates (Vitali 1996: 547).

49 Named among his company are Cang Legs skyes, the son of dPal ’khor btsan’s Great Minister (blon chen) Cang A pho—obviously still active at this time in this function for dPal ’khor btsan and after the latter’s assassination even acting as king (rgyal po) for three years (see Hazod 2013: 104)—as well as members of the ’Bro and Cog ro clans who were also allied with dPal ’khor btsan and active in lhA rtse where the g.Yu rung (g.Yung drung) palace was one of his main residences. Fitting with this, sku mkhar lhA rtse Brag mkhar is mentioned by NR as the place where skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon resided when the invitation to come to mNga’ ris reached him. Also the information that bkra shis brtsegs pa dpal, the younger son of dpal ’khor btsan (and not skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon), conducted the funeral for the father, is a clear indication that skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon was already in mNga’ ris at this time (and did not participate).

Based on the information in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs, which does not mention skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon’s invitation and nor any of the events reported in NR for 906 to 911 when he had brought under his power all territories, Vitali came to the conclusion that skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon “went to sTod following his father’s assassination” (in 910) and that “Thus Nyi ma mgon was not in Pu hrang before 912 or thereabouts, the terminus post quem for the foundation of the mNga’ris skor gsum kingdom” (Vitali 1996: 548).

Fortress of Ra la mkhar dmar in the summer to welcome skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon and his entourage (NR, f. 128a; see TG, p. 99).

908 (Dragon year):
skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon went to the north of Gu ge and made a circumambulation of Kailas (Gangs Ti se) and Lake Manasarovar; going to the valley of sMan nags he went to skyid Ide gling (NR, f. 129b; see TG, p. 102).

909 (Snake year)—910 (Horse year):
As mNga’ ris could not be brought under control, skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon built two temples at skyid Ide gling and established the rituals for the Medicine Buddha (NR, f. 129b; see TG, p. 102).50

911 (Sheep year):
skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon had brought all the territories belonging to Western Tibet under his control (NR, f. 124; see TG, p. 95); ’Bro Seng dkar51 offered the Nyi bzungs palace to skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon and he married his daughter, ’Bro za ‘Khor skyong, upon which mNga’ ris kor gsum was brought under his control (NR, f. 129b; see TG, this volume, p. 102). He gave ’Bro tsha ‘Khor skyong, the daughter of dGe zher bkra shis btsan, to skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon in marriage (NR, f. 130b; see TG, p. 103).52

50 The place skyid Ide gling, which is not mentioned in any other sources as far as I know, seems to be located in the Kailas area. The same is true for the two temples which would thus represent the earliest examples of a Buddhist monument in historical Western Tibet.

51 ’Bro Seng dkar denotes a male member of a clan (or sub-clan according to Vitali 1996: 169) whose personal name is not given.

52 The account of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon’s marriage is not entirely clear. If we do not read this as partly conflicting or variant versions, what is stated here by the author seems to be that ’Bro Seng dkar offered his (in case of reference to a [sub-]clan their) palace to skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon, which together with the marriage of his (their) daughter led to the full control over mNga’ ris skor gsum. The information that dGe zher bkra shis btsan (who was among those who had accompanied him to mNga’ ris stod) gave ’Bro tsha ‘Khor skyong to him in marriage (and not ’Bro Seng dkar) is thus an additional specification. As far as the reasons for this one can only speculate, for example, whether ’Bro Seng dkar (person or [sub-]clan) may have been unable or unwilling for some reason to give his (their) daughter to him in marriage. The information in NR (f. 124a) seems to indicate that skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon actively seized the castle of Nyi bzung and assumed power.

The second part of this account of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon’s marriage agrees with the one in La dawgs rgyal rabs but differs sharply from the one given in Nyang ral chos ‘byung, mentioning a Cog ro Zangs kha ma as his first wife and the mother of his three sons (known as the three sTod kyi mgon). See Vitali 1996: 171–172.
Between 912 and early 920s:
Birth of dPal gyi mgon, bKra shis mgon and IDe gtsug mgon, the three sons of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon from this marriage to 'Bro tsha/za 'Khor skyong.53

Between 913 and early 920s:
Birth of bKra shis mgon, father of 'Khor re and Srong nge.54

937 (Bird year):
skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon passed away at the age of fifty-nine (NR, f. 124; see TG, p. 95).

Between mid-930s and early 940s:
Birth of 'Khor re, elder son of bKra shis mgon.55

947 (Fire Female Sheep year):
Khri lde Srong btsan was born ("Khri lde Srong btsan me mo lug la 'khrungs", YÖ, f. 3b; see TD, p. 124).56

960 or 961:
Birth of lHa lde, the eldest son of 'Khor re.57

53 The dates suggested are calculated following the above-mentioned chronological reading of the account in NR that dPal gyi mgon, bKra shis mgon and IDe gtsug mgon were sons of skyid Ide Nyi ma mgon's marriage to 'Bro tsha/za 'Khor skyong. The birth of the eldest son dPal gyi mgon could have taken place at the earliest in 912 while that of the youngest IDe gtsug mgon should not have taken place later than the early 920s. The latter in view of the circumstance that all received one share of the kingdom from their father, latest in 937 when he is said to have passed away, and assuming that the youngest son was at least thirteen at this time, which makes the early 920s the most likely terminus ante quem for the birth of the youngest son.

54 The date suggested is calculated following the above-mentioned chronological reading of the account in NR, together with the known genealogical sequence of his successors, his elder son Srong nge (most probably born in 947 according to Vitali's [1996: 181–183] analysis and YÖ, f. 3b), followed by IHa Ide, the son of 'Khor re and nephew of Srong nge (and various additional related chronological information).

55 The date suggested is calculated following the above-mentioned chronological reading of the account in NR, together with the known genealogical sequence of his successors, his younger brother Srong nge succeeded by IHa Ide, the son of 'Khor re and nephew of Srong nge (and various additional related chronological information).

56 This explicit chronological information agrees (and thus confirms) that the birth of Srong nge, the younger son of bKra shis mgon, took place in 947. See Vitali (1996: 146, 180–183), who calculated this date on the authority of mNgag 'ris rgyal rabs and other texts as the most likely one (as compared to 935).

57 The date suggested is basically following the above-mentioned chronological reading of the account in NR, together with the known genealogical sequence of his predecessors, his father 'Khor re and his uncle Srong nge and his successor, the son 'Od Ide (and various additional related chronological information). In particular, the date is calculated back on the basis of the information in NR that he was ordained at the age of thirty-six in the presence of the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po, obviously immediately before stepping down and handing over the throne to his son 'Od Ide. Of the latter it is said in NR that in a Bird year he waged war on Ho pu at the age of fifteen, thus obviously already acting as a ruler after having ascended the throne. This could have been earliest according to the reported custom when he was thirteen. Furthermore, the information in historical sources agrees that 'Od Ide was the eldest son of IHa Ide, bKra shis 'od (later known as Byang chub 'od) the middle son, and Yongs srong lde (later known as Zhi ba 'od) the youngest. Vitali calculates the birth of bKra shis 'od as having happened in Monkey year 984 (Vitali 1996: 296, Vitali 2003: 56) based on mNgag 'ris rgyal rabs. For reason of coherence the birth of the eldest son 'Od Ide, reported for a Sheep year (NR, f. 134b), should have therefore taken place before and not after 984 (in Sheep year 995, as derived by Vitali from Baidür ser po [Vitali 1996: 147; Vitali 2003: 58]), accordingly in Sheep year 983. (See also Martin 2019: 204, passim, partly also based on NR, for a different chronological reading of 'Od Ide's activities, all set one or two twelve-year-cycles later.) An important additional argument in support of this hypothesis can be found in Rin chen bzang po rnam thar 'bring po in the use of titles given to IHa Ide (and also Ye shes 'od) in the narrative of their interaction with the Great Translator Rin chen bzang po. In my view there the titles accorded to them are not the consequence of the chronicles fully accord with the related events within a coherent chronological framework. At the first instance where IHa Ide appears, in the time after Rin chen bzang po's return from Kashmir to sPu rang (that is, some time between 988 and 996—most probably in 995 or 996, when he was ordained according to my calculation based on NR, f. 133b; see TG, p. 109), he (IHa Ide) is already named as bla chen po IHa Ide (initially in fact as bla ma chen po IHa Ide; cf. Rin chen bzang po rnam thar, f. 28a3, f. 28b3, f. 29a3, f. 34a2-3), never as mnga' bdag! The most reasonable explanation is that at this time he had already left the throne, and that his ordination in the presence of the Great Translator must have taken place at the latest in 996 (when this one left again for Kashmir). The only other earlier possible date for IHa Ide's ordination, fitting with the calculated possible years for the succession of his son 'Od Ide (995–997), at the earliest aged thirteen, is 995.

58 Not only the titles used for IHa Ide but also for Ye shes 'od and for Rin chen bzang po himself agree with their respective contemporary status in the narrative and chronological sequence in Rin chen bzang po rnam thar 'bring po. Ye shes 'od, who was named Iha bla ma on the instance of his ordination in 989 (as stated by mNgag 'ris rgyal rabs and YÖ, confirmed by Yig rnying, pp. 36–37), is from the first instance of his appearance (in the context of the foundation of Tholing in 996) designated as Iha bla ma Ye shes 'od (Rin chen bzang po rnam thar, f. 29b1, 31a4, 33b3, 41a3), only for the time around his funeral and the dedication of places for his post-mortal worship is he referred to explicitly as bodhisattva (bla chen po byang chub sems dpa').

59 Calculated on the basis of the information in YÖ f. 9b (see TD, p. 132) that he stayed Fire Female Pig year 987 in Pu hrangs, when he was in the eleventh year of his rule (lo bu bcu gcig po).
983 (Sheep year):
Birth of 'Od Ide, eldest son of lHa Ide (NR, f. 134b; see TG, p. 110).59

986 (Fire Female Dog year):
The elder (son) 'Khor re, Khri lde Srong gtsug, the paternal relatives, uncles and nephews (of the royal family) met at Ka pe hrag in gTsang. All learned subjects of Pu Gug (Pu rang Gu ge) were present. It was discussed how to spread the holy religion. After accepting the ordination of Srong nge, the elder was asked to take care of (his) dominion or to administer (his) power (mnga’ skyong bar zhu phul).60 To each one of the two laws a legal document (bca’ yig) was proclaimed (YÖ, f. 9b; see TD, p. 132).61

986 (Fire Male Dog year):
Khri sde (Ide) bSrong btsug brtsan (gtsug btsan) gathered the learned subjects of Pu Gug (Pu rang Gu ge) at Kam pe drag in gTsang. It was discussed how to spread the holy religion in bsTod (sTod) mNga’ ris.

Written versions of the two customs (lugs gnyis) were made (YÖ, 23b; see TD, p. 149).62

987 (Fire Female Pig year):
Following a stay in Pu rang (hrangs) (in the eleventh year of his rule, lo bcu gcig po)63 where Khri lde Srong gtsug btsan made a speech on how to protect the dominion, a temple (gtsug lag khang) was built at mKhar Itag64 of skya ru (YÖ, f. 9b; see TD, p. 132).

988 (Rat year):
Prince IHa 'khor btsan, the younger brother of Khri lde mGon btsan (YÖ, f. 6a; see TD, p. 127; erroneously called IHa lde mgon in YÖ, f. 24b; see TD, p. 150), was born (YÖ, f. 9b; see TD, p. 132).

989 (Earth Female Ox year):
Srong nge was ordained by the great abbot (mkhan po chen po), the elder monk Ku ma ra bha ta, and at once became a full monk with the name Ye shes ‘od (YÖ, f. 10b; see TD, p. 133).

Khri sde (Ide) bSrong (Srong) btsug brtsan (gtsug btsan) was ordained and received the name Ye shes ‘od (YÖ, f. 23b; see TD, p. 149).

Srong nge received the title lha bla ma (Ye shes ‘od) immediately after he had been ordained as a full monk according to Yig mying (pp. 36–37).65

995 or 996:
At the age of thirty-six, amid the great pandita Dznya na dha ra and the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po and many other monks, IHa lde became an ordained monk and took the name Dharma pra bha, meaning Radiance of Dharma (chos kyi ‘od zer) (NR, f. 133b; see TG, p. 109).66

_as the end of a 146-year period when Buddhism was discarded—as suggested by Vitali 1996: 51, 108, 174, n. 236 based on information in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs—is also supported by an account in very similar words in YÖ (f. 6b). The overall description of this period (in particular with regard to mNga’ ris) in terms of (non-Buddhist) practice is less negative or rigorous in YÖ (f. 6b; see TD, p. 128).—dam pa'i chos kyi (kyis) mkhyab cing/ cha bzhag pa'i dus, the time when the holy religion was not widely spread (followed) and relied upon—than in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs—chos kyi phongs pa'i dus, translated by Vitali 1996: 108 “the time when Chos was discarded” (or lacking).

Unless one assumes a scribal mistake this seems to be the most probable interpretation of this passage.

63 According to Bellezza (2010; http://www.thlib.org/bellezza/#/book=/bellezza/wb/b1-1-65/), mKhar Itag may have been a citadel in current rTs a mda’ County.

64 In mNga’ ris rgyal rabs, the date and circumstances of Ye shes ‘od’s ordination are not mentioned. Vitali assumed this to have happened in 988, following his abdication and the birth of his younger son IHa ‘khor btsan, which he calculated for Rat year 988 (Vitali 1996: 234–236; Vitali 2003: 57).

65 See n. 57. 

66 See n. 57.
996 (Fire Male Monkey year):
The foundations of the Tholing lHa khang were laid out (YÖ, f. 15a; see TD, p. 138). (See also YÖ, f. 23b; see TD, p. 149 where this statement is found with nearly the same words again later in the text).

The elder son of Khri Srong btsan (btsan), Khri lde mGon btsan (YÖ, f. 6a; see TD, p. 127, here erroneously called lHa lde mgon), was ordained at Ka ru rgam in the presence of pandita Dharma pha la and lo tsha ba (lo tsa bo) Rin chen bzang po, and received the name De ba râ dza. At this time, eighty-seven subjects devoted to Buddhism were also ordained (YÖ, f. 24b; see TD, p. 150).

997 (Fire Female Bird year):
In the last spring month lha bla mo Ye shes 'od, De ba râ dza and Nâ ga râ dza resided at the hermitage (dben gnas) of Sa (Pa?) rgam.

At the time when the two sons were ordained, two hundred youths from mNga' ris skor gsum who had considerable wisdom, bright intelligence, diligent minds and good hearts were gathered together and liberated (that is, ordained as monks), one hundred from Gu ge, forty from Pu hrangs, theiry from Pil chog and thirty from Mar yul (YÖ, f. 15a; see TD, p. 138).

997 (Bird year):
At the age of fifteen 'Od lde waged war on Hu pu (a region along the Sutlej valley in present-day Kinnaur) (NR, f. 134b; see TG, p. 111), obviously after having ascended the throne in this year or more probably in 996 or 995, when he was thirteen.

998 (Earth Male Dog year):
At the age of eleven, the younger brother of De ba râ dza, Prince (lha sras) lHa 'khor btsan, was ordained as a lay practitioner (dge bsnyen) and received the name Nâ ga râ dza (YÖ, f. 24b; see TD, p. 150).

1004 (Wood Male Dragon year):
On the 15th day of the Great Miracle (month), the above-mentioned lHa khang chen mo at Tho gling was consecrated (YÖ, f. 16a; see TD, p. 139).

It received the name Tho (mTho) gling Khang dmar dpe med lhun gyi (gyis) grub pa'i gtsang lag khang. A statue of the Great Lord of the Teachings (bstan pa'i gtsos che sku) was built in the centre. From the Fire Monkey year (996) until the Wood Male Dragon year (1004), a full eight years, in each of the “Isles” (gling) murals and statues were made of the assembly of deities of the Vajradhātu mandala and Dharmandhātu mandala according to the Yoga Tantras (YÖ, f. 16b; see TD, p. 139).

1009 (Bird year)
At the age of twenty-six 'Od lde waged war on 'U then (Khotan) and brought it under his power.

In the same year, the Gar log and many other invading armies came (NR, f. 134b–f. 135a; see TG, p. 111).

---

67 This information—“me pho spre (spre) lo la mtho gling gi lha khang chen mo'i smangs (rmangs) bris (bres) so” (YÖ, f. 15a) and “me pho spre'u lo la mtho gling lha khang chen mo'i rmangs brel (rmang bres)” (YÖ, f. 15a)—conforms closely to the one contained in mNga' ris gsal byams (rmangs gsal byams) (“me pho spre'u lo la gu ger thao gling gi gtsug lag kang gi mangs bris”, Vitali 1996: 53, 109).

68 This event is reported for the same year with some variation in mNga' ris gsal byams, such as the name of the elder son as a lay person and monk (given as Khri lde mGon btsan and De ba pra bha—not De ba râ dza as one would expect) and the name of the place and temple—Par sgam Byams snyon gling: “sras che khri lde mgon btsan me pho spre'u la/ pa sgam byams snyon gling du rje 'bangs brgbad rtsa brgbad rab tu gshegs te/ mts Shan dhe ba pra bhar gsol to”, Vitali 1996: 53, 109).

69 The sons of Ye shes 'od were ordained in 996 and 998 according to mNga' ris gsal byams and Vitali’s analysis (1996: 113–114). The recruitment of altogether two hundred monks around this time, who “were delivered on the path of liberation in the footsteps of Ye shes ‘od’s two sons” (ibid.: 113), and the account of eighty-seven subject, who were ordained together with De ba râ dza, fully agree in YÖ and mNga' ris gsal byams.

70 This age of thirteen was considered by Tibetan historians as a rule of succession when the king took the throne, accompanied by the ritualised death of this father (although this is not supported by the available chronological evidence according to Dotson 2009: 26).

71 Later in the text, YÖ, f. 23b (see TD, p. 149) gives Fire Male Dragon year (1016) as the date for the consecration and inauguration celebration of the erection of the mTho gling lHa khang chen mo (zhal spro bsgrubs).

72 This account presents quite detailed information and seems to be fairly consistent in the dates, duration, content and finishing of works which it gives a high degree of plausibility. The comparative account in mNga' ris gsal byams is completely silent in this regard. It does not mention any other works, the original programme, statues, paintings nor the consecration but immediately after the foundation works a renovation (Vitali reads zhal sro for zhal sgo) in Earth Male Dragon year (1028) is reported, followed by information obviously referring to this (see Vitali 1996: 53, 109).

73 This year is based on the calculated birth of 'Od lde in 983. See n. 57. Martin (2019: 204) takes the Sheep year for 'Od lde’s birth as referring to 995 or 1007, and consequently the Bird year when this event is said to have taken place is referred to have taken place to 1021 or 1033.

74 Gar log seems to be a rendering of Qarluq (also Karluk, etc.), the name of a Türtic tribe. They can be identified as having belonged to the Qarakhanid dynasty, a political confederation which ruled the west of present-day Xinjiang from the 9th through the 13th centuries. After their conversion to Islam in 960, the Qarakhanids destroyed the Samanid dynasty in 1000 and before 1006 the Buddhist city-state of Khotan was besieged and conquered (Millward 2007: 50–55; see also Vitali, “Territory and trends in land control: The Byang thang ‘Heartland’ and the mNga’ ris ‘Periphery,’ “ this volume, pp. 12–13, and
1010:
‘Od lde went to the place of ‘U then (Khotan) again.76
That same year, ‘Od lde laid the foundation of a gtsug lag khang at Nyar ma (NR, f. 135a; see TG, p. 111) and after two years (1011), he established a community of monks (dge ’dun gyi sde) and a school for religious instruction (chos grwa).76

1012 (Rat year):
In the third year,77 ‘Od lde went to Mar yul and built the temple of dPe dug (dPe thub) and founded a monastic community (NR, f. 135a; see TG, p. 111).78

1016 (Fire Male Dragon year):
The mTho gling lHa khang chen mo was consecrated and its inauguration celebrated (zhal spro bsgrubs) (YÖ, f. 23b; see TD, p. 149).79
At the age of twenty-nine, in a Dragon year (1016), Nā ga rā dza was fully ordained (YÖ, f. 24b; see TD, p. 150).

1019 (Earth Female Sheep year):
After having spread the teaching of the Buddha, etc. for thirty-one years80 Ye shes ‘od seemed to have passed away in his residence at Tholing (YÖ, f. 24a; see TD, p. 149).81

The text has ‘U then bzhi(r) the meaning of which is unclear. Reading gzhi(r) instead of bzhis(r), thus (to the) place, is a possible solution. The year (1010) is calculated back from the account on the following years, up to a Rat year (1012, possibly also 1024 or even 1036 as suggested by Martin 2019: 204).

As we do not assume that this foundation refers to the earliest gtsug lag khang built at Nyarma, this may well refer to one of the other nearby temples (see Jahoda, “Joseph Thsertan Gergan’s report on Nyarma”, 1917; Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”; Feilitzsch, “On the architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, and Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in context”).

The text has sum pa byi’ bai’i lo la, which may refer to the third year (gsum pa) or to the year when he was thirty (continuing the way of relating events to his age).

dPe dug (dPe thub) is identical with the modern Spituk monastery in Ladakh. In Martin’s reading the Rat year of the foundation of this temple corresponds to 1024 or 1036 (Martin 2019: 204).

It is unclear whether this refers to a later extension or renovation (see also n. 70) or represents a textual inconsistency.

Obviously counting from the year of his ordination in 989.

The offering of twenty-one minor domains (yul chung) by the Great Superior One (bla chen po) lHa Ide and the Great Superior One (bla chen po) the Bodhisattva Ye shes ‘od to Rin chen bzang po mam thar, f. 34a2–34b2 may have taken place prior to Ye shes ‘od’s passing away but clearly with the aim to dedicate them for worship following his passing away. The passage in YÖ (f. 24a; see TD, p. 149f.) seems to convey the notion (presumably in agreement with his bodhisattva status) that he continued to work for the benefit of others after he had seemingly left his bodily existence. I want to thank Tsering Drongshar for a discussion of this question.

For the following narrative of main activities in the lives of the two sons of Ye shes ‘od a similar account, with partly identical sentences, is found in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs (Vitali 1996: 60, 114). The essential difference is that in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs no specific dates are given, only the time-span in terms of years passed since earlier events, such as that De ba rā dza protected the teachings for twenty-eight years after this ordination (before he must have passed away according to Vitali’s conclusion in 1023), and that Nā ga rā dza did so for four years after his elder brother had passed away (leading to Vitali’s conclusion that he died in 1027). The date of ‘Od lde’s passing away was calculated by Vitali (1996: 117, 180) on the basis of mNga’ ris rgyal rabs and other sources with reference to Nag tsho lo tsā ba and the order by Byang chub ‘od given to rGYa brTson ‘grus seng ge to invite Atiśa. The information given by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po indicates such an invitation extended to Atiśa by rGYa brTson ‘grus seng ge already in 1031, thus suggesting perhaps an earlier terminus ante quem for ‘Od lde’s passing away (see also NR, p. 112).
On the Foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh

Bibliography


GU GE TSHE RING RGYAL PO. 2006. mNg’as’ ris chos byung gangs ljongs mdzes rgyan [Religious History of Western Tibet. Beautiful Ornament of the Land of Snows]. lHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.


——. 2019. Inscriptions in areas of Historical Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum) in their contexts: A brief overview with selected examples. In: *Medieval Worlds*, 10 (“Uses of the Past in Times of Transition: Forgetting, Using and Discrediting the Past & Approaches to Global Epigraphy, I”), 199–251; https://medievalworlds.net/medievalworlds_no10_2019:


**Nyang ral chos’ byung B = Nyang Nyi ma’i’od zer, Čhos’ byun mea tog sneyng po’i sbrang rts‘i’i bcud, ed. Chab spel Tshe brtan phun tshogs. Gangs chen rig mdzod, vol. 5. lHa sa: Mi dmangs dpe skrun khang, 1988.**


Rin chen bzang po rnam thar. Gu ge’i Khiy dang ba dPal ye shes, Lo tsha tsa ba rin chen bzang po’i rnam thar, 58 folios, dbu can MS. Tucci Archive, IsIAO, Rome (shelf number 654).


——. 2005. Some conjectures on change and instability during the one hundred years of darkness in the history of La dwa’s (1280s-1380s). In: Bray, John (ed.) Ladakhi Histories: Local and Regional Perspectives. Leiden: Brill, 97–123.


Yig rnying [Old Manuscript], fragmentary manuscript in ‘headless’ (dbu med) Tibetan script, not dated (ca. 12th century), Tholing monastery, 50 pages (digital photography of original MS).


This study discusses a recently uncovered wall painting at Tabo monastery in Spiti (Himachal Pradesh, India) featuring an impressive monumental depiction of Hārītī (‘Phrog ma) and Pāñcika (lNga[r]tsen), situated in the sgo khang (entrance hall) of the Tabo gtsug lag khang (Figs. 1–2). It constitutes a divine conjugal image comparable to the typology found South Asia (Pakistan, Kashmir and India) and in Central Asia (Afghanistan). It attempts a reconstruction of the iconographic and artistic context of this image dating from the earliest phase (ca. end of the 10th century) of Buddhism in historical Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum). Moreover, based on depictions of the couple found in other places (such as Khartse,1 Dungkar,2 both in the Tsamda District3 and the Ngari (mNga’ ris) Prefecture, Tibet Autonomous Region, PR China, as well as in Nako (Kinnaur, Himachal Pradesh) and Alchi (Al lci; Ladakh), it investigates the development of its function in the overall spiritual programme of the temples and in particular of its prominent role as guardian of the portal (sgo b/srungs), partly in ensembles with Hindu gods and Indic protectors, local territorial deities and paintings of the patrons. This includes the question of the Tibetan sacred ordering of the natural environment and in particular the issue of the symbiosis of Buddhism with Brahmanism/Hinduism, which was discussed by David Seyfort Ruegg (2008). In this context the concepts of laukika (mundane) and lokottara (transmundane) relevant in this process of shaping and protecting sacred space will be analysed with regard of their validity in the context of Western Himalayan and in particular West Tibetan art and architecture.

This preliminary study focuses on following aspects:

1. Classification of the iconographic elements and various different figural typologies of Hārītī, depicted with her husband Pāñcika, or as a single image found in West Tibetan art from the 10th to 13th centuries.

2. Analysis of the spatial position, function in the overall programme and the hierarchy of iconographic themes in the entrance hall in which the couple is embedded and the transformation/metamorphosis of their form and function in later temples.

3. An attempt at an interpretation of the ideology associated with this class of protectors, and images of the popular female goddess Hārītī in particular, in early West Tibetan temples and the political and religious conditions that may have furthered the popularity of this type of guardian figure in 10th/11th century Western Tibet.

4. Analysis of the form, function and symbolism of the entrance hall within the characteristic tripartite spatial layout of vihāra-like

---

* Field work in Tabo was financed by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF) within the framework of the research project P21806-G19 “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, Conflict and Integration” directed by Christian Jahoda at the Institute for Social Anthropology (ISA), Centre for Studies in Asian Culture and Social Anthropology (CSACSA), Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna. In this field work participated also Veronika Hein, Christian Jahoda, Julia Schastok, Patrick Sutherland and local informants and assistants from Tabo, Thinley Dorje, Dechen Lhundup and Sonam Tsering. I wish to thank Eva Allinger and Christian Jahoda for valuable comments and critique on the draft of this text, as well as ChristianLuczanits, Monika Zin, Gudrun Melzer and Amy Heller for important additional information.

1 Throughout the text the modern popular spelling Khartse (mKhar rtse) is used as a convention. Older spellings in Tibetan, as they appear for example in various versions of lo chen Rin chen bzang po’s medium-length hagiography (rnam thar ‘bring po), are Kha che, Kha tse, Kha rtse, Khwa tse (see also Jahoda, “The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, n. 4, pp. 279–280).

2 Tibetan Dung dkar, also Dun bkar, Dun mkhar, etc. (cf. Vitali 1996: 631).

3 Tibetan rTsa mda’ rdzong (see Tsering Gyalpo 2006: 173).
Christiane Kalantari

Introduction

Although the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang⁴ (ca. end of 10th century), the earliest Buddhist temple in historical Western Tibet with an almost intact artistic programme is singular in the evolutionary history of iconography, political theology, style and architecture in the region the sacred space of the temple has hitherto received little attention. Some aspects of the sgo khang’s religio-artistic programme at Tabo have been discussed by Tucci 1988: 25, Klimburg-Salter et al. 1997: 77–89, Luczanits 2004: 35, and Papa-Kalantari 2007b. The lack of detailed research with regard to this sacred space can be explained by the fact that large sections of its paintings only became visible again and were thus rediscovered during the last three decades due to the cleaning campaigns by the Archaeological Survey of India (ASI).⁶ In addition a significant feature of the pictorial ensemble depicted above the portal, which is the focus of this study, has been uncovered as recently as 2009 (Fig. 1).

During field research in a multidisciplinary team directed by Christian Jahoda at Tabo in late summer 2009 the author documented together with Patrick Sutherland the newly cleaned—but unfortunately (partly) massively retouched—wall paintings above the entrance portal to the sgo khang, representing a key element of its programme. Despite the poor and to some degree hypothetical reconstruction work it is still possible to get an idea of the original shape of the paintings, which feature an impressive monumental Hārītī together with her husband Pāñcika enthroned like a royal couple. The tutelary couple reflects an independent iconographic theme at Tabo and occupies a prominent position above the portal. The space dedicated to its representation is precisely defined by the width of the door. This may indicate traditions of devotion such as the ritual walk below images or sculptures—as observable in the assembly hall of this temple—as signs of veneration as well as associated with the devotee’s hope of receiving blessings from these images. Very different types and positions of the couple appear in the cave temples at Khartse and Dungkar and in the Buddhist monuments at Sumd (gSum mda’ chung) and Alchi (in Ladakh), where they are integrated in different iconographic ensembles. The important and hitherto unpublished image of the couple in the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang is the earliest example of this tradition and thus the starting point of a comparative study of form and idea of this theme in a wider regional context.⁷

4 The layout contrasts to mandalic centralised structures from the end of the 10th century such as the Tholing Gyatsa (brGya rtsa)—sometimes also referred to as Ye shes od lha khang—which was perhaps not intended for a wider public (Luczanits 2004: 285); for ground-plans of Tholing monastery (see http://archresearch.tugraz.at/results/Tholing/Plaene_Pdf/tholing_monastic complex. pdf accessed 17 June 2013).
5 The temple referred to as gtsug lag khang consists of a narrow sgo khang, the chu khang erected on a rectangular ground plan and a cella (dri gtsang khang) with a circumambulation path (skor lam) (see also Luczanits 2004: 34). See Jahoda ("The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh", this volume) for a discussion of the temple’s classification in various historical sources.

6 Since 1992 the ASI has been conducting cleaning campaigns of the wall paintings; these revealed fragments of the early phase of paintings in the skor lam (for the sequence of cleaning phases see also Klimburg-Salter 1994: 21ff.).
7 This contribution continues to discuss the issue of Hindu and pan-Indian deities appearing in the pantheon of West Tibetan Buddhist temples (see, for example, Luczanits 2008 who was among the first to address this topic) although from a wider regional and comparative perspective.
The painting programme of the sgo khang, in contrast to that in the 'du khang, is difficult to read due to the lack of primary sources of its iconography. So far it has perhaps also not been investigated adequately due to its seemingly lack of refinement, at first sight representing a graphic style that uses sober colours, in contrast to the brilliant palette of the later 'du khang's programme featuring a three-dimensional Vajradhātu mandala reflecting Kashmiri-style aesthetics around the late 30s/early 40s of the 11th century, executed ca. 40 years later than the sgo khang paintings, also based upon the so-called Renovation Inscription (Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999). The characteristic features of this later style include the ample use of expensive, bright pigments and unified pictorial programmes representing mandalas of different classes in which individual deities reside in sacred spaces defined by celestial abodes filled with light or by idealised architectonic settings. However, the painting style in the sgo khang deserves more attention and a closer examination. Also the investigations of local variations and internal relationships between the early (8th–10th centuries) Buddhist artefacts in Western Tibet have not advanced very far as yet.

As has been shown elsewhere (cf. Jahoda and Papa-Kalantari 2009, and Jahoda and Kalantari, “Power and religion in pre-modern Western Tibet: The monumental Avalokiteśvara stela in Cogro, Purang”, this volume, p. 38) the archaic features, among them the hieratic strictness, a dominance of ornamental details and the pictorial density of the composition of the paintings in the sgo khang, with seemingly monotonous rows of donor figures, are features of a distinctive, stylistically influential artistic idiom, endowing these paintings with their quality and originality. These characteristics recall the ceremonial hieratic style of early Tibetan art, an artistic trend which developed in interaction with Tibetan art in Central Asia during the Yar lung dynasty and was prevalent in the region at the end of the 10th century in the medium of painting and sculpture. While the rows of minor protectors on the side walls of the sgo khang draw on an early local Kashmir-inspired style, the monumental protective couple shows affinities with highly refined artwork from the thriving Buddhist centres in Bihar and Bengal, as will be shown. This early multifaceted artistic phase was later followed by another idiom associated with Kashmir-style aesthetics as found in the programme of the 'du khang, executed during the renovation phase (ca. 1042). These two stylistically distinct painting phases in the Tabo gtsug lag khang represent a fascinating conceptual whole, which is significant for the interpretation of the political theology of the time. A key element in the sgo khang's religio-artistic programme are representations of male and female donors on the side walls, with a portrait of Ye shes 'od, the temple's founder (according to the Renovation Inscription), who—perhaps together with lo chen Rin chen bzung po—was the principal personality responsible for the re-establishment of Mahāyāna Buddhism in Western Tibet from the late 10th century onward (a period which later became known as bstan pa phyi dar or “Later Diffusion of Buddhism”). Ye shes 'od is depicted with his two sons among monks and lay personalities on the south wall of the sgo khang, while the noble elite and nuns are shown on the opposite and less prestigious north wall. The maintenance of the older paintings in the sgo khang, which do not seem to have been affected by the restoration, reflects not only the important role of this earlier historic personality in the self-representation of the ruling elite in the 11th century but also signals the conscious demonstration of legitimacy based on the continuity of a tradition.

The Tutelary Couple in the Tabo sgo khang: A Singular Iconographic Type in the Evolutionary History of Early West Tibetan Temples’ Decorative Programmes

Hārīti and Pāñcika are on the entrance wall (east wall) of the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang (cf. Figs. 1-2). This temple shows a characteristic vihāra-like tripartite layout (Fig. 3), comparable to the Khorchag Jo khang, the Alich’i ‘Du khang and the Nyarma gtsug lag khang consisting of a sgo khang (or veranda), ‘du khang (main hall) and cela (dri gtsang khang) or niche, typically also displaying different forms of realisation of the idea of the interior and exterior ambulatories. Tabo is important as it is the only example in these temples that provides an insight into the original spiritual programme of the sgo khang. The latter is a narrow space, rectangular in ground plan with two platforms positioned on the west wall leading to the ‘du khang. The east wall is ca. 7 m long and 4 m high and shows

The characteristic features recall the ceremonial hieratic style of early Tibetan art, an artistic trend which developed in interaction with Tibetan art in Central Asia during the Yar lung dynasty and was prevalent in the region at the end of the 10th century in the medium of painting and sculpture. While the rows of minor protectors on the side walls of the sgo khang draw on an early local Kashmir-inspired style, the monumental protective couple shows affinities with highly refined artwork from the thriving Buddhist centres in Bihar and Bengal, as will be shown. This early multifaceted artistic phase was later followed by another idiom associated with Kashmir-style aesthetics as found in the programme of the 'du khang, executed during the renovation phase (ca. 1042). These two stylistically distinct painting phases in the Tabo gtsug lag khang represent a fascinating conceptual whole, which is significant for the interpretation of the political theology of the time. A key element in the sgo khang's religio-artistic programme are representations of male and female donors on the side walls, with a portrait of Ye shes 'od, the temple's founder (according to the Renovation Inscription), who—perhaps together with lo chen Rin chen bzung po—was the principal personality responsible for the re-establishment of Mahāyāna Buddhism in Western Tibet from the late 10th century onward (a period which later became known as bstan pa phyi dar or “Later Diffusion of Buddhism”). Ye shes 'od is depicted with his two sons among monks and lay personalities on the south wall of the sgo khang, while the noble elite and nuns are shown on the opposite and less prestigious north wall. The maintenance of the older paintings in the sgo khang, which do not seem to have been affected by the restoration, reflects not only the important role of this earlier historic personality in the self-representation of the ruling elite in the 11th century but also signals the conscious demonstration of legitimacy based on the continuity of a tradition.

The Tutelary Couple in the Tabo sgo khang: A Singular Iconographic Type in the Evolutionary History of Early West Tibetan Temples’ Decorative Programmes

Hārīti and Pāñcika are on the entrance wall (east wall) of the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang (cf. Figs. 1-2). This temple shows a characteristic vihāra-like tripartite layout (Fig. 3), comparable to the Khorchag Jo khang, the Alich’i ‘Du khang and the Nyarma gtsug lag khang consisting of a sgo khang (or veranda), ‘du khang (main hall) and cela (dri gtsang khang) or niche, typically also displaying different forms of realisation of the idea of the interior and exterior ambulatories. Tabo is important as it is the only example in these temples that provides an insight into the original spiritual programme of the sgo khang. The latter is a narrow space, rectangular in ground plan with two platforms positioned on the west wall leading to the ‘du khang. The east wall is ca. 7 m long and 4 m high and shows
Concerning the terminology used for the wheel in the Viṣṇava, only the simple designation “five-part wheel” is used. The term mainly used in the Tibetan sphere is srid pa’i khor lo, which stands for bhavacakras in Sanskrit (“Wheel of Existences”). However, I have chosen to use the term samsāracakra/ Wheel of Rebirths following research by Schlingloff and Zin. The authors pointed out that the equation of the water-wheel alluding to it being driven by a higher power used as metaphor for the circle of rebirths and samsāra is a constant feature in Indian religious literature (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 4). I also follow her terminology due to the fact that the visual material on which Zin’s analysis is based are the cave temples at Ajanta (Ajantā) which share comparable decorative schemes in the entrance hall with Tabo. I wish to thank Gudrun Melzer for these leads.

According to several texts, after his enlightenment, the Buddha Śākyamuni visited the Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods to preach to his mother and the other inhabitants, who had passed away without the benefit of hearing the doctrine. However, the vestibule stems from a period from the 11th century onwards. The chapels of mundane “spirits” were originally perhaps positioned once in the niches flanking the portal. The programme on the entrance wall represents a cosmological order according to the matrix of Buddhist world-view, with the ideal pair or primordial parents in its centre. It also brings a core element of Buddhist teaching to the mind of the devotee, namely the concept of dependent origination, best expressed in the Wheel of Rebirths. The co-presence of the Wheel of Rebirths and Hārītī perhaps enhances the idea of the reform of the demonic behaviour of Hārītī and her transformation into a goddess during various life-cycles, demonstrating the possibility of a more favourable rebirth due to moral behaviour. The idea of birth and creation—as will be proposed—is presumably another aspect of the symbolism of this type of image in the context of an ensemble with cosmological imagery.10 The composition on the entrance walls recalls ensembles featuring the Wheel of Rebirths, a didactic inscription and tutelary deities depicted in the veranda of Cave XVII at Ajanta, representing an early example of a vihāra-type monastery with a tri-partite structure as also found at Tabo.11 The function of this iconographic ensemble, decisive for the interpretation of the iconology and function of the entrance hall, will be discussed below.

In the lower sphere on the two bordering walls to the left and right (Figs. 6–7) there are donor depictions and founders with

---

8 Concerning the terminology used for the wheel in the Viṣṇava, only the simple designation “five-part wheel” is used. The term mainly used in the Tibetan sphere is srid pa’i khor lo, which stands for bhavacakras in Sanskrit (“Wheel of Existences”). However, I have chosen to use the term samsāracakra/ Wheel of Rebirths following research by Schlingloff and Zin. The authors pointed out that the equation of the water-wheel alluding to it being driven by a higher power used as metaphor for the circle of rebirths and samsāra is a constant feature in Indian religious literature (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 4). I also follow her terminology due to the fact that the visual material on which Zin’s analysis is based are the cave temples at Ajanta (Ajantā) which share comparable decorative schemes in the entrance hall with Tabo. I wish to thank Gudrun Melzer for these leads.

9 According to several texts, after his enlightenment, the Buddha Śākyamuni visited the Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods to preach to his mother and the other inhabitants, who had passed away without the benefit of hearing the doctrine.

10 The pair of cosmic diagrams is also depicted in the porch of the iṣu khang of the Gyatsa at Tholing and Samye (bSam yas) (Klimburg-Salter et al. 1997: 81) as well as in a position to the right of the portal to the iṣu khang at Shalu (Zhwa lu). The latter publication contains also a description of the Wheel of Rebirths at Tabo.

11 Depictions in the vestibule of the Great Temple (gtsug lag khang) in the Jo khang of Lhasa (which is also based on a tri-partite structure of vestibule, main hall and sanctum) show comparable iconographic elements and protector divinities. However, the vestibule stems from a period from the 11th century onwards. The chapels of mundane “spirits” were originally perhaps positioned once in the niches flanking the portal.
eminent historic personages seated on thrones at the centre, and dignified by honorific textiles above them alluding to luxury art in Central Asia. Religious dignitaries partly sit on carpets defining their religious space. In the centre of the uppermost register of donor imagery on the south wall the Royal Lama (*tha bla ma*) Ye shes ‘od is shown, “possibly on the occasion of a public ceremony connected with the foundation or consecration of the temple” as first proposed by Luczanits (2004: 34). In addition, the iconographic ensemble of donors with a group of eight water spirits (Skt. *nāga*, Tib. *klu*) in its vicinity suggests a depiction of specific rituals associated with the erection of temples as described in relevant texts (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 413–414). The sitting positions and specific seats (thrones and carpets)—enhanced by a subtle language of sitting modes and hand gestures—define a strict social order. The figures are integrated in a simple grid-system, with a central axis drawn in red lines. To the left of the middle axis are lay people, while religious personalities dwell to the right side. Both groups face this middle axis, alluding to a space in which two rows of people sit facing each other. Ye she ‘od is enthroned in the topmost zone on a high wooden seat, while other monks are on lower seats covered with carpets. Most of the lay people on the lower registers in the left section of both north and south walls are shown kneeling (Fig. 7) and are slightly smaller. Typically of donor depictions of the region, female members of the noble family are shown subordinated to the patron, in a less prestigious position in the seating order and shown in profile. It is significant to note that Ye shes ‘od’s son De ba ra dza (*Devarāja*) is shown in the right-hand section representing the religious world, thus acting like a bond or mediator between the religious sphere and the lay world. The strict
hierarchy in such ceremonies is a constant feature in Tibetan culture, defining and shaping sacred space and reflecting the social order up to the present day. Accordingly, the images at Tabo perhaps reflect historical ceremonies in ephemeral spaces made of tents and baldachins outside the temple.

It is a characteristic feature of West Tibetan art that donors occupy a prominent position in the pictorial programmes of various media, including in illuminated manuscripts (Allinger, Tsering Gyalpo and Kalantari 2012). A later donor painting accompanying the Renovation Inscription in the ‘du khang features the enthroned Lord-Ruler Royal Monk Byang chub ‘od (rje rgyal lha btsun) shown in a condensed group portrait in the midst of the religious and lay elite. The composition shows a condensed formulation of the same theme in the sgo khang, but here the royal monk is commemorated in an idealised portrait and in a setting borrowed from religious imagery such as the First Sermon of the Buddha (Papa-Kalantari 2014). In the Renovation Inscription Byang chub ‘od is referred to as lha btsun pa, rje rgyal lha btsun (rgyal being an uncertain reading) and chos rgyal rje btsun (cf. Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999: 16–18). These titles express the joint religious and secular functions he seems to have occupied at the same time. See also Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 99, 2008: fig. 186, 187; see also Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 98–101).

In addition, the throne adorned with wheels alluding to the wheel of the dharma as well as a chariot—usually reserved for religious images—clearly signals his elevated spiritual status. In this system of a sacredly ordered world the aristocratic elite is shown not only as a protector of the Buddhist law (which is a main factor of social cohesion in this period) and as a link between the religious order and worldly power but as mediators between the mundane sphere and the realm of the Buddha. The ruling elite in the sgo khang is shown in pictorial ensembles with protectors emphasising the aspect of the rulers as protectors of society. The “granting of protection” is a common image of kingship which was established in early Tibetan period. The ruler as “protection-giver” is also a component of self-representation in the old mgon khang of Shalu Monastery in Central Tibet. There the demonstration of the ethos of sovereignty also includes the demonstration of military prowess, equestrian culture and arms and armour.

Above the assembly of dignitaries on the south wall of the sgo khang at Tabo there is an ensemble of ‘dii minores’ included in the Buddhist pantheon: great Hindu and Indic gods, protector divinities, lower spirits and guardian figures, again recalling a comparable configuration in the old sgo khang of Shalu (ca. 1030); (cf. Diagrams 2–6 by Luczanits in Klimburg-Salter 1997). Ricca and Fournier (1996: 345ff. and 355) were among the first to connect several groups of gods depicted there with the outer spheres of different mandalas of the Yoga Tantra class. On the opposite side of the protector couple, positioned on the wall leading to the ‘du khang is the srung ma Wi nyu myin with a group of attendant figures flanking her (Jahoda 2006, Rathje 2007, Jahoda and Papa-Kalantari 2009) in front of a ritual cloth decorated with simple stripes (Figs. 8–9). The nine female figures on each side of the (lost) protectress are shown in a slight movement and orientation towards the central figure atypical for divine imagery in this period. Thus—in contrast to suggestions in previous research, such as by Klimburg-Salter (1997: 78)—they most likely do not represent goddesses. The scene rather seems to commemorate a ritual in which the local female elite (notably no men are shown) is engaged, richly attired with local costumes and jewellery of the time.15 The panel with the female protective deity at Tabo, reminiscent of a more archaic belief system associated with specific locales and with the protection of the main hall—as indicated in the accompanying inscription below—is shown as subordinated to two large, terrifying, almost life-size gate-protectors (dvārapāla, sgo b/srungs) in clay in front of flames.

14 In the Renovation Inscription Byang chub ‘od is referred to as lha btsun pa, rje rgyal lha btsun (rgyal being an uncertain reading) and chos rgyal rje btsun (cf. Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999: 16–18). These titles express the joint religious and secular functions he seems to have occupied at the same time. See also Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 99, 2008: fig. 186, 187; see also Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 98–101).

15 I am grateful for discussions and suggestions on this topic by Christian Jahoda.
The typology and style of the royal couple (Figs. 10–11) represents a figural convention typical of higher divinities in India, perhaps reflecting Pāla-stylistic features (see below) and the image is elaborately rendered. In contrast, Indic and Hindu divinities on the west, south and north walls are smaller in scale, in a graphic idiom with simply drawn outlines of bodily features, shading along the contours and little interest in naturalistic representation of the physique. Paintings from the same period in and around the dri gtsang khang show shared stylistic features. In contrast, lay and monastic personalities and the group image with the srung ma depicted on the wall above the door leading into the du khang reflect a more local style, using a restricted palette and simple graphic outlines resulting in rather planar figural representations. The category of lay imagery reflects specific “local” features endowing the figures with certain individualised elements: this notion is reflected in the dress convention (long, patterned lower robes and heavy long capes above, multiple rows of necklaces and head jewellery), but also in schematised facial features such as long faces, short foreheads, large, protuberant eyes. Again, similar stylistic features of lay imagery and above all the differentiation of specific categories of treatment of the bodily features contrasting with high divinities, Indic gods and donors/royal elite can also be found in the old sgo khang of Shalu in Central Tibet. The conscious representation of diverse stylistic idioms including conventionalised individual or portrait-like features in lay imagery—which also play a dominant role in religious compositions of various types—are a significant feature in the artistic production in West Tibetan temples. It is also an important element in the programme of the Khartse cave temple (Nyag lha khang) (Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari 2009: fig. 20). The stylistic groups of Indic deities and lay imagery at Tabo in particular feature figures that are typically shown in a static mode or in a hieratic frontality, with shovel-shaped faces adorned with high crowns. In general, sober pigments and contrasting colours are used. The simple outlines of the figures form an appealing contrast to the richness of decorative elements such as costumes, jewels and elements of material culture like luxury textiles. These characteristics recall the 10th-century Avalokiteśvara sculpture at lCog ro in Purang County, representing an early Tibetan style strongly linked to the early Tibetan art that emerged in the 9th century in Central Asia and

Central Tibet and was continued up to the 10th century in Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum. Cf. Papa-Kalantari and Jahoda 2010, and Jahoda and Kalantari, “Power and religion in pre-modern Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 25–60.

The tutelary pair Hārītī and Pāñcika in the sgo khang at Tabo adds an important new Indic stylistic trend to the corpus of early Tibetan art, with features that differ from the Kashmir-style aesthetics in the ‘du khang. Significantly, in no other hitherto known temple in the region is the couple shown as an independent monumental configuration in the overall iconographic programme, featuring a royal couple in regal attire: there is a crowned Pāñcika above the entrance portal enthroned with arms (lance) held like a sceptre with his wife Hārītī, both characterised by marked ceremonially solemn frontality. This autonomous depiction of each of the gods contrasts with the purely Indic divine pairs shown as a compositional unity, such as Kubera lovingly embracing his spouse sitting on his leg in a maṇḍala depiction at Nako (Lotsāba lha khang) as already identified by Luczanits (2008).16 What the latter unifies is the idea of erotic attraction as an indication of divine grace, absent in the representation of the protective pair at Tabo. Hārītī at Tabo is shown enthroned in sumptuous clothes and richly bejewelled with a child in her arms signalling motherhood. A large group of children—only male offspring—(according to the legend more than 500) is placed around and below the couple,17 shown in complex postures with only the upper part of the body covered, mainly engaged in playful fights with swords and shields, partly while hanging by their feet from a rope.18 They appear to be testing and exercising their martial virtues, which possibly enhances the protective idea of their parents enthroned above. In the composition they function like clamps linking the horizontal upper border of the portal with the seated couple. The poles on which the rope is fixed and which stand on this portal appear like a light architectural structure supporting the whole configuration. With regard to the dating, the stylistic features and ornamental elements are consistent with the surrounding paintings from the earliest phase of the temple, ca. up to the end of 1000 CE, as well as ceiling paintings and images in and around the cella also dating from this period.

The divine mother is shown in a hieratic position sitting with one leg folded inward and the other possibly pendant, in the posture of royal ease (lalitāsana). However, due to missing parts in this area it cannot be excluded that she is shown in the posture of dhyānāsana. Her right hand is shown in a boon-granting gesture (varadāmudrā). She is richly attired in a sumptuous robe and intricately detailed ornaments, wearing bell anklets and round earrings. Her husband is shown in regal attire holding a staff or lance, while in later phases she is represented in a different form, namely multi-faced with an unclothed upper torso. Both Hārītī and Pāñcika sit on a piece of decorated textile or pillow and are each framed by a nimbus and an aureole in rainbow colours. Hārītī’s left hand is on her leg, holding a small boy (rather a small adult); his hand is stretched out to touch her breast or grasp the necklace.19 She wears a tight-fitting robe decorated with large ornamental patterns of connected circles. A long scarf floats, shaping a kind of frame, enlarging her contour and also indicating her divine nature. The robes of the couple clearly convey a sense of luxury.

In the Graeco-Iranian tradition of Gandhāra and in early Kashmir-style sculpture, the deity is characteristically attired with a thin cloth lying naturalistically in small folds revealing the contours of her body, while at Tabo the large surface pattern of the robe leads to a flattening of the body, typical of the West Tibetan ornamental tradition in various media. The mudrā and asana recall Pāla-period sculpture from Bihar of the 11th century (cf. Shaw 2006: 133, see for a further comparison https://www.artic.edu/artworks/20238/goddess-hariti-seated-holding-a-child); however while the Pāla-type, typically emphasises the yaksīni-ideal displaying feminine beauty, with ample contours, rounded, softly modelled treatment of the body, at Tabo an eastern Indian type appears to be combined with sumptuous garments covering the body, focusing on her regal aspect. An interesting comparative material is provided by a Hārītī-Pāñcika-group in stone from the Pāla-period, in which both are shown as royal figures embellished with high crowns. The goddess is shown on a bodhisattva-like figural model displaying varadāmudrā, while her child reaches out an arm to grasp her necklace, also found in the Tabo example.20

16 Cf. the diagrams figs. 44.1–44.2, pp. 495–96 in Luczanits 2008 illustrating the spatial organization of the deities in the maṇḍala in this publication. Interestingly the spouse is shown in Tibetan attire and jewellery also found in donor depictions in the temple, while her partner is shown with a crown and dhoti in Indian fashion.
17 According to Shaw 2006: 122, typically eight children are shown in Gandhāran imagery.
18 A short first description is by Klimburg-Salter who (mis)interpreted the children below Hārītī (although no love scene is observable) as “half-naked figures fighting and loving” (Klimburg-Salter 1997: 82, caption figs. 43, 44) and as “half naked, some wrestling or embracing” (ibid.: 82). The position of a couple surrounded by children at play above the portal leaves no doubt that it shows the popular tutelary couple.
19 This element is typical of both Indian and Gandhāran imagery (cf. Granoff 1970: fig. 25).
20 The sculpture is from Padumshahr Tank; now at the Varendra Museum, Rajshahi, Bangladesh; for an image see http://huntingtonarchive.osu.edu/ (digital database collection: Scan Number 0013082).
The static posture and frontality emphasizes the divine, transmundane nature of the Tabo couple, which contrasts with the interest in naturalistic movement and interaction between figures in later Kashmiri style (12th–13th century) temples at Nako and Dungkar. While the depiction of Pāñcika in an independent conjugal imagery at Tabo appears to be singular, Hārītī features prominently in all phases of early Western Himalayan temples both in mandala configurations and as an independent tutelary goddess.

Earlier Representations of the Tutelary Couple in Central Asia and India

According to Buddhist texts, Pāñcika was the senāpati, or general of the army of Viṣṇu, and leader of yaksas famous for his merit related to glorious military victories and Hārītī was originally a goddess of smallpox but later became a source of protection and fertility. Pāñcika was considered patron deity of Kashmir, which is of course in particular relevant for the West Tibetan cultural context with historic ties to Kashmir as a vibrant Buddhist cultural centre.

According to various legends the child-devouring ogress was turned into a goddess by Buddha, whereupon she became the protectress of all children. She rose from the ranks of the yakṣiṇīs to the reign as the yakṣini queen together with her husband Pāñcika. Pāñcika was considered patron deity of Kashmir and the Himalayas. Texts that narrate the story of Hārītī in detail can be found in the Avadana-kalpa-pāta (Zin 2003: 237). She is further portrayed in the Vinaya of the Mulasarvavistāvā-school (cf. Panglung 1981: 196). In a version of her legend in the Vinaya, Śākyamuni also addressed the monastic worship of Hārītī (Shaw 2006: 120), which is also described by the Chinese pilgrim I-tsing. He relates the conversion tale with the promise of the Buddha to feed her and her family every day in his monastery, which originated in the tradition of food offerings by the monastic community as part of her cult (Takakusu 1896: 37; cited after Shaw 2006: 120; cf. also Zin 2003: 237). The Chinese pilgrim also says that she is found represented in the porch of monasteries or in the refectory and that lay people also made offerings to her, praying for children (Shaw 2006: 120). Hārītī thus combines values of protection and procreation but also the idea of the Buddha extending his compassion and help to every human who converts to Buddhism and follows moral behaviour. The portal is the suitable/meaningful position to bring this concept to the mind of the devotee at the beginning of his path to the focus of the cult in the sanctum.

In order to define the context of form and ideas of the Tabo couple, the complex evolutionary history of tutelary couples of wealth and military protection in India and Gandhāra should be mentioned. One of the pioneers of the study of this iconographic theme in Central Asia, North-West India and Japan was Rosenfield (1967), who related it to the dynastic cult; Phyllis Granoff (1970) traced the genesis of the Vaiśravāṇa-Pāñcika-Kuvera-Pharro-complex and showed how these deities were closely related. She also reconstructed the social and historic circumstances of their popularity. In Gandhāra the pair can have many different composite forms, often the couple is shown with a lance or staff, and Hārītī holding a money purse, partly in “northern” dress. This pair is closely related to Iranian forms of Pharro and Ardoxšo. Pharro’s attributes include a purse, shield, lance and bowl or fire. “He represents the Iranian farr or xvaranah, the ‘kingly glory’ and also a tutelary divinity of the reigning monarch and the legitimizing factor in his rule” (Granoff 1970: 163). Pāñcika in the Kushan realm may be represented as purely Indian, or “northern”/Iranian in both costume and content or in armour. Apart from his military aspect Pāñcika can also be portrayed holding the money purse and thus containing the ideological content of the god of plenty combining “military attributes of the senāpati Pāñcika with the benevolence of his master, Kuvera-Vaiśravana, the god of wealth. This Pāñcika-Kuvera-Vaiśravana complex in the Indian sphere is best known in the Iranian forms of Pharro and Ardoxšo, Pharro’s attributes include a purse, shield, lance and bowl or fire. “He represents the Iranian farr or xvaranah, the ‘kingly glory’ and also a tutelary divinity of the reigning monarch and the legitimizing factor in his rule” (Granoff 1970: 163). This type is also represented in a Kashmiri relief, with a Pharro-Kuvera-Vaiśravana in “northern” couture (with a crown?) sitting on a pot of plenty and Ardoxšo-Śrī with lotus or cornucopia (after Granoff 1970: 163).

---

22 Hārītī and Pāñcika are represented at the entrance to the sanctum (antecella) of Ajanta Cave II, protecting the cella together with the Four Dharmarājas (Zin 2003: 236).

which must have furthered the popularity of the cult of the tutelary couple and the spread of cult images associated with it, which may have also reached Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum).  

Parallel Phenomena to the Tabo Tutelary Couple in Other Temples and Later Developments in Western Tibet

At Tabo we find an emphasis of the regal aspect of Pāñcika with a crown: Pāñcika appears to show a god in royal or “northern” dress (which is typically associated with the aspect of wealth-bestowing of Kuvera, or Vaiśravaṇa, the King of the North) combined with the aspect of senāpati Pāñcika with an arm (lance) related to his ideological content as giver of armed strength.

The conjugal type of Pāñcika and Hārītī at Tabo appears to stand in the long and lasting tradition of independent tutelary couples of wealth and protection which play an important role in Buddhist communities in Central Asia and North-West India/Kashmir. A huge number of early sculptures reflect the popularity of this cult in Gandhāra and Kashmir, mostly following a synthesis of Graeco-Iranian and Indian forms and ideas. Due to the chronological distance and the limited number of relevant objects, a direct link cannot be postulated. The reconstruction of the artistic and cultural context of the typology of the Tabo couple needs further investigation, in particular with regard to its markedly Indian components of Hārītī, perhaps reflecting early North-West Indian art or the art of the Indian plains. The detailed depiction of children engaged in fighting and wrestling activities defining a scene covering a huge part of the wall cannot be compared with representations of this theme found in any relevant sculptures, with their concentration on the main icon and a condensed depiction of the children in a frieze below or on the sides. The naturalistically rendered children may represent an independent pictorial tradition with a strong local flavour and a certain freedom of the painter.

Independent singular images of Hārītī and those integrated into maṇḍalas follow different visual and religious traditions. An example of an autonomous depiction of Hārītī can be found in the porch or jamb of the portal (which has a comparable function to the sgo khang in previous periods) of a single-chamber cave temple at Dungkar.

---

13. Hārītī (above Mahākāla), Dungkar, Cave II, inner face of the portal (C. Kalantari, 2007).

14. Hārītī: outside the geometric frame of the maṇḍala, Dungkar, Cave II (C. Kalantari, 2007).

In the *Mahāmāyūrīvidyārājñīsūtra* Pāñcika is portrayed as patron deity of Kashmir and his son is described as the patron deity of China (Zin 2003: 240, n. 34).

---

24. See also an image of a goddess with a hybrid form of lotus/cornucopia published by Hélène Diserens (1993: 72) from the village of Brār in Kashmir, which Foucher discovered, probably representing a river goddess, related to the mythic origin in Kashmir according to a Buddhist text, in which Kāśyapa asked the goddess to settle there in order to purify the country by the gift of water. This example should demonstrate the widespread popularity of yakṣa deities, both male and female as protectors and patron deities of Kashmir. Comparable lotus-blossoms recalling cornucopia can be found on the dri gtsang khang ceiling design in the gtsug lag khang at Tabo.
Hārītī and Pāñcika at Tabo: On the Metamorphosis of the Protective Couple in Early West Tibetan Buddhist Temples

The prominent position in the porch demonstrates that this female spirit associated with fertility and procreation maintains her important position in the ensemble of protectors associated with foundation of the ruling elites up to the 13th century. She is represented subordinated to the protector god Mahākāla (shown half-naked with one arm raised and a skull in his hand) (Fig. 13). Hārītī is shown with one arm raised holding a cup or bowl while cradling an infant to her breast. Other boys are shown around her in playful attitudes. Due to the poor state of preservation almost nothing can be said about the costume. She seems to wear a crown but the Tibetan-style necklace made of corals and turquoises is likely a later addition. She looks at the practitioner/devotee and is shown in a rather open and free composition covering a large space while her depiction outside the maṇḍala (Fig. 14) seems to follow a strict iconographic formula, perhaps on the model of a sketchbook. Opposite the portal there is a proud warrior on horseback, representing a local territorial deity and warrior-like protector, which appears in Ladakh and other areas of historical Western Tibet around 1200, reflecting martial cultures of the region.

The Lady and the Lotus at Khartse

The tutelary couple at Tabo, above the entrance portal of the Tabo sgo khang, also contrasts with the deities integrated into an ensemble of “lower/protective deities” on the entrance wall at the Nyag phug pa lha khang at Khartse (Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari 2009: fig. 17) (Fig. 16). This is the first known example showing the couple depicted in midst a whole pantheon of lower deities on the entrance wall subordinated to monumental gate protectors in clay (Fig. 17). There we find yakṣa deities (gnod sbyin) and other “lower spirits” such as eight nāgas (klu, klu mo), above the portal, planetary deities and the Four Guardian Kings (dikpāla, phyoqs skyong) represented on the entrance wall in their function as protectors of the threshold of the temple, protecting the sphere between nature or the worldly (laukika) and the sacred transmundane sphere (lokottara). The entrance wall, closest to the unordered, human world is of course a meaningful place for this function. This ensemble of Indic deities charged with protecting the realm of the Buddha recalls the maṇḍala of the Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa (cf. Macdonald 1962) which describes specific configurations of gods as protectors of the sphere between nature and the transmundane as shown by Bautze-Picron (1996: 109), who studied the position of Hindu and Indic deities in the

15. Entrance wall, flanking the portal, Nyag cave temple, Khartse (Tshe ring rgyal po, 2002).

16. Hārītī, Nyag cave temple (entrance wall), Khartse (Tshe ring rgyal po, 2002).


---

I first came across the beautiful—to my knowledge hitherto unpublished—image of Hārītī in this cave temple during field research in 2006/2007 together with Tsering Gyalpo and Christian Jahoda, who organised and directed this campaign.

He can perhaps be related to the appearance of the powerful protector Mahākāla, while his identity may be associated with Pe har, mentioned in Rin chen bzang po mam thar ’bring po. In this a protector divinity is portrayed as having been put on oath to “work as personal attendant and responsible for guarding the possessions of all the temples of Rongchung” (cf. Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 93). He is complemented by a row of female srung ma above the portal on the inner face of the wall of the main sacred space.
late Buddhist iconography in eastern India, while in the context of
Tibetan art this opposing pair has been discussed by Seyfort Ruegg
2008 (see below). In later periods, many of these Indic divinities are
depicted outside the frame of different maṇḍala s of the Yoga Tantra
class (Nako, Dungkar) or in the outermost spheres of the latter as
found in the Alchi school of painting, which are shown on the side
walls of sacred spaces.

At Khartse, Hārītī is among a group of divinities with her husband,
shown in his many-faced form with a naked upper torso, holding a
flask—which becomes the standard iconography from the mid 11th
century onwards—positioned in the uppermost row. His attributes—
with an emphasis on wealth-granting rather than on his military
aspect—differ markedly form the majestic warrior type at Tabo
with its royal garb (Fig. 15). The divine mother appears as a singular
typology in this region: she is bare-breasted, with a narrow waist,
attired with an Indian style of lower dress. Her offspring rest on her
lap with hands folded in veneration. The deity represents the Indian
concept of beauty and aesthetics, in the sense of sexual appeal of
the woman and radiance of attractiveness providing a prerequisite
for fertility.28 A significant feature is her raised right arm holding a
flower or lotus. It recalls the treasure-displaying gesture in earlier
images of Hārītī in Orissa holding a stalk of grain, according to
Shaw (2006: 130) signalling her association with agricultural fertility
and abundance.29 The lotus at Khartse may signal fertility and her
auspicious nature in the sense of human reproduction and thus the
focus appears to be on the woman as a nature goddess and life
source. The same gesture of the raised hand is also found in images
of offering deities in the same temple, which is consistent with the
idea of treasure-offering associated with this type of protector.

The characteristic gesture of the lotus-bearing raised hand at
Khartse is ultimately related to the Indic visual pattern of the “lady
under the tree”. It is borrowed from the theme of the birth of the
Buddha with Māyā standing under the tree stretching her right arm
toward the foliage and the child who emerges from her right side.
Māyā at Nālandā (cf. Bautze-Picron 2010: fig. 19) holds a lotus flower
in one hand. The typology is even adopted for the image of Tārā,
as shown at Nako, Lotsāba lha khang (Fig. 18).30 The emphasis of
the type of Hārītī at Khartse is thus on birth, creation and fertility. In
general this idea of the female divine, in the form of yaksā deities,
is frequently shown in specific positions in the temple. Fertility
deities, signalling their auspicious nature, are often found on the
border-zones of architectural ornament or in lower zones of torana
configurations, as seen on a famous Kashmir-style bronze frame.
In this two auspicious nature deities are in the lowest zone in the torana,
below the representation of the life of the Buddha, alluding to their
auspicious nature as the basis of the emergence of the Buddha. This
configuration has many similarities to the cela ensemble in the Tabo
dri gtsang khang (sanctum) (cf. Fig. 19).

28 The iconography of fertility assumes an important position in architectural
ornamentation; in particular yaksā deities in their function of acquiring material
riches and protecting the monument often at the threshold between the sacred
and profane. As suggested by Bautze-Picron 2010: 209, such women-motifs
initially appear near the portals of Buddhist monuments, which were later re-
sumed by images of Māyā and Hārītī.

29 Vegetal motifs or fruit as attributes are also shown in Pāla sculptures
representing the goddess (Shaw 2006: 130).

30 Tārā’s gesture at Nako is clearly based on the iconography of Māyā as
lady below the tree. Bautze-Picron suggests this may refer to her description
as mother of all Buddhas and to abundance and procreation in the sense of
infinite compassion. All this demonstrates the dynamics of iconography and
the processes of amalgamation of various different religious ideas, local gods
and protectors, which were integrated under a new name, in this case in that of
the popular goddess Tārā. The image of Tārā at Nako recalls a 12th-century book
cover featuring this deity at the LACMA (cf. Bautze-Picron 2010: fig. 30).
Hārītī, in the transition zone above the portal on the entrance wall of the Tabo sgo khang, can thus also be interpreted as an allusion to the idea of creation, marking and protecting the transition between two stages “of the unformed and uncreated and the formed and created” (Bautze-Picron 2010: 226). The mundane nature of the couple also marks the border between the material and the spiritual and—as protector of the entrance to the monument (closest to the human plane)—in charge of the richness a temple can provide. The protective deity pair, above the entrance to the gtsug lag khang, closest to our world and the human level, perhaps binds the lay world and the royal-monastic community together in concerns of a more mundane nature.

Hārītī in Cup-Bearing Mode with Indigenous Features and as a Tibetan Queen
Yet another type is that of Hārītī and Pāñcika, which from the end of the 11th century onwards in this region was integrated into the outer spheres of mandala configurations or outside the mandala border. They belong to an ensemble which Luczanits (2008) classified as Hindu and pan-Indian deities, represented near an entrance or as part of the outermost circle of certain Yoga Tantra mandalas (cf. de Mallmann 1986). Within this type the forms differ markedly at Dungkar, Nako (Fig. 20), and in the Alchi school, following different visual models within the wide spectrum of Kashmir-style artistic schools. Characteristically, Hārītī and Pāñcika images in mandala images at Nako (Lotsāba lha khang) and Dungkar are depicted in single settings. While in the latter only their relative position in the whole configuration shows their iconographic relation, at Nako Pāñcika is turned smiling at his wife. In contrast to the early typology at Khartse, which still closely adheres to Indic models, with the emphasis as a nature goddess, Hārītī images in this later phase from the 12th century onwards are always fully dressed, with tight-fitting, North-Indian clothes reminiscent of the sartorial traditions in Himachal Pradesh and Kashmir. Also a metamorphosis of her characteristics...
is observable, with an emphasis on the mother-child relation and motherly empathy, showing her as caring, nurturing mother, cradling an infant at her breast. This increasing focus on motherly tenderness and interest in feminine beauty with sartorial features from Himachal Pradesh and Kashmir contrasts with the rather hieratic, frontal image of a powerful protectress at Tabo. Interestingly, while the image of Hārītī gradually absorbs local features of material culture, Pāñcika is accorded less interest and retains his Indic iconographic features.

With regard to the iconographic form at Dungkar the divine mother is shown with a cup in her hand—which is absent at Tabo—from which two boys take food, in Indian attire, surrounded by putti-like playing children, in contrast to the children (or rather small adults) performing martial arts at Tabo. However, some of them carry weapons reminding that they are powerful spirits among their mother’s troops. The Dungkar type is reminiscent of a Pāla stone stela in the Dacca Museum featuring Hārītī with four arms, holding a fish and a skull cup in her two upper hands (as described by Shaw 2006: 134). The cup-offering mode at Dungkar emphasizes the mild, benevolent and motherly character of the deity. The cup originally perhaps alludes to the Buddha’s promise that if she gave up eating meat she would be fed at all his monasteries, and a plate for Hārītī and her children would be included at every supper by the monks in the monastery, in return she and her offspring were to watch over the monks and nuns in the monastery and ensure their security (ibid.: 112). Another interpretation of the cup is the bowl in which her youngest and most beloved son Priyāṅkara was hidden by the Buddha in order to make her feel the emotions of a mother who had lost her child. This was then the basis of her conversion to a child-protecting goddess. The cup has now turned to an attribute associated with offering, care, fertility and abundance.

A singular type of Hārītī is represented at Sumda and Alchi (Ladakh, both around 1200; Figs. 21–23), where she assumes the appearance of a Tibetan noblewoman (Fig. 24). In both cases the depictions are in the outer ring of the *maṇḍala*, at eye-level, perhaps signalling how much the image was still valued. Hārītī also holds a cup, which recalls the aristocratic banqueting couples on the entrance wall of the 'du khang—surrounded by girls and boys in Tibetan dress; above in the outer ring of the *maṇḍala* is Kubera/Vaiśravaṇa. The cup is a leitmotif at Alchi: in the “royal drinking or rather cup-offering scene” the female donor is offering a cup to the person opposite her, presumably her husband, while in another assembly scene in the frieze she is shown holding a lotus with two children in front of her. While the cup-offering mode of representation has been rightly associated with the Iranianate Turkic rulers in neighbouring regions by various authors, the overall composition is in a long West Tibetan tradition of donor imagery. One layer of meaning of the so-called “drinking scene” in the context of a Buddhist temple is most likely that of marriage, fertility and procreation as an aspect of the protection of the line of the clan and thus also of security in the region. Moreover, clear resonances between female protector divinities and images and ideals of rule of the elite can be found in such depictions. Significantly, in another scene of the Alchi ‘Du khang’s donor frieze (Fig. 25), the noble family is shown in the midst of their children—a boy and a girl—with the mother holding a lotus flower, recalling the aspect of procreation shown in the image of Hārītī at Khartse. Fertility, procreation and motherly care is also a major concern of female characters in donor depictions in a manuscript from Dolpo (cf. Fig. 26). In general a prominent depiction of female protagonists in donor scenes is observable from the end of the 11th century onwards, featuring couples represented at eye-level. It perhaps reflects a situation of a relative influential position of female donors—such as a daughter of Ye shes ’od, as has been shown—which even appears as founder of
a temple. Donor couples at Lalung, Alchi, Mangyu are shown in vivid scenes—contrasting to the static representation in earlier times—and in various settings, displaying marriage alliances, enthroned with their children, emphasising the aspect of motherly empathy and the women as life-force, alluding to a new idea of an ideal couple.31

Accordingly, the form and function of Hārītī in Ladakh appears not only to be exemplary for local Tibetan costumes used for a specific class of deities,32 but also relevant for the interpretation of the as yet little studied roles associated with donorship and female founders in particular, as will be examined in the following.

Ideaology, Concepts of Supremacy and Ideals of Rule That Furthered the Popularity of This Divine Pair

The cultivating of various concepts of tutelary deities is one of the major strategies to legitimate the sovereignty of the newly established Buddhist rulers (various previous studies have focused on this subject: cf., for example, Jahoda 2006, Papa-Kalantari 2010). In addition to the central function of female protectors in the royal foundation of temples during this period (10th to 13th century)—perhaps reflecting pre-Buddhist local religious entities—in particular protectors of worldly concerns and against threat of military violence appear as a central component and a constant phenomenon in the religious-political system of the ruling elite in Western Tibet (10th–13th century). This class of protectors reflecting martial virtues, equestrian culture and culture of arms and armour of the time have hitherto received almost no attention.

Various characteristic features may support the assumption of inherent ideas related to historical circumstances:

Worldly protectors appear to be a constant theme in temples associated with the ruling and aristocratic elite and perhaps reflecting specific intentions of the donors. Protectors of mundane concerns are perhaps not subject to a strict iconographic scheme but a question of a conscious choice of the donors, representing an independent form of worship, with a great variety of individual solutions; thus previous generalised interpretations of the pantheon of the sgo khang as deities designed as guardians in the outer sphere of the mandala need to be replaced by a more complex picture.

It is perhaps also significant that this type of worldly protector is absent at Alchi on the entrance wall of the ‘Du khang (with a condensed field of local village and territorial deities subordinated to the dharmapāla Mahākāla (“the Great Black One”); or mGon po phyag bzhi pa, “the one who protects the doctrine”); the latter representing a group of higher deities, or wrathful protectors who “monitor” lower territorial deities—dwelling above the portal—to ensure they preserve their vows to protect the village, monastery and its treasures.33 However in donor depictions there are clear

---

31 In general marriage alliances are a constant theme in the shaping of Tibetan (political) identity; the model being the chos rgyal, in particular Srong btsan sgam po (reigned ca. 612–649; Dotson 2009: 18), who chose among others as his wives a Nepalese and a Chinese Buddhist princess. His Chinese wife Wencheng (Wen cheng Ong con/Kong jo), belonging to the imperial line of the Emperor of China, is said to have brought with her the Jo bo statue of Buddha Śākyamuni housed in the Lhasa Jo khang, which is still the centre of worship for Tibetans. However the Jo bo was probably brought to Lhasa by a later princess, her niece, Jincheng (cf. Sørensen 1994: 241 and Heller 2006). Princess Jincheng, who first came to Lhasa in 710, was married to Khri lde gTsug rtsan (704–755) when he was a six-year old child. She is recorded as having actively promoted Buddhism and having founded the first samgha in Central Tibet (Kapstein 2009: 22).

32 According to Christian Luczanits, certain lower divinities at Dungkar (Cave II) wear local Tibetan dresses; among them also Sūrya, shown on the chariot (verbal communication, 2009).

33 For the evolutionary history of demonic protectors and their introduction to Western Tibet see Linrothe and Watt 2004: 44ff.
resonances and reciprocal exchanges with tutelary deities, and in particular with ideas associated with the bestowing of wealth, securing of peace and procreation. In particular the famous drinking scene is represented as an independent setting, and in a higher position than the donor frieze it appears like a clamp binding the scenes featuring diverse ceremonies and the world of protectors, perhaps alluding to specifically revered ancestors.

In this context it is relevant to point to the remarkable emphasis on the composition of details depicted like narrative elements at Tabo, for example, the couple’s children performing martial arts below. While the depiction of children’s various activities—such as fighting scenes—is not unusual, perhaps underlining the aspect of demonic activities that were converted into a beneficent role, the detailed depiction of martial arts covering a large part of the wall and the detailed display of armour, which may be designed to enhance the aspect of protection against a military threat, is remarkable. This aspect is also mentioned in the important West Tibetan chronicle mNga’ ris rgyal rabs. This confirms that the protection of the borders was an important concern in this period (cf. Vitali 1996: 110–111). However, the text does not directly relate to the Pāñcika-Vaiśravaṇa-Kubera complex. Thus a close association with his protective aspects must remain speculative. Male territorial deities, alluding to protection against a military threat and martial ideal, also feature prominently in a hitherto little-studied group of mounted horsemen, fully armed and reflecting indigenous military, martial and hunting customs, in later temples (presumably Pe har at Alchi—subordinated to Mahākāla—and at Dungkar), which appear around 1200, while female territorial deities dominate in earlier phases. The arms and equestrian culture reflected in this type of protector are reminiscent of descriptions in Rin chen bzang po’s biography (Rin chen bzang po rnam thar ‘bring po) (Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 91; see also Papa-Kalantari 2006, 2011 and Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 424–425); also relevant are depictions of arms and armour in the Sudhana frieze in the Tabo ’du khang, and in donor depictions at Nako and Alchi. Arms are depicted in utmost detail, certainly reflecting real weapons of the time, consistent also with the ubiquitous theme of descriptions of insignia in historical texts and edicts, reflecting their high value as symbolic capital of the royal insignia (cf. Vitali 1996: 107).

Whereas the role of Pāñcika with his martial ideals seem to have been replaced or complemented by armed horsemen, hunters and warriors—both subordinated to the pan-Indian protector Mahākāla—Hārītī remains a constant important religious factor reflecting an important popular projection screen in which a wide range of female

---


---

34 I wish to thank Christian Jahoda for directing my attention to this passage.
ideals of protection, fertility and creation from various periods and iconographic backgrounds could be amalgamated. The archetype of a mother’s compassion extended to humankind due to the conversion of the Buddha is a main principle of the figure of Hārītī. This is also echoed in images of female founders and their ethos of rule. Especially relevant in this context are resonances between the secular and divine sphere as related to images of self-representation of the ruling elite at Alchi, in particular those of female donors. This reflects important aspects of the Buddhist ethos of sovereignty of the Buddhist female elite and the strategies of attaining respectability among the local population, focusing on the aspect of women as life source, protection and procreation.35 Here a process of appropriation

35 The interpretation of the aspect of this pair of deities as ideal conjugal couple related to the ethos of rule of early dynastic art in this region is a rewarding question of future research. I proposed consonances between tutelary couples and donor depictions at Alchi (‘Du khang) as a couple in my paper at the 11th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Königswinter-Bonn (see Papa-Kalantari 2006, 2011), which is singular in this cultural sphere. Perhaps the idea of marriage alliances, as a source of peace in the region, which is a constant theme in the Tibetan cultural sphere and corresponds to the political conditions in the region, is relevant in this context. The type of conjugal couples at Alchi contrast to images of the enthroned Lord-Ruler Royal Monk (je rgyal lha btsun) Byang chub ’od at Tabo, on the model of the First Sermon of the Buddha, with the lay and monastic community subordinated. Women are also depicted at the Lotsāba lha khang in Nako, however there they are shown at a lower level (Papa-Kalantari 2002).

The ideas of legitimation linked with conjugal images to secure the line of the clan and marital alliances creating peace and prosperity as a basis of the establishment of Buddhist ideals in the region reflects a process already undertaken during the time of the old Tibetan monarchy. The most famous typology referring to this theme is the triad of Srong btsan sgam po and his two wives, and many images of it can be found in the Lhasa Jo khang.

or integration of local cults and the sphere of worldly and local spirits by the royal and noble elite can be observed.

Not only do various resonances between lay and religious imagery testify to this assumption, but it is perhaps also indicative that the only hitherto known temple featuring an independent image of Hārītī on the portal can perhaps historically be related to a female foundation related to a lady from the royal lineage of Ye shes ’od (Stoddard 2004).36 As Vitali (1996: 274) stated “By virtue of her foundation, IHa’i me tog fulfilled one of the principles of chos.khrims in sTod, by which women were encouraged to take vows (mNga’ris rgyal.rabs, p. 55, lines 3–4).” Historical sources in addition say that “she regarded her gtsug. lag. khang as though it were her adopted child” (sras.tshab) (Vitali 1996: 274). The presence of the divine mother on the entrance wall of Dungkar would well fit to female donorship, and the text portraying the temple as an “adopted child” of IHa’i Me tog. This not only demonstrates that women were endowed with economic wealth but also reflects their position in the social order.

36 Stoddard (2004: 93) has put it as follows: “Lha Bla ma Ye shes ’od’s two sons are well known, however his daughter, Lha’i Me tog [...] deserves better fame, since it appears that she is the founder of the now famous Dung dkar cave temple, in ca. 1000, and thus was the first princess among the patrons of the early Phyi dar”. According to mNga’ris rgyal. rabs (cf. Vitali 1996: 114) she was ordained and founded Kre.wel dbu sde temple. Whether this temple and the community of nuns can be related to the cave sanctuaries of Dungkar known to us cannot be stated with certainty. Cf. Vitali’s statement (1996: 274): “Kre.wel, a temple unknown to me”. However, Vaiḍūrya ser po mentions the monastery Dung dkar bKra shis chos gling and that IHa’i me tog supported 30 monks at this place long before this temple’s foundation (ibid.: 274–75).
On the Symbolism of the Entrance Hall in the Overall Spiritual Programme

The last part of this text looks at the specific function and symbolism of the sgo khang and its decorative programme within the tripartite layout of the gtsug lag khang. The temple’s structure and programme (in its hypothetical “original” form from the beginning of the 11th century) can be interpreted as a realisation of the trikāya: the dri gtsang khang where the image of the Buddha is venerated in a sacred enclosure represents the dharmacakrā; the du khang represents the sambhogakāya, while the cosmological images, protectors and donors represent the nirmānakāya, placed in the sgo khang, representing the border between the profane and the sacred sphere. As has already been mentioned, the Tabo gtsug lag khang represents a distinctive type of longitudinal architectural structure in the region with a horizontal succession of independent but interrelated spaces of increasing sacrality, which is also expressed in specific decorative programmes in each of them. This approach in the interpretation of sacred space contrasts to previous research, which subsumed the whole pantheon in the sgo khang as deities imagined as integrated into the outer sphere of the maṇḍala of the (later) ḍu khang without considering the fact of a chronological sequence of the two distinctive phases of decoration of the temple.37

A closer examination reveals that the sgo khang appears to represent an independent ritual space with a distinctive “pluralistic” iconographic programme characteristic of early Buddhist art at the end of the 10th century in the region, which was perhaps prevalent in India at that time and can also be found in Central Tibet (e.g. in the old sgo khang at Shalu). Moreover, it perhaps also reflects distinctive cultic needs, as will be discussed below.

From Mundane to Transmundane

In the entrance hall distinctive themes can be observed from worldly protectors on the entrance portal (flanked by cosmological imagery and the Wheel of Rebirths), guarding the sphere from nature to tamed world, which is characteristically inhabited by yakṣa deities (gnod sbyin) to territorial deities (srung ma) on the opposite wall, above the portal leading to the ḍu khang, subordinated to two clay dvārapālas (gate-protectors, sgo bsrungs), often guarding the portal of the maṇḍala.38 While the theme of worldly protectors above the entrance porch represents the yakṣa deities associated with wealth and protection integrated into the Buddhist pantheon to guard the Buddha and fulfil the wishes of the devotee, the female protector deity recalls local religious experiences imagined as spirits protecting specific locales that were converted into the service of the newly established Buddhist elite to become protectors of villages, monasteries and their treasures. Accordingly, the local territorial deity (srung ma) is shown in a setting with a strong local flavour.

On the side wall specific groups of Indic deities can be found, among them (on the south wall) are great Hindu divinities, the Eight Great Nāgas which subordinated themselves to protect the Buddha and planetary gods. The latter reflect the aspect of astronomy and astrology in the cosmological order and are an expression of the idea that the temple was conceived as related to the laws that govern the movements of the planets. The position of a group of protectors of the directions (dikpāla) above the portal is particularly meaningful in the spatial iconography of the sgo khang, positioned above the local protectress charged with the protection of the main hall.

The position of the tutelary couple on the entrance wall, above the portal—near cosmological imagery and thus most closely related to cosmic creativity—suggests an association with the long tradition of female spirits of creation and fertility, which have an important position in architectural ornamentation. Various female deities assumed the role of yakṣa deities in their function of acquiring material riches and protecting the monument, positioned at the threshold between the sacred and profane (Bautze-Picron 2010: 209). The image of creation, reflecting the transition between two stages “of the unformed and uncreated and of the formed and created” (ibid.: 226), was practically and logically aimed at being positioned at a place of passage in the architectural ornamentation. This “mundane” function is opposed to that of the local goddess, protecting the threshold to the sphere of the maṇḍala, positioned on the opposite wall above the portal to the assembly hall.

Certainly, the Wheel of Rebirths shown to the left of the conjugal imagery is also significant for the interpretation of the position of the couple. Due to the improvement from her position as a morally ambivalent person and increase in merit, Hariti turned from a demoness to a goddess, being exemplary for the path to liberation. An inscription above the wheel is indicative of the interpretation of the entrance wall’s function. Schlingloff (1988: 169; cf. also Zin and Schlingloff 2007) was the first to identify the Mūlasarvāstivāda

37 In Klimburg-Salter’s view (1997: 87) the maṇḍala represented in the adjoining ḍu khang of this temple. This interpretation of space is open to doubt, due to the fact that the ḍu khang’s programme as it presents itself today, stems from a later phase and thus perhaps also reflects a different religious orientation and symbolism of space.

38 In addition inside the gateway leading to the main hall are two painted dharmapālas (chos skyong), one of them a red Hayagriva.
As the textural basis for paintings of the Wheel of Rebirths at Ajanta, and also noted that this is also the case for the Tibetan samsārakāra. The Vinaya also prescribes a text together with an image of the preaching Buddha to be painted above the Wheel of Rebirths in the porch or entrance hall of a monastery, as also found at Tabo (for a transcription and translation see Lucezanitis 1999: 115–16). The text encourages the conversion to Buddhism as a basis of deliverance. The ensemble of the samsārakāra/the Buddha/and the didactic text is related to the teaching of the dependent origination and—due to its connection with enlightenment—can be regarded as the quintessence of the teaching of the Buddha (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 124–25).39 Significantly, it is presented to the monks and the lay population on the entrance wall of the sgo khang at Tabo. Of course the question if and in what form the cult of Hariti was present in the institutional life during the foundation phase of Tabo will require further studies of relevant related texts.

The mundane spirits and Indic gods in this space recall their position within the Buddhist cosmos in the Maṇḍūrīmalakalpa, where they belong to the clans of the laukīka, which are in the outer mansion of the maṇḍala and, as C. Bautze-Picon has put it (1996: 115): “They mark the threshold between the external chaotic universe and the inner world of the maṇḍala which the initiated must cross before reaching the inner circles, they belong thus to a required phase in the spiritual way.” However, the significance of these Indic gods in the religious-cultic context of a late 10th-century West Tibetan temple remains a question for future research.

The devotee must thus also pass through these spaces, transcending from mundane to transmundane on a symbolic level. The image of the yakṣa deity Hariti is a paradigm for the transformation of a demoness into a goddess in the service of Buddhism. The Indic deities serve as further models for the concept of the process of perfection undergone by ordinary, mundane beings, leading to ultimate liberation.40

The Programme of the Tabo sgo khang and Its Representation in Later Periods as Ensembles of the Entrance Wall or in maṇḍalas

In the development of spatial organisation of the temple’s programme, the ensemble of Indic gods and didactic imagery associated with the teaching of the Buddha shift from an independent space in the sgo khang to the surface of the entrance wall or portal of the main hall (Khartse, Nyag lha khang, Zhag cave, Dungkar). It is significant to note that the historical development of the iconography is also reflected in the evolution of the early West Tibetan temple structures. In the early phase of Tabo (comparable to Shalu) Hindu or Indic deities occupy an independent space reflecting their status as individual objects of worship, and their religious significance was still alive, perhaps reflecting a religious-cultural landscape marked by the co-presence and integration of non-Buddhist and Buddhist belief systems in neighbouring regions such as north-west India, in Himachal Pradesh as well as in Nepal. The monumental depiction of the tutelary couple above the Tabo portal indicates that it held a particular position in the cultic tradition at that time.

Accordingly, the programme at Tabo is an important evidence of a specific phase of inclusion of popular protector deities, Hindu and other non-Buddhist deities and spirits into the Buddhist pantheon, which is expressed in the layout and decoration of a temple.

In the later development and formulation of an indigenous architectural and religious-cultural tradition, central elements of the sgo khang’s programme can be found on the surface of the entrance wall (in single-chamber temples), which takes over the function of threshold from laukīka to lokottara. One example is the entrance wall of the Nyag cave temple at Khartse, which features a monumental Buddha assembly, or “sacred conversation” with the Buddha (cf. Allinger and Kalantari 2012 and Kalantari, “Shaping space, constructing identity: The illuminated Yum chen mo Manuscript at Pooh, Kinnaur”, this volume, p. 365) on the side wall next to the portal.41 While in the latter the pantheon of Buddhist and non-Buddhist folk religious deities and spirits subordinated by the Buddha covers the whole entrance wall, in later traditions (Nako, Lotsāba lha khang, ca. 1100) the deities are shown residing in the outermost circle of the maṇḍala palace of the Yoga Tantra class shown on the side walls (Nako, Dung dkar, Alchi ’Du khang). Interestingly they are shown outside the fire-ring in the earlier phase while from the mid 12th century onwards they are integrated into the outermost circle of the maṇḍala.

39 Cf. also Bechert and Gombrich 1995: 28, 49.
40 According to Seyfort Ruegg (2008: viii) the laukīka-lokottara opposition, i.e. the mundane and transmundane levels were not necessarily separated from each other, but “a mundane divinity or daemon occupying the laukīka level may finally be raised […] to the lokottara level of the ārya, or ‘Noble (of the spirit)’”. After this process of perfection, ordinary, mundane beings could become even higher protectors of the dharmā and “be trained and transformed into ārya-Bodhisattvas” (ibid.: viii).

41 In general, the deities on the entrance wall (Khartse) represent “lower spirits” of nature, yakṣas and yakṣis (gnod sbyin), mythical animals and hybrid creatures (such as kinnaras), nāgas, Ganapati (Tshogs [kyi] bdag [po]), as well as a rare type of the Four Great Kings (rgyal chen bshis)—the guardians of the world (lokapāla, jig rten skyon br) and of the four directions (dikpāla, phyogs skyon)—shown as similarly or uniformly garbed warriors with suits of armour and banners. They mark the border between inside and outside, the wilderness and the tamed world, separating the world of wilderness and the sacred sphere of deities. They represent a barrier or a force field between the ordinary world and sacred space from invasion by negative influences.
In a parallel development, the protectress Hārītī and certain other popular Indic tutelary deities as the Four Heavenly Kings continue their role as guardians of the portal and their representations can be found above or in the inner faces of the temple’s portal (such as at Nako in the IHa khang gong ma temple, and at Dungkar) in later phases, while—as a consistent feature in all periods—local territorial deities watch over the portal.42

To summarise, the outlined development demonstrates a gradual integration of the multifaceted pantheon into a more “purified” religious system in later periods. This development coincides with a tendency towards centralised layouts and programmes of single chambers in the temples. A key concept of the ordering of space in these later periods is the mandala. With its geometric rigidity it is designed to represent an immaculate outer-worldly sphere, which is beyond the plane of existence.

**Protectors in the Overall Spiritual Programme of the Tabo gtsug lag khang**

The clear horizontal hierarchy in the sgo khang (from worldly protectors and didactic imagery at the portal, to local territorial deities watching over the ‘du khang) representing the mundane sphere/laukika—leads to the gateway in which Hayagrīva and an unidentified protector are shown on the opposite side, watching over the sphere of lokottara. The ‘du khang programme from around the mid of the 11th century features a Vajradhātu mandala. The entrance wall of the main hall shows a protective-didactic ensemble featuring the “First Sermon of the Buddha” flanked by bodhisattvas, tantric deities and gatekeepers above lay imagery.

On the side walls, narrative paintings—shown in the lowest zone—and raised sculptures attached to the walls provide a lead for dynamic circumambulation around this space. The devotee then proceeds to the dri gtsang khang cum-ambulatory. Above the portal to the dri gtsang khang there are the great Hindu deities, among them Brahmā, Indra, Kuvera as well mahābodhisattvas and gatekeepers, associated with the protection of the directions and the portal respectively. The side walls of the ambulatory are covered with the theme of the Thousand Buddhas. We thus find a complete religious programme (or a second mandala) in the space of the dri gtsang khang (sanctum). In the shrine of the sanctum Vairocana is flanked by the Bodhisattvas Avalokiteśvara and Vajrapāni, the bodhisattvas that head the lotus and vajra families in three-family configurations according to Luczanits (2004: 37).43 In the Tabo dri gtsang khang a donor—presumably with his wife—is depicted in close proximity to the bodhisattva of this group offering a lotus to him.44 This cult’s centre is honoured and elevated by a distinctive ceiling decoration, featuring a mandalic layout45 and opening the centre to a cosmological concept of space thereby contributes to the structuring of sacred space in the dri gtsang khang into a mandalic site.46

A comparable spatial attribution of different classes of protector deities can also be found in a different type of slightly later (centralised, single-chamber) temples. From the 12th century onwards the horizontal succession of built sacred spaces appears to be “transformed” in favour of a more unified, centralised layout of sacred space, typically displaying squarish ground plans and shallow niches in the main wall. There are examples of these at Nako the Lotsāba Iha khang and the IHa khang gong ma; in the latter Guardian Kings of the Four Directions of a singular “Chinese Central Asia” type above the portal represent the class of worldly protectors (which 47 (which

---

42 In the latest phase (beginning of the 13th century) in the upper storey of the Alchi Sumtsek a unique type of protector is shown above the portal, featuring Ācala holding up a sword. The protector—a fully enlightened Buddha assuming a terrifying form—characteristically tramples or rather dances on an elephant-headed demon, Vināyaka (Lord of Obstacles) and like the Ganapati (Tshogs [kyi] bdag [po]) of Hinduism, he clutches a white radish. The demon holds aloft the deity showing his ambivalent position appearing both as a demonic element which has to be dominated and as a worshipper who subordinates himself to Buddhism and thus transformed to a protector. This type of protector marks a significant shift in Tibet in the representation of worldly spirits and the superordination of the transmundane over the mundane and subordinate level. These different approaches of integration of Hindu and non-Buddhist deities into sacred Buddhist order and cosmological conceptions from the 10th century onwards in the Western Himalayas need further research. It will also be necessary to examine parallel developments of the position of Hindu and Indic gods in the late Buddhist iconography in India and Tibet.

43 These deities may also reflect the aspect of bodhisattvas as attendants and protectors of the Buddha in the earlier Indian tradition, where such configurations (of a Buddha attended by bodhisattvas) are frequently represented in the temple’s sanctum (cf. Zin 2003: 408ff.).

44 At Tabo the bodhisattvas discussed above belong to an ensemble of four bodhisattvas, with two flanking the area between dri gtsang khang and ‘du khang.

45 The design shows auspicious signs in the corners and airbone offering deities in clouds. The whole configuration recalls a surface pattern consisting of pearl-medallions found on luxury textiles.

46 This horizontally structured spatial layout reflects the early, late 10th-century phase, which was then overlaid by a later late 30s/early 40s of the 11th-century phase of decorative programme in this temple (including perhaps a replacement of an earlier main sculpture in the ‘du khang in favour of a monumental fourfold representation of Vairocana in clay placed between dri gtsang khang and ‘du khang.

47 The guardians at Nako appear to be painted on the model of portable objects, one possible example being silk banners at Dunhuang (cf. Papa-Kalantari 2007b: 154–55).
are represented in earlier temples in the sgo khang) and perhaps underline the martial ethos of the aristocratic donor shown flanked by his riderless horse and his horse-bearer as if ready for combat (Fig. 18, lower part). In contrast, the donors are on the walls flanking the sanctum or below the focus of worship on the rear wall of the temple facing the portal. In both cases they are shown in close relation to the female Bodhisattva Tārā (Fig. 18, upper part) as if blessed by this “higher” tutelary divinity, popular from the 11th/12th century onwards in Western Tibet as a universal “helper in need”. In the sgo khang Tārā is represented as protectress against the Eight Perils. The donors are shown being blessed by the deity and at the same time engaged in rituals in her honour. The ensemble—reminiscent of contemporary book illuminations—is positioned below a clay Prajñāpāramitā mandala configuration covering the upper part of the main wall of the temple (see Müller 2008 for a study of this goddess at Nako).

In concept and layout the overall layout of the wall decoration at Nako recalls early Dunhuang banners with regard to the relation of donor depiction and overall iconographic composition. In the lowest zone—on either side of the central Tārā image—there are the Eight Great Bodhisattvas in linked heavenly palaces like a gateway marking and protecting the sphere to the mandala above.49

48 This transformation in the spatial concepts may well be related to different forms of spiritual practice and forms of liturgy in which portable objects may have played a role. Due to their portability, thangkas may have well been media of transmissions not only of motifs and styles but also of religious ideas—having also effects on interior programmes and spatial organisation and symbolism of the temple. Public ceremonies held outside the temple, which can still be observed in the Western Himalayas and in the area of historical Western Tibet may have triggered the use of ritual paraphernalia. Among them are festivals in which the appearance of protector deities, which act in a ritual space defined by various ritual paraphernalia and thangkas, plays a central role. They are often represented as portable objects kept in the temple during the year and presented to the devotees in specific rituals outside the temple on the occasion of festivals. The decorative programmes today are thus a complex interlacing of built structures and ephemeral sacred spaces shaped in Buddhist religious practice. There are also significant parallels with contemporaneous Buddhist festivals and performances (such as by Buchen of Pin valley, Spiti) where thangkas, placed on an altar or positioned as a background of a stage, are used to shape a sacred space (see Kalantari, forthcoming).

49 This horizontal hierarchy of deities associated with different categories of protection from the sgo khang or from a condensed configuration on the entrance wall to the cultic centre perhaps has a vertical equivalent at Shalu (ca. mid-11th century), where the “lower” class of protectors are in the ground floor (including donors and a srung ma above the portal) recalling the configuration of protectors found in the Tabo sgo khang, represented as ensemble in the entrance hall to the ‘du khang), while a representation of Prajñāpāramitā (Yum chen mo, “Great Mother”) is represented on an upper spatial level. The distinction between an entrance hall in the ground floor in which the lower spirits dwell, and one on the upper level, is the spatial equivalent of the concepts of worldly protectors, partly inhabiting the earth and more abstract concepts of sacred entities on a higher spatial level. I wish to thank Hubert Feiglstorfer, who drew my attention to the fact that the Yum chen mo temple in Shalu is positioned directly above the old mgon khang of the monastery (op. cit. Oct. 15, 2010), further corroborating this hypothesis of strict spatial hierarchy of different classes of protectors within a temple. (For a discussion of the original shape and function of these structures see Ricca and Fournier 1996: 344–45). The goddess Prajñāpāramitā is also represented in the Nako Lotsaba lha khang, on the left wall leading to the niche with donors represented below. Such configurations are also found in contemporaneous illuminated Prajñāpāramitā manuscripts illustrating the dominant position of this goddess in the spiritual praxis of that time. See also Müller 2008 on this topic.

Early Donor Depictions at Tabo and the Question of the Function of the Entrance Hall as Expression of Ritual Needs

As already mentioned, the dominant role of donor depictions in iconographic ensembles of the temple’s programme is a specific feature in the region from earliest times around the end of the 10th/11th century. On the side walls of the sgo khang at Tabo there are donor depictions as parts of the whole ensemble of protectors. The donors are not only shown as engaged in ceremonies and thus commemorating a historic moment “or ceremonies, but also because of their protective virtues. In particular in the old sgo khang at Shalu (c. mid-11th century), with a comparable arrangement, donors are shown together with armed horsemen displaying their martial virtues in the service of the protection of the temple.

Complementing earlier interpretations of the donor images “possibly on the occasion of a public ceremony connected with the foundation or consecration of the temple”, as first suggested by Luczanits (2004: 34) I am proposing that here it is most likely that specific types of worship related to festivals that typically take place in the space in front of the temple and in the entrance hall are being commemorated. As an example, on occasion of specific festivals (Namthong) at Khorchag monastery, the main guardian spirits appear in performances outside the temples. Here the huge statues of protector gods (which are usually kept in the mgon khang or Protectors’ Temple of the lHa khang chen mo) are carried by monks while the protective deity dO rje chen mo performs a ritual dance at the end of the ceremony, much revered by the local population. The festival ground outside the temple consists of thangkas associated with the respective deity or ritual, marking and protecting an ephemeral space. Textiles used as backdrops for altars and thrones, carpets and other ritual paraphernalia play an important role in such settings as well (see Jahoda and Kalantari 2015: 120–145; Jahoda 2015: 214–255). The notions of ephemeral spaces and in particular textiles and specific canvas (bskang rdzas), designed for the unfolding of a Buddhist ritual outdoors appear to be alluded to in the painting featuring the local territorial deity above the portal in the sgo khang. The space outside the temple is typically also shaped
by the assembly of monks as well as high-ranking members of the local population, reflecting a strict system of social order. The entrance hall’s programme thus perhaps reflects the religious practice outside the temple in the courtyard, which is the place where typically the cohesion/interface between the royal elite and the local community and the sacred sphere of the temple and the community of monks is acted out regularly. This function of this ephemeral “sacred space” is then also expressed in the shaping of sacred space inside the temple and in the decoration of the entrance hall. Accordingly, as recently suggested by Christian Jahoda (2012: 43f) based upon a preliminary study of the Khorchag Namthong festival, it can be proposed (with high probability) that specific public ceremonies of that time are represented here, and in particular offerings on occasion of high religious festivals—“on the occasion of the consecration of the temple” (see Jahoda and Kalantari 2016: 98; see also Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, p. 284).50 It is perhaps indicative that the devotees on the north wall at Tabo are shown kneeling, as if engaged in an act of veneration of a deity, facing the wall where the local divinity protects the portal to the main hall. The “public” function of the sgo khang as a place where offerings are laid, in contrast to the main hall reserved for ceremonies by the monastic community, can be seen in the Khorchag Jo khang temple up to the present day (as observed during there during field research in February 2010; see Kalantari 2012: 106). This religio-cultic function appears to be consistent with the tripartite layout of a group of structurally related temples (Nyarma, Alchi and to a certain degree Shalu in Central Tibet). The latter type of temple appears to have a function associated with worship of a wider public audience. While only traces of a veranda of the Nyarma Main Temple have survived, the Alchi ‘Du khang still has its original layout with a veranda and a courtyard, perhaps assuming the public function and the spatial symbolism of the former entrance hall.

Hārītī and Pāñcika in Western Tibet: Concluding Remarks

Despite the poor state of conservation and recent crude over-paintings, the depiction of the tutelary couple Hārītī and Pāñcika at Tabo is an important and singular representation in the still little studied early Buddhist artistic phase in the region, at the end of the 10th century CE. It reflects a phase in which this couple was still held in high esteem, perhaps reflecting North-West Indian art or the art of the Indian plains of that time.

An evolutionary process of form and idea of the tutelary couple can be observed in the imposing regal figures at Tabo, which still show the powerful, perilous and rather bodhisattva-like aspect of its Indic prototypes to different images of the feminine divine focusing on fertility and creation, as well as on motherly empathy with strong local features of material culture and aristocratic life. The perilous aspect at Tabo is illustrated by the fighting children below, Pāñcika fully armed and Hārītī shown with outstretched hand signalling the transformation of her original demonic power into a faculty of protecting all humans. The accent in later phases in contrast changes to a markedly benevolent and auspicious nature: in larger ensembles she is shown as a cradling or nursing mother displaying motherly care in an intimate relation with the child. The defining aspect of her divine nature is her role as the mother as life-source, reminiscent of a nature goddess, also showing off feminine beauty and sensuality.

The strong hierarchic form of the protective deity couple at Tabo reflecting the idea of ceremonial grandness (also in terms of actual size) corresponds to the mode of donor images in the same sacred space with their strict frontal form of representation which is “beyond time”. In the later development at Nako, Alchi and Dungkar (12th–13th century) in contrast deities of this class are rather engaged in actions or narrative scenes. A typical phenomenon—which appears to be a characteristic feature of Western Tibetan art between the 10th and 13th century—is the parallel development in the depiction of worldly protectors and donor imagery of the aristocratic elite. The latter are shown as enthroned rulers or aristocratic couples, in complex public gatherings and religious ceremonies reflecting their religious-political ethos of rule. This process runs parallel with the “reification” or appropriation of a certain class of “worldly” divinities as well as local territorial spirits by the local elite. The lively and almost casual mode of donor images from the 12th century onwards, depicted in actual events and characteristic costumes, are also model for images of deities of a certain class and vice-versa. Hārītī in Alchi and Sumda is exemplary for exchange between imagery and ideas from the aristocratic world and the sphere of lower gods. At Tabo and Dungkar the goddess of protection and female solicitude does not only have a prominent position close to donor images, as if the latter receive her favours (cf. Linrothe 2014). Moreover, she is depicted in important zones above or around the portal, perhaps reinforcing the donors’ and devotees’ wish to experience her sacred presence during the ritual walk below.

Bibliography

ALLINGER, Eva and Christiane KALANTARI (with an appendix by Gudrun MELZER), 2012. Art, mobility and identity in the Western Himalayas: notes on some rediscovered manuscripts in Western Tibet and Nepal and their artistic context. In: Heller, Amy (ed.) The Arts of Tibetan


Hārīti and Pāñcika at Tabo: On the Metamorphosis of the Protective Couple in Early West Tibetan Buddhist Temples

der ersten Jahrtausendwende; Bildbefragungen. MA thesis, University of Vienna.


TSHE RING RGYAL PO. 2006. mNga’ ris chos’byung gang sngongs mdzes rgyan. Lhasa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.


VITALI, Roberto. 1996. The Kingdoms of Gu.ge Pu.hrang: According to mNga’ris rgyal.rabs by Gu.ge mkhan.chen Ngag.dbangs.pa. Dharamsala, India: Tho ling gtsug lag khang lo gcig stong ’khor ba’i rjes dran mdzad sgo’i go gcig tshogs chung.


A Brief Analysis of the Reputed Passing Away of lha bla ma Ye shes ’od among the Gar log

Translated and Annotated by Christian Jahoda*

After skyid lde Nyi ma mgon [879–937], the son of dPal ’khor btsan [r. 893–910] or grandson of ’Od srung [840–893] of the lineage of

* The translation of this study is based on the article “lHa bla ma ye shes ’od gar log tu’ das min skor la rags tsam dpjad pa”, first published by the author in a volume of a collection of his articles (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 74–92) that deal mainly with aspects of the history, culture, society and religious traditions of mNga’ ris’ ris skor gsum, that is, the area of historical Western Tibet. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po’s study was reprinted some years ago in a volume entitled ’Tshol zhib dang mtha’ dpyod: Deng rabs bod rig pa’i skor gyi rtsom gyis btsus—Contemporary Tibetan Studies: Selected Papers (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2012: 130–142) [editor’s note].

The annotation is intended to draw attention to additional information or sources relevant to the author’s study. It is, however, not the intention to discuss the question of the Gar log per se, their overall appearance in Tibetan historical sources and how they were perceived and described in these sources at different times.

For the dates given for ’Od srung and dPal ’khor btsan see Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 292–293. The date given for skyid lde Nyi ma mgon is not entirely certain and based on Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtshan’s historical account in his Nyi ma’i rigs kyi rgyal rabs (“Royal Genealogy of the Solar Lineage”). According to this, skyid lde Nyi ma mgon was born in a Pig year and died at the age of 59 in a Bird year (see Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris skor gsum and how they were perceived and described in these sources at different times. 

The rulers (btsan po) of Tibet, had sought refuge in the region of Zhang zhung, he built the palace of sku mkhar Nyi bzungs on top of the

1. Remains of the palace of sku mkhar Nyi bzungs on top of the Elephant Hill (Glang chen ri bo) in the area of dKar dung, Upper Purang (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2004).
Elephant Hill (Glang chen ri bo) in the area of dKar dung, on the north of the Peacock river; in a locality not far from sTag la mkhar in spu rang, one of eighteen major castles of Zhang zhung, and made it [the palace of sku mkhar Nyi bzungs] into his principal place. The designation “mNga’ rīs” for this country first appeared after the subjugation of these areas, which previously experienced successive rule by the royal lineage of Zhang zhung. From that time, this region in the centre of Asia—formerly called Zhang zhung, the fame of which increasingly spread—became known as “mNga’ rīs”, and when his [skYid lde Nyi ma mgon’s] three sons had come of age, this kingdom was divided into three countries and was thus brought under control. Because of this, with regard to the history of Tibet, the Land of Snow (bod kha ba can), the name “sTod mNga’ rīs bsksor gsum” also initially appeared. The middle son [of skYid lde Nyi ma mgon], the ruler (btsan) bKra shis mgon, had two sons. The younger one’s name was Srong nge or Drang srong lde, who acted as king of Gu ge in the first part of his life and who, after having been ordained as a monk in the later part of his life, was also called the Royal Lama (lha bla ma) Ye shes ’od. From around the mid-14th century, a great appraisal is accorded to him in various historical chronicles of Tibet composed by renowned scholars of Tibetan Buddhism, with regard to the period of the Later Diffusion of Buddhism (btsan pa phyi dan) in Tibet and concerning lha bla ma Ye shes ’od, for having highly successfully arranged the dissemination of the Vinaya tradition of Western Tibet (sTod) and moreover for having invited many knowledgeable Indian panditas to Gu ge, headed by the three pa los [palas] and Jo bo rje dPal Idan.
A ti sha [Lord Master Śrī Atiśa]\textsuperscript{13} and other famous panditas, and later for having sacrificed his own life in the country of the Gar log,\textsuperscript{14} which was inhabited by adherents of a non-Buddhist religion (mu ste gs pa).\textsuperscript{15} As for what is thus recorded, apart from the postulated reputation which conveys his growing achievements, it is by no means in agreement with the historical truth.\textsuperscript{16}

\textsuperscript{13} In Tibet, Dipamkarasrijāna (982–1054) is more commonly known under his hononific title of A ti sha (Atiśa). In Tibetan sources he is usually referred to as Jo bo ("Lord") or Jo bo rje ("Lord Master"). ["[Mi]s 13 ye 7-10 (1054 C.E.) presence [from 1042–1045 in Western Tibet, followed by a longer stay in Central Tibet; editor's note] is nostalgically recounted in a number of Tibetan historical sources, the actual social and institutional impact that Atiśa had while in Tibet has recently been re-evaluated" (Apple 2013: 264). See also n. 44.

\textsuperscript{14} The Tibetan Gar log is a rendering of Qarluq (also Karluk, etc.). According to Golden (2013: 48), "The Qarluqs were among the most important Turkic tribal groupings that entered the central zone of Central Asia following the fall of the Türk and Uighur empires." On the Qarluqs, see also Karev 2013: 101 and passim.

The identification of the Gar log of the Tibetan sources with the Qarluq goes back to Helmut Hoffmann, who discussed this question for the first time in some detail by analyzing a number of relevant Tibetan and other language sources that were available to him (Hoffmann 1950). As shown more recently by Samten Karmay and Christopher Beckwith, towards the end of the 8th century the Tibetans were already in contact with the Gar log/Qarluq and around the same time the Qarluq were even allies of the Tibetans in military campaigns in the area of Khotan (Karmay 1980a: 158, Beckwith 1987: 155). See also Vitali, "Territory and trends in land control: The Byang thang 'Heartland' and the Nyarma branch of the Turkic people in historical Kashmir:" (Gar log: sngar kha che yul mNgā riS 'periphery", this volume, pp. 12–13, and Jahoda, "On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang of the Nyarma, Ladakh", this volume, n. 74, pp. 295–296.

The Tibetan word mu ste gs pa which corresponds to the Sanskrit tirthahā, is (and historically was) used to designate non-Buddhist or "heretic" doctrines and belief systems (and by consequence those adhering to them). It should be stressed that this word clearly reflects a classification based on religious (and not on ethnic) criteria. For a discussion of this term in Tibetan doxographical writings of the 13th century see, for example, Kapstein 2000: 104, 244, n. 81.

The author is hereby following the example of the Tibetan historian Samten Karmay, who in 1980 had already commented critically that "the Buddhist historians of Tibet seem to have felt that it was enough just to mention this story and repeat it through the ages. However this legendary account is in conflict with an almost contemporary source, the short biography of Rin-chen bzang-po [..]" (Karmay 1980a: 150. (In the reprinted version "the Buddhist historians of Tibet" is replaced by "the Tibetan Buddhist historians"); cf. Karmay 2003: 134).

Despite this and other critical comments (for example, from Sørensen 1994: 457), entries on the Gar log in various dictionaries, such as in Bod rgya tshig mdo zab chen mo, continue[d] to adhere to the legendary tradition that Ye shes 'od was killed in the 11th century by a king of the Gar log (who are named as a branch of the Turkic people in historical Kashmir): "gar log: sngar kha che yul gyi mi rigs tu ru kaa'i nang gses la dang cig yin zhing/ dus rabs bcu gis par de'i rgyal po zhi gis lha bla ma ye shes 'od dbangs pa" (Bod rgya tshig mdo zab chen mo 1986: 352–353) or uncritically quote from just one or a few selected historiographical sources (such as Dung dkar tshig mdo zab chen mo ["The Great Dungkar Dictionary"], which refers to Jo bo rje rnam thar rgyas pa ["Extended Biography of Jo bo rje"] by Brom ston pa; see Dung dkar tshig mdo zab chen mo 2002: 492).

An extended version of this pious legend was reportedly told by the present Dalai Lama bsTan 'dzin rgya mtsho. According to his story, the decapitated body of Ye shes 'od was kept in salt in the Potala palace when he was a boy (see Laird 2006: 78–80).

In fact, in Deb ther dmar po ["Red Annals"] composed by Tshal pa Kun dga’ rdo rje in the mid-14th century, in the Fire Dog year of the sixth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1346),\textsuperscript{17} it says: "The father was called lha bla ma Ye shes 'od. When he too travelled to India he was captured on the way by Gar log troops. After collecting gold from Tibet and despite a plan for paying ransom having been worked out, [gold] having been obtained equal to his body [weight] but not to his head, he was killed." (Deb ther dmar po 1981: 42–43).\textsuperscript{18} As for what is thus recorded, in various historical chronicles which I [Gu ge Tse] ring rgyal po inspected until now [it has been stated that] lha bla ma Ye shes 'od was captured by Gar log troops, and although this [Deb ther dmar po's account] is the first report concerning the way he was killed, nothing has been written about the reason he had to travel to India was in order to invite Jo bo rje [Atiśa].

In Rgyal rabs gsal ba'i me long ["The Mirror Illuminating the Royal Genealogies"], composed by Sa skya bsod nams rgyal mtshan at the end of the 14th century, in the Earth Dragon year of the seventh sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1388), it says: "At the time Dalai Lama bsTan 'dzin rgya mtsho. According to his story, the decapitated body of Ye shes 'od was kept in salt in the Potala palace when he was a boy (see Laird 2006: 78–80).

\textsuperscript{17} Throughout the translated text corresponding years in the Western calendar (spyi slong), which the author adds in parentheses, are given without AD or CE.

\textsuperscript{18} Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tse) ring rgyal po 2005b: 75, with minor corrections and additions in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “yab ni lha bla ma ye shes 'od ces bya/ (single shad) khong rang yang rgya gar du byon pas/ [lam du gar log gi damg gis bzung stey/ bod kyi [kyi] gser bdus nas [slu ([blu]) bar rtsams pa na'a/ sku lus tsem gcig myed pa la dbu tsem gcig ma myed par dkarangs [bkarangs])."

A slightly different version of this story is contained in the edition of Deb ther dmar po, which was published with the Tibetan text and in translation by Giuseppe Tucci (1971): "ide gtsug mgon 'di sras 'khor re dang srong nge gnayis/ srong ngei sku tse'i stod la na ga rda dang/ de wa rda zas gnayis byung smad ja rab tu byung ba lha bla ma ye shes 'od ces grags te/ mthon lding gi lha khang bzhangs pa dang/ 'khyu'ul blo ma na byu ntu rtsa gcsig rgya gar du chos slob pa la rdzong ba mdo zab cing pondita warma nram gsum spyang drangs stel/ mdo snags kyi gsung rab mang du bsgyur/ phyis jo bo sphyan 'dren pai dus su gser 'tshol bar byon pas gar lag gi rgyal pos bzung/ mnga' ris nas gser mang pos slu bar rtsams na'ang jo bo gdan 'dren la gnod dogs nas slur ma bcug par chos phyir sku srog gtsang ba yin 'dag/' (Tucci 1971: 39, f. 38a1–6). The translation reads: "Ide gtsug mgon had two sons: ak'or re and Sron ne. In the first part of his life, the latter had as sons: Nā ga rda dsa and De va rda dsa; in the later part he was ordained and known as Lha bla ma Ye shes 'od. He founded the temple of Mt'o Idin and sent to India, in order to learn the Law, twenty-one boys of sharp intellect, and he invited the three Panditas called Varma; many texts of sutras and mantras were then translated. Afterwards, when Atiśa was invited, the Garlok (Qarluk) who had come in search of gold, took the king prisoner. Though mNa' ris had begun to ransom him with much gold, lest this might be an obstacle to the invitation of the Jo bo, giving up the ransom, he sacrificed his life for the sake of the Law." (Ibid.: 168).
of these three, when lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od, having reflected on the teaching of the Buddha, went to India in order to invite panditas [to Western Tibet], he was captured on the way by non-Buddhist troops (mu stegs pa’i dmag). All his subtle energy channels which generate the spiritual qualities of virtuous orientation were burned by moxibustion, which put him in a deeply clouded mental state. When rumours about this came to lha bla ma Byang chub ‘od, he sent immeasurable riches as a ransom payment but, rather than this, gold equal to the weight [of Ye shes ‘od] was claimed. Again, when all gold was loaded, at the time the weight was measured and the gold did not come up for the portion of his head he [Ye shes ‘od] said: ‘Now, even if you ransom me there is no merit.’ (...) Jo bo rje [Atiṣa] (...) was invited to Tibet.” (R’Gyal rabs gsal ba’i me long 1981: 244). In this chronicle the main reason why Ye shes ‘od went to India was for the diffusion of the teaching of the Buddha in the region of Western Tibet and that he went into a land of non-Buddhist foreigners (phyi pa mu stegs yul) in order to invite panditas, and that as a result he was captured by the foreigners etc. Although this is written very clearly it is not stated whether the country where he was captured was that of the Gar log.

Besides this, in R’Gya bod yig tshang chen mo [“Chinese and Tibetan Documents”] composed by sTag tshang pa dPal ’byor bzang po in the mid-15th century, in the Wood Tiger year of the seventh sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1434), [it is stated that] “while lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od also searched for gold as a means for inviting panditas, he went to the Indian borderlands (rgya gar mtha’ khob) where he was taken prisoner by the king of these non-Buddhists (...) lha bla ma [Ye shes ‘od] passed away in the borderland (mtha’ khob).” (R’Gyal bod yig tshang chen mo 1985: 218–219). Although at first it is thus written that Ye shes ‘od went to the non-Buddhist Indian country in search of gold for the purpose of inviting panditas and in the end passed away there, it is not stated whether that country in the Indian border lands was [that of] the Gar log.

Next, in Deb ther sngon po, composed by ‘Gos lo gZhon nu dpal at the end of the 15th century, in the Fire Monkey year of the eighth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1476), [it is stated that] “lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od, though he had given up kingship (rgyal srid gtad), acted as commander of the army. When fighting with the Gar

19 The text refers to Zhi ba ‘od (1016–1111), Byang chub ‘od (984–1078) and ‘Od lde (983–1037) who are mentioned in the passage immediately preceding as the three sons born to King lha lde—however, making Zhi ba ‘od the eldest (see also Sørensen 1994: 457). The dates given here for Zhi ba ‘od and Byang chub ‘od in parentheses follow Vitali 1996: 146–147, passim, and Vitali 2003: 56–68. On the dates suggested for ‘Od lde, see Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 293–296.

20 This translates the Tibetan rtsa, which is also known from beliefs adhered to by transeun in Nepal as well as from rituals (rtsa sgo phybe bo) practised by their counterparts (lha pa) in Western Tibet (Bellezza 2005: 156). In this context the meaning of rtsa (Skt. nadi; “channel”) is not “vein, artery” but relates to the concept of “channels of the subtle body” (Berglie 1982: 152). Each “channel has the meaning of lha pa their counterparts (rtsa sgo phye ba) practised by

21 In this case the translation of rgya gar mtha’ khob as “kingship” is preferable to “state affairs” or “political power”. It is clear that Ye shes ‘od gave up up kingship (rgyal srid gtad) as partaking in the “essence of the centre” (dbus kyi snying po).

22 Regarding the notion and location of these “Indian borderlands” or “fringe countries of India” (rgya gar mtha’ khob), it should be noted that this notion is based on Indocentric Buddhist concepts, such as that of the Sixteen Great Countries (Mahājānapadas), with the centre lying in areas of northern or northwestern India which is surrounded by a large number of fringe countries (mtha’ khob) (already referred to and explained by Hoffmann 1950: 203, n. 2). The country of the Gar log is named as one of these, located between Tibet and Hor (Mongolia). As shown by Dan Martin (2012 [1994]), from the mid or late 12th century onward, these earlier concepts were replaced in Tibetan sources by “Tibetocentric” models. In addition to this, according to Martin, a distinction between two types of centres emerged, between a “geographic” centre (identified with Bodhgaya, the place where the Buddha is said to have obtained Enlightenment) and a “qualitative” centre (of flourishing Buddhism). In this way, countries such as that of the Gar log—as well as Tibet—continued to be understood and described geographically (from an Indocentric perspective) as lying at the margins (mtha’ khob), while qualitatively Tibet could be described as partaking in the “essence of the centre” (dbus kyi snying po).

23 This translates the Tibetan phyi pa, literally “outsider”, is usually used to differentiate non-Buddhists from Buddhists (nang pa, literally “insider”). By combining phyi pa with the word mu stegs (po), an additional aspect of differentiation or “othering” in terms of geographic distance is expressed, which is given in the translation as “foreigners”.

24 The original publication by the author gives 1983 as the publication date of this source, which, however, only refers to the foreword by the editor Dung dkar Blo bzang ’phrin las (see ibid.: 2).

25 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 76, with minor additions in square brackets based on the text edition cited): ”lha bla ma ye shes ‘od kyi snying po / [sangs rgyas [khyi] bstan pa la gdongs nas] / rgya gar du pa pande ta gdan tden par [par omitted in the quoted source] byon pas lam du mu stegs pa’i dmag gis bzang/ dge phyogs kyi yon tan skyes pa’i rtsa sgo thams cad me btsas bsrugs te mongs par byas so/ de’i gtam lha ma byang chub ‘od kyi gsan tel/ nor dpag med bskur nas [btsul] [blo] nu tbang bas/ [gsar dang ’iji mnyam pa dgos zer ba dang/ yang gser gang yod bskur bas rgya ma la btag dus dbu’i cha tsmam cig gser gyis ma long par khong na re/ da ni khryod mams kyi bdag [btsul] [blo]) kyang yon tan med ... jo bo rje ... bod du gdan drangs/”. Cf. also Sørensen 1994: 457–458 for a translation of the whole passage not quoted by Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po.
log, he was defeated and imprisoned. The Gar log told Ye shes ‘od: ‘If you cease taking refuge in the Three Jewels (dkon mchog gsum),’ we will release you from prison. If not, upon receipt of gold equal to the weight of your whole body, we will let you go.’” (Deb ther sngon po 1984: 299–300).

It is written here at first that ‘Ye shes ‘od acts as commander of the army and it is clearly stated that he himself led the army into the Gar log country and that after fighting a battle he was finally defeated and imprisoned. It is not explicitly written that the search for gold in order to invite panditas was the reason for leading [his] troops against the Gar log.

Moreover, in Deb ther dmar po gsar ma (“New Red Annals”), composed by Pan chen bSod nams grags pa in the 1530s19 or [more precisely] in the Earth Dog year of the ninth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1538), [it is stated that] ‘later, when [Ye shes ‘od] went in search of gold in order to invite Jo bo [Atiśa], he was captured by the king of the Gar log. Although it was undertaken to pay ransom with a lot of gold from Western Tibet (mNgag rGya’ ris), [he] sacrificed his life for the sake of the teaching of the Buddha, not allowing himself to be ransomed, as it might endanger the invitation of Jo bo [Atiśa].’

(Deb ther dmar po gsar ma 1989: 37).20 It is very clearly stated that Ye shes ‘od went to the Gar log in order to invite Jo bo [Atiśa], and also that the reason for going to the Gar log was specifically the search for gold.

In a similar fashion, in (Chos ‘byung mKhas pa’i dga’ ston [“Religious History: A Feast for Scholars”] composed by mKhas dbang dPa’ bo gTsug lag phrneg ba in the 1540s, in the Wood Snake year of the ninth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1545), [it is stated that] “this lha bla ma [Ye shes ‘od], in order to invite Jo bo rje [Atiśa] gave up his body to the king of the Gar log and died.” (Chos ‘byung mKhas pa’i dga’ ston 1986: 435). In this chronicle it is conspicuously written that the reason Ye shes ‘od sacrificed his life among the Gar log was precisely for the purpose of inviting Jo bo rje [Atiśa].

Furthermore, in ‘Brug pa’i chos ‘byung [“Religious History of the ‘Brug pa (bKa’ brgyud pa School)”] composed by ‘Brug pa Padma dkar po in the 1580s, in the Iron Dragon year of the tenth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1580), [it is stated that] “at this time lha bla ma [Ye shes ‘od], in search of gold with the intention to invite Jo bo [Atiśa], went to the borderlands (mthu’ khob tu) with an army battalion to look for gold. After the Gar log learned of this, they sent an army. When they met and fought [and Ye shes ‘od’s soldiers] were defeated, the royal monk (lha btsun)35 was captured.” (‘Brug pa’i chos ‘byung 1992: 264–265). This is similar to the above-quoted Deb ther dmar po gsar ma and [it can be stated that] the reason for him going to the Gar log and the circumstance of his passing away were written in an increasingly extended form.37

31 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 78, where the page reference is wrongly given as Chos ‘byung mKhas pa’i dga’ ston 1986: 35): “lha bla ma diis jo bo rje sphyan dren pa’i phrign sku lus gar log gi rgyal po la btag nas ‘das’.

33 Or the decade of the eighties (lo’bs brgyad cuyi), cf. n. 30.

34 See Martin 1997: 183 for various editions of this work.

35 The meaning of lha btsun is royal monk, or literally divine (lha) monk (btsun po). This title was used in historical Western Tibet for male members of the royal family who acted as rulers (or were at least eligible for this function) and who at some point in their life took vows and became monks (or who were monks when ascending the throne, like for example Byang chub ‘od, on whom see below n. 38). In this case, it is clearly (and uncommonly) used with regard to Ye shes ‘od although at the beginning of the quote he is referred to as lha bla ma which is the usual designation found in historiographical texts from around the 14th century.

32 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 78): “de’i dus lha bla ma gser btsal ba la jo bo sphyan drangs dgyongs mtha’ khob tu gser tshol ba la dmog du ma [dum] zhiig dang bcas te byon pas gar log gis shes nas dmog btag'/de dang thug ‘thab pas pam nas lha btsun rang btsun [btsun] la shor’.” My translation follows the sPungs thang edition (as quoted in Hoffmann 1950: 201 and Eimer 1976: 191) the various readings of which are given in square brackets.

37 Padma dkar po’s rendering of this story was discussed by Helmut Eimer in his article “Die Gar log-Episode bei Padma dkar po und ihre Quellen” (1976), where he collated and compared pertinent passages mainly from four different texts: two biographical accounts of Atiśa (Jo bo rjin po che dpal ldan a ti so’is’nam thar rgyas pa yongs gras and Jo bo rje rnam thar lam yig chos kyi ‘byung gnas), furthermore rGyal rabs sgag ba’i me long, Deb ther sngon po and also Deb ther
In *bk'a’ gdam ts chos 'byung* ['Religious History of the bKa’ gdam pa (School)'] by Ngag dbang kun dga’ bsod nams Grags pa rgyal mtshan, [it is stated that] “at that time *lha bla ma* Ye shes ‘od went to search for gold and after having been captured by the king of the Gar log, his grand-nephew (*dbon po*), the royal monk (*lha btsun*) Byang chub ‘od38 ransomed the paternal grand-uncle (*khu bo*) [Ye shes ‘od] and invited Atiša.” (*bk’a’ gdam ts chos ‘byung* 1996: 54–55).39 Similar to the chronicles mentioned above, the point of view of this chronicle is not exceptional either.

In *Thu’u bkwan grub mtha’* [“Thu’u bkwan’s Philosophical Tenets”] composed by Thu’u bkwan Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma at the beginning of the 18th century, in the Iron Bird year of the thirteenth sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1801), [it is stated that] “furthermore, after having thought to send an invitation [to Atiša] and trying to obtain a lot of gold, when he [Ye shes ‘od] went to obtain gold he was captured by the king of the Gar log and not released anymore.

**dmor po gsar ma** (that is, the version published by Tucci 1971). As a conclusion to his analysis Eimer arrived at the hypothesis that Padma dkar po composed his Gar log account on the basis of source material as represented by *Jo bo rin po che dpal ladan a ti sa’i rnam thar rgyas pa yangs grags, rGyals rabs gsal ba’i me long* and *Deb ther sngon po* and in addition also by expanding his template(s) (Eimer 1976: 190). Eimer did not express any doubts regarding the original validity of the story as contained in *Jo bo rin po che dpal ladan a ti sa’i rnam thar rgyas pa yangs grags*, and accordingly saw no need to trace the provenance of this narrative, which was considered a myth by Samten Karmay as early as 1980 and qualified as a legend by Sørensen (cf. Sørensen 1994: 457).

Nevertheless, Eimer’s analysis offers valuable insight into how Padma dkar po made use of these four different textual sources and how he rearranged and wove them into an account that places new emphases on certain aspects of the story by “creative” selection and arrangement of the material at his disposal, without basically inventing new “facts” (Eimer 1976: 189).

A similar legend is contained in the *dphe chos rin chen spungs pa* (‘Teachings by Example, A Heap of Gems’), a *bka’* gdam pa work (going back to oral instructions given by Po to ba Rin chen gpal [1027/31–1105], see Sørensen 1999: 178f. and Roesler 2013: 143). In this case as the example illustrating the reverence for the Three Jewels is that of the Buddhist king of Khotan, who was captured by the non-Buddhist king of the Qarluq and subsequently sacrificed his life for pious reasons (see Roesler 2011: 255–256).

The earliest evidence for a reference to Byang chub ‘od as a grand-nephew of Ye shes ‘od is found in the so-called Renovation Inscription in the assembly hall (‘du khang) of the Tabo gtsug lag khang. There one finds the expression *dbon lha btsun ba [pa] byang chub ‘od*. Ye shes ‘od is mentioned as mes byang chub sems dpal (“the ancestor, the Bodhisattva”) (Steinkellner and Luczanits 1999: 16, 21) while in the inscription in the entry hall dating from the late 10th century it says: “… [illegible] ‘chen po ye shes ‘od” (great … Ye shes ‘od). See also Luczanits 1999: 105.

38 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 79, with minor corrections in square brackets rendering the text edition cited): “*du dungs gser mang po btsal nas spyan ‘iren par mnga’g dsongs nas gser ‘tshol [tshol] du phyes pa gar log gi rgyal pos bzang na ma bzang / ye shes ‘od kyi dbon po byang chub ‘od kyis gser mang po btsal nas khu bo blu bar phyr [phyn] kyang gtong ma rnyan/ de nas ye shes ‘od gar log gis bkran’*. 39 dBus is the area around Lhasa (lHa sa) in Central Tibet. At certain times in history it also constituted a province (see Goldstein 1991 [1968]: 19, Goldstein 1989: 66; Tsering Gyalpo, Hazod and Surenzold 2000: 51).

Although Byang chub ‘od, the grand-nephew (*dbon po*) of Ye shes ‘od, having searched for a large quantity of gold, went to ransom his paternal grand-uncle (*khu bo*), he was not able to free him. Ye shes ‘od was then killed by the Gar log.” (*Thu’u bkwan grub mtha’* 1985: 85). Although a clear point of view is expressed, it cannot be said whether the similarity with most of the chronicles mentioned above is because of the very late period when this particular chronicle was composed.

To summarise, the essential point recorded in the group of chronicles mentioned above is that in order to invite a famous Indian *pandit* to—Jo bo rje dpal Idan A ti sha [Lord Master Śrī Atiśa]—Gu ge, *lha bla ma* Ye shes ‘od himself went to the country of the Gar log in search of gold, or that [there] while leading an army he was captured and held prisoner by the king of that country, and that because of the severe legal punishment in the human realms (*mi yul du*), let alone in the end [any] means to return to his own country, he decided to sacrifice his own life. In any case, for the most part the basis for these chronicles was *Deb ther* (*dmor po*) and *rGyals rabs gsal ba’i me long*. If one compares the chronicles written after the 14th century or from the 15th century with the group of chronicles written in the 14th century, apart from [the fact] that the content in terms of the grace, glory, and excellencies of wealth was increasingly augmented and became more comprehensive, this differentiation and distinction of the essential meaning was not there at the beginning. As for the *Deb ther dmar po*, composed at that time the attachment to the *Vinaya* tradition of Western Tibet (*sTod*) was strong in the dBus region40 in the centre of the Land of Snow (*gangs can ljongs*).41 In fact, headed by the *bKa’* gdam pa monasteries Sol nag thang po che, gSang phu sne’u thog and Rwa sgrem, built by the three excellent “spiritual sons” (*thugs sras*)42 of Jo bo rje, namely Khu ston brTson ‘grus g.yung drung, Ngog Legs pa’i shes rab and ‘Brom ston rGyals ba’i ‘byung gnas, the three (*khu rang**
the bKa’ gdam pa school, or else the influence of the Vinaya tradition of Western Tibet (sTod) was particularly strong. Because of this, the need to speak highly about the famous Indian pandita Atiśa was as great as before and (so) indeed praising was not only far from low for having left behind a great achievement in terms of the increase of the influence of the bKa’ gdam pa school and once more the spread and expansion of the teaching of the Buddha in Tibet, the Land of Snows, undertaken by him but also because of invitations to famous panditas or such great scholars. And [there was also praising] of the unsurpassable achievement of the highly renowned Ye shes ‘od, that is, of one who acted earlier as king of mNga’ ri’s Gu ge and later, after having been ordained as monk, established incredible success with the dissemination of the Vinaya tradition of Western Tibet (sTod) and the Later Diffusion of Buddhism (bstan pa phyi dar). And by virtue of the desire to play the sweet sounding melody of a tambura hailing the gratitude which is difficult to measure [this] is imagined from the perspective of somewhat exaggerating the real historical developments.44

In fact, there was no reason why lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od should have gone to the borderland country of the Gar log in search of gold. If one asks why, the region of sTod mNga’ ri’s is in Upper Tibet [the field of] Buddhism many erudite panditas were invited to Tibet, or else not to mention, as it may be clearly known, that at the time of sending Tibetan children zealous in the teaching of the Buddha, to India in order to ask for religious instruction, usually a great deal of gold was also taken with them. As lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od had abundant gold mines in his own country, there was no need whatsoever to go in search of gold in a country in need of other countries’ gold.

Analogously, [it is written] in Deb ther sngon po [that] at the time of Ye shes ‘od, when in Gu ge the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po, the Lesser Translator (lo chung) Legs pa’i shes rab and many other excellent scholars lived, “Jo bo [Atiśa] said: ‘If men such as you [Rin chen bzang po] appear to live in Tibet, then there is no need for me to come to Tibet!’” (Deb ther sngon po 1984: 305).46 According to these words, and in conformity with the great influence of the three Pālas who were especially invited from India, there was furthermore no urgent reason to invite the famous pandita Jo bo rje dPal ldan A ti sha [Srī Atiśa] to Gu ge. Moreover, at that time in Gu ge the roots of the teaching of the Buddha (chos) and of knowledge (yon tan) were profoundly implanted by the outstandingly learned translator Rin chen bzang po and his disciples and also the foundation of the textual tradition of the gSangs sngags gsar ma [“Secret New Mantra”]46 was laid out in an excellent form. In fact, at the end of the 11th century or beginning of the 12th century, in IDe’u chos ‘byung by IDe’u Jo sras and in mkhas pa id’e du’i mdzad pa’i rgya bod kyi chos ‘byung rgyas pa by mkHas pa id’e’u [it is stated that] “also in the later part of the life of the translator (lo tsā ba) Rin chen bzang po, after the royal monk (lha btsun) Byang chub ‘od had sent Nag tsho lo tsā ba46 to India, Hi dang ka ra was invited and among many the level to put into practice both mantra and philosophy (sngags [dang] mtshan nyid) was established” (IDE’u chos ‘byung 1987: 147–48)46 and “in the later part of the life of the translator (lo tsā ba) Rin chen bzang po, the bKa’ gdam pa school, or else not to mention, as it may be clearly known, that at the time of sending Tibetan children zealous in the teaching of the Buddha, to India in order to ask for religious instruction, usually a great deal of gold was also taken with them. As lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od had abundant gold mines in his own country, there was no need whatsoever to go in search of gold in a country in need of other countries’ gold.

The author’s scepticism concerning the overwhelming influence of Ye shes ‘od and Atiśa on the religious landscape of Central Tibet is to a large degree in accordance with a critical rereading of the real historical development by Ronald Davidson who states: “the initial impact of West Tibetan Buddhism on U-Tsang [dBus gsang] in the eleventh century was modest” (Davidson 2005: 112). There also seems to be some agreement with regard to a critical evaluation of later accounts (from the 14th/15th century): “Both the Kadampa connection and the authority of kings like Lha-lama [lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od] and Jangchub-O [Byang chub ‘od] have been accorded great significance throughout later Tibetan and secondary Western literature. Why such a skewed emphasis? I believe there are at least three reasons: the Tibetan privileging of the Osung [‘Od srung] line, with a consequent historical amnesia about the activities of Yumten’s [Yum brtan] descendants, the importance of the Kadampa [bKa’ gdam pa school] or Kadampa-related doctrinal and teaching systems in the late eleventh century onward, and the overwhelming rewriting of history after the founding of the New Kadampa lineage [this is, the dGe Iden pa or dGe lugs pa school] by Tsongkha pa in 1409.” (ibid.: 113).

According to the author, the meaning of khor pa in this case is “relics or ruins”. The translation is based on the meaning of khor as “to be roasted” and consequently gser khor pa is understood to refer to the roasting or calcination of gold in order to effect “the elimination of the arsenic and antimony associated with gold and silver ores” (see, for example, Johnson 1898: 100) the traces of which are still visible in the form of remains or relics.

44 The author’s scepticism concerning the overwhelming influence of Ye shes ‘od and Atiśa on the religious landscape of Central Tibet is to a large degree in accordance with a critical rereading of the real historical development by Ronald Davidson who states: “the initial impact of West Tibetan Buddhism on U-Tsang [dBus gsang] in the eleventh century was modest” (Davidson 2005: 112). There also seems to be some agreement with regard to a critical evaluation of later accounts (from the 14th/15th century): “Both the Kadampa connection and the authority of kings like Lha-lama [lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od] and Jangchub-O [Byang chub ‘od] have been accorded great significance throughout later Tibetan and secondary Western literature. Why such a skewed emphasis? I believe there are at least three reasons: the Tibetan privileging of the Osung [‘Od srung] line, with a consequent historical amnesia about the activities of Yumten’s [Yum brtan] descendants, the importance of the Kadampa [bKa’ gdam pa school] or Kadampa-related doctrinal and teaching systems in the late eleventh century onward, and the overwhelming rewriting of history after the founding of the New Kadampa lineage [this is, the dGe Iden pa or dGe lugs pa school] by Tsongkhapa in 1409.” (ibid.: 113).

45 According to the author, the meaning of khor pa in this case is “relics or ruins”. The translation is based on the meaning of khor as “to be roasted” and consequently gser khor pa is understood to refer to the roasting or calcination of gold in order to effect “the elimination of the arsenic and antimony associated with gold and silver ores” (see, for example, Johnson 1898: 100) the traces of which are still visible in the form of remains or relics.

46 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe zhab rgyal po 2005b: 81): “jo bo’i zhal nas’ e khyed la bu bzhugs nas snags pa [recte: snags bas]/ kha bo bod bu’i mug ma ‘dgos par’i dag”. Cf. also Roerich 1988: 249.

47 All the Tantras that were translated after the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po (958–1055), also known as author of sNgags log sun byin [“Critique of False Tantras”), were conventionally called gSangs sngags gsar ma, in order to distinguish them from previously translated erroneous tantric texts (see Cabezón and Lobsang Dargyay 2007: 23; Raudsepp 2011: 35).


49 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe zhab rgyal po 2005b: 81, with minor additions in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “yang la tsha bo de’i sku tshes’i smad la lha btsun byang chub’ od kyi nas tsho lo tsha ba rgya gar du btang nas’/ hi pang ka ra spyon drangs nas sngags mtshan nyid gnyis ka’i lag tu btsun ba’i rim pa mang du phab’/”.
after the royal monk (*lha btsun*) Byang chub ‘od had sent Nag tsho lo tsa ba to India, the master Di pam ka ra was invited and the level to apply both mantra and philosophy (*snaggs* [*dang*] *mtshan nyid* [*na*] *sangs* *gshis* in *practice* was established. (mkhas pa ld’u mdzad pa'i rgya bod kyi chos *byung rgyas pa 1987: 382). Then, a short period of time before these two chronicles were written, the name of Jo bo rje—Hi pang ka ra or Di pam ka ra—was also retained in Sanskrit as it is. Who precisely invited him, or that it was *lha bla ma* Ye shes ‘od rather than *lha bsun* Byang chub ‘od, is never mentioned. There is not the slightest trace [of evidence] for the made-up history that *lha bla ma* Ye shes ‘od went on some military affair to the Gar log in order to invite Jo bo rje (Atisha) and so on.

In *Chos ’byung me tag snying po sbrang rtsi’i bcd* [*A Religious History: The Sweet Essence of Flowers*], composed by Nyang ral *na* notifying the 1190s, it is stated that “Byang chub ‘od thought: ‘If one excellent learned pandita is invited, the benefit will be greater’. After rGya br’ton ‘grus seng ge was appointed as leader … in the land of Za hor in eastern India … the one known as Master (*rje* Di pam ka ra shri dznyā na [*Dīpaṃkaraśrījñāna*] … was given a gift accompanying the request (upon which) he replied … and agreed to come to Tibet … and went to mTho ling. (Chos ’byung me tag snying po sbrang rtsi’i bcd 1988: 466–467). In terms of the content of this particular chronicle and the description in all respects, there is also not a great difference in the degree of detail from *IDe’u chos* *byung* mentioned above, and the historical facts are for the most part comparable.

In *Bu ston chos ’byung* [*Bu ston’s Religious History*], written by Bu ston Rin chen grub in the 1320s, in the Water Dog year of the fifth-sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1322), it is stated that “Byang chub ‘od bestowed gold on five men, such as Nag tsho Tshul rgyal ba and so on and after the translator (lo tsa ba) rGya br’Tson ‘grus seng ge had been elected as their leader, *he* said: ‘May a good pandita be invited!’ upon which Dwi bam ka ra shri dza nya na [*Dīpaṃkaraśrījñāna*] was invited.” (Bu ston chos ’byung 1988: 201.52 Although of course this chronicle was composed in the 14th century, nevertheless as regards what is said in this highly reliable reference book quoted here, its straightforward point of view is consistent with the group of chronicles composed in the 12th century.

In addition, in *Yar lung jo bo’i chos ’byung* [*Yar lung jo bo’s Religious History*], composed by Yar lung jo bo Shwakya Rin chen sde thirty years after Tshal pa’s [*Tshal pa Kun dga’ rdo rje*]’s *Deb* [*Dmar* *po*], in the 1370s of the fourteenth century, it is stated that “his [*lha Id’u*]’s sons ‘Od lde and *pho brang*53 Zhi ba ‘od and *btsun*...
predesignated by Ye shes ‘od in 1023) until his death in 1078 (at the same time he also holding between 1037 and 1057) upon which he was succeeded by his younger brother Zhi ba ‘od (1078–1111). See Jahoda, “On the foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakhi”, this volume, p. 296, for the references to Ye shes ‘od nam tham rgyas pa.

As mentioned by Vitali, the word brang chung also occurs in another source. This may have been used for a younger brother of somebody with a (senior) pho brang status. This designation has therefore been a formal one based on the original “constitution” proclaimed by Ye shes ‘od. This explains also its self-referential use by Zhi ba ‘od in his bka’ shag (see Karmay 1980b: 18 whose translation of “pu hrangs kyi pho brang zhi ba ‘od”—“Zhi ba ‘od of the palace of sPu-hrangs”—makes his socio-political and religious status fully clear. Some of those falling within the pho brang category (such as lha bla ma, lha btsun pa, rgya brtan pho brang zhi ba ‘od) were therefore more commonly used for them, at least in later periods. Obviously, it was not felt necessary to name all those, like De ba ra dza (Devarāja) or Na ga ra dza (Nagarāja), who belonged to this category (and were deemed mature enough) explicitly as pho brang or to even mention their personal names. Even in contemporary historical inscriptions (for example those in the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang dating from the end of the 10th century), Na ga ra dza as a younger (male) member of the royal lineage is referred to as “lha sras na ga ra dza” (Luzzani 1999: 105), combining his lay title lha sras (prince) with his name as dge bnyen (ordained lay practitioner, Skt. upasaka, following the example set by king Asoka: cf. Gombrich 1994, Thapar 1994). Similarly, those belonging to the lay aristocracy or nobility are also designated as lha sras (prince or nobleman’s son) or lha lcam (princess, nobleman’s wife) to which their personal (lay) name is added (ibid.: 112). While the usage of the designation lha sras, etc., in this case occurs clearly within a Buddhist context, it cannot be understood in the same way as an acquired Buddhist title (such as btsun pa, dge slong). It rather designates “a descendant whose behavior is worthy of his ‘noble ancestral spirits’” and lha can be understood as “a collective term for the nobility” (Walter 2009: 118). In this case lha sras is determined predominantly by socio-political concepts and is used to express an inherited social position, while religious status based on Buddhist concepts is expressed by distinct Buddhist designations and names. The differing usage corresponds to the spatial differentiation of the two communities depicted in the sgo khang on opposing walls, on the south wall the assembly of religious figures (including those of royal descent) and on the north wall the assembly of lay figures headed by the nobility.

The word btsun pa means monk. For the usage of this word with regard to members of the royal lineage, see also n. 35 and 53. In this case a clear differentiation was observed with regard to the functions and titles of the three brothers: ‘Od Ide, who succeeded his father lHa Ide as king, is only mentioned as his son. Zhi ba ‘od is named as pho brang, obviously his most important title and a function which he seems to have carried out between 1078 and 1111. Despite the fact that he seems to have fulfilled the function of pho brang for a long period (and presumably until the end of his life), Byang chub ‘od is named as btsun pa (monk), which most probably stands for lha btsun pa (royal monk). The reason may be that between 1037 and 1057 he also held secular power, so that his function (and qualification) as pho brang may have been constrained somewhat (not allowing him to act as a translator of texts like Zhi ba ‘od). The designation as (royal) monk seems to have been used as a compromise which also allowed for a plausible differentiation (as the functions of pho brang or king could only be fulfilled by one person at a time).

after the Translator (lo tsa ba) rGya brTaSon [‘grus] seng ge had been elected as their leader, [they] said: “May a good pāṇḍita be invited!”, upon which pāṇḍi ta Di pam ka ra shi dza nya na [Dipamkarṣārījñāna] was invited.” (Yar lung jo bo’i chos ‘byung 1987: 69–70),55 and that, quoting another passage from this chronicle, “in the chapter on the nephew(s) of lha bla ma [Ye shes ‘od], it was written in accordance with the Chos ‘byung of lo tsa ba Bu ston (Bu ston chos ‘byung).” (Ibid.: 70).56 Being thus clearly stated, there is no need to mention that its point of view is the same as that of Bu ston chos ‘byung.

Further, as regards Ka thog Rig ‘dzin Tshe dbang nor bu, in consequence of the fact that he stayed in those countries (yul)57 for a long time and enjoyed the experience of going on pilgrimage to many places in the area of stod mNgag’i ris [Western Tibet], as he was blessed to see many reliable reference materials about the history etc. of this region, he came to write in the Bod rje lha btsun po’i gdung rabs [“Genealogy of the Divine Emperors of Tibet”],58 which deals with the arising of the precious doctrine of the Buddha in the north, [that] “on account of Byang chub ‘od’s invitation of Jo bo rje to Tibet and so on, extremely great gratitude was expressed for the teaching of the Buddha” (Bod kyi lo rgyus deb ther khag Inga 1990: 74).59 What is written (here by him) is to a large degree in accordance with historical reality and he is unhindered by the bias of a Buddhist school.

In Bod kyi deb ther dpivy kyi rgyal mo’i gli dbyangs [“Annals of Tibet: The Melody of the Spring Queen”]60 composed by the Fifth Dalai Lama in the 1640s, in the Water Sheep year of the eleventh

53 quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 83, with minor variant readings in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “de’i sras ‘od ide dang/” [pho brang zhi bo’i dang/] [btsun pa byang chub bd gsum gyis nag tsha tshul khrims rgyal ba la sogs pa’i m lnga la gser mang po bsukur/ rgya btsun (grub) seng ge ‘dun bu bskos nas pandi ta bzang po sgyan drangs la shag byas pas/ ...] pandi ta di pam ka ra shi dza nya na [danyal] na sgyan drangs/”.

54 The word btsun pa means monk. For the usage of this word with regard to members of the royal lineage, see also n. 35 and 53. In this case a clear differentiation was observed with regard to the functions and titles of the three brothers: ‘Od Ide, who succeeded his father lHa Ide as king, is only mentioned as his son. Zhi ba ‘od is named as pho brang, obviously his most important title and a function which he seems to have carried out between 1078 and 1111. Despite the fact that he seems to have fulfilled the function of pho brang for a long period (and presumably until the end of his life), Byang chub ‘od is named as btsun pa (monk), which most probably stands for lha btsun pa (royal monk). The reason may be that between 1037 and 1057 he also held secular power, so that his function (and qualification) as pho brang may have been constrained somewhat (not allowing him to act as a translator of texts like Zhi ba ‘od). The designation as (royal) monk seems to have been used as a compromise which also allowed for a plausible differentiation (as the functions of pho brang or king could only be fulfilled by one person at a time).

55 “Those countries” should be understood to refer here mainly to sPu rang, Gu ge and La dwags, which constituted the three main divisions or countries of mNgag’i ris skor gsum or historical Western Tibet.

56 The full title of this work is rGya bo’i bstan pa rin po che byang phyogs su ‘byung bo’i rtsa lag bod rje lha btsun po’i gdung rabs thig nyung don gsal yid kyi me long (Bod kyi lo rgyus deb ther khag Inga 1990: 57–87).

57 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 83, with minor variant readings in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “lha bla ma khun dbon gyi skabs ‘tir lo tsa [stastha] ba bu ston gyi chos ‘byung tshar bris pa yin [gyi]/”.


59 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 83, with minor variant readings in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “lha bla ma khun dbon gyi skabs ‘tir lo tsa [stastha] ba bu ston gyi chos ‘byung tshar bris pa yin [gyi]/”.

60 Spring Queen is a metonym for the cuckoo. Another possible translation of the title is therefore “The Song of the Cuckoo”.
sixty-year cycle in the Tibetan calendar (1643), [it is stated that] "as for the report61 that lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od went to search for gold and was taken prisoner by the Gar log: that is, an ordinary person, appearing like one asking for riches, would be of weak intellect. But as this particular one [lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od] was a great king of Western Tibet (mNga’ ris), it is faulty on account of the fact that the circumstances were not thoroughly examined." (Bod kyi deb ther dpyid kyi rgyal mo’i glu dbyangs 1980: 81).62 Although this chronicle was written in a late period, given that in this historical problem it is the view written initially which is to be refuted and taking [this] as [his] point of doubt, his unusual opinion is also frankly expressed. It is not possible, however, to give a clear reason why [he] went into the crucial point or [why he did this] without materials to be analysed. As it was not possible even to bring some clarity to the foundation of the reference materials, from the 14th century, the famous scholars in the history of Tibet were never able to correct and clarify the mistaken view adhered to with regard to this problem.

In fact, in the group of historical chronicles written around the beginning of the 12th century by mKhas pa Iđe’u and Iđe’u Jo sras, and in the 1320s by the Lord of Scholars (mKhas pa’i dbang po) Bu ston Rin chen grub, it says: the one who invited pandita Di pam ka ra shi dza nya na [Dipamkaraśrījñāna] to mTho lding monastery of Gu ge was the Royal Monk (lha btson) Byang chub ‘od. There is no mention of lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od going to the Gar log in search of gold, inviting an Indian pandita or Jo bo rje (Atiśa), then sacrificing his life, or that in conformity with his final words his nephew Byang chub ‘od made a great and continuous effort to invite Jo bo rje. On the one hand, at that time the Vinaya tradition of Western Tibet (sTod) was not particularly widespread in the dBus region and the influence of the bKa’ gdmams pa (school), which started with Jo bo rje dPal ldan A ti sha [Lord Master Śrī Atiśa] or because of him, was not that great. On the other hand, at that time the partiality of the perspective of a Buddhist school among those competent in the history was not very strong and there was no necessity as it were to make such a great evaluation and praise the great achievement of lha bla ma Ye shes ‘od on account of the invitation of a famous pandita from India or Jo bo rje (Atiśa) respectively. Though generally there is no problem concerning what happened in history, [considered] from the viewpoint of the degree of conformity with facts, [it can therefore be stated that] there were a few deliberate efforts at exaggeration in what was said. After that, apart from the Yar lung [jo bo’i] chos ‘byung, in the group of religious chronicles written after the 1340s, conditioned by the partiality of Buddhist schools, one can evidently discover a distortion of the truth of historical reality.

Then, the facts of this historical problem are very clearly recorded in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: at the end of his life when he resided at mTho gling and Mang nang in Gu ge, about the way he lived his life or concerning the activities he carried out, it is stated that "even at the time when he was of a very senior age he performed many ritual circumambulations (bskor bo) in his personal sanctuary, holding his walking-staff, and besides this encouraged all kinds of worship, acting [for the benefit of] himself and others, all. At this time, with the exception of one attendant, he did not encounter anybody when he pronounced: ‘Until the termination of my life within three years I will perform spiritual practice’. After departing from his meditative retreat, he showed his face to those to be trained, [acting] like a subject for a while. In order to give his final instructions on religious regulations (chos rtsigs),63 he went to Mang rgyud.64 Furthermore, until he reached the end of his life he resided at mTho gling and acted for the welfare of the teaching of the Buddha and that of sentient beings." (mNga’ ris rgyal rabs 1996: 58–59).65 Based on what

---

61 It should be mentioned that immediately prior to this passage, one Las chen Kun rgyal ba is named as author of the report referred to. Contrary to Ahmad (2008: 193, n. 592, basing himself on Petech 1995: 293, who identified Las chen Kun rgyal ba as Sa skyà Pandita Kun dga’ rgyal mtshan, it must be assumed that this refers to Las chen Kun dga’ rgyal mtshan, known as the author of bKa’ gdam gs kyi nam thar pa bka’ gdam chos ‘byung gsal ba’i sgron me composed in 1494 (see Eimer 1989: 22–23, Martin 1991: 91, Roseler 2008: 396).

62 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 84, with a minor correction in square brackets based on the text edition cited): “lha bla ma ye shes ’od gser ‘tshe ldu byan pa’i gar log giś btson du bzang par bar bshad pa ni/ skye bo phol pa nor slong ba lto bu’i mad pa shar ba blo gros dman pa ste/ di niy mdga’ ris kyi btsad po chen po yin pas/ rgyu mtshan zhi tu ma dpuyad pa’i skyon no/”. Cf. also the edition of this text published by Kalsang Lhundup (1967: 107) and the translation by Ahmad 2008: 62.

63 The word chos rtsigs occurs several times in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs. As stated by Vitali, it seems to be a variant spelling of chos gtsigs, which was used in inscriptions of the Yar lung dynasty to refer to edicts engraved on stone pillars (Vitali 1996: 193). In this he follows Richardson’s translation and explanation of chos gtsigs in the IČang bu inscription as “edicts concerning religion” (Richardson 1985: 94–95). In this case, its meaning is similar to the word gtsigs yig, denoting in particular letters carved on stone pillars.

Notwithstanding the literal meaning of chos rtsigs, which is always rendered by Vitali in parentheses and between inverted commas as “religious edict” (Vitali 1996: 108, 186, 190, 193), a more appropriate translation of this word that also includes the late-10th-century context and (signified) concept—clearly related to the idea of defining a general framework and foundation for the whole kingdom—seems to be religious regulation(s), religious or religion-based constitution, or even code of law(s) (see ibid.: 209f.).

64 The location or (if not a place name) meaning of mang rgyud which was translated by Vitali (1996: 113) as “place of public assembly” remains unclear.

65 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 85–86, with minor corrections in square brackets based on the text edition cited in Vitali 1996:
is thus recorded, it can be clearly understood that it is devoid of any substance that lha bla ma Ye shes ’od went to the Gar log in search of gold and sacrificed his life in order to invite the famous Indian pandita Jo bo rje (Atiṣa).

In addition, in historical reality ’Od Ide, the grandson of ’Khor re and son of lHa Ide, of a fierce and haughty character, led his army against the king of Mar yul Lā dwags, one of [the countries of] sTod mNga’ ris bskor gsum and finally he waged war even on Gru sha (‘Bru sha), a territory belonging to Bal tī, with the result that he was taken prisoner by the king of this country [that is, ’Bru sha] and faced a severe sentence. Although his younger brothers Byang chub ’od and Zhi ba ’od brought a lot of gold and [wanted to] ransom [him] and that, because gold equal to the weight of his body was not received immediately, on that occasion, he died, is recorded as follows in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: “The eldest (son) ’Od Ide btsan, possessing extraordinary bodily strength from a young age, was endowed by birth with egocentric pride. When once running up in a fight (’khrug pa la ’jam thengs gcig) he went to Mar yul, he built the gtsug lag khang of dPe thub […] Afterwards when he made war on the country of Bru sha, he was arrested (dub ’jam so) there. As his two younger brothers [wanted to] ransom [him] they were told that gold equal to his weight was required. As this was not obtained he remained in this condition for a while. …… After liberating himself from iron chains (lcags drang), he ran liberating and owing to his former karma he suffered iron poisoning and it was said that he died at Shul dkar. …… At last [Byang chub ’od] went down to the established gold mines in dBus to gather gold in order to ransom his elder brother. He obtained a lot of gold.” (ibid.: 61–63). Thus, based on this, in historical reality ’Od Ide died in Gru sha. One can clearly conclude that lha bla ma Ye shes ’od was not killed in the Gar log country of the non-Buddhist Indian borderlands, that all the gold gathered by lha btsun Byang chub ’od and so on was brought from his own country, so that, although he went to ransom his elder [brother] he had already died, and that because of this, after those [quantities] of gold to be paid as price for ransom were sent to rGya brTson [’grus seng etc., Jo bo Dhi pam ka ra shi dza nya na [Dipamkaraśrijñāna] was invited. Regarding this, too, it is very clearly

58–59: “sku no [nas] shin tu bgres pa’i dus su yang nyid kyi thugs dam ging la phyag ’khar bsnams nas bskor ba mang du mdzad cing’ gzhon yang mchod pa thams cad la skul zhing/ rang ghan kun gyis mdzad pa yin no/[( ) de yi tshire yang nye gnas gcig ma gtrogs pa su yang mi mjal bar bka’ stsal nas/ lo gsum gyi bar du sku mtshtams bcad nas thugs dam mdzad cing mtshtams las thon pa dang/ re zhig ’bangs kyi tshul gyis gdul bya nmoms la zhot bstan pa dang/] chos rtsigs kyi bka’ lung mtha’ [tha] m la stsal bo’i phiy dül/] mang rgyud du gshogs [16 lines left out /] slar yang sku tshe mtha’ phyin po’i bar du mthong gling du bzhugs shing bstan pa dang sems can gyi don mdzad pa yin no/].

mNga’ ris rgyal rabs and Ye shes od nam thar (from which it draws) and other sources, like the middle-length biography of lo tsa Brin chen bzang po, use the word Mar yul for the third “circle” or territory (skor) constituting 11th-century mNga’ ris skor gsum. Neither Lā dwags nor Mar yul Lā dwags, which is used here by the author in order to refer to Mar yul, occurs in these sources. See Vitali 1996: 135, Byang chub sems dpa’ lo tsa rin chen bzang po ’khrungs rabs dka’ spyan sgron ma nmam thar shel phreng lu gu rgyud ces bya ba bzhugs so 1996 and Ye shes od nam thar 2011: 299, passim; see also Tsering Dronchog and Jahoda, "The Extended Biography of the Royal Lamo Ye shes’ od by Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtsharan: The Tibetan text", this volume, p. 137. See also Jahoda, "Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtsharan’s chapter on the history of mNga’ ris in his Nyi ma’i rīgs kyi rgyal rabs: Notes on the author and the content", this volume, p. 82.

61–63: “gcen ’od ide btsan sku shed shin tu che bas sku na [nas] gzhon nu nas thugs rgyal can du ’khrungs pa’i’ khrug pa la ’jam thengs gcig mar yul du gshogs pa’i dus su dpe thub kyi gtsug lag khang bzhungs … [1 line left out …] mgug tu bru sha’i yul du damg mdzad pas[)].” Also the translation “he bought a lot of gold” is possible according to the Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 86–87, with minor corrections in square brackets based on the text edition cited in Vitali 1996: 61–63): “gcen ’od ide btsan sku shed shin tu che bas sku na [nas] gzhon nu nas thugs rgyal can du ’khrungs pa’i’ khrug pa la ’jam thengs gcig mar yul du gshogs pa’i dus su dpe thub kyi gtsug lag khang bzhungs … [1 line left out …] mgug tu bru sha’i yul du damg mdzad pas[)].”

67 The translation of dpe thub, located in historical Mar yul, corresponds to present-day Sputik in Ladakh. On dpe thub see also Vitali 1996: 301f. and Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, “Relating the history of mNga’ ris as set as down in writing in Pandita Grags pa rgyal mtsharan’s Nyi ma’i rīgs kyi rgyal rabs skye dgu’i cod pan nyi zla’i phreng mdzes: The Tibetan text”, this volume, p. 111.

71 The translation of ’od is based on an explanation given by the author (personal communication, January 2014).
recorded in mNga’ ris rgyal rabs: “After he heard about the death of his elder (brother), an aspiration arose in him. On account of the death of his elder (brother), by inviting a masterly pandita from India to Tibet, he intended to spread the teaching of the Buddha in Tibet even more widely than before (and) dispatched Nag tsho lo tsā ba Tshul khrims rgyal ba as the leader together with four attendants and bestowed rGya brTson [‘grus] seng ge with a wooden measure able to hold eleven measures of gold and an assistant (thig po shing srang bcu gcig ’khor ba gcig) and with great amounts of gold dust. Following the invitation of Jo bo Dhi pam ka ra shi dza nya na [Lord Dipamkarāśrīñāna], on his arrival, pho brang btsun pa himself travelled half a day on foot to welcome him.” (ibid.: 63–64). This quote expresses exactly according to historical reality how in the end the younger [brother] pho brang lha btsun pa Byang chub ’od used those [quantities of] gold [intended] to ransom the body of his elder [brother] ‘Od lde to invite of Jo bo rje [Atśa] to Gu ge and how he personally welcomed Jo bo rje in the form of coming into the presence of a person of high(er) status. In addition, in the middle-length biography of lo tsā ba Rin chen bzang po it is also said that finally at the end of his life lha bla ma Ye shes ’od suffered from a severe illness and died and that the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po personally performed the ceremony for the remains of the deceased: “when lha bla ma Ye shes ’od lived in a state of

79 See n. 69.

80 The translation of thig po shing srang bcu gcig ’khor ba gcig is based on an explanation given by the author (personal communication, January 2014). Vitali’s translation of this passage—‘a piece of gold weighing eleven shing, srang’ (Vitali 1996: 117) is incomplete.

81 Obviously, the person referred to here by the title pho brang btsun pa is Byang chub ’od. As discussed above (see nn. 35, 53 and 54), these titles designate him as (royal) monk, (lha) btsun pa—a designation that must have been appropriate since Pig year 1023, when “he was ordained to the bsnyen rdzogs vow” (Vitali 2003: 61) and received the monk’s name Byang chub ’od—and at the same time as pho brang (a function he assumed in Tiger year 1026; see ibid.: 62 where the related title is however wrongly given as lha btsun). One can conclude from this that at the time (in 1042) when this passage happened he was referred to by both titles and that pho brang, given in the first place, was formally the more important title.


83 From the funerary rite and offerings referred to in this passage relate to a ruined mchod rten in Tholing that was excavated some years ago by Chinese archaeologists. In her view, “the term gdung mchod used in this passage implies that, after the initial funerary rites, offerings were made for the sku gdung, the mchod rten housing a corpse, which constitutes a funerary mchod rten” (in this case the funerary mchod rten of Ye shes ’od). Heller’s interpretation of this passage seems to be supported by the medium-length biography of lo tsā ba Rin chen bzang po from Pooh in Upper Kinnar, which reads gdung mchod dang ngan song stbyong ba la sogs pa, thus indicating a differentiation between gdung mchod and ngan song stbyong ba etc. (see Gu ge’i Khiyi dang ba dPal ye shes, Lo tsha tsa ba rin chen bzang po i nam thar, f. 34a1-2).

84 Quoted Tibetan text (as in Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po 2005b: 88, with minor corrections in square brackets based on the original text edition cited): “lha bla ma ye shes ’od stbyong bar gnas nas/ myur du zhal mgal du byon pas la stbyong gzhi drag po gcig gis zin nas zhal ma mgal la/lo[1/1] gdung mchod ngan song stbyong ba lo sogs pa ni/lo tsa ba khong rang gis mdzad do/[1/1].”

85 Both the 2005 and 2012 versions of Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po’s Tibetan text have lHa lde although certainly his son ‘Od lde is meant and referred to.
Although in this case I tried my best to correct this historical problem, as for myself, besides [my] very limited perspective and humble level of knowledge of history, being as it were polluted by the taint of a wealth of flaws and errors of misinterpretation and foolish ignorance, I bear in the very heart the hope that suggestions and advice will be abundantly bestowed [upon me] by scholars and learned readers.

Bibliography

AHMAD, Zahiruddin. 2008. The Song of the Queen of Spring or A History of Tibet by Ngy-dBaN Blo-bZan rGya-mTShO, Fifth Dalai Lama of Tibet. Revised translation by Zahiruddin Ahmad. New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture and Aditya Prakashan.


BOD KYI LO RGYUS DEB THER KHAG LNGA. 1987. Dam pa'i chos kyi 'khor lo bsgyur ba rnams kyi byung ba gsal bar byed pa mkhas pa'i dga' ston. Pe cin: Mi rigs dpe skrun khang.


BOD KYI LO RGYUS DEB THER KHAG LNGA. 1990 = IDan lhun Sangs rgyas chos 'phel (ed.). 1990. Bod kyi lo rgyus deb ther khag lnga. [lHa sa:] Bod ljongs bod yig dpe mnying dpe skrun khang.

BOD KYI LO RGYUS DEB THER KHAG LNGA. 2002. Beijing: Kruung go'i bod rig pa'i dpe skrun khang.


A Brief Analysis of the Reputed Passing Away of Iha bla ma Ye shes ’od among the Gar log


mNga’ ris rgyal rabs rjes dran mdzad sgo’i go sgrig tshogs chung, 1–85. Dharamsala, India: Tho ling gtsug lag khang lo gcig stong ‘khor ba’i dran mdzad ngo gic stong bkhor ba’i rjes dran mdzad sgo’i go sgrig tshogs chung, 1–85. 


Eva Allinger and Christian Luczanits

A Vajradhātu maṇḍala in a Prajñāpāramitā Manuscript of Tabo Monastery*

In the introduction to his part of the Catalogue of the Manuscript Collection of Tabo Monastery Paul Harrison describes the unfortunate fate of the collection in considerable detail (see Harrison 2009: xiiiff.). In the course of its history this collection has been so often and severely disturbed, including incidents of burning, that less than 20 per cent of the original corpus remained. In addition, Harrison (ibid.: xvii) notes that "The unusually small number of illustrated folios left at Tabo and the almost total absence of gser yig manuscripts remains strongly suggest that the collection has been picked over by travelers passing through the region." It is thus not surprising that the few illustrated folios preserved in the collection belong to a number of different manuscripts. Among them, the illuminations of the deities of the Vajradhātu maṇḍala, the focus of this article, are exceptional in this regard.

The Illustrated Manuscripts at Tabo
Even though the Prajñāpāramitā literature (the yum mdo section of the Tibetan canon), which most often contains illustrations, represents the main corpus of the texts preserved at Tabo, altogether only 53 of roughly 35,374 manuscript folios contain illuminations. Fortunately, more than half of the Tabo illustrations, namely 28 folios, come from a single manuscript, a Pañcaviṃśatikā Prajñāpāramitā (Fig. 1), while the remaining 25 illuminations come from nine different manuscripts. Statistically, the number of illustrated folios among the latter group

* We would like to thank Gudrun Melzer, who not only generously shared her own observations with us, but also contributed her analyses of the diverse Prajñāpāramitā sources. Helmut Tauscher generously provided the photo documentation of the Tabo manuscripts. Documentation used as comparison to develop the argument of this article has been provided by Carlo Cristi, Paul Harrison, Jaroslav Poncar, Tom Pritzker, and Helmut Tauscher among others. The abbreviation WHAV refers to images housed at the Western Himalaya Archive Vienna.

1. Tabo, Pañcaviṃśatikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (RN 5), folios Kha-Na 96 und Ka-Na 19 (C. Luczanits, 1994).
Eva Allinger and Christian Luczanits

Among the manuscript illuminations, 51 can stylistically be attributed to the earliest part of the collection. Usually such illuminations are representations of the Buddha with little or no direct connection to the text they are found in, but the Tabo manuscripts preserve some interesting other examples. A number of scenes preserved at Tabo illustrate the story of the Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita and his quest for the Perfection of Wisdom, and thus directly relate to the texts they are found in (see Luczanits 2010 and below). The illuminations of the manuscript discussed in detail below, in contrast, illustrate a topic with no direct connection to the text’s content, the deities of the Vajradhātu mandala.

To put this manuscript with the Vajradhātu assembly in context, we first summarise the other types of illuminations as preserved at Tabo. Five of the Tabo manuscripts contain depictions of seated Buddhas:

- Running No. 6: Harrison (2009: 45) records two folios of an Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript under Cat. No. 1.1.5.2, which contain stylistically quite different Buddha depictions. It is thus very likely that these folios stem from two different manuscripts, most probably Cat. No. 1.1.5.2 and Cat. No. 1.1.5.6 (Running No. 167, see below). Here we thus consider only one of the depictions to be part of RN 6, which shows a seated Buddha performing vitarkamudrā with his right hand and with his left hand at his side (Fig. 2).

- Running No. 7: Of the 57 preserved folios of another Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cat. No. 1.1.2.16, Harrison 2009: 31f.) six preserve very similar Buddha depictions, each of them with the earth-touching gesture (bhūmisparśamudrā; Fig. 3).

- Running No. 9: Of the 86 folios of a Ratnakūṭa manuscript (Cat. No. 1.3.4, Harrison 2009: 95f.) three show a seated Buddha performing the earth-touching gesture (bhūmisparśamudrā; Fig. 4).

- Running No. 13: Of altogether 257 preserved folios of a Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cat. No. 1.1.2.5, Harrison 2009: 23f.) one folio has three seated Buddhas on it and four folios contain a single Buddha each (Fig. 5).

- Running No. 167 (Cat. No. 1.1.5.6, Harrison 2009: 47, see RN 6) comprises only eight folios of an Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript. On folio Ka 85 a seated Buddha is depicted showing the gesture of fearlessness (abhayamudrā; Fig. 6).

All these illustrations are found at the end of a chapter or another marked section of the text (le’u, bam po). The quality of the illuminations varies, as do the Buddha depictions. Generally speaking, the five manuscripts represent three different types of Buddha depictions which likely also reflect a chronological range.

2 All statistics of Harrison 2009, in particular xvii–xviii and n. 17.
3 The earliest manuscripts of Tabo can be attributed to the 10th and 11th centuries, as corroborated by C-14 examples reported by Scherrer-Schaub and Bonani 2002. For a Tabo manuscript datable to the first half of the 11th century due to its historical information see Scherrer-Schaub 1999.

4 The two folios are the same size, but one has ten lines of text and the other only nine. The folio with nine lines (Ka 85) possibly fits to RN 167 (Cat. No. 1.1.5.6; Harrison 2009: 47). This manuscript is 20.5 x 66.5 cm (RN 6 is 20.5 x 66.4 cm) and also shares the large red circles. Further, folio Ka 85 is missing in RN 167.
Among them the Buddhas of Running No. 9 (short RN 9; Fig. 4) and RN 6 (Fig. 2) appear to be the earliest, as they represent Buddha types known from contemporaneous wall paintings in the region. Of these the Buddhas of RN 9 (Fig. 4) with the two-coloured edge of the robe and the fine rays in the halo reflect the Buddha depictions in the murals of the Tabo Main Temple (gtsug lag khang), but the excessive shading of the body is not found as such there, but appears to represent a further development from the latest phase of the Tabo paintings. The Buddhas of manuscript RN 13 in the list above also reflect the early Western Himalayan type, but they also have numerous idiosyncratic features, such as a disproportionately small head, multicoloured halos with unusual decorations, and complex textile patterns (Fig. 5). In most cases the edge of the robe is still a different colour and the robe falls the same way as in early depictions, but its decoration and that of the halo are entirely different. This type is thus already considerably removed from the 11th century comparisons.

RN 7 then represents an entirely different Buddha type deriving from north-east India (Fig. 3). Everything about this Buddha’s representation is atypical for the region and the Buddha is even seated on a cushion. New strands of art deriving from north-east Indian prototypes only become established in Western Tibet in the course of the 13th century, the Buddhas of this type thus belong to a later phase of the Tabo manuscripts. The red Buddha, presumably belonging to RN 167, wears a pink patchwork robe (Fig. 6). Although largely following the early Western Himalayan type in proportions its somewhat naive rendering and the swallow-tail end of the robe over his left shoulder indicate that this illumination is not much earlier than those of RN 7. These Buddha depictions thus span approximately 300 years, but the formal appearance of the manuscripts they are found in has hardly changed from the earliest to the latest.

The illuminations of two other Tabo manuscripts clearly refer to the narrative of Sadāprarudita in search for the Perfection of Wisdom. This narrative is found at the end of three texts from the Prajñāpāramitā corpus, namely the Aṣṭasāhasrikā, Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā and the Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā.5

• Running No. 10: A Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cat. No. 1.1.1.23, Harrison 2009: 13f.) is preserved only through three beautifully illuminated folios:

Folio 312 (Tha-Nga 12) recto contains the last lines of chapter 73 and is further marked as the end of dum bu 10 and bam po 20. With the upper left corner of the picture exactly at the end of the chapter, the large illumination is off centre to the right and towards the bottom of the page. It shows a teaching Buddha and a red bodhisattva in 3/4 profile to his proper left facing the Buddha and

7. Buddha Śākyamuni and a bodhisattva in conversation; Tabo, manuscript RN 10 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).
8. A reflective Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita wearing the traditional dress of local West Tibetan youth; Tabo, manuscript RN 10 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).
9. Bodhisattva Dharmodgata teaches Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita, the merchant’s daughter and her maidens; Tabo, manuscript RN 10 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).

5 We would like to thank Gudrun Melzer for providing her research on the most common versions of the Kanjur: The number of chapters differs in the diverse editions of the Satasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā. Those of the Derge, Beijing and Stog Kanjur end with only 72 chapters and do not contain the chapters dedicated to the Bodhisattvas Sadāprarudita and Dharmodgata. The Narthang edition has 75 chapters and includes those containing the story of Sadāprarudita and Dharmodgata. The Phugbrag and London editions have 77 chapters and differ somewhat from the Narthang version. Similar to a Satasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā from Tholing (see ‘Phrin las mthar phyin 2001: 41) the Tabo manuscript RN 10 had 76 chapters (probably counting chapters 74 and 75 of the Phugbrag and London version as one chapter), and thus an equal number of chapters as the Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā. However, Tholing and Tabo (see e.g. Harrison 2007: 242–243, no. 11) also preserve other manuscripts in 77 chapters, which presumably are somewhat later than the manuscript in the focus of this article.

345
10. Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita, the merchant’s daughter and her maidens prepare the seat for Bodhisattva Dharmodgata; Tabo, manuscript RN 11 (E. Allinger, 1994).

11. Indra fills the bowl of Sadāprarudita with Mandārava blossoms; Tabo, manuscript RN 11 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).

12. Bodhisattva Dharmodgata teaches Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita, the merchant’s daughter and her maidens; Tabo, manuscript RN 11 (E. Allinger, 1994).

13. One-eyed stūpa; Tabo. manuscript RN 153 (C. Luczanits, 1994; WHAV).

14. Book topped by a flaming jewel; Tabo, manuscript RN 153 (E. Allinger, 1994).

The text on Folio 320 (Tha-Nga 20) recto is from chapter 74 but marks the end of dum bu 10 and bam po 30. Just underneath the record of the bam po in the first line an illumination depicts the Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita, wearing the traditional dress of the West Tibetan youth of the time and seated in a posture of reflection with the right hand raised towards his face (Fig. 8). It may well be that this depiction illustrates the textual content of this folio, which narrates how a voice from the sky suggests that he should proceed towards the east to find the Perfection of Wisdom.

Folio 349 (Tha-Nga 49) verso contains the end of chapter 75 in the fifth line. The corresponding illustration shows the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata teaching Sadāprarudita, the merchant’s daughter and her maidens, who are shown kneeling to one side and wearing local West Tibetan dress (Fig. 9). Between them the book of the Perfection of Wisdom (Prajñāpāramitā) rests on a stand. As in the previous illustration, Sadāprarudita’s removed hat is also represented. In fact, the end of chapter 75 and at the beginning of the following chapter 76 describe the teaching of Dharmodgata and how Sadāprarudita attains the Perfection of Wisdom.

- Running No. 11: Of the second manuscript only a single considerably damaged folio is preserved (Cat. No. 1.1.5.1, Harrison 2009: 45). It contains text of chapter 75 of a Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā and unusually there is no other text section marker, such as bam po or dum bu, either. This folio contains three depictions directly illustrating the text found on these pages. In contrast to the depictions in RN 10, Sadāprarudita is shown as a bodhisattva, and only the maidens are dressed in local fashion.

The single picture on the recto page depicts how Sadāprarudita, the merchant’s daughter and her maidens offer the blood of their body to moisten the dusty floor in front of the throne they have prepared for the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata to teach the Perfection of Wisdom.

...
of Wisdom (Fig. 10). They have to resort to this method, as Māra has hidden the water to hinder their preparations.

The verso page contains two illustrations. In the first one Indra is filling Sadāprarudita’s bowl with heavenly Mandārava blossoms so that he can cover the seat of Dharmodgata with them (Fig. 11). In the second picture, the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata is teaching Sadāprarudita and his company (Fig. 12).

Stylistically the illustrations of RN 10 are very close to the Tabo renovation murals finished before 1042 CE and it is thus likely that they were made around the middle of the 11th century. In terms of the rendering of the hair, the teaching Buddha in one of the illustrations (Fig. 7) can be seen as direct predecessor to the Buddha in Fig. 3. The hairstyle of the Bodhisattva in this illustration and the main Bodhisattva in Fig. 9 is not found in the Tabo murals, and their jewellery is painted in gold. However, other details as well as the local dresses worn by the other figures depicted in this manuscript are consistent with the Tabo renovation phase.

The three illuminations of manuscript RN 11 found on the two sides of the same folio are of lesser material and artistic quality than those of RN 10 and also in a poorer state of preservation, but the proportions of the figures and the details of the scenes are still more reminiscent of the Tabo murals than of any other comparative monument. This manuscript may thus be attributed to the second half of the 11th century.

Another noteworthy manuscript from Tabo shows illustrations of a different type and relationship to the text:

- Running No. 153: From this Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cat. No. 1.1.5.5, Harrison 2009: 46f.) two of the 40 preserved folios are illuminated.

At the end of the third chapter titled “Reverence for the receptacle of the perfections, which holds immeasurable good qualities” there is a picture of a stūpa with a single eye on the dome (Fig. 13). The second picture marks the end of chapter five titled “The revolution of merit” and shows a book topped by a flaming jewel (Fig. 14). Although not narrative, in both cases the illuminations actually illustrate the content of the preceding chapter. Chapter three describes the merit gained from building and venerating a stūpa, and chapter five emphasises the merit accrued from copying the Perfection of Wisdom text.

With its high base, multiple quartered terraces and the almost circular dome, the stūpa represents a type which on the basis of comparisons to stūpa shapes in Ladakh can be attributed to the 13th century. The eye painted on the dome also supports an attribution to this time or even later. Eyes on stūpa domes are not found in the earliest depictions from the Western Himalayas, but appear in the course of the 13th century in monuments painted in a style derived from Central Tibet. It remains unclear so far whether this feature is also an expression of a Nepalese background.

Thus the Tabo manuscript illustrations of RN 10, 11, and 153 further expand the chronological range visible in the Buddhist depictions. RN 10 is likely the earliest manuscript with an illustration preserved at Tabo, and RN 153 is possibly the youngest we have discussed so far. Now that we have surveyed the comparative illuminated manuscripts found at the site, we can turn to the manuscript that preserves most of the illuminations.

The Vajradhātu mandala Assembly

As mentioned above, Running No. 5, a Pañcavimsatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cat. No. 1.1.2.7, Harrison 2009: 25f.), preserves more illuminations than all the others together, namely 28. Of these, 26 are on fully preserved pages and two on fragments. The sequence of the depictions was established through the page and chapter numbers, but the iconographic relationship of the depictions has remained unstudied and is the subject here. This only became possible by the complete photo documentation of all the pages in their sequence by Helmut Tauscher¹¹ and the catalogue of the Tabo manuscripts by Paul Harrison (2009).

An analysis of the folios shows that the illuminations are always found at the end of a chapter, regardless of whether that is on the recto or verso page. Thus, we can assume that originally there were at least 76 illuminations, one for each chapter. Of the approximately 1100–1200 folios of the manuscript itself, 675 folios are preserved, which is considerably more than 50 per cent of the text. In contrast, the 28 illustrations represent less than 40 per cent of the original illuminations, a difference in ratio that may be accidental, but may also be another indication of selective picking.

In terms of their relationship to each other and to the text, the illuminations of this manuscript are exceptional for the Tabo corpus. In contrast to the manuscripts discussed so far, at least a part of the illuminations on this manuscript represents a theme not related to the text at all, namely the deities of the Vajradhātu mandala. Even before the exact relationship of the depictions was studied in detail, some of the deities could easily be recognised as belonging to this or a closely related mandala, even more so as captions written in cursive script at the bottom of most of the pages identify the deities. That this subject is found on a Western Himalayan manuscript did not come as a surprise, as depictions of such deities have long been

¹¹ We would like to thank Helmut Tauscher for generously providing this material.
known from a few folios collected by Giuseppe Tucci from Tholing and now housed in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art (Inv. nos. M.81.90.6–17). However, the captions underneath these illustrations remained puzzling, and a future article by Gudrun Melzer will suggest an explanation for them. More recently, further folios of these illustrations have been published several times, the most important among them being Tucci 1949: pls. C and D; Klimburg-Salter 1982: 183, pl. 101; and Pal 1990: pls. 1–2, figs. M1, b–f, h, i. From the succeeding illuminations it is clear that the four goddesses surrounding Vairocana are not represented in this variant of the assembly. Instead, Vairocana at the end of chapter one was immediately followed by Buddha Akṣobhya at the end of chapter two, who then was followed by the bodhisattvas that surround him on the eastern lotus. Chapter three accordingly ended with a representation of Bodhisattva Vajrasatva, who is not preserved either, whereas the following bodhisattva is.

1. Buddha Vairocana (Fig. 15)
The first illustrated folio preserved of this manuscript (Ka 25) contains the end of the first chapter in the first line of the verso page (gleng bzhī’i le’u). Buddha Vairocana is depicted in the middle of this page. He is white, sits on a lion-throne, and is performing the gesture of highest enlightenment (bodhyāgrimudrā).

2. Bodhisattva Vajrarāja (Fig. 16)
Chapter four ends in the second line of the verso page numbered Ka-Na 19. In the centre of the page the Bodhisattva Vajrarāja is shown holding an aṅkuṣa, the hook of which is shaped as a bird.

Caption: rdoe rgyal po lag pa nya kyis lcags kyu mdog ser = Vajrarāja [holding] an ankūṣa with both(?) hands and yellow coloured.

16. Bodhisattva Vajrarāja with a bird shaped aṅkuśa; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (C. Luczanits, 1994; WHAV).
17. Bodhisattva Vajrarāja holding bow and arrow; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).
19. Bodhisattva Vajradharma holding a lotus to his side; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (E. Allinger, 1994).
20. Bodhisattva Vajradharma holding a lotus to his side; Alchi, Sumtsek (gSum brtsegs), left wall, left side mandala (J. Poncar, 1981; WHAV).

Western Himalayan manuscripts with Vajradhātu mandala deities have turned up in publications14 and on the art market.15

In the following each illustration is listed in the order of its occurrence within the manuscript. Each deity is identified and briefly described. If there is a caption identifying the depiction, usually found at the bottom of the page underneath the main text and in cursive script, a transcription and interpretation of this caption is provided as well. The order of illustrations and their relation to the chapter ends clarifies some characteristic features of this Vajradhātu mandala assembly.

14 Pal 2009: fig. 4 contains up to seven relevant deities, one represented twice.
15 In particular Carlo Cristi, who in recent years had a number of folios with Vajradhātu related deities for sale, which will be referred to here in comparison.
16 While the reading of the Tibetan leaves no other choice, the meaning of nγa in this context remains unclear. It would be tempting to read bya and thus “bird-hook” instead, but such a reading contradicts both the shape of the letter and the agentive particle kyis between the two words. We thus prefer to interpret the nγa as an incomplete nγil for nγisγ, as the attribute is indeed held in both hands and other captions sometimes specifically mention the hand an attribute is held with.
17 It is remarkable, that all yellow (ser po) deities (nos. 2, 7, 12, 14 and 18) in this manuscript have a strong orange hue.
3. Bodhisattva Vajrarāga (Fig. 17)
Chapter five ends in the sixth line of the recto page numbered Ka-Na 39. The Bodhisattva Vajrarāga is shown at the lower centre of the page. He is red, holds an arrow pointing downwards in his right hand at his side and a bow in his left hand resting on his hip.

Caption: rdoe chags pa dmor po lda’ zhu\(^\text{18}\) = Vajrarāga, red, [with] arrow and bow.

The order of these two bodhisattvas surrounding Aksobhya conforms to the usual enumeration. The last bodhisattva of the eastern lotus would then be Vajrasādhu at the end of chapter six. Thus in the manuscript illustrations the Tathāgata of the respective direction is followed immediately by the four vajra-bodhisattvas surrounding him, and only then the next Tathāgata is listed, which in the usual succession is Buddha Ratnasambhava, at the end of chapter seven, followed by the primary bodhisattva of his direction, Vajraratna, at the end of chapter eight.

4. Bodhisattva Vajratejas (Fig. 18)
Chapter nine ends in the seventh line of the recto page Ka-Ma 34. In the lower centre of this page is the red-coloured Vajratejas holding a red sun in his hand.

Caption: rdoe zi ’rjid nyi ma’i mdog cen g.yas na pad ma’i steng na nyi ma snam yon kun\(^\text{19}\) = Vajratejas, sun-coloured, holding a sun on a lotus in his right [hand, and] his left at his side.

The following two bodhisattvas of the southern assembly are missing, as is the Buddha following them, Amitābha, who should be represented at the end of chapter twelve. However, the next securely identifiable illumination is Vajratīkṣṇa at the end of chapter thirteen, but in the usual order there is another bodhisattva between Amitābha and Vajratīkṣṇa, and it is this bodhisattva who is represented on one of the fragmentary pages.

5. Bodhisattva Vajradharma (Fig. 19)
A fragmentary page with a chapter number between 10 and 19 (le’u bcu ...) in the seventh line preserves an image that can only represent the Bodhisattva Vajradharma, a form of Avalokiteśvara heading the bodhisattvas in the west surrounding Amitābha. In the depiction the bodhisattva is red (the texts are ambivalent concerning his colour) and holds a lotus in his right hand at his side. His second hand is on his hip. Usually, as is described for this deity, it is this hand that holds the stalk of the lotus, while the right hand opens the lotus at the heart. It is likely that this illustration is found at the end of chapter twelve, as also assumed by Harrison (2009: 26). Vajradharma is the main Bodhisattva of the western assembly.

This means that if every deity marks the end of a chapter, one deity between Vajratejas and Vajradharma is missing. Where that deity was represented is a matter of speculation, but it seems clear that a mistake was made in the arrangement of the deities. Another error is illustrated through the following illumination.

6. Bodhisattva Vajratīkṣṇa (Fig. 21)
The small depiction of this bodhisattva at the end of chapter 13 is clearly an afterthought. The chapter ends in the eighth line on the recto page numbered Kha 82 (rab ‘byord kyi’u). Unlike the other deities in the manuscript, the deity is not set in a picture space of his own. Instead, the illustration is only of the size available between the lines of text at the end of the chapter. Vajratīkṣṇa is blue and brandishes a sword.

---
\(^{18}\) Read mda’ gzung.
\(^{19}\) In accordance with other captions of this manuscript, here we read g.yon skur.
7. Bodhisattva Vajrahetu (Fig. 22)
Chapter 14 ends in the sixth line of the recto page numbered Kha-Na 1. In the centre of the page is the dark yellow coloured Vajrahetu. He holds a wheel at his side and his left hand rests on his hip.

Caption: *rdo rje rgu ser po khor lo g.yon kur = Vajrahetu/*rDo rje rgyu, yellow, [with] wheel [and] the left [hand] by his body.

8. Bodhisattva Vajrabhāsa (Fig. 24)
Chapter 15 ends in the eighth line of the verso page numbered Kha-Na 15. In the lower right area of the page Vajrabhāsa is shown along with a small square ornament reminiscent of a ritual *mandala* depiction. The bodhisattva is red and at his side he holds a lotus that supports an elongated red object with a rounded top. Only the context makes it possible to identify this object as a (vajra-)tongue. His left hand rests on his hip.

9. Buddha Amoghasiddhi (Fig. 25)
Chapter 16 ends in the seventh line of the recto page Kha-Na 37. The Buddha is placed in the centre of the page. He is green and shows the gesture of fearlessness (*abhayamudrā*), and his family attribute is not represented.

Caption: *don yod grub pa myi 'jig*²⁰ *sbyin gyon ku = Amoghasiddhi,* bestowing fearlessness [and] his left [hand] by his side.
The presence of Amoghasiddhi in this position is the final proof that the Buddhas are followed by their surrounding bodhisattvas. Three of his bodhisattva retinue are preserved in the manuscript, this group thus being the most complete.

10. Bodhisattva Vajrakarma (Fig. 26)
Chapter 17 ends in the second line of the recto page Kha-Na 47. The picture of Vajrakarma is slightly off centre to the right. The bodhisattva is green and unusually is seated within a palace structure. He should hold a *viśvavajra* in his hand in front of his breast, but the attribute cannot be recognised on the available photographs. His left hand rests on his hip.

Caption: *rdo las sna tshogs kyi mdog can sna tshogs due*²¹ = Vajrakarma, of variegated colour [and holding] a *viśvavajra*.
The divergence in colour is the only clear case where the information in the caption differs substantially from the actual depiction. Of variegated colour means that different body parts are of different colours, just like the prongs of the crossed vajra (*viśvavajra*). While this feature is shown in a number of cases,²² most often deities of variegated colour are green.²³

11. Bodhisattva Vajrarakṣa (Fig. 27)
Chapter 18 ends in the seventh line of the recto page Kha-Na 59. Vajrarakṣa is shown in the middle of the page, he is yellow and holds

---

²⁰ Read *mi 'jigs pa*.
²¹ The reading of the last syllable is uncertain. It should read *rdo for rdo rje*, this can, however, not be read into the remaining traces.
²² In the Dharmadhātuvāgīśvaramañjuśrī *mandala* of Khartse the Bodhisattva Vajrakarma is of variegated colour.
²³ This is also the case on another depiction of this bodhisattva in a manuscript illumination on the recto page of a *Śatasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā* manuscript folio numbered Tha-Na 32 from Carlo Cristi, where he is represented at the end of chapter 41. Here the bodhisattva holds a crossed vajra (*viśvavajra*) in front of his breast, while the second attribute cannot be recognised on the available pictures. See Pal 2009: fig. 4, top left corner. Green forms of this bodhisattva are also found in the Nako Translator’s temple and the Alich group of monuments, while Vajradhātu sculptures in the Tabo Assembly Hall and Sumda are a dark greenish blue and pale white with bright blue shading.
a mail shirt with vajra ends in front of his breast.24

Caption: rdoe brsung ba ser gyi mdo chen go cha snaams = Vajrarakṣa, yellow coloured [and] holding armour.

12. Bodhisattva Vajrayakṣa (Fig. 28)
Chapter 19 ends in the second line of the recto page Kha-Na 65. The somewhat damaged illustration of Vajrayakṣa is in the centre of the page. He is black and holds two long teeth in front of his breast.

Only Vajrasandhi, who was probably depicted at the end of chapter 20, is missing from the group of bodhisattvas around Amoghasiddhi. With him the group of the five Buddhas with their surrounding bodhisattvas is concluded.

The deities in the centre of the mandala are then followed by the Eight Offering Goddesses.25 In contrast to the previous deities, the goddesses are not shown frontally but off centre in three-quarter profile and facing the centre of the manuscript page. This conforms to their common depiction in mandalas and is certainly also a visual means of indicating their subsidiary role and position. The first five goddesses of this group are preserved in order, which conforms to the usual sequence.

13. Goddess Lāsyā (Fig. 30)
Chapter 21 ends in the ninth line of the recto page Kha-Na 79. The picture of the offering goddess is at the bottom right corner of the page and is severely damaged. Lāsyā is white and holds a vajra in her right hand on her hip; her left hand is not preserved. The caption is immediately underneath the depiction.

Caption: sgeg mo kar mo lag mar rer #o de de snaṃs26 = Lāsyā, white, holding a vajra in each hand.

14. Goddess Mālā (Fig. 31)
Chapter 22 ends in the second line of the verso page Kha-Na 96. The illustration is in the left area of the page. The goddess, facing

24 Vajrarakṣa is also depicted on the recto page of a Śatasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript folio numbered #-Na [the upper letter uncertain] 30 from Carlo Cristi, where it is found at the end of chapter 24. See Pal 2009: fig. 4, bottom left corner.

25 These goddesses belong to the core deities of the Vajradhātu mandala, and thus to the inner assembly. However, in mandala depictions they are commonly represented in the corners of the two inner squares, four in the corners of the inner palace and four together with the Sixteen Bodhisattvas of the Bhadrakalpa.

26 Although this reading is uncertain, the meaning can be concluded from the remains of the caption and the usual depiction of this goddess.

27 Above this caption, another longer dbu med text can be recognised but it is no longer legible. The function of this text thus remains unclear.
35. Offering goddess Nrtyā raising both hands; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (C. Luczanits, 1994; WHAV).

36. Offering goddess Dhūpā, dancing with an incense burner; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).

37. Gatekeeper Vajrapāśa, holding a noose; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).

38. Gatekeeper Vajrāveśa, holding a bell with both hands; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (D. E. Klimburg-Salter, 1994; WHAV).

39. Bodhisattva Bhadrapāla, holding a lotus with a triple jewel; Tabo, manuscript RN 5 (E. Allinger, 1994).

16. Goddess Nrtyā (Fig. 35)
Chapter 24 ends in the third line of the recto page of Kha-Ma 38 (yongs su sngo ba’i le’u). Nrtyā, the goddess of dance is shown in the centre of the page but facing the right. She is green with her hands raised to the sides of her head.

Caption: g # # ijang gu gar byed bo’i tshul = [Nrtyā], green [and] in the manner of performing a dance.

It is interesting to note that the dance posture of Nrtyā, with both feet on the ground and only her arms shown as moving, may well reflect the local dance style, in which the hands do most of the rhythmic movement, while the legs move in a comparatively slow and restrained way.30

17. Goddess Dhūpā (Fig. 36)
The goddess of incense, Dhūpā, is presumably depicted at the end of chapter 25. Only the fragment of this page containing the illumination is preserved. The goddess is presumably represented on the right of the central text area and faces left. She stands in a dance pose and holds an incense burner.

Caption: dug + pa ma kar mo s s n b ng snam = Dhūpā, white [and] holding ...

The remaining offering goddesses, presumably depicted at the ends of chapters 26 to 28, are missing. Two of the following four gatekeepers, depicted in the usual succession at the end of chapters 29 to 32, are preserved. Like the offering goddesses, they are shown standing and facing the centre of the manuscript page.

18. Gatekeeper Vajrapāśa (Fig. 37)
Chapter 30 ends in the second line of the recto page Ga 42. The picture with Vajrapāśa is in the centre of the page. The gatekeeper is orange and holds a noose in both hands in front of him, its vajra ends dangling from his hands. He is the protector of the south.

Caption: sgo bo zhas pa ser po zhas pa snams = gatekeeper Pāśa, yellow [and] holding a noose

19. Gatekeeper Vajrāveśa (Fig. 38)
Chapter 32 ends in the fourth line of the recto page Ga 71. Vajrāveśa is

30 Vajrāntyā is also represented on the recto page of a manuscript folio numbered Ja-Nga 23 from Carlo Cristi, where she is seated and only moves her arms. See Pal 2009: fig. 4, second row left and bottom centre illustration (shown twice). This illumination is remarkable for its frame.
31 Read bdug.
32 The resolution of the available picture is too low for this part of the text to be readable. What is recognisable differs too much from the expected spos snod.
shown in the centre of the page facing left. He is green and holds a bell in with both hands in front of his breast. He is the protector of the north.\textsuperscript{33}

Caption: \textit{sgo ba 'bebs pa ljang ku rdo rje}\textsuperscript{34} = gatekeeper Vajrāveśa, green [and with] vajra

The gatekeepers are followed by the Sixteen Bodhisattvas of the Fortunate Aeon (\textit{bhadrakalpa}), which end chapters 33 to 48. However, only one of this large group is preserved, which indicates that this group is again shown frontally and seated.

20. Bodhisattva Bhadrapāla (Fig. 39)
Chapter 43 ends in the fifth line of the \textit{recto} page Ga-Na 89 (\textit{gang \textsuperscript{35}ga'i lha mo'i le'u}). Bhadrapāla is shown somewhat off centre to the right (in the right third of the page). He is white and holds a red lotus carrying a large triple jewel.

Caption: \textit{bzang skyong kar pad ma'i steng na rin po che} = Bhadrapāla, white [and with] a jewel on a lotus

It is a shame that only one deity of this large group is preserved. There are different versions of this group both in texts and illustrations, and the order of these bodhisattvas might have been particularly telling.

The representation of the main deities of the Vajradhātu \textit{mandala} assembly is concluded with the Sixteen Bodhisattvas of the Fortunate Aeon. Theoretically the gatekeepers could be repeated here, as is the case in some \textit{mandala} depictions, but this appears rather unlikely, as in this case the inner gatekeepers are commonly represented as peaceful or even female.

The following chapters of the text are then illustrated mostly with unidentified Buddha representations.

21. Buddha (Fig. 40)
The Buddha at the end of chapter 54 is centred on the page, the chapter ends in the seventh line of the \textit{recto} page (Nga 52). His original depiction has largely been smudged and was replaced by a—presumably rather recent—line drawing. This Buddha has his hands joined in front of his breast in a way that only the tips of the fingers are touching each other.

22. Buddha (Fig. 48)
Chapter 55 ends in the first line of the \textit{verso} page Nga 56 (\textit{bg ma}). The Buddha is seated in meditation (\textit{dhyānamudrā}) and wears a green robe that covers both shoulders.

23. Buddha (Fig. 41)
Chapter 59 ends in the third line of the \textit{verso} page Nga 93. The Buddha is yellow and has his hands in a strongly simplified variant of the teaching gesture (\textit{dharmacakramudrā}) in front of the breast. He wears a red robe with the right shoulder covered from behind.

24. Buddha (Fig. 53)
Chapter 60 ends in the fifth line of the \textit{recto} page (Nga-Na 12). The Buddha is orange-yellow with green shading, performing the gesture of touching the earth (\textit{bhūmisparśamudrā}) and has his left hand in front of his breast. He wears a red patchwork robe leaving the right shoulder exposed.

33 The same gatekeeper is found at the end of chapter (\textit{le'u}) 47 on a \textit{verso} page of a \textit{Satasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā} manuscript folio numbered Tha-Ma 26 owned by Carlo Cristi. See Pal 2009: fig. 4, middle image in the second row. In this case the deity holds both \textit{vajra} and bell side by side in front of his breast.

34 If this reading is correct, then the verb is missing. The word \textit{snam} or one of its variants used in these captions for “holding” is unreadable in this case.
25. Buddha
Chapter 66 ends in the third line of the recto page (Nga-Ma 7). The Buddha is yellow, holds his hands in the teaching gesture in front of his breast and wears a green robe leaving the right shoulder exposed.

26. Kneeling Buddha (Fig. 42)
Chapter 68 ends in the eighth line of the verso page (Nga-Ma 20). Unusually, this Buddha is represented kneeling sideways. The page is torn on the right and the small depiction partly lost. The figure has his hands raised in what is to be interpreted as the veneration gesture (namaskaramudrā) towards the right. He wears green robes and his right shoulder is covered from behind. As the illumination is cut off on the right it remains unclear whether the Buddha is facing some other representation to his side.

27. Buddha
Chapter 69 ends in the fifth line of the verso page (Nga-Ma 26). The Buddha is yellow, is performing dharmacakramudrā and wears a red patchwork robe with the right shoulder covered from behind.

Remarkably, the last chapters of this manuscript were probably accompanied by illustrations of the Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita’s quest for the Perfection of Wisdom, although this identification cannot be considered entirely certain.

28. Meditating Bodhisattva (Fig. 43)
A meditating bodhisattva is depicted at the end of chapter 74, the chapter of Sadāprarudita (rtag par rab tu ngu bo’i le’u) as in line nine of the recto page (Nga-Ma 62), this time seated in an architectural frame. The bodhisattva is red, wears rich jewellery and a yellow cape covering the shoulders from behind.

Given the place in the manuscript where this illustration is found, it is very likely that this scene illustrates the story of the Bodhisattva Sadāprarudita in search for the perfection of wisdom, possibly representing the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata meditating in the city of Gandhavati. After their first meeting the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata went into his house, where he “remained for seven years immersed in one uninterrupted state of trance, and he dwelt in countless thousands of concentrations, peculiar to Bodhisattvas, issued from perfection of wisdom and skill in means.” (Conze 1958: 220). As we have seen, Dharmodgata can be shown in red (Fig. 9) as well as white (Fig. 12).

This manuscript is remarkable for a number of reasons. First of all, its illuminations (likely) show three different, unrelated themes, namely the deities of the Vajradhātu mandala, repeated Buddhas and (possibly) the narrative of Sadāprarudita. As we have seen above, the two latter themes occur in other Tabo manuscripts as well, and the narrative at the end has a direct relationship to the text’s content. Due to these three themes, but also within them, the manuscript has an unusual variety of illustrations, which appear both intentional, such as setting the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata within an architectural frame, and unintentional, such as the miniature representation of Vajratikṣṇa.

Also the direct relationship of the illustrations to the text is noteworthy. Not only are the illuminations always found at that side of the folio where the chapter actually ends, but at least some of its locations are chosen in direct relation to the end of the chapters. Consequently, the placement of the pictures on the page appears random. Even more remarkable, with the Vajradhātu deities the placing of the illustration also considers their iconography and usual depiction within a mandala. To our knowledge, such relationships are not found in Indian manuscripts such as the “Manuscript in Five Collections”. Finally, the representations of the Vajradhātu mandala deities in this manuscript offer the possibility to compare them with the same deities in roughly contemporaneous murals of the same region.

Iconographic Comparisons
There is no direct relationship between the Vajradhātu mandala and the Prajñāpāramitā literature, but both were extremely prominent in early Western Himalayan Buddhism. In fact, diverse topics of teachings traditionally classified as Yoga Tantra are found throughout the early monuments of the Western Himalayas. In most cases, the Vajradhātu mandala represents the main theme and complementary topics cover the other walls, partly featuring the same groups of deities. Much less is preserved in Central Tibet, but it can be assumed that there Yoga Tantra topics, and particularly the Vajradhātu mandala, were of equal importance and thus were also frequently depicted. However, only few of these representations are preserved today.

In contrast to later canonised versions of mandala assemblies, these early representations and in particular the Yoga Tantra topics are represented in many variants distinguished by composition, the number of deities and their relationship, as well as the iconography of individual deities, providing the possibility that the Tabo manuscript deities can actually be related to a particular place and time. Given

---

35 See Allinger 2008.
36 On the most important topics in the early Western Himalayan monuments, see Luczanits 2004: 201–223.
37 Besides the monuments cited below, see also the temples centred on Vairocana mentioned in Richardson 1990.
that the manuscript is found at Tabo, the Vajradhātu mandala as preserved in the Tabo Assembly Hall (du khang) is of course the first reference comparison, but comparative examples are utilised from all the Western Himalayan region and beyond.

As mentioned above, the Tabo manuscript is also part of a small group of illuminations depicting the Vajradhātu deities. The most important and most well-known among these are the above-mentioned manuscript leaves originally brought by Giuseppe Tucci from Tholing and now in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art (M.81.90.6-17; see n. 13, p. 347). These, and some additional ones that turned up on the art market in recent years, offer an additional body of comparison. As they lack context, these comparisons are only of secondary importance and mainly serve to demonstrate that the typological and possibly also chronological range of such depictions is broader than it appears from the market.  

Sadly, the title page of the manuscript is not preserved and it remains unclear what might have been represented there. Obviously, the goddess Prajñāpāramitā is a likely candidate, but in the only comparison in this respect, the LACMA manuscript fragments, the goddess is actually at the end of a manuscript, and is not the same one as is shown with the Vajradhātu deities. Interestingly, this page has a verse invoking the example of Sudhana or Norzang (Nor bzang), the hero of the Gandavyūhasūtra added to it. Another possibility is a Buddha representation and an interlocutor represented on the sides of the folio, as frequently occurs in other manuscripts.

In the Tabo manuscript, Buddha Vairocana (Fig. 15) is white and has his hands joined in front of his breast in what probably represents a variant of the gesture of highest enlightenment (bodhyāgrimudrā). Although our picture is not entirely clear, it appears that his right hand turned towards himself—and thus with the back towards the viewer—covering almost all his left hand. Further the mandorla is smaller than the figure and the lions are squeezed underneath the lotus seat of the deity. The Vairocana sculpture of Tabo has its hands in exactly the reverse positions. Instead the closest comparisons are found in the Alchi group of monuments, with those depicted in two mandalas of the Sumtsek (gSum brtsegs) gallery floor being the closest.

From the illuminations succeeding Vairocana it is clear that four goddesses of the core assembly of the mandala are not represented in the manuscript. There is neither space for four goddesses surrounding Vairocana, as they are shown in the earliest depictions, nor for the four consorts of the surrounding Buddhas shown in later versions of the mandala. This is immediately reminiscent of the Tabo Assembly Hall, where the four goddesses are also missing, but there they could be reconstructed as once having been present at the corners of Vairocana’s throne.

The Bodhisattva Vajrarāja holds an unusually shaped elephant goad (ankusā), with the hook in the shape of a bird (Fig. 16). In the earliest West Tibetan monuments, as in the Tabo Assembly Hall

38 Traditionally any West Tibetan illumination is attributed to the 11th century.
39 Harrison 2007: 238–40 (no. 8).
40 Translated in Harrison 2007: 239.
41 See, for example, the many examples in Heller 2009, likely following an earlier convention, as also demonstrated by the depiction in the Tabo ambulatory of the Bodhisattva Pramuditarāja requesting the Buddha Śākyamuni to teach the Bhadra kalpi kāsūtra (Klimburg-Salter 1997: fig. 161). A similar pair, both appearing to be Buddhas, occurs in a folio offered by Carlo Cristi, but these are not at the beginning of the text but mark the end of the first bam po.
42 See Goeppe and Poncar 1996: 189.
43 See Luczanits 2004: 46–51 and fig. 40.
or the Alchi monuments, the ankusā is consistently shaped as the head of a makara, his trunk forming the hook. Besides the attribute itself, the way it is held across the body with two hands can also be compared. In this case the depictions in the oldest temples of Alchi, Nako and Sumda Chung conform to that on the manuscript, the closest in terms of hand positions being that of the Alchi ‘Du khang.

The Bodhisattva Vajrarāga (Fig. 17) has his bow and arrow in an inactive position, the arrow head pointing downwards and the bow at his hip. This contrasts with the active shooting position found in most of the early Western Himalayan depictions, including the Tabo Assembly Hall. In fact, so far only a single comparison to the passive depiction in the manuscript has been found, namely in the Vajradhātu mandalas in the recently discovered Khartse cave.44

Little can be deduced from the depiction of the following bodhisattva, Vajratējas (Fig. 18), who is shown in most comparative examples alike, but the representation of Vajrakhāma is again rather unusual (Fig. 19). The red bodhisattva holds a lotus in his right hand, but it is held at his side and the second hand does not “open it at the heart” as described45 and commonly pictured. The illustration in the manuscript, in contrast, is found in several instances among the Alchi monuments, in the wrathful depiction of this bodhisattva in the Alchi Dukhang (Du khang) and two other ones in the Alchi Sumtsek (gallery, both mandalas on the right side wall; Fig. 20).46 While this comparison is important, it needs to be noted that the last three bodhisattvas of the Tabo manuscript are practically identical in their posture and the location of their arms.

Bodhisattva Vajratikṣṇa, painted as an afterthought in-between the text lines, brandishes a sword, but does not hold a book in his left hand (Fig. 21), as certainly was the case in the Tabo Assembly Hall. However, he is too varied in the comparative depictions—in colour (blue and yellow), posture (brandishing the sword or holding it upright in front of his breast), and attribute (holding a book or not)—for any meaningful conclusions to be drawn from them.

In the case of the Bodhisattva Vajrahetu, the only telling detail is the shape of the wheel he holds at his side, which is shaped like a yellow blossom with five petals (Fig. 22). Again the depictions of the deity and the way the attribute is held, if it is shown at all, vary across the Western Himalayas, but the depiction in the manuscript again has its best comparisons again in the Alchi Sumtsek, where even the attribute is a similar shape (Fig. 23).

The Bodhisattva Vajrabhāsa is again very distinctive. Instead of holding the (vajra-)tongue in his hand, it is placed on a white lotus at his side, standing upright on it as if it were the red stigma of the lotus pistil (Fig. 24). This attribute has always been very difficult to depict, even more so as it has the same colour as the bodhisattva, and there are consequently many variants in its representation. In most cases it is clear that the attempt has been made to depict an actual physical tongue, a red often slightly bent object, and occasionally a vajra head is added on one side. Although in most depictions the tongue is at the side of the body, none of the comparisons uses a lotus base for the attribute.

Following Buddha Amoghasiddhi (Fig. 25), the only other of the five Buddhas besides Vairocana preserved in this manuscript, is the primary bodhisattva of his family, Vajrakarma (Fig. 26). The photos available to us are too blurred to verify his attribute, the viśvavajra, and the posture alone varies quite considerably in other depictions of this deity. What is interesting though, is the architectural frame around the bodhisattva, the palace within which he is shown. Supported by two pillars, it has a raised central section with corner finials and each of the two platforms is topped by a structure similar to the one-eyed stupa from another Tabo manuscript discussed above (RN 153, Fig. 13). More decisive, however, is that in the wall paintings such more architecture-oriented frames only occur in the course of the 12th century.47 Comparative frames, although not with this peculiar stupa-like shape are found in Lalung and the Alchi group of monuments.

As usual, Bodhisattva Vajraarka holds a mail shirt in front of his breast, the vajra-heads on both sides clearly visible (Fig. 27). More interesting is the black Vajrayaksa, who holds two long silver fangs (Fig. 28). The latter is interesting, since he is described as a black wrathful figure, but in depictions he is rarely shown this way, and often even the colour is brighter. The Tabo manuscript depiction most closely compares to those at Nako, in particular his two representations in the side wall mandalas of the lHa khang gong ma (Fig. 29).

While the Buddhas and bodhisattvas discussed so far demand more hieratic and static representations, there is considerable freedom with the offering goddesses. In fact, in the Tabo manuscript these are shown with agitated movements and exaggerated postures. This can best be demonstrated by the representation of

44 We owe the documentation of this cave to the Pritzker family. The cave is also the subject of Tshe ring rgyal po et al. 2009.
45 For a summary of the relevant details in the iconographic description of Ānandagarbha see Luczanits 2004: 296–99. Unless otherwise noted, it is this description we refer to.
46 For the full mandala and details of some of its deities see Goeppe and Poncar 1996: 186–99.
Lāsyā (Fig. 30), which is so far the only representation of this goddess that is shown so much in profile that her two hands are joined at hip level at the side she is looking towards. Usually the hands are on both sides regardless of whether she is represented frontally or looking sideways.

The Goddess Mālā faces to the right, but her body is twisted in such an extreme way that her breasts face the left (Fig. 31). She holds a garland with hanging jewels and vajra ends, which corresponds most closely to representations in the Alchi Dukhang and the Khartse cave. A similar but much less pronounced body posture, in contrast, is only found in a Phyang (Phyi dbang) cave (Fig. 32). Gitā, the goddess of song, is shown in a similar extreme posture and holds her instrument, the bow and the vīṇā passively at her sides (Fig. 33). With the exception of one depiction of the Alchi Sumtsek (Fig. 34) in all other depictions available to us the goddess is actually playing the vīṇā or has her right hand very close to the instrument.

With Nṛtyā, the goddess of dance, the movement is expected, but it is unusual that she raises both her hands (Fig. 35). Most commonly the goddess raises one hand above her head, but occasionally she may have both hands raised, usually holding the ends of a scarf that falls behind her body. Of these, the portrayal in the Nako lha khang gong ma and one Alchi Sumtsek depiction, from the same maṇḍala as the comparison for Gitā, are closest to the one in the manuscript. In terms of movement, the most extreme depiction on the manuscript is certainly that of the goddess Dhūpā (Fig. 36). Her motion is so exaggerated that her breast projects underneath her arm. The shape of the incense burner she is holding is very distinctive and we have not yet found it elsewhere.

The two gatekeepers, Vajrapāśa (Fig. 37) and Vajrāveśa (Fig. 38) do not provide much additional information, their depictions are too varied to be significant. In the case of Vajrāveśa—also called Vajraghānta in reference to his main attribute, the bell—the holding of the bell with both hands in front of his breast is shared by depictions in the Nako Translator’s temple (Lotsāba tha khang) and the Khartse cave temple, and another manuscript illumination that has recently been on the market is very similar to it.

The iconography of the Sixteen Bodhisattvas of the Fortunate Aeon (bhadrakalpa) included in the Yoga Tantra maṇḍalas is too varied to allow for a similar comparison in case of the Bodhisattva Bhadrāpāla (Fig. 39). The two groups of Sixteen Bodhisattvas are even inscribed in the ambulatory of the Tabo Main Temple, but as the example of Bhadrāpāla there makes clear it is far from certain that these captions are actually correct. In any case, the iconography of this Bodhisattva on the manuscript, white with a triple jewel on a lotus, conforms to one of his descriptions, and the triple jewel is his common attribute.

Although these iconographic comparisons relate the Tabo manuscript depictions of the Vajradhātu deities to most of the Western Himalayan monuments, there are a few general observations that can be made from them. The variations in the depictions of the Vajradhātu deities found throughout the Western Himalayas are an indication of numerous parallel traditions on this topic in both religious and artistic terms. There are also indications of substantial variations in the depictions of individual deities even if their iconography is firmly established. While found at Tabo, the illuminations of the manuscript do not compare well to the Tabo Main Temple. Instead the closest comparisons are found at sites such as Nako and Alchi, and there is a general trend for comparisons to monuments most likely dating to the 12th century, or even its second half.

**Stylistic Observations**

As we have seen from the discussion of the Buddha depictions, the Tabo manuscript illuminations reflect the stylistic development of Western Himalayan painting from the 11th to the 13th century. It is thus possible to relate the murals to the book illuminations, and it is generally assumed that the same artists that worked on the large mural programmes also participated in the creation of manuscript illuminations. However, the situation would seem to be more complex, in that the manuscript illuminations are only rarely of the same quality as the murals. In the following section we will attempt to outline a stylistic development of Western Himalayan art that also takes these qualitative differences into account.

The oldest comparative paintings in the region probably date to the first half of the 11th century, and were rediscovered in the north-west chörten (mchod rten) at Tholing, one of two such partly preserved structures in the vicinity of the temple of Ye shes ’od (also referred to as brGya rtṣa). This chörten once contained three sculptures housed in niches and flanked by secondary painted deities. As many of the physical features in these paintings are also found on more or less contemporaneous Kashmiri bronzes, they are generally assigned to the Kashmiri tradition. Since virtually no Kashmiri paintings have been preserved, the question of how these paintings came to be executed at Tholing remains a matter of speculation. The figures in

---

51 See, for example, Luczanits 2004: 226–28 and Heller 2010.
Eva Allinger and Christian Luczanits

the chörten are painted in an extremely hard linear style (Fig. 44). The body is modelled with a thick application of pigment that creates an almost pattern-like effect but does not result in the impression of depth or plasticity. All details, such as the opulent jewellery and the textile patterns, are painted with precision. The superb quality of these paintings makes it likely that the artists were brought in from an important cultural centre, at that time probably Kashmir.

The same artists may have been responsible for the Tholing manuscript paintings of Vajradhātu deities held at the Los Angeles County Museum of Art (Fig. 45). However, there are a number of deviations from the harsh linearity of the Tholing murals. While the facial features are the same—with the small elongated eyes, the projection of the further eye in three-quarter profile, prominent nose, small mouth and the marked chin, and the bodies have similar proportions—the overall impression is softer and more playful, as evidenced by the narrow diaphanous scarves around their shoulders. The only modelling occurs as shading along the outlines.

The paintings in the ambulatory of the Tabo Main Temple, which can be securely attributed to the mid-11th century, are very similar to those of the Tholing manuscript (Fig. 46). There is the same faint shading along the outlines of the body, although there is considerable variation here depending on the base colour, and while the heads are somewhat broader and the shape of the mouth a little narrower, the facial features are similar. At Tabo there is occasional slight modelling of the face, making the figures more sensual than those of the Tholing manuscript. Due to their large size, the Tabo depictions are exceptional in terms of their detailed and varied representation of jewellery, textile patterns and attributes.

While the Buddha depictions of the Tabo manuscript RN 9 (Fig. 4) exhibit similarities to the style of the Tabo Ambulatory paintings, they are clearly of far inferior quality. In this respect the depictions of the Thousand Buddhas in the same ambulatory offer a better basis for comparison, especially those on the inner wall, which while refined are still of lesser quality than those on the outer wall (Fig. 47). The way the body and dress are drawn is similar, in particular the bi-coloured edge of the robe. The rays drawn within the nimbus are actually finer in the manuscript than in the murals. The modelling of the body is still rather harsh, which compares well to some of the Tholing manuscript illuminations.

49. A pratyekabuddha of a Sarvadurgatiparśodhana mandala;
Alchi, Dukhang, right side wall
(J. Poncar, 1989; WHAV).

50. Buddha Ratnasambhava;
Nako, Translator’s temple,
Dharmadhātuṣvāgīśvaramaṇḍujāśri
mandala (C. Luczanits, 1998; WHAV).

51. Goddess Cundā with 18 arms;
Pooh, Prajñāparamitā
Manuscript, folio 2
(C. Luczanits, 1993; WHAV).

52. Four-armed Green Tārā;
Alchi, Sumtsek, left side wall
of the Avalokiteśvara niche
(J. Poncar, 1981; WHAV).

53. See also Klimburg-Salter 1997: 154–71, in particular figs. 163–80; the bodhisattvas belong to her Period IIA (see Klimburg-Salter 1997: 49ff).

54. In the Tabo ambulatory the blue and green bodhisattvas have considerably more shading than those with white and red complexions.

55. This representation of the Buddha in the Tabo ambulatory is essentially the same type as one of the Buddhas of manuscript RN 5 (Fig. 48). Nonetheless, if we compare these Buddhas, we notice that despite the similar appearance some crucial features in the depictions have changed: the bodily proportions, in particular the body-head ratio, are different; in the manuscript illuminations, the body is revealed through the dress, which has a hem of only one colour, and
In their treatment of the hieratic figures, the narrative depictions at Tabo exhibit a number of similarities to the style of the paintings in the ambulatory. By and large, however, the depictions are of a wholly different character: the figures are conceived in purely graphic terms and lack any kind of corporeality. The focus of interest here is the rendering of motion and the interplay between the figures.\(^{56}\) The same profane characteristics are also found in the paintings illustrating the Sadāprārudita chapters in manuscripts RN 10 and RN 11. Here too it is the graphic manner of representation that is important and not the corporeality of the figures.

The style of the Tholing chörten continued to exert an influence, as can be seen from the early 13\(^{th}\)-century paintings of the Alchi Sumtsek (Fig. 52).\(^{57}\) The crisp outlines of the body are further enhanced through the contrasting colour of the background. Here the modelling of the body is no longer pattern-like, instead clearly emphasising its plasticity. The shading is frequently executed in contrasting colours. The facial features are similar to those of Tholing and Tabo, while the head is relatively small in relation to the body. The jewellery and opulently decorated dress are even more richly depicted than at Tabo, both conveying a sense of luxury.

The same elements are already present in the earlier Alchi Dukhang. The depiction of a Buddha from this temple (Fig. 49) shares the same proportions and modelling, and with his richly patterned patchwork robes can be compared to the Buddhas of the Tabo manuscript RN 13 (Fig. 5). Despite the substantial difference in size, both Buddhas wear rich robes, their heads are relatively small and the bodies exhibit modelling, albeit of a considerably more schematic nature than that in the Tabo manuscript illuminations.

If one compares the hard linear style of the Tholing chörten and its modifications in Tabo and Alchi with the 12\(^{th}\)-century murals of the Translator’s temple at Nako\(^{58}\) it is evident that the latter has a very different, painterly style, even though a number of the motifs are similar (Fig. 50). The outlines of the body are considerably softer than in the linear style; lacking the tension of the graphic lines, the bodies give a looser, more “relaxed” impression. In contrast to Alchi, where the bodies seem almost like jointed dolls, at Nako the various parts of the body flow organically into one another. Furthermore, the modelling does not follow the contours of the body more or less schematically, that is from the outline to the centre of the respective part of the body, but is adjusted individually for each part and appears to have been finely smudged with the ball of the thumb in order to allow parts of the body to stand out independently of the outlines. The colours are not as strong and hardly contrast with one another, while neither dress nor jewellery are emphasised to any great extent.

This more painterly style also occurs in manuscript illuminations, most clearly on the title page and in the first group of illuminations of the first volume of a \textit{Prajñāpāramitā} manuscript from Pooh village in Upper Kinnaur (Fig. 51).\(^{59}\) The shading is here barely visible. Illuminations further on in the manuscript are much more schematic and of inferior quality, and may thus be the work of pupils. However, a number of leaves from this manuscript offer good opportunities for comparisons with the Tabo manuscript featuring the Vajradhātu \textit{maṇḍala} (RN 5; compare Fig. 53 with Fig. 54). While there are major differences in the appearance of the Buddhas, the details of their dress, the lotuses and even the halos all share a similar schematic approach in the execution. The comparison also demonstrates how crudely the Tabo depictions were executed.

The illuminations in the Tabo manuscript RN 5 are obviously not painted by one of the main artists—one of the latter would probably have been commissioned with the title page, which has not been preserved—but by pupils, as can be seen from the clumsiness of many of the details. A telling example is the representation of the breasts of female deities in three-quarter profile. In more sophisticated depictions, as for example from Phyi dbang cave, Western Tibet (Fig. 32), the countermovement of the breasts is used to suggest the elegant flexure of the body, but

\(^{56}\) See Klimburg-Salter 1997: fig. 128.

\(^{57}\) See also the diverse forms of Green Tārā on the left-hand wall of the Avalokiteśvara niche and the Aṣṭamāhābhaya Tārā ar gallery level (Goeppe and Poncar 1996: 72ff., 159).

\(^{58}\) On the date of Nako see Luczanits 2004: 85.

\(^{59}\) On the different styles and hands in this manuscript see Allinger 2006. We would like to thank C. Kalantari for the identification of this goddess as Cunda.
in the manuscript this feature has been executed in an extreme, almost grotesque manner (Fig. 35).

The figures in the paintings of Tabo RN 5 also have minimal shading but exhibit the same soft lines as in the Nako murals. In the latter, the Pooh manuscript and RN 5 the heads tend to be broad, while the mouth is of normal size, or at least not as thin as in the linear style, and the eyes are almond-shaped, with the exception of the Pooh manuscript, where they are very narrow or almost slit-like.

While these stylistic comparisons are not conclusive, they help to locate the Tabo manuscripts in time and place. Despite the striking differences in quality, the style of Tabo manuscript RN 5 can probably best be compared to the paintings of the Nako Translator’s temple.

**Attribution and Context**

It is very fortunate that two of the themes preserved in the few illustrated folios of the Tabo manuscripts are also depicted in the Tabo Main Temple: the Vajradhātu mandala in the Assembly Hall and the story of Sadāprarudita’s quest for the Perfection of Wisdom in the ambulatory. Both themes belong to the renovation of the Tabo Main Temple likely concluded in 1042 CE. However, this fact should not lead us to assume that the manuscript illuminations are all from the same period. As we have already seen, the Buddha depictions of the manuscripts cover a wide chronological range, while those of the Sadāprarudita narrative are roughly contemporaneous (RN 10 and 11) and slightly later than the Tabo mural depiction. It is thus clear that we should not generally assume that all distinctively early Western Himalayan (or Purang-Guge) manuscript depictions are of the 11th century.

If the chronology of Western Himalayan temples as suggested in Luczanits 2004 is taken as a base, the closest comparisons to the Tabo Vajradhātu manuscript RN 5 in both stylistic and iconographic terms are found in 12th-century monuments. Stylistically, the manuscript most closely resembles the Nako murals, but this association is not close enough to establish an origin for the painters. However, as artists and workshops have been working at different sites throughout the region, usually the origin of the painters cannot be established for most of the manuscripts. The itinerant background of the artists is one possible explanation why the iconographic comparisons are spread over a wide geographic region and time scale. Some of the iconographic comparisons are exclusively from the Alchi Sumtsek, which is datable to the early 13th century.

Thus, despite depicting the Vajradhātu mandala and likely also the Sadāprarudita episode, the Tabo manuscript dates to the mid 12th century at the earliest. Such a date and a local, itinerant workshop setting would also explain some of the idiosyncrasies found in this manuscript, especially some of the more grotesque figures, the type of architectural frame found in one depiction (Fig. 26) and the flame-shaped īṣṇīsa of the Buddhas along with characteristics that clearly continue from the Tabo mural paintings.

In conclusion, we hope that this analysis of the Tabo manuscript illuminations suffices to establish a number of important points:

- Similarly to the monuments found throughout the region, Western Himalayan manuscript illumination is not restricted to the 11th century but actually has a long and complex history, which includes changes in the subjects the manuscript illumination depict and the relationship of text and illuminations. In this respect, a larger body of evidence may make it possible to work out how Western Himalayan manuscript illumination has developed in terms of style and the subjects depicted.

- Once a more detailed chronology of manuscript illuminations has been established, it may help to refine the chronology for early Western Himalayan manuscripts as well.

- The Vajradhātu mandala assembly is an important topic among the early manuscript illuminations, and the iconography of the deities depicted has the potential to establish relationships to monuments in the region.

**Bibliography**


HARRISON, Paul. 2007. Notes on some West Tibetan manuscript folios in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art. In: Kellner, Birgit, Helmut...
A Vajradhātu Mandala in a Prājñāpāramitā Manuscript of Tabo Monastery

Krasser, Horst Lasic, Michael Torsten Much and Helmut Tauscher (eds) Pramāṇakīrtih. Papers Dedicated to Ernst Steinkellner on the Occasion of his 70th Birthday. (eds) Arbeitskreis für tibetische und buddhistische Studien, Universität Wien, 229-245.


‘PHRIN LAS MTHAR PHYIN. 2001. rMad byung zhang zhung gi ‘bri rtsal: Krung go’i bod ljongs mnga’ ris kyi gna’ bo’i ldeks ris bdams sgrig / Masterpieces through the Ages: A Selected Collection of Ngari Ancient Frescoes of Tibet, China. IHa sa: Bod ljongs mi rigs dpe skrun khang.


361
Christiane Kalantari

Shaping Space, Constructing Identity:
The Illuminated Yum chen mo Manuscript at Pooh, Kinnaur*

Recent finds of manuscripts in Western Tibet, their documentation and analysis¹ as well as those of regions in Nepal (Dolpo) (see Heller 2009), which were historically linked, have substantially enlarged our knowledge of early Tibetan miniature painting. On the basis of the illustrations in the Yum chen mo (Prajñāpāramitā) manuscript (abbreviated YM) at Pooh, Upper Kinnaur, in historical Western Tibet, the processes of cultural transfer will be examined and the integration of models to make a wholly new artistic entity, creating an entirely new type of manuscript in comparison to those produced in India and Nepal. The following study will focus on the relationship between text and image, as it were transcending the “traditional” borders between genres. The close connection between manuscripts and mural paintings will be illustrated with concrete examples. In addition, this study will examine both how local architectural features and elements of courtly material culture and luxury art were transformed to represent a typical sacred space and the way in which the importance of the donors and the ruling elite of the emerging West Tibetan dynasty was emphasised in a previously unknown form.

The village of Pooh (Fig. 1) lies on an important position on the trade route that once connected the north-west Indian plains with the Western Himalayas, and in particular the area of historical Western Tibet (mNga’ ris skor gsum). The historical importance of the village as part of the West Tibetan kingdom is shown inter alia by a carved stone pillar (rdo ring) with an inscription recording the name of Ye shes ‘od (Jahoda 2011, Jahoda and Kalantari, “Power and religion in pre-modern Western Tibet: The monumental Avalokiteśvara stela in lCog ro, Purang”, this volume, pp. 34–35).²

¹ This study is based on field research in 2002 and a documentation campaign in 2009, both funded by the FWF, the latter within the framework of the FWF research project “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet” (P21806-G19) directed by Christian Jahoda.

I would like to thank Tsering Gyalpo, Romi Khosla, Christian Jahoda, and Eva Allinger for their helpful suggestions in respect of this study. Thanks are also due to the Negi family in Pooh, Kinnaur, India for the hospitality and help they extended to Christian Jahoda and me during field research in October 2009, in particular Lama Sushil and Tenzin Negi. I owe Gudrun Melzer important insights concerning the relation of text and image and relevant sources.

² Earlier contributions regarding the historical classification of this rdo ring are by Thakur 1994, Vitali 1996 and Petech 1997.
The provenance of the YM is not entirely certain. Today it is stored in a small temple called the “Translator’s temple” (Lotsāba lha khang), the sanctum of which contains wooden images that are the temple’s only remaining ancient artefacts (Luczanits 2004: fig. 62). While the latter are datable on stylistic basis to the 11th century, the manuscript is perhaps from a later, perhaps 12th century date, as will be shown, due to stylistic similarities with paintings in the Nako Lotsāba lha khang. Thus the manuscript perhaps cannot be directly related to the time of foundation of the temple at Pooh. However, the quality, in technological and stylistic terms, as well as the use of gold (in contrast to simpler renderings produced at the same period, as can be seen in various libraries such as Tabo and Khorchag), suggests an aristocratic donorship, perhaps in connection with the decoration or restoration of a temple, associated with the local elite.

The manuscript has been identified as a Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā (Allinger and Kalantari 2012). Folio 2 recto gives the title of the book in the first line: rgya gar skad du [in Indian language] sha ta sa ha sri ko prad nya pa ra myi ta [Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā], bod skad du [in Tibetan language] shes rab kyi pha rold tu phyin pa stong phrag brgya pa [Prajñāpāramitā in 100,000 stanzas, Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā], and also indicates the volume (dum bu dang po, first volume) and section (bam po thog ma, first section).

The book (Fig. 2; Cat. nos. 1 and 2, pp. 387–388) has the typical oblong format and horizontal orientation and consists of pages made of fine, ivory-toned paper with illustrations commonly on the recto side. The wooden cover is perhaps a later (13th century) addition. The format and the two circles are reminders of the original palm-leaf manuscripts of the Indian tradition, indicating that they were held together by thread. In the 11th century the palm leaf was replaced by paper. The folios are typically first wrapped in a textile cover (dpe ras, na bza’), then they are placed between the wooden covers (glegs shing) and bound together with thread (glegs thag). The manuscript kept at Pooh comprises 326 folios, which are published here for the first time as an entirety. Folio 1 (Fig. 2) is smaller then the rest of the pages and measures 18.0/18.5 to 53 cm, while the following folios (starting with folio 2; Fig. 7) are ca. 19.5 high and 65 cm wide. The cover is slightly larger (ca. 22 x 73 cm). There are ten lines of text on each page and—beginning with folio 1 verso (Fig. 2)—an illustration (ca. 6.8 x 7 cm), with a few exceptions in the centre of the recto side.

3 Bam po are placed as “titles” at the beginning of the section, whereas chapter indications (le'u) are always at the end of the chapter (see Steinkellner 1994 on the structure of foliation or pagination system of West Tibetan manuscripts). The extant YM at Pooh contains the first five chapters of this text as the last folio (Ka Nga 26, this is folio 326 recto) ends with le'u lnga po'o, “[end of] chapter five”. Thus the volume contains roughly one tenth of the whole text (as the various editions are divided into 72 to 77 chapters; see Allinger and Luczanits, “A Vajradhātu mandala in a Prajñāpāramitā manuscript of Tabo monastery”, this volume, n. 6, p. 344, referring to research by Gudrun Melzer).

4 Based on the photographic documentation of the YM by the author in October 2009 and a re-examination by Patrick Sutherland (University of the Arts, London) and Dechen Lhundup from Tabo village in Pooh in December 2012 (as contained in a report sent to Christian Jahoda on Dec. 10, 2012), the pagination of the first one hundred folios (1 to 100) is identified by the letter Ka (written in red) and the written number. The first folio has no pagination. On the recto side at the centre is the short title of the text (Yum chen mo shes

364
As shown in Allinger (2006) and Allinger and Kalantari (2012), the concept and organisation of the illuminated books in Western Tibet developed independently of their Indian models. On the first illustrated folio (folio 1 verso) (Fig. 2) there is a large image in both the left-hand and right-hand margins, and the intervening panel with text is richly inscribed—with a graceful and confident script—in gold on a dark ground. As a unique feature, the verses on the first folio command the reader to approach the text—the true teachings of the Buddha—with intensiveness and respect. Also the relation between text and image shows a completely new approach: not only does the image on the first page refer to the succeeding text in a previously unknown form, but also the text on the intervening panel, the text for an invocation, is interrelated with the image on this folio and the subsequent text. Though this text follows specific Sanskrit models, it usually does not occur in this position in books, as has been shown by Gudrun Melzer, who also provided a translation (see Allinger and Kalantari 2012: Appendix). Usually the last page with the colophon has detailed images of donors and their families (cf. the folio in the Pritzker collection, Fig. 3). In this respect there must have been established rules in Nepal and Western Tibet, while in Indian palm-leaf manuscripts donors are mentioned in the colophon but as a rule not depicted.

The Frontispiece

The first illustrated page is remarkable for the ample use of brilliant colours and highlights, with gold and silver, creating a space bathed in the light of the rising sun. Folio 1 verso shows Māra’s assault in the left-hand margin (Figs. 2, 4, 5) and a Buddha assembly in the right (Fig. 6). The latter scene is perhaps referring to descriptions of the Buddha realm at the beginning of the book, as will be shown.\footnote{In previous research, the close relation to the scene of Māra and typical iconographic elements namely gazelles and a wheel which appear to be depicted in the upper level of the shrine’s superstructure led me to identify this as the First Sermon of the Buddha. Recent findings of related textual sources suggest an identification as a Buddha assembly.}

\textit{rabs kyi pha rol du phin pa bzhugs so;} see Cat. no. 2). On folio 2 recto the pagination starts with \textit{Ka} gnyis, etc. up to folio 100. There is no folio 57 but folio 56 is paginated 56/57. The second hundred folios (from 101 to 200) are identified by the letters \textit{Ka Na} (\textit{na} is subscribed under \textit{ka}) and the next (from 201 to 300) are identified by \textit{Ka Ma} (\textit{ma} is subscribed under \textit{ka}). The rest of the folios (up to folio 326) are identified by \textit{Ka Ngo}. This system corresponds to Volume Pagination III ("letter volume signature and hundreds marked noted by subscript letters") in Scherrer-Schaub’s classification (Scherrer-Schaub 1999: 22). [editor’s note/CJ].
scene features a palace, or rather two-dimensional throne-frame, of the Buddha consisting of an assemblage of architectonic elements used as set-pieces in a very decorative form, not intending to mimic real architecture. Complex architectonic thrones—which developed parallel to thrones crowned by animals—are a leitmotif of Western Himalayan art in different media. We find a combination of abstract geometric elements, zoomorphic forms, features of buildings (perhaps alluding to wooden temples as well as wood-stone architecture typical in this region) and honorific furniture, all arranged in a planar fashion. Also the seat of the Buddha with its sumptuous textile decoration is folded flat to create a decorative element of the abstract frame. This throne or sacred space transcends the heaviness of substance rather than resting on a ground and thus combining an earthly/mundane and a metaphysical space. The decorative appearance of this throne is enhanced through the application of high-relief and gold, rather recalling metalwork. Furthermore, the gold script (chrysography) on the dark blue background enhances the magic and sumptuosness of this sacred space. A very similar hybrid, even more “fantastic” architectonic space combining a throne and palace can be found on a folio in the Pritzer collection (Fig. 3) and another one in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art/LACMA (cf. Pal 1983: Fig. j on p. 125).

The horizontal beams of the shrine provide a grid system for the listeners, gods and humans who have come to hear the teaching of the Buddha. These symmetrically arranged groups of devotees do not create a depth of (mundane) space but they are also arranged in a very planar, decorative manner, without gravity. The donors—members of local elite—are prominently depicted within this space, embedded in the radiance and glory of the sphere of the Buddha.6

The Large Sutra of Perfect Wisdom (Conze 1979)6 gives detailed descriptions of the wonderful qualities of the Buddha while demonstrating the dharma, recalling the approach towards space of

and thus combining an earthly/mundane and a metaphysical space. The decorative appearance of this throne is enhanced through the application of high-relief and gold, rather recalling metalwork. Furthermore, the gold script (chrysography) on the dark blue background enhances the magic and sumptuosness of this sacred space. A very similar hybrid, even more “fantastic” architectonic space combining a throne and palace can be found on a folio in the Pritzer collection (Fig. 3) and another one in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art/LACMA (cf. Pal 1983: Fig. j on p. 125).

The horizontal beams of the shrine provide a grid system for the listeners, gods and humans who have come to hear the teaching of the Buddha. These symmetrically arranged groups of devotees do not create a depth of (mundane) space but they are also arranged in a very planar, decorative manner, without gravity. The donors—members of local elite—are prominently depicted within this space, embedded in the radiance and glory of the sphere of the Buddha.7

The Large Sutra of Perfect Wisdom (Conze 1979)6 gives detailed descriptions of the wonderful qualities of the Buddha while demonstrating the dharma, recalling the approach towards space of

As a characteristic feature of West Tibetan manuscript painting, luxury and status culture of the ruling elite are integrated and transformed into an expression of the glory and radiance of the Buddha and his realm, as will be shown below. In this religio-artistic sphere, luxury also signifies the wealth of offerings from this elite to the religious establishments in their realm as a means of securing social cohesion and legitimacy; of course the act of donations of sumptuous garments and other costly paraphernalia is a constant element of ritual and redemption in Buddhist culture from very early on.

Also on an iconographic level there are significant parallels with the beginning of the book describing the scene of the sermon:

9 Conze (1979: 2) described the “wonderful qualities of the Buddha and his great wonder-working power […] taken as tokens of his capacity to teach the real truth about the actual facts of existence. […] The descriptions wish to magnify the Buddha’s stature in the eyes of the reader, and to generate and foster an attitude of pure faith in his authority. At the same time […] they try to give an idea of his true body and personality which are immense and inconceivable.”
“Thus have I heard at one time. The Lord dwelt at Rajagriha, on the Vulture Peak, together with a large gathering of monks, with 1,250 monks, all of them Arhats [...].” (ibid.: 37).

The nāgas below the throne and the group of Indic gods on the top, among them Brahmā, as well as laymen and laywomen depicted in the YM correspond to this description.

Also the Māravijaya scene (featuring the Buddha displaying bhūmisparśamudrā, standing for the victory over Māra and enlightenment) (Figs. 4–5) shows a specific approach towards nature and ornament: the aureole is encircled by the leaves of a tree (the Bodhi tree, the place of enlightenment of the Buddha). Nature is permitted an expression of an inner emotion and it participates in the situation by the tree protectively embracing the Buddha. The expressive drawings outside the cartouche with the sitting Buddha in them are remarkable. Featuring demonic creatures and scrollwork characterised by a confident, spontaneous stroke, these images appear to transcend the pictorial space and to intrude into the space of script, emphasising the symbiosis of text and image in this folio. As already observed by Allinger (2006), although the image is intended to represent a sequence of events, it initially gives the impression of a coherent group in an imaginary space.

As mentioned above, another characteristic feature is that the organisation of illustrations in West Tibetan manuscripts gradually changed in comparison to their Indian models. The YM images in the first folio refer directly to the succeeding text in the manuscript. In his book Mittelalterliche Buchmalerei (a lecture series held at the University of Vienna in 1967/68 and published 1984), Otto Pächt described this process of change in the image-text relationship in European medieval art of the book: “Das Wort ist Bild geworden” (Pächt 1984: 42). A comparable process is also observable in Western Tibet. Accordingly, the book becomes a space that is physically and spiritually graspable while leafing through the book. A parallel phenomenon can also be found in the decorative programme temples (see below). To summarise, the frontispiece plays an integral role in the organism of the book, representing Māra’s assault, an invocation text and the essential Buddhist theme of the Mahāyāna assembly. The last of these aims at inviting the local devotees to reflect on and follow the dharma significant in this phase of propagation of the new belief system, which was in the region.

The Second Folio and the Theme of the 1000 Buddhas on the Following Pages

So far the information in the first line of folio 2 recto containing the title, volume and section number of the book has not yet been accounted for, nor has the iconography of the images been fully understood (Fig. 7; Cat. no. 4). The text starts in the second line of folio 2 recto with the beginning of the Prajñāpāramitāsūtra (see Conze 1961). The images on this folio feature vignettes of two seated figures in the centre—one of them is a Buddha while the second is without uṣṇīṣa—and two divinities on the margins (Figs. 8–10). There is an 18-armed female deity on the left-hand side and a green bodhisattva on the right. The female goddess represents Cundi, also called the “mother of all Buddhas” and often equated...
with the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara. Her function is related to the cult of the book, i.e. rituals with purifying effects from which the donor and any devotee who recites the mantra can benefit. Her position at the beginning of the book also supports this assumption, but her function in this context needs further examination.15 She is shown in one of her different forms, but without attributes (cf. de Mallmann 1986: 143–144). The deity sits on a lotus, is yellow/golden or white, the palm of each hand is marked with an eye. The ‘painterly’ style with subtle shading is comparable to that of a female deity at Nako representing a local Kashmir-inspired school (Fig. 11). As a characteristic feature of a group of folios at the beginning of the book, silver can be found in the inner circle of the halo and it is also used as highlights. This is also the case at Nako (Lotsāba lha khang, south wall). The whole composition and the position and gestures of the gods suggest an inner relationship between them, typical of mandalic configurations in this period. The text on this folio representing the beginning of the Prajñāpāramitāsūtra describes a conversation between the Buddha and an elder.

“The lord said to the Venerable Subhuti, the Elder: Make it clear now, Subhuti, to the Bodhisattvas, the great beings, starting from perfect wisdom, how the Bodhisattvas, the great beings go forth into perfect wisdom.” (Conze 1975: 89).

The middle scene with a preaching Buddha and a monk facing him recalls this conversation and also a bodhisattva is mentioned in this text. Although Subhuti is one of the most important discussion partners of the Buddha in the text, he is not mentioned on this folio and so the attribution as Subhuti must remain speculative.

At the level of an iconographic configuration and spatial position in a temple it is reminiscent of Bodhisattva Pramuditarāja requesting Buddha Śākyamuni to teach the Bhadrakalpikasūtra (sKal pa bzang po'i mdo). The bodhisattva is depicted in a discourse scene with the Buddha in the entrance (east wall) of the Tabo sanctum’s ambulatory (Fig. 12). At Tabo—in close relation to the latter scene—protectors are positioned directly above the door (Indra, Brahmā, and perhaps a form of Avalokiteśvara, as a six-armed multi-headed deity with horse-head on the top),16 which recalls the protective function of the left-hand-side goddess in the manuscript; also the position, closest

---

15 Among the earliest textual sources of Cundi and the Cundi Dhāraṇī is the Kāraṇḍavyūhasūtra centered around the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, and that also introduces the popular mantra om mani padme hūṃ (cf. Studholme 2002: 175, n. 145). According to de Mallmann (1986: 143) Cundi/Cundā is titular of three sādhanas (Sādhanamālā 129 to 131). The deity was integrated into Buddhist legends as the one who offered the Buddha the last meal before the parinirvāṇa. Mallmann (ibid.) remarks that she was perhaps originally considered impure and thus of lower rank, which is confirmed by her appearance as dhāraṇīs.

According to de Mallmann (1986: 150) the dhāraṇis, or queens of ‘magic science’ belong to the oldest texts of tantric character; they are short formulas charged with magic power and used for specific purposes. Furthermore in the Nispānnyavagī (21) and Kriyāsamgraha the term dhāraṇi denotes a series of deities—among them is also Cundi/Cundā—placed in specific positions, namely the second circle of the mandala of Dharmadhātuvaśīvāra. The ten dhāraṇis and the deities associated with them are visualised and worshipped with their formulas during tantric Buddhist rituals described in the aforementioned Kriyāsamgraha, representing acts of worship “to accumulate merit for the benefit of the construction of monastic buildings”, which transform the monastic ground into a perfect abode of deities (Skorupski 2002: 6; cf. ibid. also p. 33 on Cundā).

16 Among other objects, the god holds a lotus and pot. For a comparison see Pal 1975: fig. 78; in this the author proposes influences by the demonic Brahmanical god Hayagriva.
Shaping Space, Constructing Identity: The Illuminated Yum chen mo Manuscript at Pooh, Kinnaur

...to the “portal” of the first page, is similar. This page of the YM is thus another indication of the close relation between image and text and how the book can be perceived spatially.

In contrast to the sumptuous first page and configuration of deities, or Buddha-conversation on the second page, the subsequent folios have rectangular vignettes of single Buddhas and some images of the life of the Buddha (Cat. nos. 192, 194, 201, 221), which appear to be randomly dispersed and no inner relationship is observable. These feature the Buddha with a monkey holding a bowl, representing the miracle of Vaiśālī, the first bath of the Buddha and the Buddha sitting in bhadrāsana (representing Buddha in Tuṣita heaven). The scenes are of high technical and artistic quality, reminiscent of the first page.

The single Buddhas most likely represent the widespread spiritual programme of the 1000 Buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa (present auspicious aeon) popular in this region from very early on. The Buddhas are depicted sitting on lotus bases and encircled by nimbs (prabhāmaṇḍala). Gold is not found on these later pages, in contrast to a manuscript folio at Khorchag featuring a single Buddha in gold executed in a magnificently unique quality (Fig. 13). The single Buddhas, as a rule, have almond-shaped eyes and small, narrow lips. Facial features such as eyes and eyebrows are drawn in a graphic manner with thin black strokes, while at the same time the faces show subtle shading along the contours; these stylistic features are also characteristic of Nako (Fig. 14 and 15). The almost boneless fingers performing different types of mudra are also characteristic; these mainly serve for variation rather than representing iconographically fixed types. The robe covers the left shoulder, leaving the body below visible or draped around the whole body forming a U-shaped neck. Folds of the robe are indicated with fine line-drawings. Where patterns of textiles are depicted, they flatten the overall impression of the figure, creating a very decorative, planar figural style.

In her 2006 article, Allinger reconstructed processes of divided labour and workshop hierarchies defining four distinct groups of illuminations. She demonstrated that the figures of the Buddha at the beginning of the manuscript may have been drawn by an experienced master, while throughout the book details such as nimbs were done by another artist. One group (the fourth and last group identified by Allinger 2006: 7; folios 311–326 [Ka Nga 11–Ka Nga 26], all recto; see Cat. nos. 312–327) shows renderings of faces in a much simpler form, indicating perhaps another individual group of artists, but the Buddhas are wearing a wide variety of fine textiles decorated with very detailed ornaments. Due to the fact that comparable patterns are found on the first page, it is possible that they were painted on the basis of a sketchbook by the master artist who painted the frontispiece (Figs. 2, 4–6). Folios were also found at Khorchag (though from different books)—attributable on stylistic and iconographic basis to the same period—that include elaborate styles and simple styles simultaneously. In earlier publications (Harrison 2007, 2009), chronological sequences were derived from these differences, though they may rather reflect different backgrounds of donors and workshop hierarchies.
same workshop of a master artist at Nako may have also created the YM. Thus a dating of the manuscript to the beginning of the 12th century can be proposed. 19

Most instructive for the definition of the characteristics of this early 12th-century style of Pooh and Nako is the comparison with later depictions of this theme in the Zhag cave. Luczanits and Allinger ("A Vajradhātu mandala in a Prajñāpāramitā manuscript of Tabo monastery", this volume, pp. 358–359) define two contrasting styles: a graphic (harder modelling) interest in robes, with large patterns under which the bodies disappear represented at Alchi and Tholing and in a related manuscript from Tholing in the LACMA; on the other hand a painterly style with softer modelling at Tabo and Nako, to which also the YM can be attributed as well as a manuscript from Tabo ("Running No. 5") in a local style featuring a mandala. A third type can be added to this stylistic attribution; this is seen in the 12th/13th century images of the Dungkar (Dung dkar) and those in the Zhag cave, which differ from the styles both of the Tabo-Nako group and Tholing-Alchi group.

At Zhag the theme of the 1000 Buddhas covers the four walls of the main space of the cave surrounding a stūpa (mchod rten) in the centre. With regard to the painting process of the individual Buddhas, it is clear from variations in painting styles that different hands were at work, comparable to the YM. While the subtle shading and modelling of some seated Buddhas is at first sight reminiscent of the figural style of the YM, a closer look at the treatment of the individual figures reveals interesting contrasting features to styles in earlier periods (Fig. 16; cf. also Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, "Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet", this volume, pp. 407–430). 20 Some of the monk’s are represented in a rather naturalistic manner, but most of them suggest that the painter/s did not understand or were not interested in the logic behind the function and use of the robes and how they are draped around the body; this is a contrasting feature to the YM. In particular there is almost no variation in the lower part of the garment, uniformly following the scheme of a loop between legs outlined in white. It thus appears that the robes are not painted from direct models and were perhaps realised from sketchbooks or illustrations in manuscripts. Some of the clothes seem like coats or poncho-like robes with round necks and wide sleeves. In contrast, the standing Buddhas in the corners may reflect different (perhaps Newari-influenced) sartorial and figural traditions. 21

Most of the robes are in a simple patchwork pattern, treated in a flat fashion, which is often crudely applied on the parts of the figure reserved for the robe. Other designs have decorations applied in thin lines that subtly follow the movement of the body and the fabric (in particular on that of a standing Buddha, perhaps drawing from different models).

In general there are few decorative designs (some of the Buddha’s upper garments are adorned simple patterns of leaves, but these are the exception. In general the robes are single-coloured with a border in a different colour. This contrasts with earlier Kashmir-inspired Indo-Tibetan styles in Himachal Pradesh and Western Tibet (Khorchag). In general it appears that the patterns on textiles were not known from direct contact either, but indirectly through other artistic media. This contrasts with the Pooh manuscript, where one finds a clear understanding of the technique of how to decorate cotton fabrics, namely various reserve techniques characteristic of Indian cotton textiles. Some patterns of earlier periods found at Nako are repeated in the ceiling of the entrance hall at Zhag, 22 perhaps from sketchbooks. The intention behind these is perhaps the continuation of a tradition, and to give the temple a time-honoured appearance rather than to represent real textiles.

A contrasting and unique feature in typology and style are the standing monks on lotus buds and rosettes filling the spaces in the corners. These are reminiscent of the standing Buddhas at Dungkar, placed in the niches flanking the eight clay Buddhas flanked by protectors. 23 One standing monk/Buddha at Zhag is remarkable for his

---

19 Klimburg-Salter (1994a, 1994b) proposed stylistic relationships with the paintings in the Tabo du khang, suggesting an earlier, mid 11th century date.

20 If one compares two Buddha images the faces have been painted by different artists and perhaps also the whole outlines of the figures: some of them have subtle shading with finely drawn facial features, in contrast another is drawn with thick strokes, giving a crude and patchy impression. At the same time, the planar treatment of the robe is similar in both images. This may indicate that elements like ornaments on textiles and perhaps lotus bases were applied using division of labour, reflecting a strict workshop hierarchy.

21 Round-necked clothes consisting of a thin, sleeved lower garment above which are draped rectangular pieces of cloth of a heavier material are reminiscent of a monk’s robes. They are typically made of patchwork laid around the body in various ways.

22 The decoration of the entrance room’s vault contrasts with a ceiling above the main space featuring a large rosette of lotus scrolls covering the ceiling. This new concept contrasts with earlier planar, architectonic grid-systems of organisation of ornament and it temporally coincides with a period in which the upper boundary of the temple is conceived as cosmological vision, either in form of a mandala or a composition that opens into a three-dimensional space with freely dispersed figures (cf. a unique cave sanctuary at Nyi dbang in the Tsamda [rTsa mda’] District; see also Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ris, Western Tibet”, this volume, pp. 409–411).

23 Cf. Luczanits 2004: 116ff. (and 2010) for the discussion of the stylistic characteristics. In some aspects the extremely elongated figural characteristics
facial features drawn with a few confident lines: full red lips, delicately drawn black eyebrows, a sharply drawn nose, a white complexion and a slight smile. The figures appear to show movement and display knowledge of the organic relation between parts of the body, which contrasts to the weightless, schematic figures in the YM. These individual features at Zhag appear to reflect new, perhaps Newar-style artistic trends at the end of the 12th/beginning of the 13th century.24

To summarise, the style of the YM at Pooh can be defined as a “decorative style” with strong Indo-Tibetan features. In particular, ornament and the aspect of variation is a feature of the quality of the YM and the early Buddhist art of this region. The textiles depicted at Tabo and at Pooh possibly related to the ornamental and textile tradition of Kashmir (Papa-Kalantari 2007) as well as Gujarat, as proposed by Wandel (1996) in her master’s researches and thesis. Cf. also Klimburg-Salter 1994b. It appears that patterns on costumes at Tabo and Pooh were painted from direct experience. The textile representations are particularly rich and naturalistic in the images of the Tabo gtsug lag khang wall paintings while the ceilings reflect different ornamental styles and symbolism (most of them imitating Iranianising luxury textiles also to be found on Kashmir-style bronzes).25 The painters still appear to have understood the function and use of the sartorial and textile traditions in the YM, and perhaps they were known from direct experience, indicating close interaction with artists from the Indian plains. This contrasts with the later paintings at Dungkar and Zhag—there the relation of body and robes is rendered in a completely different way, most likely also reflecting the different climatic conditions in Tibet in comparison to the Indian models, and little knowledge of (or interest in) fine cotton fabrics decorated with characteristic patterns.

Although in the figural style of the YM there is modelling around the contours of faces and body and subtle shading of the internal details, the figures are rather schematic, almost “weightless”. While the body is typically hidden behind the costumes, these are defined in greatest detail; thus naturalism is rather represented on the level of material culture. In general, variation and fantasy on the level of ornament is a feature of the originality of the art of this region. In this decorative style—characterised by symmetry and planarity—a supremumandane space is created which is to be splendid and glorified. Completely new stylistic trends are to be found in succeeding periods, such as at Zhag and Dungkar, with their interest in naturalism, the physical presence of “mundane” figures and almost “portrait-like” human emotions. As will be shown, these innovative tendencies in the evolutionary history are characterised by a new approach towards an illusionist space, in particular in narrative paintings and ceiling depictions, and an interest in naturalistic forms, such as depictions of “real” architecture.

Sacred Spaces in the Medium of Books and Wall Paintings
A characteristic and innovative feature in Western Himalayan Tibetan art is its distinctive treatment of architectural representations in various different media. The depiction of the Buddha assembly on the right-hand side of the frontispiece of the YM is one of the early examples of this tradition, featuring a group depiction with an elaborate throne setting (Fig. 6). As already mentioned, here we find an accumulation of various architectural themes consisting of a throne and a palace-like structure.

The Buddha is encircled by an aureole in rainbow colours and seated on a (wooden) throne,26 with a multi-tiered palatial structure resting on it. The upper levels of this structure are topped by a pitched roof with sheltering eaves, and the whole is crowned by an āmalaka and a finial. This light, airy structure imitates certain elements of built architecture seen in wooden temples as well as in forts in the region. A significant feature is the rectangular window frame with characteristic elongated horizontal wooden members in the uppermost part of the shrine in the YM. This demonstrates that such shrine depictions were also inspired by local West Tibetan palace and tower architecture, combining wooden structures and mud mortared stone walls with carved wooden elements for windows, doors and balconies depicted in narrative paintings in Tabo (Fig. 17; cf. Tucci 1935: fig. 29) and Alchi (Fig. 18).27 Such set pieces—together with characteristic pitched roofs and wooden pilasters—are assembled in the manuscript in a planar structure of great decorative value. The ornamental qualities are...
further enhanced through the representation of material culture and luxury art; the gold on pastiglia relief mirrors a parallel development in the wall paintings of the region, notably the paintings of the Nako Lotsāba lHa khang (Kinnaur, Himachal Pradesh, India) (Figs. 14 and 15). The style of the manuscript can best be compared to folios recently re-discovered at Khorchag monastery (mNga’ ris, Tibet Autonomous Region, PR China) (Fig. 13), which show a sacred space filled with light using luminous and vibrant colours; the use of gold is further evidence of this tendency.

A comparable throne or celestial palace theme can be found featuring images of the Eight Great Bodhisattvas (Figs. 19–21) on the lowest register of the main (west) wall at the Nako Gongma temple (lHa khang gong ma)—below a maṇḍala which covers the wall above. However, the individual elements and solidity of the structures are reminiscent of actual built forms. The bodhisattvas are in a row of multi-tiered palaces of various shapes linked by massive pilasters forming separate compositional units. Between the supporting wooden elements are walls that are often decorated with textile patterns, underlining the important role of textiles in wood-mud-brick architecture in the region. In general, architectural niches and animal-framed thrones that are used to define separate compositional units are a common feature in western Himalayan portals. The prototypical torana of Khorchag is a paradigm for the interrelation between wood carvings of portals and various other genres, such as paintings in temples and manuscripts, on the levels of motifs, composition and symbolism (Fig. 22). In particular, carved wooden panels from a lost portal at Tabo featuring standing Buddhas in elaborate arched frames are stylistically close to Nako (cf. Tucci 1935, Tav. XLVI, XLVII).

At the centre of this ensemble at Nako is a depiction of Tārā as protectress against the Eight Dangers being venerated by the local elite (Fig. 20). One of the architectural units flanking Tārā features a bodhisattva sitting beneath a multi-lobed arch in front of a temple (like the gavākṣas or horseshoe-shaped arches that decorate Indian temples and shrines) (Fig. 21). The inner frame partly takes up the theme of the rainbow aureole. The innermost celestial abode of the deity is filled with light, represented as an aureole and a nimbus encircling the body and the head respectively. The lotus throne on which the god is seated appears to be growing out of a lotus pond that constitutes the background of the whole composition. The palaces consist of superimposed recesses of diminishing width, with small towers or stūpis at the top, perhaps also including dormer windows. Some of the palaces have smaller shrines at the edges of the lower recesses.

A comparable theme of linked celestial palaces, or rather multi-foiled arches resting on massive pillars, with a Buddha at the centre can be found on the entrance wall of the Tabo ‘du khang, albeit in a much simpler form (Fig. 23). Monks and bodhisattvas paying homage to the Buddha are depicted on the lateral borders, like the Buddha assembly on the Pooh frontispiece folio, as discussed below. In contrast to Tabo, the palaces at Nako have a more architectural

---

28 However, the latter displays interesting features reflecting ritual practices such as the decoration of shrines with pearl bands and bells as well as the offering of streamers tied onto the pilasters by devotees.
character, constructive logic and gravitation, recalling both the sacred architecture in the art of the Indian subcontinent and in contemporary Indian book art, particularly that from Bihar and Bengal (Fig. 24), and local built forms. Significant commonalities between individual motifs in West Tibetan celestial palaces and Indian shrines or śikhara structures can be observed, in particular multi-tiered structures are absent in the architectural ornament of Kashmir. The commonalities can also be studied in the temple with the oldest decorative programme at Nako, namely in the Lotsāba lha khang. A little-studied Tārā image above a donor representation—as if blessing the founder of the temple—(Fig. 25) is closely related to an ideal Indic architectural model, perhaps ultimately deriving from Pāla-style manuscripts. A comparative example is provided by a book cover in the LACMA, featuring a deity in a shrine identified as Tārā by Bautze-Picron (2010: fig. 30, "Book cover A") and dated to the 12th century. The sacredness of Indian architectural forms must have been in particular strong due to the inherent value of a witness (Riegl’s "Zeugniswert") and the authentic transmission of a tradition. The faithfulness to an ideal model perhaps also enhances the idea of the transfer of the sacredness of a specific cult image. The construction of a tradition and the emphasis of an authentic, uninterrupted transmission is a constant strategy of legitimacy in the Tibetan cultural sphere. Architectural forms sanctified by tradition and their representation in different media of course plays a special role in this context; thereby real or imagined forms from the Buddhist heartland in India were overlain by locally developed traditions of sacred spaces.

Among the most characteristic elements of the celestial palaces in the Gongma temple at Nako is the combination of pilasters bearing multi-tiered palatial structures, reminiscent of multi-storey temples such as the Alchi Sumtsek (Figs. 26 and 27). At Nako massive pilasters rest on bases reminiscent of pārṇāghata crowned by capitals with volutes. Among the characteristic decorative elements on pilasters in India are rhomboid shapes with foliate ornamentation, also executed as triangles (cf. Bautze-Picron 1998: fig. 41). These motifs “move upwards” at Nako, where they crown the pilasters between the temples. In this transformed use they are similar to constructive elements in West Tibetan architecture, namely triangular or pediment arches that imitate wooden elements as well as the typical pent roof...
Alchi Sumtsek’s veranda (Figs. 26–27). The pitched roofs crowning the different levels at Nako (Fig. 30) can be also traced back to wooden temples in Kashmir (Fig. 32) and in Baltistan (cf. the Mir Aref shrine and tomb at Tagas; Fig. 33). At Nako the roofs appear to be covered with coloured tiles; however, it is possible that these may be intended to imitate the stone slabs that are a characteristic building material in these regions.

Tower-like structures and single-chamber, centralised buildings with pitched roofs must have also played an important role in the tradition of sacred spaces in historical Western Tibet. A tower with pitched roof is depicted in the Sadāprarudita legend in the Tabo ambulatory (Fig. 34). A related type of building appears to be reflected in the interior of the Alchi Mañjuśrī lha khang, ca. 1200 (Fig. 35); featuring an umbrella-shaped ceiling design with fanning beams. The latter system may have once also existed in the Padmasambhava lha khang at Nako, stemming from the 14th century. At Lalung, there are ceiling designs resembling wooden coffins, which are raised in the

structures of the stone temples in Kashmir, which are a leitmotiv in the art of this region, together with a wide variety of pillars (Fig. 21). The idiom of the pedimented trefoil arch resting on pilasters was also transferred to ornamental shrines or “blind niches” (Fig. 28), as first observed by Romi Khosla (1979: 34–35; Fig. 29). The pillars on the first upper level are also significant, like struts supporting an overhanging roof. Together with the main pillars with bases resembling overflowing vases, they imitate wooden architectural ornamentation in the region, one comparative example being the richly carved pediment arches alternating with triple pilasters and ornamental features such as vases (pūrṇaghata) carved in deep relief on the wooden elements of the

27. Alchi, Sumtsek, detail of veranda (C. Kalantari, 2000).
31. Romi Khosla (1979) presented a genesis of the motif of tri-foliated arches in combination with gable roof motifs from Kashmir to Ladakh.

32. Steep roofs in Kashmir are derived from wooden prototypes, but only in the “sub-Himalayan valleys of Himachal Pradesh (do) shrines built of deodar, the locally available cedar, still stand” (Michell 2000: 64). Pent-roofed temples are typical of various parts of Himachal Pradesh, in regions where the deodar played an important role in the construction of temples. The slanting roofs of slates in Kinnur are adapted to the climate and the amount of rain and snow, whereas temples in Tibet are typically solid and flat, used for storage; however, there must have been a greater variety of roof forms in the early period. Some of the single-chamber buildings or those with superimposed (multi-storey) roofs of diminishing width may allude to the honorific function of umbrellas. In procession local deities are carried in palanquins, and one ore more umbrellas held above them, the local deities are wrapped in clothes, protecting them from direct view (Papa-Kalantari 2008: fig. 193). Temples with a vertical repetition of multi-tiered towers with fanning beams, have an important role to play in the architecture in Buddhist Nepal and Hindu Buddhist temples in Himachal Pradesh. As Kramrisch has put (1976 I: 190): “The superstructure of superimposed and diminishing slabs of stone forming a stepped pyramid surmounted by an amalaka is a pristine type of superstructure of the temple. In decreasing size, slab upon slab are placed on the roof of dolmen type shrines in South India and the Himalayas as well,” as examples she mentions Bajinath Temple, Kangra, founded at the beginning of the 13th century. The author further describes that the verticality or cosmic axis is most suitable fort he ideal of the spiritual ascent of devotee (ibid.: 184).
33. This was first suggested by Di Mattia 2007: 65. Cf. also a building with a pitched roof (perhaps covered with blue) depicted in the jātaka of the starving tigress at Zhag cave (cf. Gu ge Tše ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mNga’ ri, Western Tibet”; this volume, Fig. 19, p. 416).
34. The author identified temple ceiling planks that were originally organised in a radial pattern and decorated with textile depictions (cf. Conservation Report 2002-2004, Nako Research and Preservation Project, University of Vienna).
central section, suggesting that ceiling alludes to a complex, stepped, roof system of a centralised space, as also seen in the heavenly palaces as abodes of main deities in the sculptures covering the walls (Fig. 36). In addition, at Lalung further types of tiered structures can be found on the main wall: one with five spires or turrets on the different levels, reminiscent of Buddhist and Hindu sanctuaries with four towers in the corners and a central cupola depicted on one of the bodhisattva’s dhoti in the Alchi Sumtsek (Goepper 1996: figs. on pp. 59, 64).

Another type has a stepped superstructure, with stūpikas on the different levels (Fig. 37; cf. Luczanits 2004: fig. on p. 97).

In Ladakh specific types of stūpas had both the function of a reliquary and a temple, one example being the “Great Stūpa” at Alchi made of mud-bricks and with a wooden lantern ceiling (or rather a temple enshrining a stūpa; cf. Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang in context”, this volume, p. 263) featuring four turrets or elongated stūpikas in the corners and (mchod rten), i.e. “The Stūpa with Many Auspicious Doors of the One Hundred Thousand Visions”, first published by Goepper (1993: 115, 140). The inscription further states that the model is from India, “taking as an example the Svayambhu-śri-Dhānyakātaka, as it exists in Central India” (ibid.: 115), which according to the author is perhaps an allusion to Amarāvatī, popular with Tibetan pilgrims. This article also discusses the designation of the stūpa by locals and the architectural context and genesis of this building type, which originally had four doors in the cardinal directions, comparable to the pañcāyatana temple complexes and stūpas in Central Asia and Kashmir.

30. Nako, detail heavenly palace, lHa khang gong ma, main wall (C. Kalantari, 2009).
32. Srinagar (Kashmir), mosque (M. Klimburg, 2007).
33. Baltistan, Mir Aref shrine and tomb at Tagas (M. Klimburg, 2001).
35. Interior of the Alchi Mahījuśrī lha khang, ca. 1200 (C. Kalantari, 2009).
a central cupola (Figs. 38 and 39). At Lalung, this type of sacred space is reserved for the image of the Buddha on the main wall, representing the focus of devotion in the temple. Another example is a folio of a MS at Tabo featuring a bodhisattva in a temple with stūpas in the corners (Fig. 40). Another Tabo folio, showing the tower of Dharmodgata and thus the realm of dharmakāya, features stūpas on the horizontal levels and on the top of the superstructure (Fig. 41). This type of shrine is frequently also depicted in manuscripts from Dolpo, Nepal (see Allinger and Kalantari 2012: fig. 13; Heller 2009: fig. 77). It thus appears that the built architecture of the region (perhaps alluding to even specific pilgrimage places)—the stūpa as well as different types of centralized sanctuaries with superimposed turrets and stūpas common in Western Tibet in particular—were gradually integrated into the symbolism of heavenly palaces. The second upper roof level of the Nako shrine is crowned by a characteristic āmalaka (Fig. 42) which here—in contrast to its Indian prototype—is treated as a purely decorative element, whereas the rows of petals together with characteristic rows of appendages resembling wooden pendants between the different levels are closer to their models.

A consistent element in Western Himalayan art is the rich use of textile motifs: in Indian shrine depictions these originally adorn the cushions of the throne and also decorate the cloth draped over the front of its base. At Nako decorative elements deriving from textile art fill the spaces between the different recessive levels of the superstructure (Fig. 43). This decorative system is reminiscent of the actual architecture in the region, and in particular the rich tradition of local mud-brick structures in which textile covers prevent dust from falling down through the mud-filled roof, as seen in historical buildings as actual textiles (Tabo, Tholing) or painted fabrics (Alchi, Fig. 44) as well as in local buildings up to the present day. The same textile motifs can be found on the ceiling of the lHa khang gong ma at Nako and even in depictions of mandala palaces on the side walls of the early temples at Nako.

36. Lalung, gSer khang, heavenly palace (C. Kalantari, 2009).
37. Lalung, gSer khang, heavenly palace of the Buddha on the right-hand side (C. Kalantari, 2009).
38. “Great Stūpa” at Alchi (C. Kalantari, 2009).
40. Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prājñāpāramitā manuscript, Tabo (Harrison 2009: cat. no. 1.1.2.7), folio depicting a bodhisattva in a shrine (E. Allinger, 2009).
41. Tabo, folio featuring Dharmodgata in the tower representing the teaching (E. Allinger, 1994).

36. Comparable complex superstructures are also found in the Tholing Gyatsa.
37. Cf. also Goepper (1996: fig. 71) featuring a shrine with a Buddha image; there are three small stūpas on the complex, funnel-shaped roof, perhaps imitating wooden constructions.
of this style and also provide evidence of the offering of sumptuous garments to the temple by pious donors as well as their ritual use in the attiring of Buddhist temples. The donation of precious textiles as a central component of Buddhist ritual practice is also shown in donor depictions portraying the local aristocratic elite at Tsaparang (Papa-Kalantari 2007). The Western Himalayan Tibetan ornamental style reflects the transferral of symbols and values from the culture of luxury and status of the local royal elite to aristocratic and decorative features in the medium of art designed to portray the deities residing in sacred spaces of colourful splendour. Another important element in the definition of sacred shrines is the aspect of devotion and sensual interaction with the holy image on the part of the devotee, which is reflected not only in the textiles decorating the various storeys but also in the depiction of ropes of pearls and bells hung on the shrine with the Buddha in it at Tabo (cf. Fig. 45).

The depictions of the Eight Bodhisattvas on the main wall display an ambivalent approach toward pictorial space: the sacred realm of the deities is defined by an illusionistic architectural structure as well as the two-dimensional hieratic throne frame. This artistic mode allows compositions that incorporate both temporal and spiritual space.

A slightly later date (12th century) can be assumed for the manuscript folios from Tabo monastery (cf. Figs. 40, 41). Here there is a fusion of the shrine type discussed above and a stepped frame with superimposed stupas—its colour scheme alluding to an aureole. The result is a simplified, abbreviated architectural space transformed into a planar frame for the divinity.

To sum up, the representation of divine imagery in their sacred abodes shows a transfer of models rooted in the art of the Indian subcontinent. As Bautze-Picron (1998: 41) has rightly pointed out, some elements of shrine architecture in India functioned as objects of iconographic value which were then transformed into decorative elements in later periods. While the overall architectural layout of the celestial palaces in Western Tibet takes up the tradition of the sacred images as replicas of the holy sites with multi-tiered, sikhara-type superstructures (in particular the Mahabodhi temple, where the Buddha experienced his Great Enlightenment), the ornamental details integrate local ornamental language and elements of luxury art specific to the region as well as actual built forms in the Western Himalayas. As a result there is an evolutionary history from a planar, decorative throne frame with architectural features (such as in the YM) to an architectural throne frame (Nako) and finally to an illusionist temple or shrine as a throne and backdrop for deities, perhaps alluding to actual pilgrimage places. Among the most elaborate examples illustrating the latest stage of this development are images of sacred structures of various types at Dungkar (Cave II), in the lowest zone of the wall featuring enthroned deities and donors which flank a mandala. One example features an Eleven-Headed Avalokiteśvara in an aureole in front of an illusionist temple with multiple roofs crowning the storeys of solid walls, resembling Tibetan mud-brick buildings (Fig. 47). Such tall, tiered structures of course are reminiscent of the famous temple architecture in the Kathmandu valley, Nepal (cf. Gutschow 2011: 54).

To sum up, while at Tabo and Nako elements of heavenly palaces may have been linked to the symbolism of sacred stone architecture—in particular the vertical, tower-like superstructure, the sikhara, of temples in India combined with wooden temples

41 It was the premier site of pilgrimage, visited by great numbers of Tibetans, and many replicas were made of it and brought back to Tibet.
of the region—later this type was perhaps superimposed by the architectonic idea of the stūpa, which of course had a high status as building type in the Tibetan architectural tradition as well as by different types of single-chamber sanctuaries, perhaps designed for much-revered cult-images, with complex superstructures featuring turrets and stūpas positioned in the cardinal directions, suggesting cosmological allusions in architecture, which developed in this region.

By virtue of this assembly of built and imaged forms in the architectural thrones and heavenly palaces of deities in the YM and at Nako, motifs of extreme visual complexity and colourful splendour are achieved in Western Tibet. In particular the decorative architectural throne in the YM does not represent real architecture but rather sacred spaces designed to enhance the majesty of the deity and that of the realm in which it resides. The artists integrated these elements, thus creating independent and innovative types of sacred space and styles of architectural ornament.

This type of Western Himalayan shrine is found as a significant feature both in wall paintings and manuscripts and in specific positions in the spatial layout, as will be demonstrated below, leading us to the question of its possible iconological function.

**Sacred Spaces and Lay Imagery in Western Himalayan Painting**

Another important independent feature of Western Himalayan book illumination and wall painting is the strong presence of royal and noble donors in the pictorial programme. Indian sculptures often feature representations of donors shown as small kneeling figures on the base. In the art of Kashmir, Ladakh and Baltistan these depictions of lay people commemorate the act of donation as a central form of Buddhist devotion. This tradition is continued in Western Tibet and features large-scale compositions that commemorate contemporary rituals and ceremonies. Portraits of the ruling elite even assume an important role in iconographic ensembles of religious imagery. In addition a synchronisation of lay imagery and religious iconography can be observed on different levels. In the lowest zone of the Nako main wall discussed above, the donor depictions are below the central Tārā of the Eight Perils in a mode of veneration featuring offerings in the centre, and they are also engaged in a ritual (Fig. 20). The composition resembles a manuscript folio in the Los Angeles County Museum of Art (M.81.90.6 for an image see Pal 1983: 123) featuring a Prajñāpāramitā and, below, a symmetrically arranged group of lay donors and a monk. The group is shown in an offering scene with ritual paraphernalia at its centre.

The presence of the local elite in religious imagery as part of the whole religious programme, and in relation to a specific thematic assemblage with didactic imagery in particular, is a characteristic feature of West Tibetan art. The monumental assembly of the lay and monastic elite headed by the Royal Lama (tha bla ma) Ye she ‘od in the Tabo entrance hall is a paradigm in this respect. By contrast, the dominant presence of donors is unknown in Indian manuscripts. Another specific feature in the evolutionary history of Western Himalayan donor depictions is the fact that the scenes become increasingly vivid, showing the ruling elite engaged in various actions reflecting actual rituals and historical events. They are often shown together with their families, or in genre-like scenes commemorating not only religious rituals but also different types of genre scenes, reflecting values of wealth (extended to the temple) and procreation and even echoing typologies found in representations of Indic tutelary gods (Kalantari, “Hārītī and Pāñcika at Tabo”, this volume, pp. 301–325). One of the most fascinating examples of this genre-like type of donor depiction is shown on the final page of a Prajñāpāramitā manuscript from Dolpo, featuring a female member of a noble clan depicted as a nursing mother; other genre scenes include, for example, a man spinning wool with a spindle (cf. Fig. 3). Such scenes in various media of West Tibetan art appear to provide a medium of self-representation for aristocratic donors in their striving for legitimacy and respectability vis-à-vis the local population and constitute a constant independent feature of this art. This reflects a religious landscape marked by the propagation of Buddhism by the royal and aristocratic elite. The programmatic text of the Pooh frontispiece (Fig. 2)—which contrasts with Indian manuscripts in terms of both content and structure—is a further indication of the function of this type of imagery.

The frontispiece is highly significant with regard to the form and function of donor depiction in Western Tibetan religious imagery. The assembly on the right-hand side of the folio shows a “Sacred Conversation” or gathering of protectors, the lay and monastic donors in a unified pictorial space; historical persons can be also be present in such compositions.
elite, crowned by an ensemble of Hindu deities above (among them Brahma and Siva). The text in the centre of the folio is significant by virtue of its unique content. It encourages the devotee to engage with the teaching of the Buddha (and with that of Prajnaparamita in particular) and to follow those who have attained perfect peace and joy through his wisdom.46

By virtue of its position at the beginning of the book, this combination of text and image—integrating the representation of the local elite—can be read as a conscious propagation of Buddhism in the region and as encouragement to follow the Buddha’s path. This type of text appears to be related to didactic inscriptions in wall paintings.

Sacred Ordering of Space in a West Tibetan Temple
Interestingly, the combination of the “didactic” text and the sermon found on the Pooh frontispiece in certain ways resembles a configuration in the entrance hall (sngo khang) of the main temple (gtsug lag khang; ca. end of the 10th century) at Tabo, which has recently been cleaned by the Archaeological Survey of India. There a non-historical inscription below the depiction of a Buddha—making the boon-giving gesture (varadamudra)—is shown in the upper left-hand corner of the entrance wall (thus positioned at the “beginning” of the temple’s programme; cf. Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po and Kalantari, “Guge kingdom-period murals in the Zhag grotto in mPhags las, Western Tibet”, this volume, Fig. 5, p. 409). The image of the Buddha together with the caption below accompanies a samsaracakra (Wheel of Rebirths) as prescribed in the Vinaya (monastic regulations) of the Mulasarvastivadins concerning the decoration of entrance halls.47 The inscription was first transcribed and translated by Luczanits (1999: 115–16). The verses encouraging conversion to Buddhism read as follows:

“Commence, go forth [and] join the Buddha’s teaching! Destroy Mara’s host, as an elephant [destroys] a reed-hut! Whoever conscientiously observes the [Buddhist] monastic rules (dharmavinaya) will leave the circle of rebirth, and reach the end of suffering, thus it is said.” (Luczanits 1999: 116, n. 61; translation to a large extent following the German translation in Schmidt 1989: 79).

The text above the painting of the samsaracakra is related to the teaching of dependent origination and through its connection with the enlightenment can be regarded as the quintessence of the teaching of the Buddha (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 124–125). Its intention in the temple is to encourage conversion to Buddhism and to follow the Buddha’s path towards ultimate liberation. The thematic assemblage represented in the Tabo entrance hall is reminiscent of the iconography on the veranda—corresponding to the entrance hall of a monastery—of the vihara-type Cave XVII at Ajanta featuring a Wheel of Life plus “didactic” inscription and Avalokitesvara as the saviour from dangers together with local protectors (for an image see Zin and Schlingloff 2007: Appendix).

As a contrasting feature at Tabo we find a monumental depiction of an assembly of eminent historical personalities together with the laity and the monastic community on the side walls flanking the entrance wall. At the centre of the ensemble of historical personalities (on the south wall) is the portrait of Ye shes ’od, the founder of the temple (according to the Renovation Inscription), who—perhaps together with lo chen Rin chen bzang po—was the principal personality responsible for the re-establishment of Mahayana Buddhism in Western Tibet from the late 10th century onwards (a period which later became known as bstan pa phyi dar or the “Later Diffusion of Buddhism”).

Above the latter are ensembles of Indic protectors, while a local territorial deity (srgun ma), described in an inscription below as Wi nuy myin and protectorress of the main temple (cf. Luczanits 1999: 114), together with guardians of the temple watch over the sphere leading to the main hall. The Tabo sngo khang (comparable to the early old entrance hall of Shalu50 is a unique early Buddhist example in the Western Himalaya, where donors/lay persons and Hindu

46 As has been shown by Schlingloff (1988: 169), the text next to the Wheel of Rebirths in the Buddhist art of Ajanta is from the Vinaya of the Mulasarvastivadins (MSV). The thematic ensemble also conforms to the instructions on how to decorate the entrance hall of a temple in the MSV (cf. also Panglung 1981: 141; Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 22). Luczanits demonstrated that the MSV is also the source for the caption above the wheel at Tabo (Luczanits 1999: 115). The inscription on the entrance wall of the Tabo entrance hall and the wheel of rebirth is also mentioned in Klimburg-Salter et al. (1997: 81).

47 The assemblage of themes: samsaracakra—image of the Buddha and the accompanying caption—reflects one of the “most essential tenets of the Buddha’s teaching” (Bechert and Gombrich 1995: 28), namely the Chain of Dependent Origination resulting in the cycle of suffering and rebirth; a component of the Four Noble Truths expounded by the Buddha in the First Sermon after his enlightenment (ibid.: 49). The devotee entering the entrance hall or veranda of the temple at Ajanta perhaps equated the Wheel of Rebirths with their own existence and contemplated the possibility of escaping from the cycle of rebirth, as suggested by Zin (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 157).

48 While this strong presence of lay imagery is unknown in Indian art, it is a consistent feature in early Buddhist art in Tibet, e.g. in the old entrance hall of Shalu (Zha lu, Central Tibet; ca. 1030).
and Indic deities integrated as protectors into the sacred order of Buddhism occupy an independent space as opposed to the sacred sphere of the *mandala* in the main hall.

In the sacred ordering of spaces at Tabo, not only the iconographic programme but also ornament plays an important role. Exemplary for this is the architectural ornament on the transition zone between assembly hall and ambulatory-cum-sanctum, which does not imitate textiles but rather carved wood, alluding to a monumental portal or *torana*. Ornament here appears to signal the ritual use of the temple and its hierarchisation: it articulates a sensitive zone and demarcates the border to the space of highest spiritual rank, the sanctum. (Cf. Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma *gtsug lag khang* in context”, this volume, Fig. 6, p. 261.) Comparative material for specific elaborate ornament on portals is provided by the magnificent Khorchag portal (Fig. 22).

The Heavenly Palace as Border and Interface

A related composition of a “Sacred Assembly” organised in linked palaces appears above the portal of the chronologically later *dū khang* (assembly hall) at Tabo (Fig. 23), featuring a central Buddha (performing *dhyānamudrā*, the gesture of meditation) attended by Avalokiteśvara and Samantabhadra and flanked by a community of monks above a local territorial deity, perhaps Dorje Chenmo (*rDo rje chen mo*). The placing of the latter above the door leading to the sacred sphere of the *dū khang* appears to be significant. In this depiction above the *dū khang’s* portal, the Buddha is shown in a palatial structure flanked by the monastic community and gods, recalling the same theme depicted on the frontispiece of the Pooh manuscripts. Although the Buddha images are shown making various mudrās in the book illuminations and wall paintings of this theme, they are related to central moments in his life when he discovered the Chain of Dependent Origination, which was the basis of his enlightenment and thus the core of his teaching.49

The Symbolism of the Tower in Literature

The architectural throne, palace or tower with a niche-like opening not only reflects the close relation of figure and shrine in Buddhist religious imagery, it also features as a constant metaphor to illustrate the process of pilgrimage and salvation in West Tibetan painting. In the Sadāprarudita story, too, the tower represents the teaching and the *dharmakāya* (Fig. 34). The Sudhana legend—depicted as a complete cycle on the murals of Tabo—is exemplary for the progress of pilgrimage towards bodhisattva-hood. In one of the last chapters his teacher or spiritual advisor is Bodhisattva Maitreya, who sends the young man onward to visit the Buddha Vairocana’s tower of inexhaustible adornment (Cleary 1993: 365).52 The Vairocana tower stands for the splendid realm of *dharmadhātu*, which the devotee can enter. The text describes the majesty of the *vihāra*, as a delicately decorated tower of peerless beauty, with shining garlands of jewellery, elaborate throne architecture is absent in this example.50 Regarding the position of heavenly palaces in the organism of the book, in contrast to the YM, in a Tabo manuscript (running no. 5) architectural representations are not only to be found on the frontispiece but also inside the book. On one folio Bodhisattva Dharmodgata is shown in a palace, which, as has been shown, refers to an episode in the respective story (Fig. 41). However, in this manuscript bodhisattvas are also depicted in shrines which are purely decorative and have no relation to the text. There are also Buddha images on various different architectural thrones in the Hanle (Wam le) MS (Ladakh), displaying the close relation between shrine and the figural image in this region. The shrines in which the figures reside are not related to the text, but are mainly designed to add stability, variation and a sense of visual wealth to the composition. This approach towards architectonic ornament appears to be characteristic for manuscripts in later periods of this artistic phase.51

50 In this, historical figures are represented as direct witnesses of the teaching Buddha and they are thus perhaps connoted with the religious prestige of the first disciples of the Buddha. The image documented by Tsering Gyalpo (see: Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari 2009: fig. 20) shows a large assembly of monks listening to the teaching of the Buddha, with one prominent monk to the left, most probably an eminent religious personality of that time associated with the foundation of the temple or another specific historic moment.

51 I wish to thank Gudrun Melzer for allowing me to study the images (see Allinger 2017: figs. 1–80, pp. 153–171).

52 “Go into this great tower containing the adornments of Vairocana and look—then you will know how to learn the practice of enlightening beings, and what kind of virtues are perfected in those who learn this.” (Cleary 1993: 365).

49 Despite the chronological distance from Tabo, in this context it should be mentioned that the veranda of Cave 17 in Ajanta contains a depiction of a Great Assembly (*mahāsamāja*), in which gods from all regions and heavenly spheres came to be present during the preaching of the Buddha before his monks (Zin and Schlingloff 2007: 114). However, the Vinaya of the Mūlasarvāstivādins prescribes the Great Miracle rather than this image (ibid.).
and as a realm of the highest spiritually developed Mahāyāna adept, the bodhisattva. The elaborate three-dimensional architectonic frame of the freestanding four-bodied Mahāvairocana at Tabo—seated on a lotus throne and in front of the cella that allows for circumambulation—may allude to the abode of Vairocana described in the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra* in which the devotee can enter through meditation.

Among the most elaborate architectonic forms in West Tibetan painting, in the last scene in the Sudhana legend at Tabo—next to passage leading to ambulatory—the abode of Samantabhadra (Fig. 45), a key figure in the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra* can be seen described as splendid realm filled with light and adorned by flowers, jewels, fragrant trees and garlands (Cleary 1993: 378ff.). In this realm Samantabhadra blesses Sudhana who realized the states of consummate knowledge (*ibid.*: 384). These towers are typically depicted at Tabo and Nako at decisive positions in the temple leading from one space to spiritually more elevated ones (see also Fig. 46 featuring the first scene of the Life of the Buddha on the opposite wall leading to the ambulatory at Tabo).

**The Tower as an Architectural Threshold**

It should be mentioned in this context that Linrothe (2010: 125, 134) suggested an interlocking of sacred texts, sculptures, wall paintings and architecture in his article presenting a new interpretation of “the western and eastern tower of the future Buddha at Mangyu.” He proposed that they may function as a thresholds with resemblances to the towers “described in the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra*, when Sudhana encounters Maitreya who lead him to the tower of the adornment of Vairocana and encourages him to enter” (*ibid.*: 134). Thus the tower appears to represent the enlightening vision that is Sudhana’s goal. This space is actually represented as tower and threshold to the temple at Mangyu and Alchi. It can thus be assumed that in the medium of painting architectural representations also serve as images of contemplation for the devotee—the deepening of the teachings—when physically performing the meditative walk in the temple, moving through spaces of increasing sacredness.

To summarise, the motif of the heavenly palace as the setting for a “Sacred Conversation” has hitherto also been admired as a purely decorative element. However, such architectural themes have specific iconological functions. In particular the multi-tiered palatial structure of the Buddha assembly in the *Yum chen mo Prajñāpāramitā* manuscript at Pooh marks a symbolically decisive border: it shows the devotee the path to the sacred realm of the teaching of the Buddha, a core element of the doctrinal system of that time. It is thus also a border and interface between the mundane and the transmundane.

The local elements in this type of shrine architecture in various media signal that the guide between these spheres can be provided not only in distant lands of the Buddha but also in the temples newly established by the local Buddhist elite in the Land of Snow. Accordingly, the portal of a temple or the threshold between

---

53 On a formal level it echoes the first scene of life of the Buddha on the wall to the right side of the entrance to the sanctum.

54 Cf. also Luczanits 2010 for a discussion of the translation of religious ideas into built architectural forms.
distinctive spaces in a temple are meaningful locations for this theme.\textsuperscript{55}

The palace represented in the first folio of the \textit{Prajñāpāramitā (Yum chen mo)} manuscript at Pooh is thus also a portal to the sacred sphere of the Buddha. Accordingly, the frontispiece of the manuscript with its text commanding the reader to approach the teaching—usually not found in Indian manuscript tradition in this position—can perhaps be regarded as the spatial equivalent of the ordering of space in a temple, which is a unique feature found only in Western Himalayan book illumination.\textsuperscript{56} The religious content of the space in which humans (lay and monastic personalities) and gods listen to the teaching of the Buddha, both in the temple—represented in the entrance hall or above the portal—and at the beginning of a sacred book, is to create a cohesion between the local population, the monastic community and the world of the "Enlightened One".\textsuperscript{57}

\textsuperscript{55} One example is an image on the wall leading from the ‘du khang to the sanctum or dri gtsang khang at Tabo; Fig. 46. In the earliest phase of decoration of the Tabo tsug thag khang the entrance hall appears to have had this function as border and interface, reflecting the horizontal tripartite hierarchy of spaces.

\textsuperscript{56} When reading the text the devotee is thus also present in a virtual sense in a world ordered according to Buddhist precepts. While such temple depictions are found on the frontispieces of manuscripts or on the entrance walls (Tabo) in earlier phases, they are later represented in the lowest zone of a complete composition, as found on the main wall at Nako. Accordingly, the rows of temples depicted in the lowest zone of the main wall in the Nako lha khang gong ma temple are not only decorative; they delineate and protect the space on the border zone with its text commanding the reader to approach the teaching—usually not found in Indian manuscript tradition in this position—can perhaps be regarded as the spatial equivalent of the ordering of space in a temple, which is a unique feature found only in Western Himalayan book illumination. The religious content of the space in which humans (lay and monastic personalities) and gods listen to the teaching of the Buddha, both in the temple—represented in the entrance hall or above the portal—and at the beginning of a sacred book, is to create a cohesion between the local population, the monastic community and the world of the "Enlightened One".

\textsuperscript{57} This space represents a border zone between the worldly and the sacred realm. In addition, the division of the (public) entrance hall and (sacred) main hall perhaps reflects specific cultic needs: while the first appears to be mainly a place where the devotee performs ritual offerings (which is still the case, as noted by Christian Jahoda, verbal communication, 2.2011), the latter is mainly dedicated to the liturgical ceremonies of the monastic community, and the devotee is not usually admitted while rituals are being performed. Buddha Śākyamuni flanked by devotees can also be considered in the Buddhist doctrinal system as a one of three Buddha manifestations, namely that of the fragile temporary body (nirmanakaya) of the Buddha, an aspect of the Buddha intended to instruct mankind. The iconological content of such scenes is clearly to propagate the teaching of the Buddha and to provide a place for the devotee at the "entrance" of the manuscript or to the temple in order that he or she might deepen contemplation and the meditation on the teaching.

\textsuperscript{58} The Alchi inscriptions in the ‘Great Stūpa’ describe that Tshul khrims ‘od donated as Symbols of Speech (gsung gi rten) fourteen volumes of the large version of the (most probably) \textit{Prajñāpāramitāsūtra} “on extremely precious paper, not caring about price and costs” (Goepper 1993: 114, 143). I am grateful to Christian Jahoda for directing my attention on this inscription.

\textsuperscript{59} For the sacredness of scripts see also Losty (1982); for the cult of the book Choppen (2005), describing how sacred scripts even had the status of "shrines"; cf. also Kim (2008). A related aspect of the cult of the book is practised at Nako where children walk under them, held aloft by women.

\textsuperscript{60} Books must have been positioned in central positions in temples or kept in separate structures. Specific architectonic types of single spaced structures may have been used for their storage in Western Tibet. As observed by Luczanits (2010), there is a tower in front of the Alchi ‘Du khang (recalling descriptions of sacred architecture in relevant texts popular at that time), flanking the entrance portal, which may have served for storage of books and perhaps also as sacred spaces for veneration. Towers were also used as temple forms as can be seen on one of the dhoris of sculptures in the Alchi Sumtsek, featuring a multi-storey tower topped by a funnel-shaped roof with a cult image (Tāra) in the uppermost part (Goepper 1996: 59). Of course old manuscripts are also to be found in stūpas, reflecting different forms of devotion.

\textsuperscript{On the Relation between Text, Image and Temple}

In the Tibetan cultural sphere holy scripts are representatives of the word of the Buddha (gsung rten). Thus great respect is shown in their use, they are treated like cult images. In early West Tibetan Buddhist culture in particular, sacred texts were essential elements and parts of the accoutrements of temples. An inscription in the “Great Stupa” at Alchi states that the temples there were built as manifestations of “body, speech and mind” of the Buddha; thus, the book, representing speech, is an integral part of the ensemble of a temple’s foundation and was perhaps commissioned in relation to the erection and decoration of the temples.\textsuperscript{58} These books may have been regarded like icons, as seen in a folio at Tabo (Fig. 48). Another 11\textsuperscript{th}–12\textsuperscript{th}-century illustration from Tabo features donors/devotees in veneration of a book (Fig. 49). It shows donors and the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata, who preaches the teaching of the “Perfection of Wisdom” which is represented as a book.\textsuperscript{59} Another example is a folio from the Pritzker collection, the last page of a manuscript, which perhaps illustrates the consecration of the book in the presence of the donors (Fig. 3).\textsuperscript{60}
As a characteristic feature of the early Buddhist tradition of this region and the specific culture of donorship of the local religio-political elite, strong interrelations between sacred texts and decorative programmes in temples existed at the early Buddhist period of temples in the region; exemplary of this is a group of folios at Tabo (running no. 5), which was identified by Allinger and Luczanits ("A Vajradhātu mandala in a Prajñāpāramitā manuscript of Tabo monastery", this volume, pp. 343–361) as a Dharmaśāktyāṣṭakatā samādharamaṇḍala. While the paintings appear to be independent of the text in the book, they represent an iconographic ensemble that can also be found in the Tabo gtsug lag khang, where the MS was found, as well as at Nako. Another example is folios from Tabo showing episodes of the Sadāprarudita story (ibid.: Figs. 8–11, pp. 345–346). The illustrations appear in the respective chapter of a manuscript (i.e. the last chapters of the Aṣṭasahasrikāprajñāpāramitāsūtra, namely the story of Sadāprarudita in the search of the Perfection of Wisdom) (Fig. 49). Not only is this close text-image relation unknown from the manuscript tradition in India, in addition the story is depicted in the Tabo ambulatory, as a narrative identified by Luczanits as the story of Sadāprarudita. The story is thus depicted in the space of the highest sacredness in the temple, representing the highest spiritual level represented by this last part of the Prajñāpāramitāsūtra, associated with the “Perfection of Wisdom” (cf. Luczanits 2010).

In particular, the Prajñāpāramitā teachings must have been very popular in Western Tibet and they were prominently represented in temples from earliest times around the mid-11th century. As already mentioned, they can be found on the walls of the ambulatory around the sanctum of the Tabo gtsug lag khang. A folio in the LACMA (11th century), from Tholing, features the veneration of Yum chen mo as a deity by donors, symmetrically arranged like donor images at the Nako Gongma temple (Figs. 19, 20). At Nako she is prominently depicted in sculptural form flanking the sanctum in the Lotsāba temple and at the centre of a maṇḍala in the Gongma temple.

Not only are the text and the goddess objects of veneration as books or icons but, as has been shown, also on a formal level—i.e. with regard to the arrangement of the illustrations in the Pooh YM—there are interactions and mutual influences with the decorative programme of temples.

With regard to the overall programme of the YM, the individual Buddhas most likely represent the spiritual programme of the 1000 Buddhas, which appears to be independent of the text on which it is written, while the theme is frequently depicted in the temples of this region. The theme of the 1000 Buddhas is comparable to the space surrounding the sanctum or shrine at Tabo or the stūpa at the Zhag cave as well the space outside the mandala in the early temples at Nako. Thus the first two pages featuring a Buddha assembly (with donors and protectors) and a second folio, with the beginning of the text illustrated with a discourse scene guarded by a protectress, leads from nīmāna kāya to the realm of the 1000 Buddhas, giving it a cosmological dimension. This spatial opposition is comparable to spatial hierarchy in a temple.

Clear mutual influences and interrelations between book illuminations and wall paintings can also be found at a stylistic level and with regard to workshop organisation. Perhaps the same groups of artists were often commissioned by aristocratic donors, as appears to be the case at Tholing (Gudrun Melzer, forthcoming). At Tholing a unique case of close similarities between folios collected by Tucci, now in the LACMA and wall paintings from ca. 11th century correspond, giving important insight into workshop processes and also providing actual evidence of the possibility of mutual exchanges between these genres. In motifs and style there are astonishing parallels between paintings in Nako and those of the Yum chen mo
manuscript, and further between Tabo and a single folio at Khorchag (Fig. 50). The latter represents a unique painterly style rather related to the medium of wall paintings rather than illuminations suggesting the artist was also responsible for wall paintings in temples.

To conclude, interrelations between manuscripts and temples are observable at various levels:

1. With regard to iconographic themes and spiritual programmes;
2. At the level of donor depictions, namely regarding their dominant presence on the first or last page in MS and in compositions in wall paintings;
3. At the level of sacred ordering of space in books and temples;
4. Perhaps also at the level of workshop organisation, although too few examples are known today to arrive at a final conclusion at this point.

The study of the relationship between text and image and in particular of the spatial arrangement of lay imagery in Western Himalayan manuscripts is at present in its infancy. This preliminary study shows that there are parallel characteristics both in book illumination and wall painting. Accordingly, it is also relevant as regards questions relating to the spiritual programmes and sacred ordering of space in temples as well as to problems of chronology in West Tibetan art. Both the spiritual anchoring of the miniatures in the book, as well as the anchoring of the book in the temple (Fig. 51) and its connectedness with other elements of the sacred space such as cult images and stūpas—perceived as manifestations of body speech and mind of the Buddha—are essential for the understanding of illuminated manuscripts and their ritual use in West Tibetan culture.

---

**Bibliography**


DI MATTIA, Marialaura. 2007. The divine palaces of the Buddha: Architectural frames in Western Himalayan art. In: Heller, Amy and Giacomella Orofino (eds) *Discoveries in Western Tibet and the


MELZER, Gudrun. Forthcoming. A manuscript from Tholing: identification of the iconographic programme of its illustrations.


Documentation

Cat. no. 1: Prajñāpāramitā (Yum chen mo) manuscript, wooden book cover (ca. 13th century), Pooh (all photography by C. Kalantari, 2009).
Cat. no. 2: *Prajñāpāramitā* (Yum chen mo) manuscript, folio 1 recto (no pagination).

Cat. no. 3: *Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā* (Shes rab kyi pha rol d tu phyin pa stong phrag brgya po) manuscript, folio 1 verso (no pagination): frontispiece featuring Māravijaya (left), an intervening panel with an invocation text and a Buddha assembly (right).
Cat. no. 4: Śatasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā (Shes rab kyi pha roid tu phyin pa stong phrag brgya pa) manuscript, folio 2 (Ka 2), recto: Cundī (left), two seated figures (a Buddha and a monk) in discussion (centre), a green Bodhisattva (right).

Cat. no. 5: folio 191 (Ka Na 91), recto: scene from the life of the Buddha featuring the “Gift of the monkey to the Buddha at Vaiśāli”.
Cat. no. 6: folio 193 (Ka Na 93), recto: scene from the life of the Buddha featuring the “First Bath of the Buddha”.

Cat. no. 7: folio 316 (Ka Nga 16), recto: Buddha.
Cat. no. 8: folio 2 (Ka 2) recto: Cundi; Cat. no. 9: folio 2 (Ka 2) recto: green Bodhisattva; Cat. no. 10: folio 191 (Ka Na 91), recto: scene from the Life of the Buddha featuring the “Gift of the monkey to the Buddha at Vaiśālī”.

Cat. no. 11: folio 193 (Ka Na 93), recto: scene from the Life of the Buddha featuring the “First Bath of the Buddha”; Cat. no. 12: folio 200 (Ka Na 100), recto: scene from the Life of the Buddha (preaching Buddha seated on an elaborate throne); Cat. no. 13: folio 200 (Ka Ma 20), recto: scene from the life of the Buddha (preaching Buddha seated on an elaborate throne).
Cat. nos. 14 - 19: folio 3 r. (Ka gnyis); folio 4 r. (Ka 4); folio 5 r. (Ka 5); folio 6 r. (Ka 6); folio 7 r. (Ka 7); folio 8 r. (Ka 8).
Cat. nos. 20 - 25: folio 9 r. (Ka 9); folio 10 r. (Ka 10); folio 11 r. (Ka 11); folio 12 r. (Ka 12); folio 13 r. (Ka13); folio 14 r. (Ka 14).
Cat. nos. 26 - 31: folio 15 r. (Ka 15); folio 16 r. (Ka 16); folio 17 r. (Ka 17); folio 18 r. (Ka 18); folio 19 r. (Ka 19); folio 20 r. (Ka 20).
Cat. nos. 32 - 37: folio 21 r. (Ka 21); folio 22 r. (Ka 22); folio 23 r. (Ka 23); folio 24 r. (Ka 24); folio 25 r. (Ka 25); folio 26 r. (Ka 26).
Cat. nos. 38-43: folio 27 r. (Ka 27); folio 28 r. (Ka 28); folio 29 r. (Ka 29); folio 30 r. (Ka 30); folio 31 r. (Ka 31); folio 32 (Ka32).
Cat. nos. 44-49: folio 33 r. (Ka 33); folio 34 r. (Ka 34); folio 35 r. (Ka 35); folio 36 r. (Ka 36); folio 37 r. (Ka 37); folio 38 (Ka 38).
Cat. nos. 50-55: folio 39 r. (Ka 39); folio 40 r. (Ka 40); folio 41 r. (Ka 41); folio 42 r. (Ka 42); folio 43 r. (Ka 43); folio 44 (Ka 44).
Cat. nos. 56–61: folio 45 r. (Ka 45); folio 46 r. (Ka 46); folio 47 r. (Ka 47); folio 48 r. (Ka 48); folio 49 r. (Ka 49); folio 50 (Ka 50).
Cat. nos. 62-67: folio 51 r. (Ka 51); folio 52 r. (Ka 52); folio 53 r. (Ka 53); folio 54 r. (Ka 54); folio 55 r. (Ka 55); folio 56/57 r. (Ka 56/57).
Cat. nos. 68-73: folio 58 r. (Ka 58); folio 59 r. (Ka 59); folio 60 r. (Ka 60); folio 61 r. (Ka 61); folio 62 (Ka 62); folio 63 (Ka 63).
Cat. nos. 74-79: folio 64 r. (Ka 64); folio 65 r. (Ka 65); folio 66 r. (Ka 66); folio 67 r. (Ka 67); folio 68 (Ka 68); folio 69 (Ka 69).
Cat. nos. 80-85: folio 70 r. (Ka 70); folio 71 r. (Ka 71); folio 72 r. (Ka 72); folio 73 r. (Ka 73); folio 74 (Ka 74); folio 75 (Ka 75).
Cat. nos. 86-91: folio 76 r. (Ka 76); folio 77 r. (Ka 77); folio 78 r. (Ka 78); folio 79 r. (Ka 79); folio 80 r. (Ka 80); folio 81 r. (Ka 81).
Cat. nos. 92-97: folio 82 r. (Ka 82); folio 83 r. (Ka 83); folio 84 r. (Ka 84); folio 85 r. (Ka 85); folio 86 r. (Ka 86); folio 87 r. (Ka 87).
Cat. nos. 98-103: folio 88 r. (Ka 88); folio 89 r. (Ka 89); folio 90 r. (Ka 90); folio 91 r. (Ka 91); folio 92 r. (Ka 92); folio 93 r. (Ka 93).
Cat. nos. 104-109: folio 94 r. (Ka 94); folio 95 r. (Ka 95); folio 96 r. (Ka 96); folio 97 r. (Ka 97); folio 98 r. (Ka 98); folio 99 r. (Ka 99).
Cat. nos. 110-115: folio 100 r. (Ka 100); folio 101 r. (Ka Na 1); folio 102 r. (Ka Na 2); folio 103 r. (Ka Na 3); folio 104 r. (Ka Na 4); folio 105 r. (Ka Na 5).
Cat. nos. 116-121: folio 105 r. (Ka Na 6); folio 107 r. (Ka Na 7); folio 108 r. (Ka Na 8); folio 109 (Ka Na 9); folio 110 r. (Ka Na 10); folio 111 r. (Ka Na 11).
Cat. nos. 122-127: folio 112 r. (Ka Na 12); folio 113 r. (Ka Na 13); folio 114 r. (Ka Na 14); folio 115 r. (Ka Na 15); folio 116 r. (Ka Na 16); folio 117 r. (Ka Na 17).
Cat. nos. 128-133: folio 118 r. (Ka Na 18); folio 119 r. (Ka Na 19); folio 120 r. (Ka Na 20); folio 121 r. (Ka Na 21); folio 122 r. (Ka Na 22); folio 123 r. (Ka Na 23).
Cat. nos. 134: folio 124 r. (Ka Na 24); folio 125 r. (Ka Na 25); folio 126 r. (Ka Na 26); folio 127 (Ka Na 27); folio 128 r. (Ka Na28); folio 129 r. (Ka Na 29) .
Cat. nos. 140: folio 130 r. (Ka Na 30); folio 131 r. (Ka Na 31); folio 132 r. (Ka Na 32); folio 133 (Ka Na 33); folio 134 r. (Ka Na 34); folio 135 r. (Ka Na 35).
Cat. nos. 146: folio 136 r. (Ka Na 36); folio 137 r. (Ka Na 37); folio 138 r. (Ka Na 38); folio 139 (Ka Na 39); folio 140 r. (Ka Na 40); folio 141 r. (Ka Na 41).
Cat. nos. 152: folio 142 r. (Ka Na 42); folio 143 r. (Ka Na 43); folio 144 r. (Ka Na 44); folio 145 (Ka Na 45); folio 146 r. (Ka Na 46); folio 147 r. (Ka Na 47).
Cat. nos. 158-163: folio 148 r. (Ka Na 48); folio 149 r. (Ka Na 49); folio 150 r. (Ka Na 50); folio 151 r. (Ka Na 51); folio 152 r. (Ka Na 52); folio 153 r. (Ka Na 53).
Cat. nos. 164-169: folio 154 r. (Ka Na 54); folio 155 r. (Ka Na 55); folio 156 r. (Ka Na 56); folio 157 r. (Ka Na 57); folio 158 r. (Ka Na 58); folio 159 r. (Ka Na 59).
Cat. nos. 170-175: folio 160 r. (Ka Na 60); folio 161 r. (Ka Na 61); folio 162 r. (Ka Na 62); folio 163 r. (Ka Na 63); folio 164 r. (Ka Na 64); folio 165 r. (Ka Na 65).
Cat. nos. 176-181: folio 166 r. (Ka Na 66); folio 167 r. (Ka Na 67); folio 168 r. (Ka Na 68); folio 169 r. (Ka Na 69); folio 170 r. (Ka Na 70); folio 171 r. (Ka Na 71).
Cat. nos. 182–187: folio 172 r. (Ka Na 72); folio 173 r. (Ka Na 73); folio 174 r. (Ka Na 74); folio 175 r. (Ka Na 75); folio 176 r. (Ka Na 76); folio 177 r. (Ka Na 77).
Cat. nos. 188–193: folio 178 r. (Ka Na 78); folio 179 r. (Ka Na 79); folio 180 r. (Ka Na 80); folio 181 r. (Ka Na 81); folio 182 r. (Ka Na 82); folio 183 r. (Ka Na 83).
Cat. nos. 194–199: folio 184 r. (Ka Na 84); folio 185 r. (Ka Na 85); folio 186 r. (Ka Na 86); folio 187 r. (Ka Na 87); folio 188 r. (Ka Na 88); folio 189 r. (Ka Na 89).
Cat. nos. 200–205: folio 190 r. (Ka Na 90); folio 191 r. (Ka Na 91); folio 192 r. (Ka Na 92); folio 193 r. (Ka Na 93); folio 194 r. (Ka Na 94); folio 195 r. (Ka Na 95).
Cat. nos. 206 -211: folio 196 r. (Ka Na 96); folio 197 r. (Ka Na 97); folio 198 r. (Ka Na 98); folio 199 r. (Ka Na 99); folio 200 r. (Ka Na 100); folio 201 r. (Ka Ma 1).
Cat. nos. 212-217: folio 202 r. (Ka Ma 2); folio 203 r. (Ka Ma 3); folio 204 r. (Ka Ma 4); folio 205 r. (Ka Ma 5); folio 206 r. (Ka Ma 6); folio 207 r. (Ka Ma 7).
Cat. nos. 218-223: folio 208 r. (Ka Ma 8); folio 209 r. (Ka Ma 9); folio 210 r. (Ka Ma 10); folio 211 r. (Ka Ma 11); folio 212 r. (Ka Ma 12); folio 213 r. (Ka Ma 13).
Cat. nos. 224-229: folio 214 r. (Ka Ma 14); folio 215 r. (Ka Ma 15); folio 216 r. (Ka Ma 16); folio 217 r. (Ka Ma 17); folio 218 r. (Ka Ma 18); folio 219 r. (Ka Ma 19).
Cat. nos. 230-235: folio 220 r. (Ka Ma 20); folio 221 r. (Ka Ma 21); folio 222 r. (Ka Ma 22); folio 223 r. (Ka Ma 23); folio 224 r. (Ka Ma 24); folio 225 r. (Ka Ma 25).
Cat. nos. 236-241: folio 226 r. (Ka Ma 26); folio 227 r. (Ka Ma 27); folio 228 r. (Ka Ma 28); folio 229 r. (Ka Ma 29); folio 230 r. (Ka Ma 30); folio 231 r. (Ka Ma 31).
Cat. nos. 242-247: folio 232 r. (Ka Ma 32); folio 233 r. (Ka Ma 33); folio 234 r. (Ka Ma 34); folio 235 r. (Ka Ma 35); folio 236 r. (Ka Ma 36); folio 237 r. (Ka Ma 37).
Cat. nos. 248-253: folio 238 r. (Ka Ma 38); folio 239 r. (Ka Ma 39); folio 240 r. (Ka Ma 40); folio 241 r. (Ka Ma 41); folio 242 r. (Ka Ma 42); folio 243 r. (Ka Ma 43).
Cat. nos. 254-259: folio 244 r. (Ka Ma 44); folio 245 r. (Ka Ma 45); folio 246 r. (Ka Ma 46); folio 247 r. (Ka Ma 47); folio 248 r. (Ka Ma 48); folio 249 r. (Ka Ma 49).
Cat. nos. 260-265: folio 250 r. (Ka Ma 50); folio 251 r. (Ka Ma 51); folio 252 r. (Ka Ma 52); folio 253 r. (Ka Ma 53); folio 254 r. (Ka Ma 54); folio 255 r. (Ka Ma 55).
Cat. nos. 266-271: folio 256 r. (Ka Ma 56); folio 257 r. (Ka Ma 57); folio 258 r. (Ka Ma 58); folio 259 r. (Ka Ma 59); folio 260 r. (Ka Ma 60); folio 261 r. (Ka Ma 61).
Cat. nos. 272-277: folio 262 r. (Ka Ma 62); folio 263 r. (Ka Ma 63); folio 264 r. (Ka Ma 64); folio 265 r. (Ka Ma 65); folio 266 r. (Ka Ma 66); folio 267 r. (Ka Ma 67).
Cat. nos. 302-307: folio 292 r. (Ka Ma 92); folio 293 r. (Ka Ma 93); folio 294 r. (Ka Ma 94); folio 295 r. (Ka Ma 95); folio 296 r. (Ka Ma 96); folio 297 r. (Ka Ma 97).
Cat. nos. 308-313: folio 298 r. (Ka Ma 98); folio 299 r. (Ka Ma 99); folio 300 r. (Ka Ma 100); folio 301 r. (Ka Nga 1); folio 302 r. (Ka Nga 2); folio 303 r. (Ka Nga 3).
Cat. nos. 314-319: folio 304 r. (Ka Nga 4); folio 305 r. (Ka Nga 5); folio 306 r. (Ka Nga 6); folio 307 r. (Ka Nga 7); folio 308 r. (Ka Nga 8); folio 309 r. (Ka Nga 9).
Cat. nos. 320-325: folio 310 r. (Ka Nga 10); folio 311 r. (Ka Nga 11); folio 312 r. (Ka Nga 12); folio 313 r. (Ka Nga 13); folio 314 r. (Ka Nga 14); folio 315 r. (Ka Nga 15).
Cat. nos. 326-331: folio 316 r. (Ka Nga 16); folio 317 r. (Ka Nga 17); folio 318 r. (Ka Nga 18); folio 319 r. (Ka Nga 19); folio 320 r. (Ka Nga 20); folio 321 r. (Ka Nga 21).
Cat. nos. 332-337: folio 322 r. (Ka Nga 22); folio 323 r. (Ka Nga 23); folio 324 r. (Ka Nga 24); folio 325 r. (Ka Nga 25); folio 326 r. (Ka Nga 26); folio 327 r. (Ka Nga 27).
A remarkable number of Buddhist temples, monasteries, cave sanctuaries and stupas were founded in the political domain of the kings of Purang and Guge in Western Tibet (mNga’ ris) from the 10th century onwards. A specific type of sacred space that seems to have assumed a special role in this area is that of cave sanctuaries. The task of this paper is to present new aspects of the religio-artistic context of the cave sanctuary of Zhag in Be (‘Bye) valley, Tsamda (rTsa mda’) County, Western Tibet (Ngari [mNga’ ris] Prefecture of the Tibet Autonomous Region). The cave lies about 8 km north of Dungkar (Dung dkar, etc.) and ca. 30 km north of the Sutlej river (Glang chen gtsang po)—in an area which was once part of Guge Byang ngos—and of Tholing monastery, the former religious centre of the old Guge kingdom.

The cave is at the northern head of the Be valley (in Tibetan ‘bye means “open”)—see Figs. 1-4. In the centre of this valley are ruins of a historic temple called Be lha khang, suggesting that a major religious centre may have existed in this region in former times. The relatively large number of caves (mainly in the south of the valley, mostly unpainted) also support this assumption. To the north-east of this temple (or monastery)—5 km away, across a plain—is the

---

1 This paper is a result of a documentation of West Tibetan cave temples carried out by the late Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po since the 1990s. A first discussion of specific aspects of the programme and function of the Zhag cave temple was presented by Tsering Gyalpo on the occasion of the 12th seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies (IATS), Vancouver 2010. Further analysis was carried out in collaboration with Christiane Kalantari and Christian Jahoda within the scope of the research projects P21806-G19 “Society, Power and Religion in Pre-Modern Western Tibet: Interaction, conflict and integration” and P20637-G15 “Oral and Festival Traditions”, both directed by Christian Jahoda, at the Institute for Social Anthropology (ISA), Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna. The projects were financed by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF).

Valuable suggestions and critical remarks during various stages of the preparation of this paper are by Eva Allinger and Gudrun Melzer as well as by Kurt Tropper (with regard to the inscription).
In general Ngari Prefecture is strewn with cave sanctuaries, of various sizes and quality of interior decoration, cut into the steep cliffs. Some of the caves have extensive internal decorations consisting of murals on the walls and ceilings—often combined with clay sculptures. Despite their historical significance, many of the caves in Tsamda County are still hardly known in the West. The earliest known (and one of the largest) examples of this type of religious space with an internal programme of the founding phase almost intact is the Nyag cave temple in Khartse valley, which is renowned as the ancestral village of the family of the Great Translator (lo chen) Rin chen bzang po (958–1055). Other grottoes are already well-known for their visual and religious complexity and the artistic virtuosity of their decorative programmes; for example, the three cave temples of Dungkar—situated in another nearby valley—which may have been founded by local aristocratic rulers. In particular the Dungkar paintings represent a high point of artistic and technical achievement in Western Tibet as already remarked by Giuseppe Tucci (1937: 174–75). The paintings in the Zhag cave temple in Be valley are closely related to this distinctive artistic tradition within early Western Himalayan art of the second half of the 12th century.

Among the first surveys of the Western Tibetan cave temples are expedition reports by Giuseppe Tucci (1988a [1935], 1988b [1936], 1937). Thomas Pritzker (1996) provided an introduction to various sites of Buddhist cave sanctuaries in this region accompanied by excellent photographic documentation. He also published narrative wall paintings in the Zhag cave, but without identifying them, while Helmut Neumann (2002) focused on an image of a samsāracakra (srid pa'i 'khor lo, “Wheel of Rebirths”) on the opposite side of the narrative in the entrance hall of the Zhag cave. The task of this paper is a preliminary survey of the overall composition, the identification of the narrative and its artistic and iconographic context and in particular the attempt to identify a specific class of “heroic” protector deities and its iconographic content. The second part of this short essay looks at the possible religious-cultic function of this type of sacred space and its ritual use at present. A comparative study of the layouts, interior programmes and related ritual actions aims at

---

2. Be (’Bye) valley, Tsamda County, Western Tibet (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).
3.–4. View of caves, Be valley (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).

---

2 The name for the cave used by Neumann (2002: 75, passim) is Pedongpo (Pad [ma'i] sdong po, “the stalk of the lotus”), who dates the paintings in the cave to the end of the 11th or to the first half of the 12th century (ibid.: 82–83), while in Pritzker (1996: 26, passim) it is called Dumbu (perhaps a rendering of the Tibetan sDong po).

3 The first scholarly publications on Khartse valley were by David Pritzker (2000) and Thomas J. Pritzker (2008). A study by Tshe ring rgyal po and Christiane Kalantari in collaboration with Christian Jahoda (2009) provides a preliminary survey of the different caves and monuments of that site. The as yet little-studied cave’s wall paintings feature unique stylistic trends and iconographic themes dating from ca. the mid-11th century, with a strong relation to Indic traditions with regard to style and iconography. A more comprehensive study of the sacred landscape of Khartse valley and its historic context is in preparation.

4 Luczanits proposes a 12th-century dating based on stylistic (2004: 116–118) as well as on iconographic basis (ibid.: 223).
classifying different concepts and methods of creating hierarchies and of stratifying sacred space, providing a potential insight into how these spaces were conceived.

**General Description and Remarks on the State of Preservation**

The topographic position of the Zhag cave is remarkable. Carved into the east-facing hills of the valley, it is situated at an altitude of ca. 3,870 m. The entrance door, which can be reached via a pathway, faces south and opens into a vaulted corridor (Fig. 5). The latter functions as an entrance hall (*sgo khang*) featuring a distinctive iconographic ensemble. The central space or main hall of this comparably small sanctuary is roughly square, with the east-west walls and the north-south walls about 3.4 metres long with a ceiling around 6 metres high. It has a simple earth floor, at the centre of which are the remains of a *stūpa*. The walls of the central space, the ceilings and the side walls of the corridor are adorned with (original) paintings from the early phase of Buddhism in Western Tibet.

The iconographic programme of the main hall features paintings of the popular religious theme of the Thousand Buddhas (*sangs rgyas stong sku*) of the Bhadrakalpa (present auspicious age or Fortunate Aeon that has one thousand Buddhas), which completely cover the four walls and surround the *stūpa* at the centre of the temple (Fig. 6). The lowest areas of the four walls are decorated with a frieze of lotus vine ornament or undulating rhizomes growing out of a central lotus stem, thus binding the overall compositions together. The lower sections of the corners of the slightly sloping walls of this space are filled with characteristic standing or walking Buddhas—which are also characteristic distinctive features at Dungkar—vertically connected by lotus pediments.

The murals are executed using costly, luminous pigments and minerals (Fig. 7). The figures in the main hall are painted on a bright, sky-blue background typical of the mural style of the 11th to 13th centuries. The colour scheme appears further dominated by red, white and black. While the paintings in the main hall are applied in thick layers the images in the entrance hall have more sober colours and motifs that are partly incomplete, leaving the reddish outlines and lines (perhaps drawn with a string) separating individual pictorial sections visible. It is probable that most elements of the composition were similarly delineated. On other sections the upper layer of paint has obviously been lost. Unfortunately, the lower parts of the walls have suffered from colour fade or paint loss.

**Vestibule**

The paintings in the southern part of the cave, i.e. the vestibule or entrance corridor (*sgo khyams*), can typologically be compared with those in the entrance hall (*sgo khang*) of Western Himalayan temples, an important example being the *sgo khang* in the Tabo *gtsug lag khang* (ca. 1000). They feature on each side iconographic sets organised in a vertical hierarchy; the themes are arranged in mirror-like symmetry to each other. Related to the worldly realm is a *jātaka*, depicted on the lower right (east) side, while an image of a *samsāracakra* (*srid pa’i ’khor lo*, Wheel of Rebirths) is shown on the

---

5. Zhag cave: view into the vaulted corridor (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).
6. Main hall: central *stūpa* (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).
7. Detail, Buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).
lower left (west) side (Fig. 8, Fig. 10). When entering the sacred site the practitioner first contemplates these didactic themes designed to lead him to the teaching of the Buddha and to escape the cycle of rebirths. Directly above the upper section of the saṃsāracakra are the donors, accompanied by inscriptions, while different classes of protectors who guard the threshold to the temple are shown on the uppermost level of both sides, in the transition zone between wall paintings and ceiling decorations representing textiles.

The saṃsāracakra represents one of the core concepts of Buddhist thought taught by the Buddha. The example at Zhag features six realms into which humans can be reborn, placed in sections of a wheel: the world of gods is placed in the uppermost, central, and thus most prestigious position. To the right is the world of asuras and to the left the world of human beings. The latter are all clad in West Tibetan robes of the local aristocratic elite. Some figures in this realm are shown performing various activities, some are in fighting poses armed with shields and swords typical of the region. In the bottom zone are lower, unfavourable realms into which a human can be reborn (see Neumann 2002 for a detailed description).

The position of the saṃsāracakra in the corridor conforms to the prescription in the Mūlasarvāstivāda Vinaya given by the Buddha. It can be compared with the representation of the same theme in the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang executed at the beginning of the 11th century (see also Kalantari, “Hārīti and Pāñcika at Tabo”, this volume, pp. 303–304).

Above the saṃsāracakra is a depiction of donors engaged in a ritual, plus an inscription placed in a separate red text cartouche, which will be discussed in detail below (Fig. 8, Fig. 14). Directly to the left of the donors is a deity whose upper body is fused with a lotus pedestal and who holds a vase, who can be identified as the Earth Goddess (sa'i lha mo) Bhūdevī (Gudrun Melzer, verbal communication, February 2012) as discussed later. On top of this frieze are images of local protectors. In the uppermost section, between ornamental strips simulating lengths of textiles and a row of hybrid creatures and a male rider, is a triangular blue space in which fragments of a larger deity are visible. The figure is grey with black outlines, corpulent, seated on a human corpse in lalitāsana, with the left leg hanging, holding a curved knife in his raised right hand. His
head is adorned with a diadem of skulls. The sum of characteristics suggests an attribution as a two-armed Mahākāla with the attributes of the knife and skull bowl. The apotropaic function and position of Mahākāla as well as local protectors is usually above the portal, which in the vaulted entrance hall of the Zhag cave temple corresponds to the uppermost zone of its figure depictions.

The figure below Mahākāla appears to be a significant element of the religious-political landscape in the Western Himalayas but it is still little discussed and understood (Fig. 11). The depiction features a male divinity riding on a ram, accompanied by remarkable images of hybrid creatures with fearsome weapons, i.e. humans with heads of elephants, bears (?), a gazelle or antelope and perhaps a goat, in fighting poses, all adorned with red ribbons (Fig. 12). The mythic creatures are whirling shields and swords as if performing a martial dance. An identical group of four mythical animals and a ram-rider can also be found in two temples in Dungkar (Fig. 13), thus most likely representing an iconographic set. The mounted figure/ram-rider in the Zhag cave appears to be the leader of this group. He is attired in the lavish garb of a local nobleman, wearing a precious robe and characteristic overlong-sleeves (under which a whip is visible). He is further adorned with a broad-brimmed hat and a hairdo consisting of two long braids studded with turquoises hanging down in front, while the proper hairdo consists of half-length hair. The weapons are precisely executed: a tiger-skin quiver and a bow are placed on either sides, suggesting the figure is a hunter and/or warrior. In his hand he holds reins that end in a small weapon, a vajra (rdo rje), clearly identifying him as a protector deity.

A comparable configuration of Mahākāla and a local mounted god can be found nearby at Dungkar (Fig. 13). This type of mounted male protector appears to have become popular from the 12th century onwards with the rise of Mahākāla. The assumption that Mahākāla and mounted warriors may represent an iconographic whole is even more evident in an image of a male divinity on horseback accompanied by a shield-bearer, depicted as an attendant of Mahākāla, in the Alchi ‘Du khang (Ladakh); (Fig. 33, cf. Papa-Kalantari 2010). He is positioned in the right corner and is depicted as an armed horseman in the garb of a local prince or aristocratic ruler, holding a lance (mdung) and accompanied by a shield-bearer below. Both at Alchi and Zhag one or a group of birds are depicted as followers of Mahākāla—holding the typical hooked knife in his raised right arm and trampling on a prone corpse—is depicted in a setting of a cremation ground with different attendants, animals and female spirits (cf. Papa-Kalantari 2010).

6 Animal-headed beings (birds and dogs) are in the retinue of a Mahākāla from Central Tibet (now in the Rubin Museum, New York) from the 13th century (Linrothe 2004: 53).
7 Above the portal of this cave there is also Remati, a local female protectress with her retinue. She can also be associated with the rise of Mahākāla in Western Tibet, perhaps integrating older indigenous spirits.

8 According to Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1975: 11, Pe har wears a broad-brimmed hat called a sog zhu, perhaps related to a black silk hat worn by the divinities of the rgyal po class.
9 Further examples of male protectors on horseback are depicted in the Alchi Sumtsek, as well as in the little-studied small sanctuary of Saspotse in Ladakh (above the portal). We wish to thank Gudrun Melzer who made us aware of this relation at Alchi.
10 There Mahākāla—holding the typical hooked knife in his raised right arm and trampling on a prone corpse—is depicted in a setting of a cremation ground with different attendants, animals and female spirits (cf. Papa-Kalantari 2010).
nearby (in addition a dog or jackal at Zhag) perhaps alluding to the burial ground associated with Mahākāla. The historical context of the appearance of this class of protectors is likely a socio-political situation marked by the importance of martial guardian deities. As an innovative notion in this period they appear to reflect the warrior-like ethos of the ruling elite, which is also a dominant feature in donor representations and in relevant texts. Their iconographic function may be as protectors of trade routes and as defenders of the border regions of the political domain. Their cult is perhaps reflected in contemporary religious performances up to the present day (cf. Appendix).

The temple’s founders are depicted in the register below in close relation to the local territorial gods (Fig. 15). Of historical significance is of course the inscription on the same wall set in a text cartouche. This is placed near the saṃsāracakra, but it is related to the donor images on the same wall (Fig. 14). The text states:

In the presence of the teacher (slob dpon, dkar’ya) Dran pa rgyal mtshan were painted by me [the painter] in this magnificent immeasurable gtsug lag khang of the hermitage in the glorious sacred place of Zhag 940 Buddhas instead of the prescribed immeasurable one thousand Buddhas of the Fortunate Aeon (Bhadrakalpa).

[?] 60 were not effected.

(Translation: Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, Christian Jahoda)

14. Text cartouche with historical inscription placed near the donor depiction, entrance corridor (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).

15. Zhag cave, entrance corridor: wall painting of the temple’s founders (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).

11 According to Neumann (2002: 81–82), in the inscription “the artist calls it [the cave]: a gtsug lag khang for the 1000 Buddhas of the Fortunate Era”.

12 Editorial signs: @ = yig mgo; _ = uncertain reading.

13 Or rtsi? kyi?

14 Read rgu for dgu; or rgya?

15 Or cha?

16 Another strategy for the construction of legitimation, charisma and continuity appears to be the embedding of the royal elite into a Buddhist cosmogonic vision. The combination of donors and cosmological imagery is also present.

The donor group is headed by a male figure in local long-sleeved coat combined with a monk’s robe holding a mālā in his hand. Due
to its close proximity to the local protectors, the image appears to commemorate perhaps not only the consecration of the temple—making sacred space effective as manifestations of divinities—but may also be related to rituals in which the deities are “invited” (cf. Jahoda 2011: 29) to the temple and which serve to secure the benevolence and protection of the temple and the territory, as is still tradition for example at Khochag monastery today.17

The earth goddess depicted to the left of the donor, and a group of snake gods symmetrically arranged on the opposite side are significant for the interpretation of the scene. As described in the Kriyāsaṃgraha,18 a compendium of ritual texts from the 12th century (however the rituals may draw upon much earlier tradition), nāgas and earth gods are appeased in a ritual before generating the maṇḍala ground:

“The teacher executes the three concentrations (samādhiḥṛtayā) at the centre of the purified ground, and offers a mentally produced act of worship (manomayāyūjā) to the resident gods (deva), the protectors of the cardinal directions (dikpāla), the nāgas, the earth goddess Vasudhā, and the Buddha and Bodhisattvas. He presents them with the water for the face and other items of worship, [...] and transforms the ground into emptiness. Then [...] he envisages it as having the nature of vajra-particles [...]. After that, he envisages and summons the knowledge Prthivi holding a golden vase (kālaśa), offers her worship, makes request to build a vihāra, and then envisages her dissolving into the ground.” (Skorupski 2003: 60).

The position of the earth goddess close to the portal, the transition zone between the outside (profane, or earth) and inside of the sacred space is also significant.

The nāgas are represented on the same level on the opposite side (Fig. 16). These are also depicted prominently in the Nyag cave temple at Khartse (cf. Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari 2009: fig. 18) featuring eight snake spirits above the portal. In addition, the earth goddess occupies a prominent position in both temples: at Khartse she is placed above a group of dikpālas depicted in the lowest level, on the right of the portal and near to the large assembly scene on the side-wall. This position in the transition zone between the mundane and sacred world may allude to her function as guardian of the bodhimanda (the place of enlightenment of the Buddha) and the throne on which the whole temple rests.

The following request is recited during the ritual of propitiation of the earth goddess: “O goddess, surrender to the superior paths of practice and conduct (caryānaya), the spiritual stages (bhūmi)
Tsering Gyalpo and Christiane Kalantari

414

and the perfections (pāramitā) of all the protecting Buddhas. Just as the protector Śākyasimha has overcome the host of Māra, so will I destroy the host of demons and construct a vihāra and other buildings.” (Skorupski 2002: 29).

At Zhag, each of the nāgas is seated on a lotus pedestal, shown in vivid movements alluding to water as their dwelling place and holding a branch of leaves representing lotus rhizomes.19 Their realm is the lakes and thus their function is close to that of the earth goddess. The ritual in the Kriyāsaṃgraha describes the pacification of the nāgas before the construction of the temple also mentioned in the Nātyaśāstra. Cf. also Sørensen and Hazod (2005: 58) for a text (Khra 'brug gnas bshad) on the rituals of pacification of the klu before the foundation of Khra 'brug, Tibet's first Buddhist temple. The prominent position of the eight klu recalls a space in this temple called klu khang, close to the mGon po lha khang (see Sørensen and Hazod 2005: plan by Reinhard Herdick on p. 327).

Vases flanked by nāgas in the bottom zone as the source of the maṇḍala at Sunda may allude to the same theme and related rituals (cf. Luczanits 2004: figs. 276 and 276 for this theme at Nako).

19 These spirits of Indian mythology are similar to the Tibetan klu, which “dwell primarily in different types of water, springs, rivers, lakes and wells [...]. They guard the palaces and treasures of deities, control the weather…” (Kélenyi 2003: 13).

20 These spirits of Indian mythology are similar to the Tibetan klu, which “dwell primarily in different types of water, springs, rivers, lakes and wells [...]. They guard the palaces and treasures of deities, control the weather…” (Kélenyi 2003: 13).

21 The description of the six-armed form can be found in the Sādhanamālā (Bhattacharyya 1987: 141).

The iconographic ensemble in the entrance hall/corridor featuring donor images engaged in rituals combined with the Wheel of Rebirths and protectors can also be found in the sgo khang of the Tabo gtsug lag khang. This thematic set is in line with the Vinaya, prescribing the decoration of the entrance hall of a vihāra-type temple (see Kalantari, “Hārītī and Pāñcika at Tabo”, this volume, pp. 303ff.). In the text the Buddha himself is alleged to have ordered that the saṃsāracakra should be painted in the vestibule of every monastery so that the devotee can be reminded of all possible forms of existence (cf. ibid.). As is also the case at Tabo, in the entrance hall donors are shown in rituals of consecration as well as in specific forms of worship, while Indic and local protectors depicted above guard the transition zone from the entrance hall to the sacred space of the assembly hall and shrine.

The corridor’s right (north) wall is dominated by a narrative composition, namely a jātaka (Fig. 17). While narratives at Tabo are depicted in a processional direction along the lowest zones in the 'du khang and ambulatory (skor lam), here they are shown in a vertical panel in the entrance hall. As already mentioned, eight seated nāgas (klu) are depicted above in two registers, representing the subterranean snake spirits converted as “lower” protectors of the Buddha and the temple.20 In a segment above a dancing spirit is shown holding a garland as an offering. Stripes with textile patterns are depicted in the curved ceiling above.

The jātaka composition in the lower section of this wall has not yet been accounted for, nor has the narrative been identified as yet. The painting features Avalokiteśvara in the upper left corner presiding over a composition of narrative scenes (Fig. 18). Avalokiteśvara is depicted as a white seated figure in lalitāsana (royal ease) on a lotus throne framed by a halo emitting light.21 He has six arms and the image of a Buddha Amitābha is depicted in his hair-knot. Two of the six hands are in varada and abhaya poses (combined with a jewel), holding a lotus, a water-pot, a staff with three horns (tridaṇḍa; in the upper hand) and a rosary (hardly visible), identifying him as Sugatisandarśana Lokeśvara. This iconographic type was very popular and is also found at Dungkar,
where Avalokiteśvara is in a mandala on the entrance wall (cf. also Pritzker 1996: fig. 16). Two standing local males adorned with large circular hats and a kneeling figure, a devotee, which appears to be being blessed by Avalokiteśvara, are at his side (with a text cartouche to their right) and at his feet (Fig. 18). Unfortunately the text is only fragmentary. In general, the depiction of popular tutelary deities in close proximity to images of donors—securing their personal salvation and protection—is a constant feature in the art of this region. However, their integration in a narrative is a new element. The combination with a jātaka perhaps emphasises the aspect of Sugatisandarśana Lokeśvara as the one who shows the various favourable ways of life which lead to liberation, as suggested by Melzer (personal communication, May 2013), based on the name signifying “the one who shows the favourable/good forms of existence.”

The jātaka can be identified as the popular jātaka of the starving tigress, the Vyāghri- or Mahāsattvajātaka—the story of self-sacrifice in previous births of the Buddha as described in the Suvarṇaprabhāsasūtra (Fig. 19).

The famous jātaka of the starving tigress is also depicted at Alchi (on the dhoti of Maitreya in the Sumtsek) and at Mangyu (Linrothe 2010: 125ff. and Linrothe 2011). There the narrative is represented on the loincloth of a monumental bodhisattva image in clay. While at Alchi and Mangyu a restricted number of isolated key scenes are arranged in an ornamental grid of lozenges adapted from textile surface patterns, in the narrative at Zhag various scenes are placed in a unified setting that covers a vertical panel of the side wall in the entrance hall. Exemplary of the popularity and importance of Buddhist (educative, moral/edifying) stories in early Western Himalayan Buddhist art are images in the Tabo dū khang (assembly hall) and ambulatory (ca. mid 11th century), featuring wall paintings of complete narrative cycles. Those in the assembly hall are complemented with cartouches containing texts. These inscriptions are designed and arranged to represent the whole story—“the sutra itself” (Steinkellner 1999: 250)—and do not just represent excerpts from the texts or aids for oral presentations (ibid.: 249f.). With regard to the compositional type of imagery, the Sudhana frieze at Tabo, for example, features a continuous chronological narrative arranged in a horizontal band in the lowest section of the east, south and west walls, with the main character being shown in various successive phases of the action. The individual scenes are often expressed in depictions of buildings, where the encounters of the hero—Sudhana—and his teachers or kalyāṇamitra take place. The story runs from the entrance wall to the sanctum, so the devotee can follow the progress of the story in a chronological way when circumambulating the main hall. Thus this mode also reflects the ritual use of the temple and the direction of the ambulation. The ensemble of different narratives in the temple complements the spiritual progress represented in the overall iconographic programme in the different parts of the temple.

In the Zhag cave the tigress story mainly follows the popular Suvarṇaprabhāsasūtra but in contrast to Tabo the story (representing a different legend, the story of Sudhana) does not

---

22 Cf. also Kashmir-style bronzes in US collections and in Srinagar (Pal 1975: figs. 50–52).
23 Avalokiteśvara is not only a saviour from hardship and bestower of peace but also regarded as guide of souls to the halls of paradise, thus watching over human destiny. Precious silk banners with his image were frequently donated to temples at Dunhuang to worship Avalokiteśvara with the aim of ensuring his benevolence and his assistance in the desire for a favourable rebirth. A silk banner from Dunhuang (holding a triple banderole mounted on a hook) documents that this idea was well established at Dunhuang by the 9th century (cf. Whitfield and Farrer 1990: pl. 15).
24 The theme is also shown in Khartse (Kalantari, in preparation) and must have been popular in India as well, where no wall paintings of this theme have survived. However, the story is frequently depicted in Pāla-style manuscripts.
25 Interestingly, at Mangyu the deity lives in a tower that functions as a threshold to the temple, resembling towers described in the Gandavyūhasūtra as first described by Linrothe (2010: 125) and Luczanits (2010).
26 A detailed reading will be provided in an article by G. Melzer (forthcoming).
Tsering Gyalpo and Christiane Kalantari

unfold as a continuous linear frieze. Zhag shows a singular narrative type not found in previous phases of this artistic-religious tradition, namely a spatial organisation of themes with episodes from different chronological phases of the story shown in a unified spatial setting creating a three-dimensional space.

The type of landscape setting for a narrative painting is also a new element in the Zhag cave. The composition shows a close frontal view of landscape elements such as trees, combined with a view from the distance.

The story begins with a group of three princes shown at the centre, with Prince Mahāsattva in their midst. They are in the forest, which reaches up to the top of the composition; to their right is the self-sacrifice of the prince—in compassion for the hungry tigress who is too weak to feed her cubs. The stūpa with his relics is depicted below. To the left lower side is a single-chamber house with a pointed roof in which the queen dreams of bad omens as signs of her son’s death, while below is depicted the palace with the king and queen discussing sorrowfully the dream.

The style is reminiscent of paintings on this theme at Dunhuang: in Cave 254 (ca. 6th century) the scenes are also arranged vertically, situated between two niches on the side wall featuring the three bodhisattvas at the centre and the sacrifice on the right (cf. Whitfield 1996 I: 19; for a survey of the versions of this story and comparative study of representations see Schlingloff 2000: 161–64).

Three main settings can be identified in this composition: 1) The forest in the centre and top zone, with the main event, the beholding of the hungry tigress by Mahāsattva (Sems can chen po) and the two other princes (Mahādeva and Mahāpanada) in the centre. 2) In the right-hand third of the panel is the self-sacrifice and below is the place with the remains of the body, i.e. the bones, after Mahāsattva has been eaten by the tigress. The spot was immediately transformed into a place of pilgrimage as is also indicated by the stupa in the lower right-hand corner. 3) On the lower left-hand side is the tower, representing the royal court (also providing an opportunity to depict the local Tibetan architectural environment of the ruling families). In a small building with a pitched roof the queen had a baleful dream,

19. Jātaka of the starving tigress (Vyāghri- or Mahāsattvajātaka), upper half of the narrative panel (Gu ge Tshe ring rgyal po, 2009).
Another characteristic feature of the narrative structure is the fact that actions from different chronological phases of the story take place in each of these three settings. Each of these sub-settings or isles are episodes of different phases of the story that happen here. For example, the forest setting in the centre and top section of the image includes the first scene with the three bodhisattvas, the sacrifice, the discussion between the princes, and the servants looking for Mahāsattva: the sequence of these events starts at the centre and then the story runs in a clockwise direction to the top of the image with the servants. Thus the story is only readable for onlookers familiar with the content. Each scene is not separated into individual spaces, forming a band running in a frieze from left to right as at Tabo, but the artist achieves an aesthetically pleasing composition featuring an overall landscape composition. The creation of a three-dimensional pictorial space is a completely new achievement compared to the previous Indo-Tibetan schools of Spiti and Upper Kinnaur (10th–12th centuries). In the latter, compositions of neutral screens for planar symmetrical arrangements of motifs dominate.

At Khartse neither the continuous action of the story nor a detailed representation of various events in a “landscape” can be found; here the story is reduced to the most significant elements, with the jungle forest as the setting. Concerning the inscriptions at Zhag, text cartouches typical of narrative imagery in this region, in red are left empty. However, as a unique feature, short texts are inserted in direct relation to the figures (Fig. 19); their purpose appears to be primarily to emphasise the action or emotion shown in the respective scene. Thus the close relation of text and images in the Zhag cave temple serves to facilitate the reading of the images for the devotees, which is a feature hitherto unknown from all the temples in previous periods in this region.

The depiction at Zhag is also unique for the precise and detailed portrait of nature and material culture: the different episodes of the jātaka story are shown in a landscape setting featuring a tranquil forest above and a palace in the lower left section; parrots, peacocks and monkeys are shown in the trees, alluding to an Indian landscape setting. This interest in nature and trees in particular gives these scenes a flavour of vividness and individuality. The architectural and sartorial conventions reflect local Western Tibetan culture. For example, dwellings on the left feature a house with carved wooden pillars and a pointed roof, perhaps covered with blue tiles. Such roof types may have been common architectural forms, as can also be concluded from historic examples of this type of temple in Nako (Upper Kinnaur). The scene inside this house displays further interesting local features, showing the queen on her bed with a characteristic wooden head bolster. She wears the typical long white upper garment (with lapels?) and a round hat. Together with specific shoes, the accoutrements appear to represent examples of historic costumes that still exist in mNga’ ris today. Below this single-chamber building is an interesting tower-like, multi-storey structure, perhaps representing a castle or fort, on the top storey of which the couple discusses the omen. The dwelling recalls historic all-corbelled forts (cf. Devers, “An archaeological account of Nyarma and its surroundings, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 214–216) who provides a documentation and drawings of this type of architecture at Nyarma.

In general, narrative scenes featuring jātaka stories—and the life of the Buddha in particular—are a characteristic genre in the decorative

---

27 A completely different form of surface composition is shown at Mangyu and Sumda (ca. beginning of 13th century; cf. Linrothe 2010 and 2011), where single (key) sequences of the story are inserted into a ornamental pattern of lozenges depicted on the dhoti of monumental bodhisattva statues—a mode that I categorised as medallion style (Papa-Kalantari 2000 and 2002). This type is perhaps derived from Central Asian ceiling compositions featuring medallions as frames for episodes of Buddhist stories.

28 The tree above the dead corpse has a specific shape and colour and is described in the texts as bamboo. However, a specific symbolism may be associated with the tree: while most of them have red twigs with strong green leaves, the colour of the tree above the dead prince is different, it is white and there are no animals on it. Its branches hang down, as if in mourning and alluding to the death and the sorrow. Such elements recall Newari as well as Chinese conventions of landscape painting, but systematic studies of this genre in Tibetan painting are needed to arrive at a secure basis for any hypothesis. The tree appears to respond to human emotions and reflect the unbearable pain of the self-sacrifice. Trees also appear to enforce the emotions of the people depicted at Alchi (Sumtsel, upper storey): there fields of the Five Tathāgatas feature trees in full bloom and bowed almost as if venerating and celebrating the presence of the Buddhas.

This phenomenon has a parallel in Chinese nature symbolism (cf. Chinese landscape settings during the Western Wei and the philosophical background (neo-Taoist) of the correspondence between man and nature (Chen 1995: 254), and the metaphorical language of nature to characterise man’s personalities.

29 Cf. Nako, Padmasambhava Iha khang, where 14th century ceiling planks covering a pointed roof can be identified (Papa-Kalantari 2002).

30 The blue colour of the roof suggests the use of glazed tiles. Comparable roof decorations can be found in the depictions of heavenly palaces on the main wall of the Iha khang gong ma at Nako, Upper Kinnaur (cf. Allinger and Kalantari 2012). A pointed roof with original ceiling decorations stored in the Nako temple can be viewed in the Padmasambhava Iha khang of Nako village, ca. 14th century.
programmes of early West Tibetan temples in various media (e.g. in wall paintings, wood carvings on portals). In contrast, in life stories of the Buddha from India and Nepal of that period, depictions of events related to specific sacred spaces are popular; examples can be found in manuscripts but complete continuous narratives are less frequent. The donors and designers of such programmes clearly aimed at promoting the (new) Buddhist life ideal in the region. In particular, jātakas serve as models of virtuous behaviour of every human in the form of previous births of the Buddha.

The Main Hall
As observed by Neumann, the theme of the Thousand Buddhas in the main hall is recounted in the Bhadrakalpikasūtra (sKal pa bzang po'i mdo) (Figs. 20–24). He remarks that there are actually 787 Buddhas (Neumann 2002: 81).

The depiction of the Thousand Buddhas blessing the present aeon of the Bhadralpka is known in India—such as Ajanta—from very early on. The sūtra was translated into Tibetan in the 8th century during the reign of Khri Srong lde btsan (755–ca. 800) (Chandra 1996: 4; Dotson 2010: 228). The first known example of this theme in the Western Himalayas can be found in the ambulatory of the Tabo gtsug lag khang (Figs. 25–26). At Tabo, images of the Thousand Buddhas are shown surrounding the sanctum, which is reserved for the highest spiritual level, represented by Vairocana. They are depicted in the uppermost zone of the outer wall and the inner wall of the ambulatory. Below them—on the rear wall of the ambulatory—there is a row of the Buddhas of the Past plus Maitreya presiding over bodhisattvas on the side walls, while narrative images are depicted in a vertical hierarchy

31 Cf. the Newari Asṭasahasrikā Prajñāpāramitā manuscript (Cambridge University Library, AsP Add. 1643), 11th century, dated 1015, deities images labelled with topographical names, thus specific images of pilgrimage places in Buddhist Asia, among which are some of Nepal.

32 According to Neumann (2002: 81) the number in the mandala ceiling cave in Dungkar is 996, however there they do not show Buddhas.

33 Bechert and Gombrich (1995: 72) explained that the theme foreshadows the emergence of Mahāyāna beliefs and rituals, where the repetition of prayers and action is given prime importance. “Sheer numbers acquire a mystical efficacy, and Halls of a thousand Buddhas reinforce the worshipper’s faith” (ibid.: 72).

A Khotanese scroll of the Thousand Buddha names ends by pointing out blessings secured by those who recite these names “and all sinful deeds disappear of those who do homage to the names of the divine lords” (Lokesh Chandra 1996: 5).

34 The Thousand Buddhas are frequently depicted outside the mandala in wall paintings at Nako, Lotsāba bla khang, and in Ladakh (Mangyu).
Such a configuration of the Seven Excellent Buddhas of the Past (Sangs rgyas rabs bdun) and Maitreya is also to be found on the rear wall of Dungkar Cave 2, with multiple bodhisattva images (representing the theme of the Thousand Bodhisattvas) covering the side walls and a maṇḍala dominating the whole ceiling. In the centre of this space at Dungkar is a stūpa comparable to the Zhag cave (Fig. 27; cf. also Pritzker 1996: fig. 17).

The single seated Buddhas in the main hall are typically shown on lotus thrones wearing robes of different colours and patterns indicating their individuality. As a characteristic feature, one fold of the robe is often held up in the left hand. The mudrās, most of them are variations of canonical hand gestures, primarily serve the purpose of variation as do the costumes and the shapes and colour schemes of the lotus bases. This capacity and sense of variation is a characteristic feature of the quality of this artistic phase and it is reminiscent of the style also found in contemporary book paintings such as those in the Prajñāpāramitā manuscript at Pooh (sPu) in Upper Kinnaur (Khu nu). See also Kalantari, “Shaping space, constructing identity: the illuminated Yum chen mo at Pooh, Upper Kinnaur’, this volume, pp. 363–405.

A contrasting feature, however, is the interest in naturalism, the physical presence of figures and almost “portrait-like” emotions. Characteristic are standing or walking Buddhas, shown in three-quarter profile, one arm hanging down with the hand stretched out to the side, the feet face the direction of movement. The folds of the monk’s habit create loops at the hem; all these elements chronologically recall later Tibetan manuscript paintings, such as a colophon page from Dolpo in present-day Nepal (ca. 13th–14th century; see Heller 2009: fig. 61 [Vol. Ca, N192] and another folio from this manuscript (ibid.: fig. 69, [vol. Ga, N405]). An earlier manuscript (Heller 2009: fig. 13 [Cambridge University Library, AsP Add. 1643, folio 216v]) is also relevant for the illustration of the Newari-inspired West Tibetan artistic context of this school. Thus, while in the Yum chen mo manuscript it is luxury art and material culture that creates supramundane sacred realms that are intended to be splendid and glorified, at Zhag it is figural individuality and “the holy smile” of the Buddha that reflects supreme enlightenment.

A significant feature is that each of the Buddhas at Zhag is accompanied by inscriptions adding to the merits achieved by the donors, while the respective cartouches in the sanctum of Tabo have been painted but they are left empty.

Another characteristic feature are short accompanying texts in the jātaka paintings. We also find such additional descriptive texts under images in the Tibetan manuscripts at Dolpo mentioned above. This text-image relation contrasts to inscriptions representing the complete story, typical of the early phase of temples in the region, such as at Tabo, when Buddhism was introduced and essential truths were taken to the population.

In general the layout of the iconography recalls images of Thousand Buddhas at Dunhuang, a theme frequently depicted in this period (Fig. 28). Like in the Zhag cave, the Buddhas typically cover the whole side walls of the sanctuary and surround a central pillar on which one or a group of images of historical Buddhas are placed.

35 A three-dimensional maṇḍala with Mañjuśrī at its centre (Dharmadhātu-vagīśvaramañjuśrī maṇḍala) is represented on the ceiling.

36 Closer examinations of the ensemble will perhaps reveal signs of incisions or outlines of the overall layout of the repeat motifs, however the individual Buddhas show slight variations and thus were not made with stencils.

37 Eva Allinger (2006) discussed the process of manufacture and workshops applied in the manuscript from Pooh and to the knowledge of the authors she was the first who worked on the workshop structure and practice in the medium of book-paintings.

38 These captions may reinforce the depiction and their magical efficacy “on the level of speech” (cf. Luczanits 2010: 7) but may also double the merit “accrued through its donation and veneration” (ibid.).

39 Such descriptive texts are later typical in complex thangkas with multiple images. Zhag is thus perhaps an early example of this phenomenon.
The Buddha in the centre or the stūpa with the Thousand Buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa surrounding it allude to the universal aspect of the Buddha, the sacred continuum of the dharma, and reinforce the cosmological symbolism of the temple. The temple's structure and programme can be interpreted as a realisation of the trikāya: the stūpa in the centre represents dharmakāya, the Buddhas emanating from this centre in all directions of the universe saṃbhogakāya, while the jātakas, donors, represent the nirmāṇakāya, placed in the corridor, representing the border between the profane and the sacred sphere. A different, conservative conception of architectural space can be observed at Tabo, featuring a sanctum at the rear of the temple, where the image of the Buddha is venerated in a sacred enclosure.

Cosmopolitan Taste and Local Style: The Ceiling Compositions

The textile cover in the barrel-vaulted entrance hall mimics strips of cloth attached to the ceiling, achieving almost a trompe l’œil effect (Fig. 29). Such textile depictions reflect local architectural traditions and materials of mud, rubble, stones and timber. These simple structures are covered with wooden ceilings decorated with textile representations. The ornaments also give an insight into various ritual actions and performances of devotion in the temple, such as the donation of costly items such as fabrics and ritual accoutrements of precious clothes. Gregory Schopen (1996: 112–14) explains how monastics were obliged to make use of the donations given as a way of generating merit for these donors (cf. also Rotman 2009: 55). The use of textiles as objects of achieving merit and as ritual paraphernalia in the temple was then also translated into the medium of painting emphasising the glory of the Buddha and his realm. The motifs in the corridor allude to Indian cotton prints and take up patterns and elements of material culture used in previous phases such as at Tabo (cf. Kalantari 2016). This notion of continuation of elements of material and ornamental culture and their variation is a distinctive feature in this artistic tradition and it plays an important role in the construction of a distinctive West Tibetan visual identity. As will be

---

40 The conception is reminiscent of the Lotus sūtra, where the timelessness of the teachings and the infiniteness of the Buddha are propounded.
41 For a discussion of the temple as representation of the trikāya the inscription in the Alchi Sumtsek is indicative, which has been discussed by Goepper (1996: 269).
42 For specific aspects focusing on the mandala ceilings in Dungkar see Klimburg-Salter (2001) and Neumann (2007); for comparative analyses of representations of textiles and of the symbolism of motifs on ceiling compositions of early West Tibetan temples see Papa-Kalantari 2000 and 2007, and Tshe ring rgyal po and Papa-Kalantari (2010).
43 The adoption of ornaments from earlier periods mimicking Indian printed cottons in the corridor is remarkable insofar as the textiles of the Buddhas
shown, it also demonstrates the close evolutionary relation to early Western Himalayan schools with distinctive regional characteristics.

The effect of a vertical boundary or protective fabric cover in the textile depictions in the corridor contrasts with the more elaborate (perhaps originally) centralised composition in the main hall following a new conceptual and stylistic trend in this region (Fig. 30). It shows lotus tendrils, alluding to pedestals for deities and almost opening the ceiling to heaven. This “open composition” is in contrast to the dominance of architectonic ceiling structures at Tabo and Nako, to which textile depictions are subordinated alluding to a sheltering cover, whereas mandala ceilings at Dungkar and “domes of heaven” in Zhag and Nyiwang (Nyi dbang) reflect a new interest in the vertical dimension of space. In this artistic trend all dimensions of space in the temple are integrated into a unified vision of the Buddhist world system in which the royal elite and the practitioner are embedded.

The decorative style of the extant ceiling paintings in the Zhag cave perhaps alludes to intricate silks from Central Asia. Similar ceiling decorations can be found at Dunhuang, featuring a synthesis of honorific covers and cosmological allusions. Dorothy Wong (2008: 57) has shown that Chinese and Indian cosmologies co-existed on the ceilings of early Buddhist temples in Dunhuang (with celestial
symbols, nature spirits and airborne beings alluding combining Chinese conceptions of the heavenly realm with Indian concepts of the cosmos, centring around Mount Meru).

With regard to the cosmological allusions, a small cave sanctuary at Nyiwang in the Tiya (gTi g.yag) area (for an image see Tshe ring rgyal po 2006: illustration section, before p. i) features a ceiling composition that imitates an opening to a heaven, in which dwell airborne divinities, sacred geese, wind gods, swirling lions and pearl circles, alluding to the stars. In this cave, too, the Thousand Buddha theme covers the side walls and it is also closely stylistically related to the Dungkar-Phyang (Phyi dbang)-Zhag school.44

This progression in elaboration and scale of ornament implies that decorative elements on the ceilings were perceived as elements of differentiation between distinct kinds of sacred space. The spiritual hierarchy is also reflected in the ceiling composition at Tabo.45 The lotus ornament (padma) is an important element with iconographic significance as symbol of the Buddha, and plays a role in the shaping and hierarchisation of sacred space in India both in Hindu and Buddhist architectural traditions from very early on.46

The scientific reconstruction of the artistic context is still in its infancy. The ornamental language at Zhag appears to translate Sinocising Central Asian features, and in particular those of the Tangut Xia dynasty (982–1227). A tentative comparison is provided by a silk tapestry (Watt and Wardwell 1997: cat. no. 24, p. 91), dateable to the early 13th century, representing characteristic floral vine scrolls across the bottom and borders of U-shaped bows with dots in the centre. These are found as separating elements between the ceiling and the walls. Significant parallels are also to be found in centralised ceiling decorations at Dunhuang (Papa-Kalantari 2000: fig. 12), featuring compositions of lotus tendrils in the centre framed by valance-like bows, which allude to chains of lotus petals.47 Concerning the historical context of this cultural interrelation, the Xi Xia (Western Xia) Buddhist state in Gansu Province controlled a line on oases along the Silk Route and traded large quantities of silk (Watt and Wardwell 1997: 12). Most thangkas from this period have been found in Central Tibet and Khara Khot. The close ethnic and religious ties with Tibet were perhaps the basis of a substantial intercultural transfer and trade in luxury items are a possible medium of this exchange contributing to a specific West Tibetan stylistic idiom with Chinese Central-Asian features. As Luczanits pointed out, the art of Dungkar (featuring complex ceiling decorations which include exotic, Sinocising motifs and cosmological symbolism) also marks the beginning of new religious trends with an emphasis on Anuttara Yoga teachings (bla na med pa’i rgyud), with the teacher as the living Buddha, which may have arrived via Central Tibet (cf. Luczanits 2004: 7; 210; 213). It is possible that Nepal functioned as a corridor of communication in this process of religio-artistic flows, as stylistic parallels in the figural style suggest.

Observations on the Interrelation of Spatial Structure, Programme and Ritual

The architectural structure of the Zhag cave contrasts with the typology of sacred space, with a focus of worship in a cella, enclosure or niche, positioned on the opposite side of the portal, representing an Indic system of a horizontal hierarchy of space. The latter reflects specific forms of devotion, namely forms of the cult of the Buddha, and focus of devotion in a chamber that shelters the cult image similar to Hindu forms of ritual devotion. This type of chamber is also typical for early single-chamber Buddhist temples in Himachal Pradesh (Lotsāba lha khang in Ribba, Mirkūla Devi in Udaipur) sheltered by a wooden façade or portal featuring intricate wood-carvings. In contrast, at Zhag the spiritual focus of space is free-standing and placed at the centre of the main hall featuring a stūpa. The latter is ritually circumambulated by the devotee and offerings are placed there. As a significant contrasting feature, this centre does not represent an enclosure with one opening towards the assembly hall, but it is free-standing and thus oriented towards

44 This distinctive conception of centralised ceiling designs is related to single-chamber sanctuaries at Dungkar, with their characteristic raised niches in the rear wall in which sculptures are placed combined with three-dimensional structures of the ceilings. One of them features a centralised decorative scheme alluding to honorific and devotional textiles combined with cosmological allusions (Papa-Kalantari 2000 and 2007, Kalantari 2016). These spatial traditions are reminiscent of cave temples at Dunhuang from the Tang to the Western Xia periods, some of them featuring niches and trapezoid sloping roofs mimicking specific architectural traditions with pagoda-like roofs combined with lantern ceilings (cf. Klimburg-Salter 2001; Neumann 2007).

45 Giuseppe Tucci (1935) was the first to interpret early Western Himalayan temple’s ceilings as symbolic representations of canopies, which was later adopted by Klimburg-Salter (1997) in the interpretation of various different and diverse types of ceilings in Afghanistan and Western Tibet.

46 Cf. e.g. Ribba, Lotsāba lha khang.

47 Horizontal friezes featuring rectangles in alternating colours are derived from stylised railings on the uppermost section of walls, above which typically there are deities making music and celestial dancers showering their offerings on the Buddhas below.

For a comparative analysis between Western Himalayan temples and decorative programmes in the Dunhuang caves, see Papa-Kalantari (2000), cf. also Klimburg-Salter (2001: 165) proposing analogies between mandala ceilings in Dungkar and Xi Xia-period ceilings in Yulin and Dunhuang.
all directions of space. The programme of the walls is closely related to the centre of devotion, the stūpa (cf. The Fortunate Aeon 1986). Examples of this spatial concept are temples with a roughly square ground plan featuring four-fold Vairocana images as the ritual focus (e.g. at Lalung) as well as the Alchi-stūpas with an inner stupa for circumambulation at their centres; the Sumtsek at Alchi also has a stūpa at its centre.48 The cave temples in Western Tibet are among the most consequent representations of this concept reflecting specific religious functions and ritual demands. Longitudinal temples (with cultic centres at the opposite side of the portal) combine the function of spaces for monastic rituals as well as centres for personal worship by the devotee through ritual actions of circumambulation and donation.49 Centralised single-chamber temples with a focus on devotion (stūpa or cult image) in the centre—as found at Dungkar and Zhag—may be mainly associated with meditative, devotional needs of practitioners, as well as specific ritual needs such as initiation. Dungkar Caves 1 and 2 are examples of sacred spaces lacking a sanctum for circumambulation or a niche featuring a focus of worship. Instead of a static hierarchy with the highest spiritual level at the centre of the wall opposite the portal, at Dungkar there is a programme that indicates a dynamic perception, which is further emphasised by the narrative of the Life of the Buddha running around the whole temple at Dungkar Cave 1. These architectonic types of cave temples in Dungkar and Zhag perhaps developed—if also certainly not exclusively—in interaction with cave temples in Central Asia such as Dunhuang featuring a ritual focus, often a figurative pillar for ritual circumambulation—placed in the centre of sacred space (accordingly they are called pillar caves, stūpa pillar caves). However, the evolutionary history and complex stratigraphy of these types of spaces, in conjunction with their programme and ritual use, is a task for future research. They contrast to a more “conservative” architectonic type with a sanctum at the end of a longitudinal structure found in the early phase of the Tabo gtsug lag khang around the beginning of the 11th century. However, the Tabo renovation phase (mid-11th century) displays a transformation of spatial organisation to centralised hierarchies, as reflected in the interior decorations of the ‘du khang and the sanctum-cum-ambulatory, transforming these spaces to mandalic sites. This new system is shown in the paintings of the sanctum, and most strikingly in the free-standing four-fold Vairocana clay image in clay in the ‘du khang, thereby combining a conservative spatial organisation with an innovative iconographic concept and symbolism of space. As an additional indicative feature the programme of the sanctum-cum-ambulatory of the Tabo renovation period (mid-11th century) appears to represent a program closed within itself and guarded by protectors depicted on the wall above the portal.50 This “modern” tendency coincides with the emergence of new religious trends with an emphasis on Five-Buddha-configurations and images facing the cardinal directions of space. This concept is also reflected in a four-fold bronze of Vairocana from Taglung monastery Central Tibet (cf. Luczanits 2004: fig. on p. 200), which has strong parallels to the four-fold image in the centre of the Tabo ‘du khang. This marks a significant shift in the perception and ritual use of sacred space in the evolutionary history of early Western Himalayan temple art.

To summarise the overall programme in the entrance hall or corridor features a thematic set of the samsārācakra, donors’ images plus inscriptions and protectors. A narrative (jātaka) complements this thematic set, which in earlier temples is typically reserved for the lowest zone following the direction of circumambulation; one example is the Tabo ‘du khang and ambulatory. At Zhag the samsārācakra and the Tiger jātaka—featuring episodes from the previous lives of the Buddha and portraying a prince who attains a high degree on the path of awakening consciousness—are shown in a spatial relationship. Both themes share the ideas of favourable

48 Temples with niches in the cardinal directions, such as the Alchi Sumtssek also have central cult images, but their ground plan may derive from different architectural traditions. This is in particular the case for complex structures such as the Tholing gtsug lag khang with a mandalic ground plan and internal spatial configuration. Interestingly, Kozicz (2008–2009) first drew attention to the presence of niches in the ambulatory of the sanctum at Nyarma (see also Hubert Feiglstorfer, “The architecture of the Buddhist temple complex of Nyarma”, this volume, pp. 233–236, for new aspects on this spatial concept). See also Kalantari, “Note on the spatial iconography of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang”, this volume, pp. 262–263, for typological comparisons of centralised spatial layouts.

49 While at Zhag the theme of the Thousand Buddhas covers the whole main hall, as a contrasting feature at Tabo the space representing the highest level of wisdom represented in the cella and the ambulatory around the centre of devotion. There the uppermost zone and inner walls of the ambulatory are adorned with images of the Thousand Buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa. All this reflects a horizontal hierarchy and a dynamic spiritual progression towards the sanctum typical of the earliest phase of temples in the region founded at the end of the 10th century.
rebirths due to an ethical life and even the possibility of the rebirth as kings and bodhisattvas, expressed in the *samsāracakra*. They thus emphasise the didactic values designed to encourage the devotee to contemplate the basic truths of Buddhism when entering the temple.

Both the entrance hall and main hall reflect conservative religious trends; the first relates to Mahāyāna beliefs of early Buddhism, with an emphasis on instructions given in the Mūlasarvāstivāda Vinaya—as also frequently depicted in early Buddhist temples such as at Ajanta. The main hall features a *stūpa* at the centre—representing dharmakāya—generating Buddhas dwelling in all directions of space. The programme of images of the Thousand Buddhas, rather oriented towards conservative Mahāyāna Buddhist thought—which is found as a parallel phenomenon at Dunhuang—with little tantric iconography. The images of Thousand Buddhas are arranged around a central image *stūpa* as the centre of devotion. There the devotee pays respect by various ritual actions such as circumambulation and veneration through offerings.

The Zhag cave still serves as an offering place (*mchod khang*) for veneration by local practitioners and pilgrims from outside as well as a place of meditation for great masters today. Its function of course contrasts to that of free-standing temples, which were mainly designed for ceremonies of monastic communities and which also meet the religious demands of the local population. Especially during festive days (*tshe bzang dus bzang*), such as the 5th, the 8th, the 15th, the 25th and the 30th day of the month, devotees pay respect to the Buddhas and worship the *stūpa* in the Zhag cave, where they accrue merits by offering butter lamps, water, food and sacred scarves.

The typology of the Zhag cave and its features is very common in mNga’ ris, with examples found in the Ruthok (Ru thog) gTing chung lha khang and in several painted *stūpas* in Alich (e.g. the Great Stūpa), in the Sangs rgyas stong sku lha khang in the Ru thog dBod byang area, in the Wa chen grotto (Tshe ring gyal po 2012), and in sanctuaries in the Riba (Ri pa) area in Western Tibet (see Tshe ring gyal po 2006: 314f.). Related programmes can also be found in the three grottoes at Dunngkar (today referred to by the local population collectively as “Dung dkar za sgo phug gsum”; cf. *ibid.*: 231) which are close to the Zhag cave, on the same side of Sutlej river (Glang chen gtsang po). As regards the Zhag cave’s sect affiliation, the programme in the Zhag cave temple suggests a relation with the sNgags gsar ma, “Secret New Mantra” or “New Translation school” (of “New” Tantras). This school was very strong in this area in the 12th century and the sects adhering to them had close relations with the early Guge kingdom, which presided over the area during the period in which the cave’s programme was developed.

This conservative general programme is in line with the intention of the religious elite and their goal of establishing core Buddhist truths in the region. In contrast to the rather conservative programme, there are innovative features consistent within this political and religious-artistic phase of the 10th–13th centuries: firstly the prominent representation of donors as devotees and engaged in various rituals. The detailed depiction of donors in the entrance hall in close relation to cosmological imagery and the *samsāracakra* is a distinctive feature of West Tibetan art. Sponsors of the temple and aristocratic practitioners are integrated into the whole programme and their function appears to go beyond the mere commemoration of the act of donation as religious merit. They appear to be portrayed in rituals related to the consecration and sanctification of the temple ground and as embedded in a cosmogonic narrative strengthening their legitimising roots. They are typically accompanied by extensive written eulogies to their deeds.

The second new feature is the dominant role of local protectors related to the ruling elite, which perhaps incorporates various local (pre-Buddhist) features (see Appendix). All this establishes a distinctive relation of political sovereignty, religious authority and (military) power, perhaps also efficacious against external adversaries. This confrontation/configuration of conservative and innovative features creates a specific Tibetan articulation of religious art of this region under royal West Tibetan patronage.

**Appendix (Christiane Kalantari). The Royal Ram-rider at Zhag: Some Remarks on His Iconographic, Artistic and Religio-Political Context**

Concerning the identity of the mounted warrior (Figs. 31–34) I have discussed aspects of the history of this type of local territorial deity in Western Tibet elsewhere (Papa-Kalantari 2010), giving insight into the religious landscape in Western Tibet which was not only shaped by spiritual concerns but also by pragmatic political interests and military concerns. The popularity of these spirits can be understood as an aspect of a socio-religious atmosphere, marked by the interest

---

51 How the cult of the *Bhakrakalpikasūtra* was performed in the temple and how Buddhist thoughts generate specific types of temple is question for future research.

52 We are indebted to Eva Allinger for discussions on various topics in this paper and her deep insights regarding religious and stylistic questions.
in guardian deities designed to grant security and military protection of trade routes and outer borders of the political domain. This group of male guardians complements and perhaps partly replaces the dominance of female spirits in earlier periods, and may have integrated ancient indigenous spirits as protectors (srung ma) of Buddhist temples (cf. Jahoda 2006).

The (ram-)rider appears to merge the military and the holy embodying ideals of protection associated with martial culture and local equestrian/hunting traditions also including military status culture and insignia of the ruling elites. The military ethos of the religious-political elite as reflected in the warrior-like guardian with fearsome weapons is also referred to in an edict (chos rtsigs) issued by Ye shes 'od. Among the rgyal khrims, the secular laws, a prominent position was given to the defence of the kingdom as well as to military training, to which all were called to contribute (cf. Vitali 1996: 212).

One of the guardian spirits that can tentatively be associated with this class of guardian in early West Tibetan temples—and who is mentioned in relevant texts—is Pe har, who had a complex career in Central Asia and Tibet. He was seen as guardian of treasures of the kingdom in Central Asia and as a tutelary deity of the local dynasty of Khotan (see also Hazod 2005: 284f.). He was transferred to Tibet and bound on oath to protect the monastery of Samye (bSam yas).54

The earliest written evidence of Pe har in the Western Himalayas can be found in this religious edict, according to which members of the royal family had to take a solemn oath of its regulations with Pehar as witness. In addition, the biography of Rin chen bzang po, possibly written by one of his disciples in the 11th century, describes how female spirits bound by oath on the occasion of the monastery’s consecration were made to promise to protect the Buddhist religion and to guard the possessions of the temple. One passage characterises a male spirit as follows: “Putting the Oblate Goat-Skin-Clad under oath, he made him work as personal attendant and made him responsible for guarding the possessions of all the temples of Rong-chung. This one is master of the demons [...] [a]lso known as [...] Pehar” (Snellgrove and Skorupski 1980: 93).55 The text demonstrates the close relationship of guard the treasures of the temples in Western Tibet, reflecting a process already undertaken during the time of the old Tibetan monarchy.

54 According to the Tibetan legend, on initiative of Padmasambhava Pe har was caught by a yakṣa, a companion of Vaiśravana. He was then brought to Samye and appointed to the position of the tutelary deity of the monastery where he was bound by oath to protect the monastic treasure. His cult may have been transferred to Western Tibet very early on by the descendants of the old dynasty and their aristocratic allies. In general the transfer of a tutelary deity is a constant theme of political theology in Tibet, and Pe har was appointed to

The role of landowner and land is also protecting trade routes on the Indus and thus the prosperity of the region. The kaftan of the horseman at Alchi is made of a precious medallion silk featuring lions and ducks, while the band on his forearms recalls the ki’la robes of honour from the Islamic courtly sphere, which may have been traded in the region. The decoration of the shield is precisely executed, probably signalling the individuality of the owner. Images of horses are part of the self-representation of the Tibetan ruling elite from very early on. The horse is depicted as a sign of sovereignty of the ruling elite at Nako (Lotsāba iha khang). The riderless horse

31. Rider in the corridor at Dungkar, Cave 1 (C. Kalantari, 2007).

32. Rider above the opening to the main hall at Dungkar, Cave 1 (C. Kalantari, 2007).
Tsering Gyalpo and Christiane Kalantari

the ruling elite to patron deities, which are still a central element in the religious practice today.\textsuperscript{56}

The popularity of this type of local territorial spirit may have been superimposed by the emergence of the powerful protector of the dharma, Mahākāla, one of whose attendants according to textual sources is a male warrior. A specific aspect of the nature of Mahākāla is his entourage or “court”, called ministers.\textsuperscript{57} Among the various companions are also mounted horsemen, while some are messengers (pho nya), frequently animals, collectively called the spyan gzigs (Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1975: 21). In the Alchi Sumtsesk, a Mahākāla depiction features a horseman in local garb in the upper left-hand corner holding a human head and a sword, with an attendant bearing a skull cup. He thus shows the closest resemblance to the attributes found in canonical Mahākāla iconography.

Relevant in this context is the complex history of the flying black bse mask—summarised by Vitali\textsuperscript{58}—which can traced back to the West Tibetan Mahākāla tradition associated with Rin chen bzang po. According to his biography, he received the mask and the instructions associated with it from his teacher, a Kashmiri master, serving later on for the protection of the new teachings in Western Tibet (see also Hazod 2005: 284). Vitali 2001: 37, n. 44) poses the question of the flight of the bse 'bag mask to Western Tibet having not only religious implications: "Can the fact that mGon.po granted warlike powers be applied to the case of lo.chen [Rin chen bzang po]. In other words, was lo.chen also serving the purpose, with the appointment of Ma.ha.kā.la as the protector of West Tibet, of the

in the donor image appears to signal readiness for battle. The strong cultural force of equestrian and military pride as a component of local status culture is an important element in the visual construction of political as well as religious authority.

\textsuperscript{56} The relation between rDo rje chen mo (which perhaps integrated pre-Buddhist local deities) and the kings of Guge is a paradigm for their role. The rider at Alchi wears exactly the same robes of protector as in drinking scene, perhaps the founding generation, related to the ancestral village deity, which was present and summoned to guard the temple at the time of its foundation.

\textsuperscript{57} Cf. Linrothe 2004: 49. One example is a thangka of the Sakya (Sa skya) lineage dateable to the 12th century featuring Raudrantika (the killer of Raudra) typically depicted holding a lance (sometimes also a sword) and a skull bowl and riding a black horse (ibid: 61). This mounted heroic spirit is regarded as one of the four members of his outer retinue. The Alchi Lotsbaba lha khang features protectors showing eight riders each holding a flag; the latter attribute is typical of early Raudrantika images just mentioned.

\textsuperscript{58} Vitali’s summary (2001) is based on a 17th-century text, which is connected with the mythic history of Gur mgon of the Sakya (Sa skya pa); see also Hazod (2005: 284f, for a summary); for further descriptions of Mahākāla’s history see also Linrothe 2004: 44. Various Anuttara Yoga Tantras teach various forms of Mahākāla; the principal texts are the Twenty-Five and Fifty Chapter Mahākāla Tantra.
defence of the Gu.ge Pu.hrang kingdom against the enemies from the borders, a necessity promoted by a law in Ye.shes. ‘od’s bka’-shog chen.mo, which laymen and monks were equally called to observe.” His assumption appears to match well with representations of heroic local protectors and the visual construction of power and authority in this period. It is thus possible that in Western Tibet the heroic type of male protector was included in the cult of Mahākāla, which has overlapping functions.

Evidence of the cult of a group of martial territorial deities is found not only in imagery and texts, but also in popular Buddhist practice, such as in folk epic and festival traditions in Kinnaur and in popular ritual practice in Western Tibet (Khorchag). Pe har, together with Dabla (dGra lha, also sGra bla) is still collectively worshipped today at Pooh (a village of historical significance which may have had a considerable position during the Guge kingdom period). Dabla (still present at Khorchag in the form of a male warrior; cf. Jahoda and Kalantari 2012: 140–41, fig. 94) previously lived in a specific sacred space on the uppermost storey of the Khorchag Jo khang temple.

Concerning the wider religious-political function in Western Tibet, further interdisciplinary studies will be necessary to investigate their role as protectors of the borders. Relevant in this context may be the classification among the different protective tasks, in particular one attributed to the mtshams (gyi) strung (ma), signifying “border guardian” (Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1956: 5). For example Dabla—which perhaps played an important role in historic times—belongs to a group of nine brother-and-sister divinities, imagined as guardians of a federation of villages, perhaps related to a political-administrative function (cf. Jahoda 2011 and 2012: 39). In this way a sacred landscape is shaped that is protected by guardians who have their abode at some locality close to the border and whose special task is to prevent hostile foreigners from entering the political domain and to defend its temples and institutions against adversaries. While the religious-political role of the warrior/hunter god in the Western Himalayas can be partly reconstructed, the definition of the complex stratigraphy of its identity must remain a task for future interdisciplinary research.

Bibliography


59 A Sakya hierarch was renowned for his power to summon mGon po in aid of the Mongol armies (Cf. Vitali 2001).

60 The function of Dabla is to protect people and their possessions (concerning dGra lha, see also Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1975: 318–40).

61 During joint fieldwork (with Christian Jahoda) at Pooh in mid-October 2009, the performance of the Sherken festival featuring cults that display a synthesis of pre-Buddhist (denominated by locals as Bon), Buddhist and Hindu traditions and also seem to preserve a memory of Pe har, as studied. Rituals include the worship of local village deities (gtor ma) and also their artistic context. In: Heller, Amy (ed.) The Arts of Tibetan Painting. Recent Research on Manuscripts, Murals and Thangkas of Tibet, the Himalayas and Mongolia (11th–19th century). PIATS 2010: Proceedings of the 12th International Association of Tibetan Studies Conference (IATS), Vancouver 2010; http://www.asianart.com/articles/allinger2/index.html).

62 Significant in this context is the fact that the Pooh temple is denominated ‘border-protecting temple’ in relevant Tibetan historical sources (see Jahoda, “The foundation of the Nyarma gtsug lag khang, Ladakh”, this volume, pp. 284–287).


——. In preparation. A Preliminary Survey on the Artistic and Religio-political Landscape of Khartse Valley.


MELZER, Gudrun. Forthcoming. A narrative representing the Vyāghrī- or Mahāsattva-jātaka in the Zhag cave, Western Tibet.


SCHOPEN, Gregory. 1996. The lay ownership of monasteries and the role of the monk in Mulasarvastivadin monasticism. In: Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies, 19/1, 81–126.


TSERING GYALPO. 2006. mNga’ ris chos ‘byung gangs ljongs mdzes rgyan. Lhasa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.

——. 2011. mNga’ ris rtswa mda’ rdzong khongs wa chen phug pa’i idebs ris syu rtsal / 阿里札達額欽石密壁画芸術 / Mural Paintings in Wachen Cave in Western Tibet. IHa sa: Bod ljongs mi dmangs dpe skrun khang.


Index

abhayamudrā, 344, 350
Abhidharmakośa, 229
Abhinirikramasūtra, 82
Ācala, 320
Afghanistan, 264, 301, 422
Ajanta/Ajaṇṭā, 262, 265, 274, 304, 309, 319, 379, 418, 424
Aksobhya, 74, 348, 349
Alchi/A lci, 8, 178, 201, 228, 275, 301, 302, 355, 357, 359, 360, 369, 370, 374, 375, 376, 377, 381, 425
Great Stūpa, 265, 369, 375, 376, 382, 424
Mañjuśrī/'Jam pa'i lha khang, 374, 375, 426
So ma lha khang, 229
Sumtsek/gSum brtsegs, 8, 31, 185, 239, 263, 265, 266, 267, 273, 275, 320, 348, 349, 351, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 373, 374, 375, 377, 382, 411, 415, 417, 420, 423, 426
āmalaka, 371, 376
Amarāvatī, 375
Amitābha, 30, 349, 414
Amitāyus, 40
Amoghasiddhi, 349, 350, 351, 356
Ānandagarbha, 286
ānkuśa, 348, 355, 356
Anuttara Yoga, 422, 426
Archaeological Survey of India, 201
Ardoxśo, 309
A ru, 78
Ārya-Lokeśvara, 32
Āryasūra, 82
Aṣṭamahābhaya Tārā, 359
Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā, 344, 345, 346, 347, 373, 383, 418
Atiśa/Jo bo rje, 39, 82, 83, 296, 329, 331, 332, 333, 334, 336, 337, 338, 413. See also Dipamkaraśrijñāna.
Avadānakapalatā, 309
Avalokiteśvara, xi, xiii, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 36, 40, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 81, 84, 180, 195, 244, 245, 246, 265, 269, 276, 307, 320, 346, 349, 359, 368, 371, 377, 379, 380, 414, 415. See also ‘Phags pa sPyan ras gzigs dbang phyug; sPyan ras gzigs.
Baijnath, 374
Balkh, 264
Baltistan/(s)Bal ti, 2, 3, 10, 12, 19, 30, 35, 36, 337, 374, 375, 378
‘Ban bza’ ‘Phan rgyal, 1
dBang ide, 10, 12, 291
dBang phyug, 83
‘Bar Ide, 291
Bar yang, 8, 13
Basgo/Ba(b) sgo/Ba mgo, 244, 245, 247
Lotsāba lha khang, 245, 247
Vairocana lha khang, 244, 245
Be/Bye, 407
Be lha khang, 407
Bengal, 373
Bhadra kala pa/Fortunate Aeon (bhadra kala pa), 351, 353, 355, 357, 369, 409, 412, 418, 420, 423
Bhadrapāla, 352, 353, 357
bhadrāsana, 369
bhavacakra, 304
Bhūdevi, 410
bhūmisparśāmudrā, 272, 344, 353, 367, 378
Bihar, 303, 308, 373
Bla ma g.yung drung, 185
BIon po bka’ thang, 2
Bodhgaya, 84
bodhimanda, 413
bodhyāgrimudrā, 348, 355
Bod kyi deb ther dpıyid kyi rgyal mo’i glu dbyangs, 335, 336
Bon, xiii, 3, 5, 6, 7, 11, 14, 20, 75, 76, 78, 91, 427
Bon ma nub pa’i gtan tshigs, 5
Brag dkar, 74
Brahmā, 320, 366, 367, 368, 379
‘Bri gung bKa’ brygyud pa, 83
‘Bri gung gling Shes rab’ byung gnas kyi rnam thar, 14
‘Bri gung pa, 14, 15, 16
‘Bri gung Ti se la rgyus, 15
‘Bri khung thel, 83
‘Bro (clan), 7, 8, 9, 10, 43, 49, 51, 52, 54, 55, 79, 292
Dratang, 33, 39, 40, 42. See also Gra/Gwra thang.
Drug pag, 284, 287
Drung pa Nam mkha’ rtse mo, 74
bDud rje btsan po ho, 75
‘Dul ba ‘od idan, 74
Dullu, 8
Dungkar/Dung dkar, 31, 34, 244, 273, 275, 301, 302,
309, 310, 312, 313, 314, 316, 317, 319, 320,
322, 370, 371, 377, 381, 407, 408, 409, 411, 414,
418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425
dGung rabs zam ‘phreng, 176
Dunhuang, xiii, 32, 34, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43, 44,
49, 50, 51, 52, 75, 320, 321, 371, 415, 416, 419,
420, 421, 422, 423, 424
Durgatiparipādhtana, 338
dvārapāla, 306, 318
Dvitiya Rājatarangini, 19
Dwags po bKa’ brgyud pa, 74
Dzam bha la, 83, 176
mDzangs blun zhes bya ba’i mdo, 74
Dznya na dha ra, 294
rDzogs chen, 5
Ellora, 255
Francke, August Hermann, 171, 172, 174, 185, 190,
280
dGa’ idan pho brang, 20
Ganapatī, 315, 319, 320
Gandavyūhasūtra, 355, 381, 415
Gandhāra, 264, 308, 309, 310
Gangs Ti se, 2, 6, 9, 11, 13, 15, 75, 77, 79, 83, 84, 292.
See also Kailas; Ti se.
Gar (clan), 8
garbhaugha, 235, 236, 238, 261, 262, 269, 423
Gar log, 12, 13, 82, 295, 296, 327, 329, 330, 331, 332,
334, 336, 337. See also Karluk; Qariuq.
mGar yang, 3
Gar zh(w)a, 3, 9, 79, 80. See also Lahaul.
dGe (bkra shis), 78, 292
dGe lha, 12, 13, 19, 333
Gergar, Joseph (bsod nams tshe brtan), 171, 172, 174,
175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 183, 190, 191, 201,
207, 226, 232, 233, 235, 238, 239, 240, 247, 249,
250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 260, 268, 270, 271,
279, 280
dGe shing A ring mo, 78, 292
dGe shing Tang mi ring mo, 77
Gità, 351, 352, 357
Glang chen gtsang po/Glang chen kha ‘bab(s)/Glang
chen ni bo, 61, 62, 76, 283, 328, 407, 424. See
also Sutilej.
Glang dar ma, 1. See also Khi Dar ma Wi dur btsan.
Glangs g.Yu rge ‘bar ma, 77
Glo bar, 16
Glo bo, 4, 6, 8, 9, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 74. See
also Mustang.
Glo smad, 16
Glo stod, 16
Glo bo mKhan chen gyi rang mam, 18
rGod khung, 84
rGod idem can gyi rnam thar, 2
rGod lung, 83
mGon po, 426. See also mGon po phyag bzhis pa;
mGon po phyag drug pa; Mahākāla.
mGon po phyag bzhis pa, 315, 414, 427. See also
mGon po; mGon po phyag drug pa; Mahākāla.
mGon po phyag drug pa, 180. See also mGon po;
mGon po phyag bzhis pa; Mahākāla.
‘Gos lo gZhon nu dpal, 330
sGra bla, 427. See also Dabla.
dGra lha, 82, 427. See also Dabla.
Gra/Gwra thang, 33, 39. See also Drathang.
Grags btsan Ide, 83
Grags btsan rtses, 291
Grags mtshan Ide, 83, 291
Grang la ti tsa, 76
Green Tārā, 358, 359, 373
Gro shod, 2, 3, 9, 13, 18
Guge/Gu ge, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 15, 17, 18,
19, 20, 26, 27, 52, 80, 83, 190, 280, 282, 283, 286,
Byang ngos, 13, 407
lHo stod, 13, 73
Gu ge Khyi thang pa (Ye shes dpal), 281, 283
Grags pa rgyal mtshan, Gu ge Pandita, xi, xiv, 73–74, 287
Guge Purang/Gu ge Pu hrang, 10, 16, 18, 52, 427. See
also Purang Guge.
Gu gu Khyung, 77, 78
Gujarat, 371
Gumrang, 243
dGung ‘phur, 84
Gung thang, 18
Gung thang gDung rabs, 14, 16
Gu ri, 3, 5
Guru Rinpoche, 74
rGya Bod yig tshang, 16, 291
rGya Bod yig tshang chen mo, 330
rGya brTsnon (‘grus) seng ge, 334, 335, 337, 338
rGyal ba Shes rab, 78
rGyal rabs gsal ba’i me long, 32, 286, 329, 330, 331, 332
rGyal ras Seng ge byin, 82
Gye god kha la bya ba, 84
Gyer spungs sNang bzhirod po, 5
sGyugs khyung sheng rtses, 75
lHa bla ma Ye shes ’od (kyi) rnam thar (rgyas pa), xiv,
10, 27, 73, 80, 279, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296,
328, 335
lHa btsan rDo rje seng ge, 84
lha chos, 78
lHa’i me tog, 317
lHa’ khor btsan, 127, 128, 294, 295. See also Na ga ra
dza/Nāga gā rā dza/Nāgarāja.
IHa lde (bKra shis btsan)/lHa lde b(r)tsan, 10, 82, 85,
281, 282, 283, 288, 289, 290, 291, 293, 294, 330,
337
IHa lung, 242. See also Lalung.
Hārīti, 301, 302, 303, 304, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313,
314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 322
IHa rtse Brag mkhar, 78
IHa sa. See Lhasa.
IHo rongs chos ’byung, 11, 83
IHo stod. See Guge/Gu ge lHo stod.
Hanle, 380, 383. See also Wam le.
Hayagrīva, 74, 318, 320, 368
Hikim, 63
Hrugs wer (ba) (clan), xiii, 7, 8, 75, 76, 78,
Hrugs wer sPruD gZher sto ged tsha, 75
Hrugs wer gTsug bzher, 77
Hrugs wer gTsug sgra gZher lha gnang, 76
Hsüang-tsang, 2
Hu pu, 82, 295
Index

Indra, 304, 320, 346, 347, 368
Indus, 27
Iran, 42
I-tsing, 309

Jambhala, 176
jātaka, 367, 374, 409, 413, 414, 415, 417, 418, 419, 420, 423. See also Mahāsattvajātaka; Vāgyhṛjātaka.
‘Jig rten mgon po, Chos rje ‘Bri khung, 83
‘jig rten skyong ba, 319
Jing gir rgyal po, 14, 15
Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum, 254, 276
Jo bo dngul sku mched gsum (gyi) dkar chag, 9, 229
Jo bo rje, 82, 83, 329, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338. See also Atiśa/Jo bo rje; Dīpaṃkaraśrījñāna.
Jokhang/Jo khang. See Khorchag, Jokhang; Lhasa, Jokhang.

bKa’ brgyud pa, 14
bKa’ ‘chems ka khol ma, 413
bKa’ gdams chos ‘byung, 332
bKa’ gdams pa, 333, 336
bKa’ ‘gyur, 84, 183, 284. See also Kanjur.
sKal pa bzang po’i mdo, 368, 418
Kailas, 53, 55, 75, 79, 80, 83, 292, 304. See also Ti se; Dipamkaraśrījñāna.
Kalhana, 263
kalyāṇamitra, 415
Kamalagupta, 285, 286
Kam pe drag/Ka pe hrag, 294
Kanam/Ka nam, 284, 286, 287
rKang phran, 3
Kanjur, 345, 346. See also bKa’ ‘gyur.
Kāraṇḍavyūhasūtra, 368
Kárkota, 263
Kāraṇḍavyūhasūtra, 368
Khāraṇḍavyūhasūtra, 368
Kātra, 263
Karluk, 295, 329. See also Gar log; Qarluq, Karnāli, 27, 283
Kashgar, 38
Kashmir/Kha che, xiii, 11, 81, 84, 162, 282, 285, 308, 309, 310, 358, 373, 374
Kāśyapa, 310
Kathmandu, 32, 33, 377
Kathmandu Valley, 9, 18

Keru/Ke ru, 36, 37, 38, 43, 274
Khams, 3
Kha rag, 3
Khara Khoti, 422
Khartse/mKhar rtse, xiii, 76, 270, 272, 273, 301, 302, 307, 311, 312, 313, 314, 319, 350, 356, 357, 380, 408, 413, 415, 417
mKhar bDu lang khyung rtse, 75
mKhar gong, 83
mKhar She la khyung, 75
mKhas pa’i dga’ston, 2, 4, 20, 331. See also Chos ‘byung mkhas pa’i dga’ston.
mKhas pa lde’u, 333, 336
mKhas pa lde’u mdzad pa’i rgya bod kyi chos ‘byung rgyas pa, 333, 334
Kha skyor, 3
Kha yug, 3
Khitan, 3
Kho char dkar chag, 15
Khocho, 38
IHa khang chen mo, 84, 87, 229, 242, 248, 254, 271, 276, 282, 321, 373
Jo khang, 84, 87, 229, 242, 248, 254, 271, 276, 282, 321, 373
Jo bo rje, 84, 229, 242, 248, 254, 255, 273, 276, 303, 322, 384, 427
bKra shis rtseg pa, 84
bKra shis rTogs lde btsan, 83
bKra shis stobs lde, 83, 87
bKra shis brTsegs pa dpal, 11
bKhrugs, 78
Khu nu, 3, 10
Khrasān, 16
Khu toen b’ron sgron ‘grus g.yung drung, 332
Khyad par ‘phags bstod, 82
Khyung (clan), 52
Khyung der nag pa (clan), 52
Khyung dkar pa (clan), 52
Khyung dpung ring mo, 77
Khyung dpung stong ring mo, 78
Khyung dpung Tang su ze, 77
Khyung jo rus pa (clan), 52
Khyung lung dngul mkhar/dkar, 1, 78
Khyung mgo pa (clan), 52
Khyung po (clan), 5, 8, 77
Khyung po Khiiren skyu se, 78, 292
Khyung po Pung/sPung sad zu tse, 2
Khyung ruis pa (clan), 52
Khyung spung stong ring mo, 78
Klu sgrub, 74. See also Nagārjuna.
Kramrisch, Stella, 275
bKra shis brTsegs pa dpal, 11, 12
bKra shis mgon, xii, xiii, 9, 10, 51, 53, 77, 79, 80, 288, 289, 293, 327, 328
bKra shis snga’, 184
Kriyasamgraha, 266, 272, 368, 413, 414
Krug skyes, 3
Kubera, 308, 309, 314, 315, 316. See also Kuvera.
Kucha, 38
Ku ma ra bha ta, 294
Ku na la ir brtogs brjod, 82
Kun rga rdo rje, 329
Kuvera, 310, 320. See also Kubera.
Kyabs ston Rin chen ‘od zer, 3
sKya ru, 294
Kyibar, 63
sKyid grong, 19
sKyid lde gling, 329
sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon, xii, xiii, 7, 8, 9, 10,
11, 20, 27, 52, 53, 77, 78, 85, 292, 293, 327
(s)Kyin wer (ba) (clan), 8, 75, 78
sKyin wer sDong gyed tsha, 75
sKyin wer rDo rje sher, 77
Kyin wer rDo rje zher rgyal po, 76
Kyo nam, 3
Kyuwang/Kyu wang, xi, 35, 61, 62, 63, 64, 67, 69
Ladakh/La dwags, 3, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 15, 16, 19, 25,
26, 35, 36, 42, 52, 79, 172, 173, 175, 176, 183,
185, 186, 190, 201, 210, 212, 214, 215, 219, 220,
222, 225, 244, 260, 263, 264, 265, 267, 268, 273,
279, 280, 311, 315, 335, 337, 347, 374, 375, 378,
383, 425
La dwags rgyal rabs, 10, 12, 15, 19, 52, 291, 292, 328
Lag myug tsha myug, 82
Lahaul, 262, 263. See also Gar zh(wa).
La ling, 78
Laltaditya, 263
lalitāsana, 41, 308, 346, 410, 414
Lalung, 171, 242, 245, 246, 268, 315, 356, 374, 375,
376, 423. See also Iha lung.
gSer khang, 246, 376
Lāsā, 351, 357
laukika, 301, 311, 319, 320
Legs (pa’i) lam bstan pa’i gtam, 82
Legs pa’i shes rab, 333
Lhasa/IHa sa, 20, 25, 39, 53, 172, 173, 229, 274, 283,
285, 304, 315, 317, 332
Jo khang, 229, 304, 315, 317
Liao, 3, 42
Li bin k(h)ya, 77, 78
Li byin mu pad khyas, 75
Lig myi rhya, 3
lokāpāla, 319
lokottara, 301, 311, 319, 320
rMa bya gtsang po/kha ‘bab, 27, 53, 80, 81, 283. See also Peacock (river).
Mackinder, Halford, 4
Mahābala, 355
Mahābodhi, 377
Mahākāla, 180, 310, 311, 315, 410, 411, 412, 426,
427. See also mGon po phyag bzhi pa; mGon po phyag drug pa.
Mahāmāyūrīvidyārājñīsūtra, 310
Mahāsattva, 416, 417
Mahāsattvajātaka, 367, 415, 416
Mahāvairocana, 275, 381. See also mGon po phyag bzhi pa; mGon po phyag drug pa.
Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa, 311, 319
Manydzu shri, 84
Ma pham g.yu mtsho, 4, 9, 13, 77. See also Khri Ide gTsug b(r)tsan.
Māra, 347, 365, 367, 414
Māravijaya, 364, 365, 367, 388
Mar me mdzad, 181, 190, 274. See also Dipamkara; Sangs rgyas mar me mdzad.
Mar pa, 181
Marshall, Sir John, 172
Mar yul, 2, 9, 15, 17, 18, 19, 27, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 174,
176, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 289, 295,
296, 337
Mar yum la, 8
Matho, 291
Mathura, 309
Māyā, 312
Ma zhang ban dhe, 78
rMe los sguyng, 75
Men Zhang (clan), 13, 14, 16, 17, 18
merit, 49, 77, 84, 347, 368, 419, 420
Mes ‘ag tshoms, 51. See also Khri Ide gTsug b(r)tsan.
Mid la ras pa, 11
Mirkulā Devī, 234, 235, 236, 262, 263, 422
mo, 75
modulus, 228, 237, 238, 255
Mo ‘gor rgyal po, 14
Mo lo Klu thon rje dpal sdang, 76
Mo lo (ba) (clan), 76, 78
Mo lo Klu thog bzher, 77
Mol wer (ba) (clan), 8, 75
Mo na, 284, 287
Mon ko phral drug, 84
Mōlasārāvādā, 309, 318, 410
Mōlasārāvādā Vinaya, 267, 272, 318, 424
Mulbek, 33
Mul bhe dPal ldan rtse, 185
Mu ne btsan po, 288
Mustang, 3, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19, 32. See also Glo bo.
Index

Sa skya Paṇḍita Kun dga’ rgyal mtshan, 16, 336
Saspotse, 411
Satasahāsrikā Prajñāpāramitā, 345, 351, 353, 364, 382, 388
Satpara, 35
Seng dkar ma, 7, 51, 128
Se rib, 3
gSer ‘od kyi rtogs brjod, 82
Seven Excellent Buddhas of the Past, 419
sgo bsrungs, 301, 306, 318
bsTags pa’i bstod grel, 82
Sha khog, 3
Shalkhar, 76
Shang gyer, 3
Shang za, 83
Shar Seng ge dkar mo, 76
Shel, 10, 184, 185, 191, 280, 289. See also Shey.
gShen rabs mi bo(n), 75
Shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa’i don bs dus pa, 82
Shey, 35, 216. See also Shel.
Shuttleworth, H. Lee, 171, 172, 190, 280
sikkha, 263, 373, 377
Silk Road, 34, 36, 39, 41
Silk Route, 422
Si tu bka’ chems, 15, 16
Siva, 379
Sixteen Bodhisattvas of the Bhadrakāla/ Fortunate Aeon, 351, 353, 357
Sle mi, 3, 14
bSod nams rgyal mtshan, Bla ma dam pa, 16
bSod nams rgyal mtshan, Sa skya, 329
bSod nams rtse, 10, 12
bSod nams Tshe brtan, 171
So Ion tsha bTsang srong, 83, 291
So na ra dza, 76
Songtsen Gampo, 31, 32, 33. See also Srong btsan/rtsan sgam po.
So pa lu, 78
Spiti, xi, 3, 52, 62, 63, 64, 65, 139, 140, 172, 244, 245, 284, 321, 417. See also sPi ti.
Spituk, 337. See also sPe dug/dPe thub.
Śraddhākaravaran, 285, 286
Srib ky i lh a rtse, 75
srīd pa’i khor la, 304, 408, 409, 410
Srid pa yongs kyi ma mo m u tsa med, 75
Śrī Hevajra, 74
Srinagar, 171, 263, 375, 415
Srin po gnam ro po, 1, 2, 3, 9, 13, 31, 35, 75, 288, 315, 317. See also Songtsen Gampo.
Srong nge, xi, xii, 26, 51, 77, 80, 287, 288, 289, 293, 294, 327, 328. See also Khi lde Srong btsan/Khi lde Srong gtsug/Khi lde Srong gtsug btsan; Ye shes ‘od.
Stok, 214, 216
stūpika, 372, 375
Subhuti, 368
Sudhana, 316, 355, 371, 380, 381, 415. See also Norzang/Nor bzang.
Sugatisandarśana Lokesvara, 31, 414, 415
gSum bzhed, 77
Sumda, 302, 314, 322, 417
Sumda Chung/gSum mda’ chung, 302, 314, 315, 356
Sumeru, 262, 304
Sum yul, 3
Sun (lineage), 73
Sūrya, 268, 315
Sutlej, 27, 35, 61, 62, 73, 76, 82, 283, 295, 407, 424. See also Glang chen gtsang po/Glang chen kha’i babs/Glang chen ri bo.
Suvarnabhūmi, 2
Suvannagotra, 2
Suvarnaprabhāsasūtra, 415
Swat, 64
sTag la mkhar, 328
sTag tsha Khri ‘bar (btsan), 83, 287
sTag tshan po dPal ’byor bzang po, 330
sTag tshang ras pa’i nram thar, 13
rTa mngri, 74
bsTan ‘byung skal bzang mgul rgyan, 3
bsTan ’gyur, 183, 284
bsTan ’dzin rin chen, dKar ru Bru chen, 1
bsTan ‘dzin rnam dag, 3
bsTan rtsis bskal ldan dang ’dren, 3
bsTan rtsis kun las btsus po, 11
bTsang grags lde, 83
bTsang phyug lde, 83
bTsang stobs lde, 83
Tabo/Ta po, xiv, 31, 32, 33, 38, 41, 43, 63, 64, 76, 183, 234, 237, 238, 240, 247, 254, 260, 263, 267, 272, 273, 276, 284, 289, 290, 301, 343, 360, 371, 373, 375, 377, 384, 409, 419
‘Brom ston lha khang, 230, 238, 254
‘Brom ston lha khang chung ba, 230, 234
Byams pa lha khang, 230, 238
dKar chung lha khang, 230
dKyi lhan khang, 230
gSer khang, 230
Tagas, 374, 375
Taglung, 423
Tang/T’ang, 2, 4, 35, 36, 39, 40, 41, 42, 420, 422
Tarā, 312, 321, 372, 373, 382
Tepe Rustam, 264
Thang la nag po, 76
Thig phyis, 274
Thikse, 171, 175, 179, 182, 190, 201, 202, 209, 212, 214, 216, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 225, 226, 227, 231, 232. See also Khri(gs) rtse/se.
gtsug lag khang, 81, 234, 236, 248, 253, 255, 256, 276, 286, 328, 332, 335, 423
Gyatsa/brGya rtsa, 254, 262, 269, 276, 302, 304, 357, 376
lHa khang chen mo, 282, 284, 285, 286, 295, 296
lHa khang chen po, 284, 286
lHa khang dkar po, 231, 276
Khang dmar dpe med lHun gyi grub pa’i gtsug lag khang, 234, 287
gSer khang, 276
Tshong 'dus mgur mo, 11, 12
Tshul khrims kyi gtam, 82
Tshul khrims 'od, 369
mTshur phu, 50
Tsong kha pa, 180
gTso tsho, 18
gTso tsho ba, 13, 17
Tucci, Giuseppe, 26, 28, 55, 61, 229, 269, 348, 355, 380, 422
Tusita, 369
Toda, 369
Vairocanasūtra, 413
Vaisālī, 369, 391
Vaisāravana, 43, 180, 309, 310, 314, 316, 425
Vajrabhāṣa, 349, 350, 356
Vajradhātu, 268, 320, 343, 347, 348, 354, 355, 358, 359, 360
Vajradhātu mahāmaṇḍala, 267, 274
Vajradhātu mandala, 244, 268, 284, 303, 344, 347, 348, 350, 351, 353, 354, 355, 356, 359, 360
Vajraghāṇṭā, 357
Vajrahetu, 349, 350, 356
Vajrakarma, 350, 356
Vajrantiṣṭhā, 352
Vajrapāni, 84, 320
Vajrapāśa, 352, 357
Vajrarāga, 348, 349, 356
Vajrārāja, 348, 355
Vajraraksā, 350, 351, 356
Vajratattva, 244, 348
Vajratabājas, 348, 349, 356
Vajratīkṣṇa, 349, 354, 356
Vajrāśva, 352, 353, 357
Vajrayaka, 350, 351, 356
Vajrayāna Buddhism, 242, 260, 269
Varadamātra, 30, 308, 379
Sasubandhu, 82
Vihāra, 228, 261, 263, 264, 267, 268, 274, 301, 303, 304, 379, 380, 413, 414
Vinā, 351, 352, 357
Vināya, 309, 319, 333, 336, 379, 410, 424
Vināyaka, 320
Vitarkamātra, 344
Vyāghrījātaka, 367, 415, 416
Wa chen, 424
Wa gindra karma, 229
Wam le, 380, 383. See also Hanle.
Wanla/Wan la, 185, 210, 215, 239, 249
Wen mo, 78
Wencheng Gongzhu, 35
Wi nyu myin, 306, 379
Xia, 422
Xi Xia, 422
Xuanzang, 280
Yaksā, 309, 310, 311, 312, 318, 319
Yakṣini, 308, 309, 319
Ya ngal (clan), 14, 20
Ya ngal gdung rabs (or), 14
Yan lag 'byung, 77
Yar lung jo bo (or), 303
Yar lung jo bo Shwakya Rin chen sde, 334
Ya rtse, 19, 83, 84
Yemar/g.Ye dmar, 33, 39, 40, 274
Index

Yig rnying, xii, 280, 281, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 293, 294
Yoga Tantra, 267, 295, 306, 312, 313, 319, 354, 357
Yoga Tantra maṇḍala, 357
Yon tan bcu bjod pa’i gtam, 82
Yuan, 15, 16, 17, 20
Yulin, 51, 422
Yum brtan, 333
Yum chen mo, xi, xiv, 321, 363, 383, 387. See also Prajñāpāramitā.
g.Yung drung Bon gyi bstan pa’i byung khungs nyung bsdus, 2
g.Yu sbra, xiii, 80

Za hor, 334
Zangs dkar/skar, 3, 9, 10, 19, 79, 80. See also Zangskar.
Zangs (dkar) bzang la’i rgyal brgyud kyi dka chags, 10
Zangskar, 185. See also Zangs dkar/skar.
Zangs kha, 51
Zangs kha (clan), 291
Zangs kha ma, 80
Zangs skar, 80. See also Zangs dkar.
Zha lu, 33. See also Shalu; Zhwa lu.
Yum chen mo lha khang, 40, 42
Zhang rGyal ba Yon tan, 78
Zhang zhung, xii, xiii, 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 14, 73, 75, 78, 85, 285, 292, 328
Zhang zhung mched Inga, 75
Zhang zhung snyan rgyud, 5
Zhang zhung snyan rgyud bla ma’i rnam thar, 5, 14
Zher chos ‘byung, 83
Zhi ba’od, 82, 288, 289, 330, 334, 337
zhing pa, 20
Zhi sde, 7, 27, 28, 30, 53, 54, 55
Zhol rodo ring, 39, 53
Zhwa lu, 11, 262, 304. See also Shalu; Zha lu.
Zhwa lu lo rgyus, 11
gZims mal ba (clan), 78
gZims mal ba Chos kyi lha, 78
gZims mal ba So pa lu, 78
Zorawar Singh, 175
List of Contributors

EVA ALLINGER, independent art historian, Vienna

QUENTIN DEVERS, Research Centre for East Asian Civilisations (CRCAO), French National Centre for Scientific Research (CNRS), Paris

TSERING DRONGSHAR, Institute for the Cultural and Intellectual History of Asia and Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna

HUBERT FEIGLSTORFER, Institute for Comparative Research in Architecture, Vienna University of Technology, Vienna; Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna

GUGE TSERING GYALPO (1961–2015), Tibetan Academy of Social Sciences (TASS), Lhasa

CHRISTIAN JAHODA, Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna

CHRISTIANE KALANTARI, Institute for Social Anthropology, Austrian Academy of Sciences, Vienna

CHRISTIAN LUCZANITS, School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS), University of London, London

ROBERTO VITALI, independent scholar, Dharamshala
Early West Tibetan Buddhist Monuments

Architecture, Art, History and Texts

EDITED BY CHRISTIAN JAHODA AND CHRISTIANE KALANTARI